COLUMBIA LIBRARIES OFFSITE
HEALTH SCIENCES STANDARD
HX64085988
QM551 .B15 1906 A text-book of histo

RECAP

SHOUT
SHARE
IT

QM551 B19
1906

Columbia University
in the City of New York

College of Physicians and Surgeons

Library

A
TEXT-BOOK OF HISTOLOGY

By

FREDERICK R. BAILEY, A.M., M.D.

Adjunct Professor of Normal Histology, College of Physicians and Surgeons—
Medical Department, Columbia University, New York City

SECOND AND REVISED EDITION

PROFUSELY ILLUSTRATED

NEW YORK
WILLIAM WOOD & COMPANY
MDCCCCVII

Copyright, 1906.
By WILLIAM WOOD AND COMPANY

QM551
B15
1906

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

THERE has been no change in the general plan and scope of the Text-Book as outlined in the Preface to the First Edition. Some errors have been corrected, some drawings improved, some new drawings substituted and added. The Chapter on the Nervous System, for the elaborateness of which the author was inclined to make some apologies, has proved a most valuable feature of the book. More changes have been made in this chapter than in any other, some necessitated by the advances which have been made in Neuro-histology in the past two years, others to further facilitate the teaching of the subject. Several new diagrams have also been added to this chapter. For these the author is again deeply indebted to Dr. O. S. Strong and Mr. A. M. Miller.

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2010 with funding from
Columbia University Libraries

http://www.archive.org/details/textbookofhistol00bail

PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION.

The primary aim of the writer in the preparation of these pages has been to give to the student of medicine a text-book of histology for use in connection with practical laboratory instruction, and especially to furnish to the instructor of histology a satisfactory manual for classroom teaching. With these objects in view, the text has been made as concise as possible consistent with clearness, and the writer has attempted to make the more essential elements stand out somewhat from the necessarily accompanying details.

It has been impossible to accomplish this without some sacrifice of uniformity of treatment and of logical sequence. This is especially noticeable in the chapter on the nervous system, which has been made much fuller and more "practical" than is usual. The author's reason for the method of treatment there adopted and for the considerable amount of anatomy which this chapter contains being the apparent success the method has met with in the teaching of this always difficult subject to students.

The chapter on general technic is intended to furnish the student with only the more essential laboratory methods. For special and more elaborate methods the student is referred to the special works on technic mentioned at the close of the chapter. The special technic given in connection with the different tissues and organs is in most cases such as can be conveniently used for the preparation of class sections.

The original illustrations are from drawings by Mr. A. M. Miller, to whom the writer is greatly indebted for his careful and accurate work. The uselessness of redrawing perfectly satisfactory illustrations has led the writer to borrow freely from various sources, each cut being duly accredited to the work from which it has been taken.

For all of these the author wishes to express his appreciation and obligation. He is also deeply indebted to Dr. O. S. Strong for his careful review and criticism of the chapter on the nervous system and for his supervision of the drawing of Figs. 263 and 264; to Dr. G. C. Freeborn, his predecessor as Instructor of Histology at the College of Physicians and Surgeons, for many valuable suggestions; and to Dr. T. Mitchell Prudden for his careful and critical review of the author's copy.

CONTENTS.

PART I.—HISTOLOGICAL TECHNIC.

CHAPTER I.

GENERAL TECHNIC.

PAGE
General Considerations, ... 3
Examination of Fresh Tissues, ... 3
Dissociation of Tissue Elements, ... 4
    Teasing, ... 4
    Maceration, ... 4
Fixation, ... 5
Hardening, ... 7
Preserving, ... 8
Decalcifying, ... 9
Embedding, ... 10
    Celloidin Embedding, ... 10
    Paraffin Embedding, ... 12
Section Cutting, ... 13
    Celloidin Sections, ... 13
    Paraffin Sections, ... 13
Staining, ... 14
    Nuclear Dyes, ... 14
    Plasma Dyes, ... 17
    Staining Sections, ... 17
    Staining in Bulk, ... 18
Mounting, ... 19
Staining and Mounting Paraffin Sections, ... 20
    Injection, ... 22

CHAPTER II.

SPECIAL STAINING METHODS.

Silver Nitrate Method of Staining the Intercellular Substance, . . . 25
Chlorid of Gold for Demonstrating Connective-tissue Cells, . . 25
Weigert's Elastic Tissue Stain, ... 25
Golgi's Chrome-silver for Staining Secretory Tubules, . . . 25

PAGE
Mallory's Hæmotoxylin Stain for Connective Tissue, . . . 26
Osmic Acid Stain for Fat, ... 26
Jenner's Blood Stain 26

CHAPTER III.

SPECIAL NEUROLOGICAL STAINING METHODS.

Weigert's Method of Staining Medullated Nerve Fibres, . . . 27
  Weigert-Pal Method, ... 28
Golgi Methods of Staining Nerve Tissue, ... 29
  Slow Method, ... 29
  Rapid Method, ... 29
  Mixed Method, ... 30
  Formalin-bichromate Method, ... 30
  Bichloride Method, ... 30
  Golgi-Cox Method, ... 30
  Cajal's Method, ... 31
Nissl's Method, ... 32
General References on Technic, ... 33

PART II.—THE CELL.

CHAPTER I.

THE CELL, ... 37
  General Structure, ... 37
  Structure of a Typical Cell, ... 37
    The Cell Body, ... 38
    The Cell Membrane, ... 39
    The Nucleus, ... 39
    The Centrosome, ... 40
  Vital Properties of Cells, ... 41
    Metabolism, ... 41
    Function, ... 41
    Irritability, ... 41
    Motion, ... 42
      Amœboid, ... 42
      Protoplasmic, ... 42
      Ciliary, ... 42
    Reproduction, ... 43
      Direct Cell-division, ... 43
      Indirect Cell-division, ... 43
  Fertilization of the Ovum, ... 46
  Technic, ... 50
  References for further study, ... 51

PART III.—THE TISSUES.

CHAPTER I.

PAGE
HISTOGENESIS—CLASSIFICATION . . . 55
Tissues Derived from Ectoderm, . . . 55
Tissues Derived from Entoderm, . . . 55
Tissues Derived from Mesoderm, . . . 56

CHAPTER II.

EPITHELIUM (INCLUDING MESOTHELIUM AND ENDOTHELIUM), . . . 57
Histogenesis, . . . 57
General Characteristics, . . . 57
Classification, . . . 58
Simple Epithelium, . . . 58
Simple Squamous, . . . 58
Simple Columnar, . . . 58
Pseudostratified, . . . 60
Stratified Epithelium, . . . 60
Stratified Squamous, . . . 60
Stratified Columnar, . . . 61
Transitional, . . . 62
Modified Forms of Epithelium, . . . 63
Ciliated Epithelium, . . . 63
Pigmented Epithelium, . . . 64
Glandular Epithelium, . . . 64
Neuro-epithelium, . . . 64
Mesothelium and Endothelium, . . . 64
Technic, . . . 65

CHAPTER III.

THE CONNECTIVE TISSUES, . . . 67
Histogenesis, . . . 67
General Characteristics, . . . 67
Classification, . . . 67
Fibrillar Connective Tissue, . . . 68
Areolar Connective Tissue, . . . 71
Formed Connective Tissue, . . . 71
Development, . . . 72
Elastic Tissue, . . . 72
Technic for Fibrillar and Elastic Tissue, . . . 74
Embryonal and Mucous Tissue, . . . 75
Technic, . . . 77
Recticular Tissue, . . . 77

PAGE
Lymphatic Tissue, ... 79
  Technic for Reticular and Lymphatic Tissue, ... 79
Fat Tissue, ... 79
  Technic, ... 83
Cartilage, ... 83
  Hyaline, ... 84
  Elastic, ... 85
  Fibrous, ... 85
  Technic, ... 86
Bone Tissue, ... 86
  Technic, ... 87
Neuroglia, ... 88

CHAPTER IV.

THE BLOOD, ... 89
  Red Blood Cells, ... 89
  White Blood Cells, ... 90
  Blood Platelets, ... 92
  Development, ... 92
  Technic, ... 93

CHAPTER V.

MUSCLE TISSUE, ... 95
  Involuntary Smooth Muscle, ... 95
  Voluntary Striated Muscle, ... 96
  Involuntary Striated Muscle, ... 100
  Development of Muscle Tissue, ... 102
  Technic, ... 103

CHAPTER VI.

NERVE TISSUE, ... 105
THE NEURONE, ... 105
  General Structure, ... 105
  The Cell Body, ... 105
    The Nucleus, ... 106
    The Cytoplasm, ... 107
      Neurofibrils, ... 107
      Perifibrillar Substance, ... 107
      Chromophilic Bodies, ... 108
  The Dendrites, ... 110
  The Axone, ... 110
    Non-Medullated Axone (Non-Medullated Nerve Fibres), . . 111
    Medullated Axones (Medullated Nerve Fibres), . . . 112
  Theories as to Physiology of the Neurone, ... 114
  Neuroglia, ... 115
  Technic, ... 116
  General References, ... 117

PART IV.—THE ORGANS.

CHAPTER I.

PAGE
THE CIRCULATORY SYSTEM, ... 121
  The Blood-vessel System, ... 121
    General Structure, ... 121
    Capillaries, ... 121
    Arteries, ... 122
    Veins, ... 126
      Technic, ... 128
    The Heart, ... 129
      Technic, ... 131
    Development of the Blood-vessel System, ... 132
  The Lymph-vessel System, ... 132
    Lymph Capillaries, ... 133
    Lymph Spaces, ... 133
    Serous Membranes, ... 133
    Technic, ... 133
  The Carotid Gland, ... 134
  The Coccygeal Gland, ... 134
    Technic, ... 134
  General References on Circulatory System, ... 134

CHAPTER II.

LYMPHATIC ORGANS, ... 135
  The Lymph Nodes, ... 135
    Technic, ... 138
  Hæmolymph Nodes, ... 139
    Technic, ... 141
  The Thymus, ... 142
    Technic, ... 143
  The Tonsils, ... 144
    The Palatine Tonsils, ... 144
    The Lingual Tonsils, ... 145
    The Pharyngeal Tonsils, ... 146
    Technic, ... 146
  The Spleen, ... 146
    Technic, ... 150
  General References, ... 151

CHAPTER III.

THE SKELETAL SYSTEM, ... 152
  The Bones, ... 152
  Bone Marrow, ... 156
    Red Marrow, ... 156
    Yellow Marrow, ... 158

PAGE
Technic, . . 160
Development of Bone, . . 160
  Intramembranous Development, . . 161
  Intracartilaginous Development, . . 163
  Subperiosteal, . . 166
Growth of Bone, . . 167
Technic, . . 168
The Cartilages, . . 168
Articulations, . . 169
  Technic, . . 170
General References, . . 170

CHAPTER IV.

THE MUSCULAR SYSTEM.

A Voluntary Muscle, . . 171
Tendons, . . 172
Tendon Sheaths and Bursæ, . . 172
Growth of Muscle, . . 173
Technic, . . 173

CHAPTER V.

GLANDS AND THE GENERAL STRUCTURE OF MUCOUS MEMBRANES . . 174
Glands—General Structure and Classification, . . 174
General Structure of Mucous Membranes, . . 178

CHAPTER VI

THE DIGESTIVE SYSTEM, . . 179
Anatomical Divisions, . . 179
The Headgut, . . 180
  The Mouth, . . 180
    The Mucous Membrane of the Mouth, . . 180
      Glands of the Oral Mucosa, . . 181
    Technic, . . 183
    The Tongue, . . 183
      Technic, . . 186
    The Teeth, . . 187
      Development of the Teeth, . . 191
      Technic, . . 193
  The Pharynx, . . 194
    Technic, . . 194
The Foregut, . . 195
  The Œsophagus, . . 195
    Technic, . . 196
  General Structure of the Walls of the Gastro-intestinal Canal, . . 196
  The Stomach, . . 198
    Technic, . . 203

PAGE
The Midgut, ... 204
The Small Intestine, ... 204
The Endgut, ... 210
The Large Intestine, ... 210
The Rectum, ... 214
Blood-vessels of the Stomach and Intestines, ... 215
Lymphatics of the Stomach and Intestine, ... 217
Secretion and the Absorption of Fat, ... 218
Technic, ... 220
The Larger Glands of the Digestive System, ... 221
The Salivary Glands, ... 221
The Parotid, ... 222
The Sublingual, ... 223
The Submaxillary, ... 223
Technic, ... 225
The Pancreas, ... 225
Technic, ... 231
The Liver, ... 231
Excretory Ducts of the Liver, ... 237
The Gall-bladder, ... 237
Technic, ... 238
Development of the Digestive System, ... 238
General References, ... 240

CHAPTER VII.

THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM, ... 241
The Nares, ... 241
The Larynx, ... 243
The Trachea, ... 243
Technic, ... 246
The Bronchi, ... 246
The Lungs, ... 248
Development of the Respiratory System, ... 254
Technic, ... 255
The Thyroid, ... 255
The Parathyroids, ... 256
Technic, ... 257
General References, ... 257

CHAPTER VIII.

THE URINARY SYSTEM, ... 258
The Kidney, ... 258
The Kidney-Pelvis and Ureter, ... 268
The Urinary Bladder, ... 269
The Adrenal, ... 270
Technic, ... 273
General References, ... 273

CHAPTER IX.

PAGE
THE REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM, . . . 274
Male Organs, . . . 274
The Testis, . . . 274
The Seminal Ducts, . . . 280
The Epididymis, . . . 280
The Vas Deferens, . . . 281
The Seminal Vesicles and Ejaculatory Ducts, . . . 282
Rudimentary Structures Connected with the Development of the Genital System, . . . 282
The Spermatozoon, . . . 284
Development of the Spermatozoon, . . . 285
Technic, . . . 286
The Prostate Gland, . . . 286
Cowper's Glands, . . . 288
Technic, . . . 288
The Penis, . . . 288
The Urethra, . . . 290
Technic, . . . 292
Female Organs, . . . 292
The Ovary, . . . 292
Rudimentary Structures Connected with the Development of the Genital System, . . . 300
The Oviduct, . . . 301
Technic, . . . 302
The Uterus, . . . 303
The Mucosa of the Resting Uterus, . . . 304
The Mucosa of the Menstruating Uterus, . . . 305
The Mucosa of the Pregnant Uterus, . . . 307
The Placenta, . . . 308
The Vagina, . . . 311
Development of the Urinary and Reproductive Systems, . . . 312
Technic, . . . 314
General References, . . . 314

CHAPTER X.

THE SKIN AND ITS APPENDAGES, . . . 315
The Skin, . . . 315
Technic, . . . 320
The Nails, . . . 320
Technic, . . . 322
The Hair, . . . 322
Technic, . . . 330
Development of Skin, Nails, and Hair, . . . 330
The Mammary Gland, . . . 331
Technic, . . . 335
General References, . . . 335

CHAPTER XI.

PAGE
THE NERVOUS SYSTEM, ... 336
  Histological Development, ... 336
  Membranes of the Brain and Cord, ... 338
    Technic, ... 339
  The Ganglia, ... 339
    Technic, ... 342
  The Peripheral Nerves, ... 342
    Technic, ... 344
  The Spinal Cord, ... 344
    Technic, ... 344
    General Structure and Practical Study, ... 345
    Origin of the Fibre Tracts of the Cord, ... 350
      The Spinal Ganglion Cell and the Origin of the Posterior Columns, ... 350
        Afferent Nerve Terminations, ... 351
      Cells Situated in Other Parts of the Central Nervous System which Contribute Axones to the White Matter of the Cord, ... 356
      Root Cells—Motor Cells of the Anterior Horn, . . . 356
      Column Cells, ... 357
      Cells of Golgi, Type II., ... 360
      Technic and Practical Study, ... 360
    Fibre Tracts of the Cord, ... 362
      Ascending Fibre Tracts, ... 364
      Descending Fibre Tracts, ... 366
      Fundamental Columns, ... 368
      Technic, ... 371
  The Medulla Oblongata (including the Pons Varolii), . . . 371
    General Structure, ... 371
    Technic, ... 374
    Practical Study, ... 374
      Transverse Section through Pyramidal Decussation, . . 374
      Transverse Section through Sensory Decussation, . . 376
      Transverse Section through Lower Part of Olivary Nucleus, ... 380
      Transverse Section through Middle of Olivary Nucleus, . 382
      Transverse Section through Exit of Cranial Nerve VIII., . 385
      Transverse Section through Exits of Cranial Nerves VI. and VII., ... 388
      Transverse Section through Exit of Cranial Nerve V., . 392
  The Midbrain, ... 395
    General Structure, ... 395
    Practical Study, ... 395
      Transverse Section through Exit of Cranial Nerve IV., . 395
      Transverse Section through Exit of Cranial Nerve III., . 398
  The Cerebral Peduncles, ... 400
  The Cerebellum, ... 401
    General Histology of the Cerebellar Cortex, ... 401

PAGE
The Cerebrum, ... 406
General Histology of the Cerebral Cortex, ... 406
Technic, ... 411
The Pituitary Body, ... 412
The Pineal Body, ... 415
Technic, ... 415
General References, ... 415

CHAPTER XII.

THE ORGANS OF SPECIAL SENSE, ... 416
The Organ of Vision, ... 416
The Eyeball, ... 416
The Optic Nerve, ... 428
The Relations of Optic Nerve to Retina and Brain, . . . 428
The Lacrymal Apparatus, ... 433
The Eyelid, ... 434
Development of the Eye, ... 435
Technic, ... 436
The Organ of Hearing, ... 437
The External Ear, ... 437
The Middle Ear, ... 438
The Internal Ear, ... 439
Development of the Ear, ... 448
Technic, ... 449
The Organ of Smell, ... 450
Technic, ... 452
The Organ of Taste, ... 452
Technic, ... 453
General References, ... 453

INDEX, ... 455

PART I.

HISTOLOGICAL TECHNIC.

CHAPTER I.

GENERAL TECHNIC.

CERTAIN body fluids, blood, urine, etc., may be examined by simply placing them on a slide under a cover-glass. A few tissues, *e.g.*, thin membranes, such as the omentum and the mesentery, may be examined fresh in some inert medium, as normal salt solution (0.75 per cent aqueous solution sodium chlorid). For such examination the tissue is immersed in the salt solution on a slide and covered with a cover-glass. Most tissues and organs, however, require much more elaborate preparation to render them suitable for microscopic examination. Tissues too dense and thick to be readily seen through with the microscope must be so treated as to make them transparent. This is accomplished either by pulling the tissue apart into fine shreds, *teasing*, or by cutting it into thin slices; *section cutting*. Some tissues admit of teasing in a fresh condition; others can be satisfactorily teased only after they have been subjected to the action of a chemical which breaks down the substance holding the tissue elements together, *maceration*. Fresh tissue can rarely be cut into sections sufficiently thin for microscopic examination. It must first be killed in such a manner as to preserve as nearly as possible the living tissue relations, *fixation*. If too soft for section cutting it must next be put through a process known as *hardening*. If, however, as in the case of bone, the tissue is too hard, it must be softened by dissolving out the mineral salts, *decalcification*. If very thin sections are to be cut, it is further necessary to impregnate the tissue with some fluid substance which will harden in the tissue and give to the mass a firm, even consistency. This is known as *embedding*.

Furthermore, most tissue elements have refractive indices which are so similar that their differentiation is often extremely difficult. To overcome this difficulty, recourse is had to staining the tissue with dyes which have an affinity for certain only of the tissue elements, or which stain different elements with different degrees of intensity. This is known as *differential* or *selective staining*.

The final step in the process is the *mounting* of the specimen, after which it is ready for microscopic study.

Only the more common procedures used in the preparation of tissues for microscopic study are described in this section. At the end of each section are given the technical methods most satisfactory for the demonstration of the tissues described in that section. For other methods the student is referred to special works upon microscopic technic.

I. Dissociation of Tissue Elements.

This is accomplished by (1) teasing, or (2) maceration, or both.

(1) TEASING.—This consists in pulling apart fresh or preserved tissues by means of teasing needles. Instructive specimens of such tissues as muscle and nerve may be obtained in this way.

(2) MACERATION.—This is the subjecting of a tissue to the action of some chemical which breaks down the substance uniting the tissue elements, thus allowing them either to fall apart or to be more easily dissociated by teasing. The most commonly used macerating fluids are:

(*a*) *Ranvier's Alcohol* (33 per cent, made by adding 35 c.c. of 96-per-cent alcohol to 65 c.c. of water).—Bits of fresh tissue are placed in this fluid for from twenty-four to forty-eight hours. The cells may then be easily separated by shaking or by teasing. Ranvier's alcohol is an especially satisfactory macerating fluid for epithelia.

(*b*) *Formalin*, in very dilute solutions (0.2 to 0.4 per cent).—Tissues should remain in the formalin solution from twenty-four to forty-eight hours. This also is especially useful for dissociating epithelial cells.

(*c*) *Sodium or Potassium Hydrate* (30- to 35-per-cent aqueous solution).—From twenty minutes to an hour is usually sufficient to cause the tissue elements to fall apart or to be readily pulled apart with the teasing needles. If it is at any time desirable to stop the action of the caustic alkali, this may be accomplished by neutralizing with glacial acetic acid or by replacing the alkali with a 60-per-cent aqueous solution of potassium acetate. The specimens may then be preserved in the potassium-acetate solution, in glycerin, or in 50-per-cent alcohol. This dissociating fluid is largely used for muscle cells and fibres.

II. Fixation.

Fixation is the first step in the preparation of sections of tissues for microscopic study. Its object is to preserve as nearly as possible the structures as they exist in the living tissues. This is accomplished by means of chemicals in solution, the solution being known as a fixing agent or *fixative.* Pieces of tissue are immersed in the fixative and allowed to remain there until fixation is complete. The length of time required depends upon the character of the tissue and upon the fixative used. The pieces of tissue should be small, and it is important that large quantities of the fixative be used. Furthermore, it is sometimes necessary to change the fluid after a short time, in order to keep it up to the proper strength.

Whole organs and even bodies may be fixed *in toto* by injecting the fixative through an artery and allowing it to escape through the veins. After the injection, the whole specimen should be placed in a large quantity of the same fixative. This method is used only in cases where it is necessary to preserve the topographic relations of various parts of an organ or a body. Satisfactory fixation is largely dependent upon the freshness of the tissue when placed in the fixative. The following are the fixatives in most common use:

(1) *Strong Alcohol* (96-per-cent).—This is a rapid fixative and should be used on small pieces of tissue. The time required is from six to twenty-four hours, though tissues may remain longer without injury. The alcohol should be changed after two or three hours. This fixative should not be used where fine histological detail is desired, since it causes some shrinkage. One advantage in its use is the fact that tissues are hardened and ready for embedding at the end of fixation.

(2) *Dilute Alcohol* (30-per-cent to 80-per-cent).—This, as a rule, gives unsatisfactory results, causing much shrinkage of the tissue elements.

(3) *Formalin* (2-per-cent to 10-per-cent aqueous solution).—Formalin is rapid in its action and probably has better penetrating qualities than any other fixative. For general purposes a 4-per-cent solution (1 part commercial formalin to 9 parts water) should be used, in which fixation is accomplished in from six to twenty-four hours.

After a few hours the fluid should be changed. The results after formalin are not always among the best, owing to the fact that it has little hardening power, and the subsequent action of alcohol is likely to cause some distortion of the tissues. It acts better when combined with other fixatives than when used alone. (See Orth's Fluid.)

(4) *Müller's Fluid.*

Potassium bichromate	2.5 gm.
Sodium sulphate	1.0 gm.
Water	100.0 c.c.

This fluid gives very good results, but is extremely slow in its action, requiring from a week to several months. Fairly large pieces of tissue may be fixed, but in all cases large quantities of the fixative should be used and frequently renewed.

(5) *Formalin-Müller's Fluid* (*Orth's Fluid*).

Müller's fluid (double strength)	Equal parts
Formalin, 8-per-cent	

This is one of the best general fixatives. The action is similar to that of Müller's fluid but much more rapid, fixation being accomplished in from twenty-four to forty-eight hours, though specimens may remain in the fluid several days without disadvantage. Fairly large pieces of tissue may be fixed with good results. The fixative should be changed after a few hours. Fixation with Orth's fluid gives an excellent basis for a hæmatoxylin-eosin stain (see (1), p. 17). The fixative should always be freshly prepared. A convenient way is to keep the 8-per-cent formalin solution and the double-strength Müller's fluid in stock. Orth's fluid is then prepared by simply taking equal parts of each.

(6) *Osmic Acid.*—This, in a 1-per-cent aqueous solution, is a quick fixative of poor penetrating power. Very small pieces of tissue must therefore be used. They should remain in the fluid from twelve to twenty-four hours. Osmic acid stains fat and myelin black and is consequently useful in demonstrating their presence in tissues. Fixation should take place in the dark.

(7) *Flemming's Fluid.*

Chromic acid, 1-per-cent aqueous solution	25 c.c.
Osmic acid, 1-per-cent aqueous solution	10 c.c.
Glacial acetic acid, 1-per-cent aqueous solution	10 c.c.
Water	55 c.c.

Flemming's fluid is one of the best fixatives for nuclear structures, and is of especial value in demonstrating mitotic figures. Very small pieces of tissue should be placed in the fixative, where they remain for from twenty-four hours to three days. The solution should be freshly made as required, or a stock solution without the osmic acid may be kept and the latter added at the time of using.

(8) *Mercuric Chlorid.*—This may be used either in saturated aqueous solution or in saturated solution in 0.75-per-cent salt solution. Fixation is complete in from twelve to twenty-four hours, and is usually very satisfactory.

A saturated solution of mercuric chlorid in 5-per-cent aqueous solution of glacial acetic acid also gives good results.

(9) *Zenker's Fluid.*

Potassium bichromate	2.5 gm.
Sodium sulphate	1.0 gm.
Mercuric chlorid	5.0 gm.
Glacial acetic acid	5.0 c.c.
Water	100.0 c.c.

This fluid should be freshly made, or the salts may be kept in solution and the acetic acid added at time of using.

Zenker's fluid is a good general fixative, but usually causes some shrinkage of the tissue elements. Fixation requires from six to twenty-four hours. The most serious drawback to Zenker's fluid is the fact that the mercuric chlorid sometimes produces dark irregular precipitates in the tissues. This may be remedied, however, by the use of iodine and iodide of potassium in the hardening process (see Hardening, p. 8).

(10) *Picric acid* is an excellent fixative for cytoplasm. It may be used in: (*a*) Saturated aqueous solution; (*b*) saturated solution of picric acid in 1-per-cent aqueous solution of acetic acid; (*c*) saturated solution of picric acid in 2-per-cent aqueous solution of sulphuric acid.

III. Hardening.

Most fixatives are also hardening agents if their action is prolonged. This is, however, often detrimental. It is, therefore, customary, after fixation is complete, to carry the specimens, with or without washing, through successively stronger grades of alcohol for the purpose of hardening the tissues. For general histological purposes the specimens may be transferred directly to 70-per-cent or 80-per-cent alcohol, which should be changed once or twice. In the case of delicate tissues the first grade of alcohol should be 40 per cent or 50 per cent, the second 70 per cent, and the third 80 per cent. The specimens should remain in each grade from twelve to twenty-four hours.

Washing the tissues after fixation is not a matter of indifference. In some cases water should be used, while in other cases water is liable to undo the action of the fixative, in which cases alcohol must be used for washing.

After fixation in alcohol no washing, of course, is necessary. Specimens fixed in strong alcohol are embedded immediately (see Embedding, p. 10), or preserved (see Preserving, p. 8). After fixation in dilute alcohol the specimens are passed through the graded alcohols up to 80-per-cent.

After fixation in plain formalin the specimens are passed directly through the graded alcohols without washing in water. Specimens fixed in any solution containing picric acid should not be washed in water, but passed directly through the alcohols; and it is usually necessary to change each grade in order to wash out the picric acid.

Specimens fixed in osmic acid or any solution containing osmic acid should be washed in running water before being passed through the graded alcohols. After solutions containing potassium bichromate the specimens should be washed in water sufficiently to remove the excess of bichromate, though too prolonged washing seems to be detrimental. A precipitate forms in the alcohols, but this apparently does no harm.

After mercuric chlorid or Zenker fixation the washing may be done either in water or in alcohol. To avoid precipitates in the tissues add a small quantity of an iodine solution (equal parts tincture iodine and 10-per-cent aqueous solution potassium iodid) to any of the grades of alcohol. As the alcohol becomes clear more of the solution is added until the alcohol remains slightly tinged.

IV. Preserving.

Hardened tissues are usually preserved in 80-per-cent alcohol. Formalin in aqueous solutions of 1 per cent to 10 per cent is also used as a preservative. In either case, when it is necessary to preserve the specimens for a considerable length of time (several months or longer), the tissues are likely to lose their staining qualities to a certain extent. Preserving the specimens in equal parts of strong alcohol, glycerin, and distilled water is successful as a partial remedy for this.

V. Decalcifying.

Tissues containing lime salts, like bones and teeth, must have the lime salts dissolved out before sections can be cut. This process is known as *decalcification.*

Tissues to be decalcified must be first fixed and hardened. Fixation in Orth's fluid and hardening in graded alcohols give good results. After hardening, the tissue is washed in water and placed in one of the following decalcifying fluids. The quantity of fluid should always be large and the fluid frequently changed. The completion of decalcification can be determined by passing a needle through the specimen or by cutting it with a scalpel. The time required varies with the size and hardness of the specimen and the decalcifying fluid used.

(1) *Hydrochloric Acid.*—This may be used in aqueous solutions of from 0.5 per cent to 5 per cent. A very satisfactory decalcifying mixture is that known as Ebner's hydrochloric-salt solution. It consists of:

Sodium chlorid, saturated aqueous solution	1 part.
Water	2 parts.

Hydrochloric acid, sufficient to make a from 2-per-cent to 5-per-cent solution.

The addition of the salt prevents swelling of the tissue. This fluid is slow in acting and should be changed every day. When decalcification is complete, the specimen is washed in sufficient changes of water to remove all trace of acid. This may be quickly accomplished by the addition of a little ammonium hydrate to the water. The specimen is then carried through graded alcohols.

(2) *Nitric Acid.*—This is less used than the preceding. The strength should be from 1-per-cent to 10-per-cent aqueous solution. Weak solutions (1 per cent to 2 per cent) will decalcify small fœtal bones in from three to twelve days. For larger bones stronger solutions and longer time are required.

(3) Small bones may be satisfactorily decalcified in *Zenker's fluid* (see fixatives, page 7), or in the following:

Picric acid	1 part.
Chromic acid	1 part.
Glacial acetic acid	5 parts.

VI. Embedding.

Most hardened tissues are still not firm enough to be cut into the thin sections suitable for microscopic study. In order to support the tissue elements and render them more firm for section cutting, recourse is had to embedding. This consists in impregnating the tissues with some substance which is liquid when the tissues are placed in it, but which can be made to solidify throughout the tissues. In this way the tissue elements are held firmly in place. The embedding substances most used are celloidin and paraffin.

CELLOIDIN EMBEDDING.

(1) ALCOHOL-ETHER CELLOIDIN.—Two solutions should be made.

Solution No. 2. Thick celloidin—a 5-per-cent solution of celloidin in equal parts 96-per-cent alcohol and ether.

Solution No. 1. Thin celloidin—made by diluting solution No. 2 with an equal volume of equal parts of alcohol and ether.

The hardened tissues are placed successively in:

Strong alcohol (96-per-cent) twelve to twenty-four hours, to dehydrate.

Equal parts alcohol and ether, twelve to twenty-four hours.

Thin celloidin, twenty-four hours to several days.

Thick celloidin, twenty-four hours or longer.

The exact time tissues should remain in the different grades of celloidin depends upon the character of the tissue, the size of the specimen, and the thinness of section desired. Many tissues may be advantageously left for weeks in thin celloidin.

The specimen must now be "blocked" and the celloidin hardened. By blocking is meant fastening the specimen impregnated with celloidin to a block of wood or other suitable material which may be clamped in the microtome (see Section Cutting, p. 13). The specimen may be taken from the thick celloidin, considerable of the latter adhering to the specimen, quickly pressed upon a block of wood or vulcanized fibre, allowed to harden five to ten minutes in air, and then immersed in 80-per-cent alcohol. The alcohol gives an even hardening of the celloidin, attaching the specimen firmly to the block.

Another method, and one by which very even-shaped blocks may be obtained, is to place the specimen from the thick celloidin into a little paper box (made by folding paper over a wooden block), slightly larger than the specimen, and covering with thick celloidin. The celloidin should dry slowly under a bell-jar for from two to twelve hours, according to the amount of celloidin, after which it should be immersed in 80-per-cent alcohol and the paper pulled off. Such a block may be cut into any desired shape. It is attached to the wooden or vulcanized block by dipping for a moment in thick celloidin, and then pressing firmly down upon the block. After five to ten minutes' drying in air it is transferred to 80-per-cent alcohol.

Old, hard, celloidin-embedded specimens are sometimes difficult to attach to blocks. This usually may be accomplished by first thoroughly drying the specimen and then dipping it in equal parts alcohol and ether for a few minutes. This softens the surface of the celloidin, after which the specimen is dipped in thick celloidin and blocked. Embedded or blocked specimens can be kept in 80-per-cent alcohol. After several months, however, the celloidin is likely to become too soft for good section cutting. In that case the specimens can be readily re-embedded by dissolving out the old celloidin with alcohol and ether and putting them again through the regular embedding process.

(2) CLOVE-OIL CELLOIDIN.—A more rapid impregnation of the tissue may be obtained by means of what is known as clove-oil celloidin.

Celloidin	30 gm.
Clove oil	100 c.c.
Ether	400 c.c.
Alcohol, absolute	20 c.c.

The celloidin is first placed in a jar and the clove oil and ether added. From two to four days are required for solution of the celloidin. During this time the jar should be shaken several times. After the celloidin is dissolved the absolute alcohol is added and the solution is ready for use.

The specimen must be thoroughly dehydrated, placed in alcohol and ether or pure ether for a few hours, and then transferred to the clove-oil celloidin. From six to twelve hours is sufficient to impregnate small pieces of tissue. The tissue is now taken from the celloidin, placed directly upon a wooden or vulcanized block, and immersed in chloroform. The celloidin hardens in about an hour, and is then ready for sectioning. The specimen is very firm, and very thin sections can be cut.

A disadvantage in clove-oil celloidin is that neither the blocks nor the sections can be kept permanently in alcohol, as can those embedded in alcohol-ether celloidin. They may, however, be kept for several weeks in pure chloroform.

PARAFFIN EMBEDDING.

For paraffin embedding a thermostat or paraffin oven is necessary in order that a constant temperature may be maintained. The temperature should be about 56° C. Pure paraffin, the melting point of which is from 50° to 55° C., is used. In very warm weather it may be necessary to add to this a little paraffin the melting point of which is 62° C.

The hardened tissue is first put in 96-per-cent alcohol for from twelve to twenty-four hours, and then completely dehydrated by putting in absolute alcohol for the same length of time, or less for small specimens. It is then transferred to some solvent of paraffin. Some of the solvents used are xylol, oil of cedarwood, chloroform, and toluol. Of these the best are perhaps xylol and oil of cedarwood. The tissue should remain in either of these for several hours, or until the tissue becomes more or less transparent. It is then placed in melted paraffin, in the paraffin oven, for from one to three hours, according to the size of the specimen and its density. This allows the tissues to become impregnated with the melted paraffin. It is best to change the paraffin once or twice.

In case of very delicate tissues it is well to transfer them from the absolute alcohol to a mixture of equal parts absolute alcohol and xylol for a short time before putting them into the pure xylol. In the same way a mixture of equal parts xylol and paraffin may be used before putting the tissues into pure paraffin.

For hardening the paraffin in and around the tissue a very convenient apparatus consists of a plate of glass and several L-shaped pieces of iron or lead. Two of these are placed on the glass plate in such a manner as to enclose a space of the desired size. Into this are placed the specimen and sufficient melted paraffin to cover it. Both glass and irons should be smeared with glycerin to prevent the paraffin from adhering, and should be as cold as possible, so that the paraffin may harden quickly. The same paper boxes described under celloidin embedding may also be used for paraffin. Another good method for small pieces of tissue is to place the specimen in paraffin in an ordinary watch-glass which has been coated with glycerin. Both paper-box and watch-glass specimens are immersed in cold water as soon as the surface of the paraffin has become hard. After the paraffin has hardened any excess may be cut away with a knife.

Paraffin-embedded specimens may be kept indefinitely in air. For section-cutting, the block of paraffin is attached to a block of wood or of vulcanite or to the metallic block-holder of the microtome. This is done by heating one surface of the paraffin until it becomes soft and then pressing this side down firmly upon the block.

VII. Section Cutting.

The older method of making free-hand sections with a razor has been almost completely superseded by the use of a cutting instrument known as the *microtome*. This consists essentially of a clamp for holding the specimen and a microtome knife or razor. The two are so arranged that when knife and specimen meet, a section of any desired thickness may be cut.

The technic of section cutting differs according to whether the specimen is embedded in celloidin or in paraffin.

In cutting celloidin sections the knife is so adjusted that it passes obliquely through the specimen, as much as possible of the cutting edge being used. The knife is kept flooded with 80-per-cent alcohol and the specimens are removed by means of a camel's-hair brush to a dish of 80-per-cent alcohol where they may be kept for some time if desired. When colloidin sections tear or when very thin sections are desired, it is often of advantage to paint the surface of the block after cutting each section with a coat of very thin celloidin.

Celloidin sections are usually not thinner than 10 μ, although under favorable conditions sections 5 μ[1] or even 3 μ in thickness may be obtained.

In cutting paraffin sections the knife is kept dry and is passed not obliquely but straight through the specimen, only a small part of the cutting edge being used. An exception is made in the case of very large paraffin sections, where an oblique knife is used. Sections are removed from the knife by a dry or slightly moistened brush. If not desired for immediate use the sections may be conveniently kept for a short time on a piece of smooth paper. If sections curl they may be flattened by floating on warm 30-per-cent alcohol or on warm water.

---

[1] μ = micromillimetre or micron = $\frac{1}{1000}$ of a millimetre = microscopic unit of measure.

Paraffin sections may be so cut that the edges of the sections adhere. Long series or "ribbons" of sections may thus be secured. This is of decided advantage when serial sections are desired. In case sections cut poorly or fail to adhere in ribbons, it usually means that the paraffin is too hard and brittle, which of course is due to its low temperature. If much section cutting is to be done, the operator will find himself amply repaid by having the room temperature fairly high. In case paraffin of a melting point of 50° to 55° C. is used, a room temperature of 73° to 75° F. will greatly facilitate the work. In addition to the ability to cut ribbon series, paraffin also has an advantage over celloidin in that thinner sections may be obtained.

VIII. Staining.

This is for the purpose of more readily distinguishing the different tissue elements from one another by their reactions to certain dyes.

Based upon their action upon the different tissue elements, stains may be classified as (1) nuclear dyes, which stain nuclear structures; and (2) plasma dyes, which stain the cell body or cytoplasm. Plasma dyes, also, as a rule, stain the intercellular tissue elements, and are therefore known as diffuse stains.

The dyes most frequently used for staining tissues are:

I. Nuclear dyes: (*a*) Hæmatoxylin and its active principle, hæmatin; (*b*) carmine and its active principle, carminic acid; (*c*) Basic aniline dyes.

II. Plasma dyes: (*a*) Eosin; (*b*) picric acid; (*c*) acid aniline dyes.

I. Nuclear Dyes.—(*a*) HÆMATOXYLIN.

1. *Gage's Hæmatoxylin.*

Ammonia or potash alum	7.5 gm.
Distilled water	200.0 c.c.

Boil for 10 minutes to sterilize; cool and add the following solution:

Hæmatoxylin crystals	0.1 gm.
Alcohol 95 per cent	10.0 c.c.

Four grams chloral hydrate are then added to the mixture to prevent growth of germs.

This dye may be used in full strength or diluted with alum water. It stains in from two to five minutes.

2. *Delafield's Hæmatoxylin.*

Hæmatoxylin crystals	1 gm.
Alcohol	6 c.c.
Ammonia alum, saturated aqueous solution	100 c.c.

The hæmatoxylin should be first dissolved in the alcohol and then added to the alum solution. The mixture should next be allowed to stand in the light for from seven to ten days to ripen. It is then filtered, and to the filtrate are added:

Glycerin	25 c.c.
Wood naphtha	25 c.c.

The mixture is again allowed to stand for from two to four days and filtered. It may be used full strength or diluted with equal parts of water. It stains in from two to five minutes.

3. *Heidenhain's Hæmatoxylin.*

Hæmatoxylin crystals	1 gm.
Water	100 c.c.

Sections are first placed for from four to eight hours in a 2.5-per-cent aqueous solution of ammonium sulphate of iron. They are then washed in water and transferred to the hæmatoxylin solution for from twelve to twenty-four hours. The sections which are now perfectly black are washed in water and differentiated by again placing in the iron solution till they have a light grayish color. After this they are thoroughly washed in water.

4. *Mayer's Hæmalum.*

Hæmatin	1 gm.
Alcohol	50 c.c.
Ammonia alum, 5-per-cent aqueous solution	1,000 c.c.

The hæmatin is first dissolved in the alcohol, after which the alum is added. This dye does not require any ripening, and is thus available for immediate use. It is a rapid nuclear dye usually requiring not more than from three to five minutes.

5. *A combination* of Gage's and Mayer's formulæ makes a very satisfactory nuclear dye.

Hæmatin	5 gm.
Alcohol	50 c.c.
Chloral hydrate	20 gm.
Ammonia alum, 5-per-cent aqueous solution (sterilized).	1,000 c.c.

The hæmatin is first dissolved in the alcohol and then added with the chloral hydrate to the alum solution. This solution is used in full strength and stains in from three to five minutes.

6. *Weigert's Hæmatoxylin.*

Two stock solutions should be made up as follows:

A. 1-per-cent hæmatoxylin, in 96-per-cent alcohol.

B. Hydrochloric acid (sp. gr. 1.126)	10 c.c.
Ferric chloride, 30 per cent	40 c.c.
Distilled water	950 c.c.

For use mix equal parts of A and B. The mixture will keep two or three days. This is a rapid stain usually requiring not more than a minute. A more brilliant nuclear stain may be obtained by overstaining and then decolorizing. After the stain wash the sections in water and then decolorize to the proper degree in weakly acidulated water or 80-per-cent alcohol. To stop the action of the acid the sections should be dipped in water or 80-per-cent alcohol made slightly alkaline with ammonia. This is an excellent stain and gives brilliant results. It is especially good in cases where the material has become old and lost its affinity for ordinary hæmatoxylin stains.

(*b*) Alum-carmine.

Carmine	2 gm.
Alum	5 gm.
Carbolic acid	2 gm.
Water	100 c.c.

The alum is first dissolved in the 100 c.c. of warm distilled water, after which the carmine is added. This mixture is then boiled for twenty minutes, allowed to cool, and filtered. The carbolic acid is then added. This is a slow-acting pure nuclear dye.

(*c*) Basic Aniline Dyes—gentian violet, methyl violet, methyl green, methyl blue, toluidin blue, fuchsin, thionin, safranin, etc.

These are best kept in stock in saturated alcoholic solutions. When desired for use, a few drops of the alcoholic solution are added to distilled water. No rule as to exact proportions can be given, as these depend upon the material, the fixation, and the intensity of stain desired.

II. Plasma Dyes.—(*a*) EOSIN.

This is prepared as follows: Water-soluble eosin is dissolved in water to saturation. It is then precipitated by hydrochloric acid and the precipitate washed with water upon a filter until the filtrate is tinged with eosin. After drying, the precipitate is dissolved in strong alcohol, 1 gm. of eosin to 1,500 c.c. of alcohol. This is a rapid plasma stain.

(*b*) NEUTRAL CARMINE.

Carmine	1 gm.
Liquor ammonii caustici	5 c.c.
Distilled water	50 c.c.

The last two ingredients are first mixed, and the carmine then added. This solution is allowed to remain in an open vessel for about three days, or until the odor of ammonia has disappeared, after which it is filtered.

(*c*) ACID ANILINE DYES.—Of these, acid fuchsin, erythrosin, and orange G are most used. They may be prepared and kept in stock in the same manner as the basic aniline dyes (see above). Erythrosin is of especial value for sections which take the eosin stain poorly.

STAINING SECTIONS.

It is often of advantage to stain the different tissue elements different colors. This may be accomplished either by staining successively with several dyes, or by a single staining with a mixture of dyes. The following are the methods in most common use:

(1) STAINING DOUBLE WITH HÆMATOXYLIN AND EOSIN.—Sections are first washed in water. They are then stained with hæmatoxylin (solutions 1, 2, 4, 5, or 6, pp. 14–16) from one to five minutes. After being thoroughly washed in water, they are dehydrated in strong alcohol and transferred to the alcoholic eosin solution (page 17). Most sections stain in from two to five minutes. By this method nuclei are stained blue or purple, cell bodies and intercellular substances red.

Very often a more brilliant staining may be accomplished as follows: Overstain in hæmatoxylin and wash thoroughly in water; decolorize in acid alcohol (5 or 6 drops of hydrochloric acid to 100 c.c.

of 80-per-cent alcohol) until only the nuclei retain the stain; wash in alcohol which has been made slightly alkaline with ammonium hydrate; then stain with eosin as usual.

(2) STAINING WITH PICRO-ACID FUCHSIN.

Acid fuchsin, 1-per-cent aqueous solution	5 c.c.
Picric acid, saturated aqueous solution	100 c.c.

This solution usually stains in from one to three minutes. Occasionally a longer staining is required. Cell bodies including muscle cells and fibres are stained yellow by the picric acid, connective-tissue fibres red by the fuchsin. After staining, the sections are washed in distilled water.

(3) TRIPLE STAINING WITH HÆMATOXYLIN AND PICRO-ACID FUCHSIN.—This is the same as the preceding except that before staining with picro-acid fuchsin, the sections are overstained in hæmatoxylin (solutions 1, 2, 4, 5, or 6, pp. 14–16). The usual purple of hæmatoxylin-stained nuclei is changed to brown by the action of the picric acid. Care should be taken that the sections do not remain too long in the picro-acid fuchsin, or the hæmatoxylin may be completely removed. After staining, sections are washed in distilled water and transferred to 96-per-cent alcohol.

If sections overstain with fuchsin, the staining solution may be diluted with water; if sections are understained with fuchsin, more fuchsin may be added. If the picric-acid stain is not sufficiently intense, the 96-per-cent alcohol should be tinged with picric acid.

(4) STAINING WITH PICRO-CARMINE.

Ammonium carminate	1 gm.
Distilled water	35 c.c.
Picric acid, saturated aqueous solution	15 c.c.

The ammonium carminate is first dissolved in the water, after which the saturated aqueous solution of picric acid is added with constant stirring. The mixture is then allowed to stand in an open vessel for two days, when it is filtered. This fluid stains nuclei and connective tissue red, cell protoplasm yellow.

STAINING IN BULK.

By this is meant the staining of blocks of tissue before cutting into sections. The method is much less used than formerly. It is slower than section staining and more difficult to control. Blocks of the hardened tissue are transferred to the stain from water or alcohol according to the solvent of the stain. Alum-carmine and borax-carmine are the most used general bulk stains.

(1) ALUM-CARMINE.

Carmine	0.5 to 1 gm.
Ammonia alum, 4-per-cent aqueous solution	100 c.c.

After mixing the ingredients, the solution should be boiled fifteen minutes, and after cooling, enough sterile water added to replace that lost by evaporation. The time required for staining depends upon the size of the specimen. There is, however, little danger of over-staining. After washing out the excess of stain with water the specimen is dehydrated and embedded in the usual way.

(2) BORAX-CARMINE, ALCOHOLIC SOLUTION.

Carmine	3 gm.
Borax	4 gm.
Water	93 c.c.

After mixing the the above, add 100 c.c. 70-per-cent alcohol, allow the mixture to settle, then filter.

About twenty-four hours is required to stain blocks 0.5 cm. in diameter. Larger blocks require longer staining.

IX. Mounting.

It is often desirable to make permanent preparations or "mounts" of the stained specimens.

The most satisfactory media for mounting specimens are glycerin and Canada balsam.

(1) GLYCERIN.—Sections may be transferred to glycerin from either water or alcohol. In the case of doubled-stained specimens—hæmatoxylin-eosin—the glycerin should be tinged with eosin, as the pure glycerin abstracts the eosin from the tissues. In many cases satisfactory eosin staining may be obtained by simply placing the hæmatoxylin-stained specimens in glycerin strongly tinged with eosin (eosin-glycerin). The specimen in a drop of glycerin is transferred to the glass mounting slide, the excess of glycerin removed with filter paper or with a pipette and a cover-glass put on.

Glycerin mounts must be cemented to exclude air. A satisfactory cement is gold-size or a thick solution of gum shellac in alcohol to which a little castor oil has been added.

Both cover-glass and slide must be cleaned free from glycerin before the cement is applied. A camel's-hair brush is used, and a ring of cement is painted around the cover in such a manner as to seal the cover to the slide.

(2) BALSAM.—This is the most satisfactory general mounting medium. It has an advantage over glycerin in drying down perfectly hard and thus needing no cement, and in preserving colors more permanently. Its disadvantage is that its refractive index is so high that it sometimes obscures the finer details of structure, especially of unstained or slightly stained specimens.

Specially prepared Canada balsam is dissolved either in xylol or in oil of cedar, the solution being made of any desired consistence. Xylol balsam dries much more quickly than does the oil-of-cedar balsam.

Preparatory to mounting in balsam, stained sections must be thoroughly dehydrated and then passed through some medium which is miscible with both alcohol and balsam. This medium, which at the same time renders the section transparent, is known as a *clearing medium*. For *celloidin specimens* the most satisfactory are:

(1) Oil of origanum Cretici.

(2) Carbol-xylol (xylol, 100 c.c., carbolic-acid crystals, 22 gm.), followed by pure xylol

(3) Xylol and cajeput oil, equal parts, followed by pure xylol.

After clearing, the section is transferred by means of a section-lifter to a glass mounting slide. In case oil of origanum is used, it is then blotted firmly with filter paper to remove the excess of oil. Care must be taken to have the filter paper several layers thick in order that the oil may be completely removed. The specimen should also be blotted firmly, giving the oil time to soak into the paper. These two precautions are necessary to prevent the section adhering to the paper instead of to the slide. After blotting, a drop of balsam is placed upon the centre of the specimen and a cover-glass put on.

When xylol is used, blotting is not necessary. Drain off the excess of oil, put a drop of balsam on the specimen and put on a cover-glass.

Paraffin Sections.—The technic of staining and mounting paraffin sections differs from that of celloidin sections. This is due mainly to the fact that while celloidin is transparent and may remain permanently in the specimen, paraffin is opaque and must be dissolved out before the section is fit for microscopic study.

Bulk staining with carmine (page 19) is frequently used for specimens which are to be embedded in paraffin. Sections may be counter-stained if desired.

The following are the steps to be followed in staining and mounting paraffin sections:

1. *To attach sections to slide:*

Place a drop of egg albumen (equal parts white of egg and glycerin to which a little carbolic acid may be added for preserving) on a slide, and spread it out thin with the finger.

Place a few drops of distilled water on the slide.

Float sections on the water.

Warm gently to allow sections to flatten—must not melt paraffin.

Pour off excess of water, holding the end of the ribbons to prevent them floating off.

Stand slides on end a few hours to allow water to evaporate.

2. *To remove paraffin:*

Place slide in xylol three to five minutes.

3. *To stain sections:*

Place slide in fresh xylol three minutes.

Transfer to absolute alcohol.

Transfer to 90-per-cent alcohol.

Transfer to 80 per-cent alcohol.

Transfer to 50-per-cent alcohol.

Transfer to water.

Stain with any aqueous stain.

Wash in water.

Transfer to 50-per-cent alcohol.

Transfer to 80-per-cent alcohol.

Transfer to 90-per-cent alcohol.

Transfer to absolute alcohol.

Transfer to xylol.

Mount in xylol-balsam.

If an alcohol stain is used instead of an aqueous one, the carrying down and up through the graded alcohols may be omitted.

If it is desired to stain double with eosin-hæmatoxylin (page 17) use the above technic in staining with hæmatoxylin; then the alcoholic eosin stain before final transfer to absolute alcohol.

X. Injection.

For the study of the distribution of the blood-vessels in tissues and organs, it is often necessary to make use of sections in which the blood-vessels have been injected with some transparent coloring matter. The injecting fluid most commonly used is a solution of colored gelatin.

The gelatin solution is prepared by soaking 1 part gelatin in from 5 to 10 parts water—the proportion depending upon the consistence desired—and when soft, melting on a water-bath.

Various dyes are used for coloring the gelatin, the most common being Prussian blue and carmine.

PRUSSIAN BLUE GELATIN is prepared by adding saturated aqueous solution Prussian blue to the gelatin solution, the proportions depending upon the depth of color desired. Both solutions should be at a temperature of 60° C. After thoroughly mixing, the blue gelatin is filtered through cloth.

CARMINE GELATIN is prepared by first dissolving 1 gm. carmine in 30 c.c. distilled water. To this is added ammonia until the mixture becomes a dark cherry red. A 10-per-cent aqueous solution of acetic acid is next added, drop by drop, with constant stirring until the mixture becomes neutral. The carmine and gelatin solutions both being at about 60° C., are now mixed in the desired proportions. If the carmine injection mass is alkaline, it diffuses through the walls of the vessels; if acid, there is a precipitation of the carmine which may interfere with its free passage through the capillaries. If, however, the alkaline carmine and gelatin be first mixed, and the 10-per-cent acetic-acid solution be then added as directed above, the precipitated granules are so fine, even with an acid reaction, that they readily pass through the capillaries. The precipitation of the carmine in the shape of coarser granules is of advantage when it is desired to have an injection mass which will fill the arteries or veins only, without passing over into the capillaries.

The *injecting apparatus* consists of a vessel which contains the injection mass, and some means of keeping the latter under a constant but easily varied pressure. With the vessel is connected a tube ending in a cannula, through which the injection is made.

A very simple apparatus consists of a shelf which can be raised and lowered, and upon which the vessel stands. The tube connecting with the cannula may be attached to a faucet in the vessel or to a bent glass tube which passes into the top of the vessel and acts on the principle of a siphon.

In a somewhat more elaborate apparatus the injection mass is placed in a closed vessel, and this is connected with a second vessel containing air compressed by means of an air pump.

Accurate regulation of the pressure may be obtained by connecting the injection vessel with a manometer.

If the injection is to occupy considerable time, a hot-water bath in which the gelatin may be kept at an even temperature is also necessary.

Whole animals or *separate organs* may be injected. For injecting a whole animal, the animal, which is usually a small one such as a guinea-pig, rat, mouse, or frog, is chloroformed, the tip of the heart is cut away and a cannula is inserted through the heart into the aorta. This is first connected with a tube leading to a bottle containing warm normal saline solution. Pressure is obtained in the same manner as above described for the injection mass. By this means the entire arterial and venous systems are thoroughly washed out until the return flow from the vena cava is perfectly clear. The cannula is next connected with the tube from the vessel containing the injection mass, the pressure being only sufficient to keep the liquid flowing. When the injection mass flows easily and freely from the vena cava, the vessel is tied and the pressure is increased slightly and continued until the color of the injection mass shows clearly in the superficial capillaries. The aorta is now tied and the animal immersed in cold water to solidify the gelatin. After the gelatin becomes hard, the desired organs are removed and fixed and hardened in the usual way. Sections of injected material are usually cut rather thick, that the vessels may be traced the greater distance.

Better results are frequently obtained by injecting separate organs. This is accomplished by injecting through the main artery of the organ (*e.g.*, the lungs through the pulmonary, the kidney through the renal). The injection is best done with the organ *in situ*, although it may be accomplished after the organ has been removed. The method is the same as given above for injecting an animal *in toto*.

The so-called *double injection* by means of which an attempt is made to fill the arteries with an injection mass of one color (red), while the veins are filled with an injection mass of another color (blue), often gives pretty, but usually inaccurate pictures, it being as a rule impossible to confine each injection mass to one system. Double injection is accomplished by first washing out the vessels with normal saline and then connecting the artery with the red gelatin, the vein with the blue gelatin, and injecting both at the same time, the pressure driving the saline out of the vessels into the tissues. The difficulty is that either the arterial injection carries over into the veins, or the venous injection carries over into the arteries. A somewhat more accurate method is first to inject the veins with an injection mass in which the coloring matter is in the form of granules too large to pass through the capillaries, and then to inject the arteries and capillaries in the usual manner. This method is especially useful in demonstrating the vessels of the kidney, liver, and gastro-intestinal canal.

CHAPTER II.

SPECIAL STAINING METHODS.

OF these only the more common will be described.

(1) SILVER-NITRATE METHOD OF STAINING INTERCELLULAR SUBSTANCE.—After first washing, the tissue, *e.g.*, omentum or cornea, is placed in a from 0.2 to 1 per cent solution of silver nitrate, where it is kept in the dark for a half-hour or more according to the thickness and density of the tissue. The specimen is then washed in water, transferred to 80-per-cent alcohol and placed in the direct sunlight until it assumes a light brown color. It is then placed in fresh 80-per-cent alcohol for preservation.

(2) CHLORID OF GOLD in 1-per-cent aqueous solution is used in the same manner for demonstrating connective-tissue cells and their finer processes.

(3) WEIGERT'S ELASTIC-TISSUE STAIN.—This is prepared as follows:

Fuchsin	2 gm.
Resorcin	4 gm.
Water	200 c c.

These are boiled for five minutes, during which 25 c.c. of liquor ferri sesquichlorati are stirred in. The result is a precipitate which should be filtered out after the liquid has become cool. After drying, 200 c.c. of 95-per-cent alcohol are added to the filtrate and boiled until the latter dissolves. Lastly, 4 c.c. of hydric chlorid are added to the solution. Sections should remain in the stain thirty minutes, after which they are washed in alcohol until the stain ceases to be given off.

(4) GOLGI'S CHROME-SILVER METHOD FOR DEMONSTRATING SECRETORY TUBULES.—Small pieces of perfectly fresh tissue, *e.g.*, liver, are placed in the following:

Potassium bichromate, 4-per-cent aqueous solution	4 vols.
Osmic acid, 1-per-cent aqueous solution.	1 vol.

After three days they are transferred without washing to a 0.75-

per-cent aqueous solution of silver nitrate, which should be changed as soon as a precipitate forms. The specimens remain in the second silver solution from two to three days, after which they are rapidly dehydrated, embedded in celloidin, and cut into rather thick sections.

(5) MALLORY'S HÆMATOXYLIN STAIN FOR CONNECTIVE TISSUE.—Thin sections are placed for from two to ten minutes in a ten-per-cent aqueous solution of phosphomolybdic acid. They are then washed in distilled water and transferred to:

Phosphomolybdic acid, 10-per-cent aqueous solution..	100.0 c.c.
Distilled water	200.0 c.c.
Hæmatoxylin crystals................................	1.75 gm.
Carbolic-acid crystals..............................	5.00 gm.

The phosphomolybdic acid and water are first mixed, after which the hæmatoxylin and carbolic acid are added.

After staining from ten to twenty minutes the sections are washed in distilled water, placed for five minutes in 50-per-cent alcohol, then in strong alcohol, cleared in xylol and mounted in xylol balsam.

(6) OSMIC-ACID STAIN FOR FAT.—For this purpose osmic acid is used in a 1-per-cent aqueous solution. The method is especially useful for demonstrating developing fat, fatty secretions (mammary gland), and fat absorption (small intestine). Very small bits of the tissue are placed in the osmic-acid solution for from twelve to twenty-four hours. They are then hardened in graded alcohols, embedded in celloidin, and the sections mounted in glycerin.

(7) JENNER'S BLOOD STAIN.

Water-soluble eosin (Grübler), 1-per-cent aqueous solution..	100 c.c.
Methylene blue—pure (Grübler), 1-per-cent aqueous solution..	100 c.c.

Mix, and after standing 24 hours filter. The filtrate is dried at 65° C., washed, again dried and powdered.

To make the staining solution, 0.5 gm. of the powder is dissolved in 100 c.c. pure methyl alcohol. Blood smears stain in from two to five minutes. They are then washed in water, dried, and mounted in balsam.

This solution acts as a fixative as well as a stain.

CHAPTER III.

SPECIAL NEUROLOGICAL STAINING METHODS.

WEIGERT'S METHOD OF STAINING MEDULLATED NERVE FIBRES.

IN preparing material for the Weigert method, two points are to be kept in mind: 1st, proper fixation and preservation of the myelin sheaths; 2d, treatment (mordanting) with a reagent which enters into combination with the myelin, the result being that the myelin sheaths stain specifically with hæmatoxylin. Formalin fulfils the first requirement, the bichromates the first and second. Consequently the material may be fixed and hardened in bichromate, and, if not to be used immediately, is best kept in formalin to avoid overhardening. Or the material may be fixed and kept in formalin and impregnated with the bichromate before using, the latter being done before dehydrating in alcohol. Further mordanting, which is usually done, especially when the material has been kept for some time in formalin or alcohol, is for the purpose of intensifying the stain.

Material is fixed in one of the following fluids:

(*a*) Müller's fluid (page 6).

(*b*) Potassium bichromate, 5-per-cent aqueous solution.

(*c*) Formalin, 10-per-cent aqueous solution.

(*d*) Formalin, 1 volume; potassium bichromate, 5-per-cent aqueous solution, 9 volumes.

In Müller's fluid or in plain potassium-bichromate solution a hardening of from two days to four weeks is required; in formalin or formalin-bichromate from a week to ten days is sufficient. All material is better kept until used in 5-per-cent to 10-per-cent formalin solution than in alcohol. The specimens are then hardened in graded alcohols, embedded in celloidin, and sections cut in the usual way. Material fixed in formalin should be placed for several days in the following:

Chrome alum	1 gm.
Potassium bichromate	3 gm.
Water	100 c.c.

before hardening in alcohol.

Sections from material fixed in any of the chrome-salt solutions are placed for from twelve to twenty-four hours in a saturated aqueous solution of neutral cupric acetate diluted with an equal volume of water. The cupric acetate forms some combination with the tissues which intensifies their staining qualities, thus acting like the chrome salts as a mordant.

After mordanting, the sections are washed in water and transferred to the following staining fluid:

Hæmatoxylin crystals	1 gm.
Alcohol, 95 per cent	10 c.c.
Lithium carbonate—saturated aqueous solution	1 c.c.
Water	90 c.c.

This solution must either be freshly made before using, the hæmatoxylin being dissolved first in the alcohol, or the hæmatoxylin may be kept in 10-per-cent alcoholic solution, the lithium carbonate in saturated aqueous solution, and the staining fluid made from these as needed.

Sections remain in the hæmatoxylin solution from two to twenty-four hours, the longer time being required for staining the finer fibres of the cerebral and cerebellar cortices. They are then washed in water and decolorized in the following:

Potassium ferricyanid	2.5 gm.
Sodium biborate	2.0 gm.
Water	300.0 c.c.

While in the decolorizer, sections should be gently shaken or moved about with a glass rod to insure equal decolorization. In the decolorizer the sections lose the uniform black which they had on removal from the hæmatoxylin. They remain in the decolorizing fluid until the gray matter becomes a light gray or yellow color, in sharp contrast with the white matter which remains dark. Sections are then washed in several waters to remove all traces of decolorizer, and dehydrated in alcohol.

Weigert-Pal Method.—In this modification of the Weigert method, material hardened in formalin should be further hardened in potassium bichromate 5 per cent for two weeks, or in copper bichromate 3 per cent for about a week, after which it may be cut and stained without further mordanting. Sections from material hardened in the other above-mentioned ways are mordanted in a 3- to 5-per-cent aqueous solution of potassium bichromate instead of in the copper-acetate solution. After rinsing in water the sections are stained in hæmatoxylin as in the ordinary Weigert method. The lithium carbonate may, however, be omitted. They are then washed and transferred to a 0.25-per-cent solution of potassium permanganate, where they remain from one-half to two minutes, after which they are again washed and placed in the following:

Oxalic acid	1 gm.
Potassium sulphite	1 gm.
Water	200 c.c.

In this solution differentiation takes place, the medullary sheaths remaining dark, while the color is entirely removed from the rest of the tissue. If the section is still too dark, it may again be carried through the permanganate and oxalic-acid solutions, rinsing in water between changes, until sufficiently decolorized.

All formalin-fixed material is best stained by the Weigert-Pal method. An intensification of the stain, especially of the very fine fibres, may sometimes be obtained by placing the sections for a minute in a 0.5-per-cent aqueous solution of osmic acid before decolorizing.

GOLGI METHODS OF STAINING NERVE TISSUE.

The Golgi methods in most common use at present are the following:

(1) GOLGI SILVER METHODS.—(*a*) *Slow Method.*—Blocks of tissue are placed for several months in a 3-per-cent aqueous solution of potassium bichromate. Small pieces of the tissue are then transferred immediately to a 0.75-per-cent aqueous solution of silver nitrate. This is changed several times or until no more precipitate is formed. In the last silver solution they remain for from one to three days. The only method of determining whether the tissue has been sufficiently long in the bichromate is to try at intervals small bits of the tissue in the silver solution until a satisfactory result is secured. Sections should usually be from 50 to 80 μ thick and are mounted in balsam without a cover-glass.

(*b*) *Rapid Method.*—Small pieces of tissue, 2 to 4 mm. thick, are placed in the following solution for from two to six days, the time depending upon the age and character of the tissue, the temperature at which fixation is carried on, and the elements which it is desired to impregnate:

Osmic acid, 1-per-cent aqueous solution	1 part.
Potassium bichromate, 3.5-per-cent aqueous solution	4 parts.

As a rule, the longer the hardening the fewer are the elements stained, but these few are clearer. The tissue is next transferred to silver nitrate as in the slow method. Pieces of tissue should be tried each day until a satisfactory result is obtained. The pieces may be kept in silver nitrate some time, but not in alcohol, and are better cut without embedding, the pieces being simply washed in 95-per-cent alcohol several hours, then gummed to the block with celloidin, cut in 95-per-cent alcohol, and mounted as in the slow method.

(*c*) *Mixed Method.*—Specimens are placed in the bichromate solution for about four days, then from one to three days in the osmium-bichromate mixture (see Rapid Method), after which they are transferred to the silver solution (see Slow Method).

(*a*) *Formalin-Bichromate Method.*—Tissues are placed for from two to six days in the following solution:

Formalin	10 to 20 parts.
Potassium bichromate, 3-per-cent aqueous solution	90 to 80 parts.

Subsequent treatment with silver is the same as in the previously described method. The results resemble those of the slow method. The specimens may be kept in strong alcohol. The method is satisfactory only for the adult cerebrum and cerebellum.

(2) GOLGI BICHLORID METHOD.—Material, which need not be cut into small pieces, remains for several months in the potassium-bichromate solution (see Slow Silver Method), after which it is transferred to a 0.25-per-cent to 1-per-cent aqueous solution of mercuric chlorid for from four to twelve months or longer, the solution being changed as often as discolored. The degree of impregnation must be determined by frequently testing the material, but is usually indicated by the appearance of small white spots on the surface of the tissue.

A modification of the bichlorid method, known as the *Cox-Golgi Method*, often gives good results. The following fixing solution is used:

Potassium bichromate, 5-per-cent aqueous solution	20 parts.
Mercuric chlorid, 5-per-cent aqueous solution	20 parts.
Distilled water	40 parts.

After mixing the above, add

Potassium chromate, 5-per-cent aqueous solution. ..... 16 parts.

Tissues remain in this fluid for from two to five months.

In the Golgi silver methods the result of the treatment first with bichromate and then with silver nitrate, is that a precipitate is formed in the tissue, a chromate or some other silver salt, which in favorable cases is largely confined to certain of the nerve cells and their processes. It must be remembered that only a few of the cells and processes are stained, these often only partially, and that other irregular precipitations are usually present. In the mercury methods, the bichromate of potassium and the bichlorid of mercury may be used combined in the same solution. There are other modifications of the Golgi methods, in which similar precipitates of other metallic salts are secured.

Golgi specimens should be dehydrated and embedded as rapidly as possible. This is especially true of specimens treated by the rapid and the mixed methods. Those treated by the slow silver method and by the bichlorid method are more permanent, and more time may be taken with their dehydration. Sections should be cut thick (75 to 100 μ) and mounted in xylol-balsam. After the rapid method, it is safer to mount without a cover-glass; after the slow method, specimens may be mounted with or without a cover. The balsam should be hard, and melted at the time of using (see Mounting, page 20).

CAJAL'S METHODS FOR STAINING THE NEUROFIBRILS IN THE NERVE-CELLS.

In these methods, besides the neurofibrils, the cell processes and especially the axis cylinders are often beautifully displayed, the stain giving a picture in this respect much more general than that of the Golgi methods, but much more specific, and sharper than that of the ordinary stains.

The methods consist mainly of two steps: (1) The staining of the tissue in a solution of silver nitrate; (2) the further reduction of the silver stain with a weak photographic developer. Three methods, or variations, are here given:

(1) Pieces about 0.5 cm. thick are placed in a liberal quantity of from 1-per-cent or 1.5-per-cent (new-born or embryonic mammalian material) to 5-per-cent (adult material) solution of silver nitrate and kept at a temperature of 32° to 40° C. for 2 to 5 days. When

properly stained (shown by a yellowish or light brown coloration of freshly cut surfaces) the pieces are very briefly rinsed in distilled water and placed in: pyrogallol (or hydroquinone) 1 gram, distilled water 100 c.c., formalin 5–10 c.c., for twenty-four hours or more. They are then washed a few minutes in water and transferred to 95-per-cent alcohol, which is changed when discolored, and where they may often be kept for some time without injury. They may then be embedded in celloidin or paraffin and sections cut, usually 15–25 μ in thickness. Different depths of the blocks of tissue usually vary in stain, the most favorable being intermediate between the surface and centre of the block. Celloidin sections usually keep well in 95-per-cent alcohol. They may be cleared in carbol-xylol, rinsed in xylol, and mounted in xylol-balsam or xylol-damar in the usual way. In delicate objects (study of pathological changes in neurofibrils) it may be best to abbreviate the dehydration, and block and cut without infiltration with celloidin.

(2) Pieces are first placed in 95-per-cent alcohol or in absolute alcohol (32° to 40° C.) for twenty-four hours. For neurofibrils it is better to add from 0.25 c.c. to 1 c.c. of ammonium hydrate to each 100 c.c. of the alcohol. They are then treated with silver nitrate 1-per-cent or 1½-per-cent, as in (1). This method gives better pictures of the cell processes and axis cylinders and a better fixation of the cells.

(3) Pieces are first placed in distilled water 100 c.c., formalin 20 c.c., ammonia 1 c.c., for twenty-four hours at 32°–40° C., washed in water twelve to twenty-four hours, and then treated with silver nitrate 1-per-cent or 1.5-per-cent, as in (1). This method gives pictures of the terminations of nerve fibres on the periphery of nerve-cells and their dendrites (end-feet or end-buttons of Auerbach).

In general it is best to avoid, in the above methods, any excessive exposure to the light while the pieces are in the silver bath (especially when the pieces are very small), though they may be brought into the light for examination and while being transferred to the reducing fluid.

NISSL'S METHOD.

This method is useful for studying the internal structure of the nerve cell. It depends upon a rapid fixation of the tissue, its subsequent staining with an aniline dye, and final decolorization in alcohol.

The aniline dye most commonly used is *methylene blue*. There are many variations and modifications of Nissl's method. The following is simple and gives uniformly good results:

Specimens are first fixed in mercuric-chlorid solution (page 7), in formalin (10-per-cent aqueous solution), or in absolute alcohol, and embedded in celloidin.

Thin sections are stained in a 1-per-cent aqueous solution of pure methylene blue (Grübler). The sections are gently warmed in the solution until steam begins to be given off. They are then washed in water and differentiated in strong alcohol. The degree of decolorization which gives the best results can be learned only by practice. Several alcohols must be used, and the last alcohol must be perfectly free from methylene blue. The sections are cleared in equal parts xylol and cajeput oil and mounted in xylol-balsam. A contrast stain may be obtained by having a little eosin or erythrosin in the last alcohol.

General References for Further Study of Technic.

Lee: The Microtomist's Vade-mecum.

Mallory and Wright: Pathological Technique.

Freeborn: Histological Technic. Reference Handbook of Medical Sciences, vol. iv.

PART II.

THE CELL.

CHAPTER I.

THE CELL.

In the simplest forms of animal life the entire body consists of a little albuminous structure, the essential peculiarity of which is that it possesses properties which we recognize as characteristic of living organisms. This albuminous material basis of life is known as *protoplasm*, while the structure itself is known as a *cell*. Within the cell is usually found a specially formed part, the *nucleus*. Peripherally some cells are limited by a distinct *cell wall* or *cell membrane*. An actively multiplying cell contains a minute structure associated with the reproductive function and known as the *centrosome*.

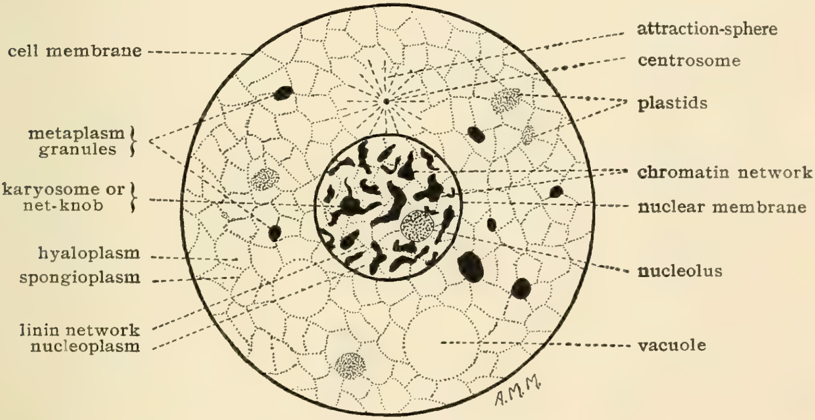

cell membrane
metaplasm granules
karyosome or net-knob
hyaloplasm
spongioplasm
linin network
nucleoplasm
attraction-sphere
centrosome
plastids
chromatin network
nuclear membrane
nucleolus
vacuole
A.M.M.

FIG. 1.—Diagram of a Typical Cell.

A *typical cell* thus consists of the following structures (Fig. 1): (1) The cell body; (2) the cell membrane; (3) the nucleus; (4) the centrosome. Of these the cell body is the only one present in all cells. Most animal cells have no cell membrane. A few cells contain, in their fully developed condition, no nuclei. In many mature cells it is impossible to distinguish a centrosome.

All plants and animals consist of cells and their derivatives, and if an attempt be made to resolve any of the more complex living structures into its component elements, it is found that the smallest possible subdivision still compatible with life is the cell. The cell may therefore be considered as the *histological element* or *unit of structure.*

1. **The Cell Body** (protoplasm—cytoplasm).—This is a semi-fluid substance of complex chemical composition, belonging to the general class of albumins. It contains a peculiar nitrogenous proteid, *plastin.*

Many theories have been advanced as to the ultimate structure of protoplasm (Fig. 2). The earliest theory, that protoplasm is homogeneous, having no definite structure, has been quite generally discarded.

Other investigators consider protoplasm as made up of (1) a fibrillar element, either in the form of a network of anastomosing fibrils (cytoreticulum) or of a feltwork of independent fibrils (filar mass or miton), and (2) a fluid or semi-fluid substance which fills in the meshes of the reticulum or separates the fibrils (interfilar mass or paramiton) (Fig. 2, *a*).

Altmann's granule theory considers protoplasm as composed of fine granules embedded in a gelatinous intergranular substance. Altmann believed these granules the ultimate vital elements, and for this reason gave them the name of bioblasts (Fig. 2, *b*).

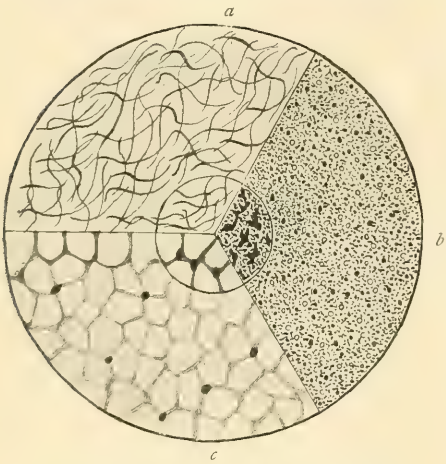


FIG. 2.—Diagram Illustrating Theories of Protoplasmic Structure. *a*, Fibrillar theory; *b*, granule theory; *c*; "foam" theory. (The general structure of cell body and nucleus corresponds.)

According to Butchli, protoplasm is a foam or emulsion, the appearance of a reticulum being due to the fact that each little foam space forms a complete cavity filled with fluid, the cut walls of these spaces giving a reticular appearance on section (Fig. 2, *c*).

Protoplasm varies somewhat both as to structure and as to chemical composition in different cells. It is thus probably best considered as the material basis of cell activity rather than as a substance having fixed and definite chemical and morphological characteristics. The formed element of protoplasm, whether reticular or fibrillar in structure, is known as *spongioplasm*, the homogeneous element as *hyaloplasm* (Fig. 1). Peculiar bodies known as *plastids* (Fig. 1) are of frequent occurrence in vegetable cells, and are also found in some animal cells. They are apparently to be regarded as a differentiation of the cytoplasm, but possess a remarkable degree of independence, being capable of subdivision and in some cases of existence outside of the cell.

Fat droplets, *pigment granules*, *excretory substances*, etc., may be present in cell protoplasm. These bodies represent for the most part either food elements in process of being built up into the protoplasm of the cell or waste products of cellular activity. To such protoplasmic "inclusions" the terms *deutoplasm*, *paraplasm*, *metaplasm*, have been applied (Fig. 1).

When the protoplasm of a cell can be differentiated into a central granular area and a peripheral clear area, the former is known as *endoplasm*, the latter as *exoplasm*. When the exoplasm forms a distinct limiting layer, but blends imperceptibly with the rest of the protoplasm, it is known as the *crusta*.

2. **The Cell Membrane** (Fig. 1).—This is present in but few animal cells, and is a modification of the peripheral part of the protoplasm. When a membrane surrounds the cell, it is known as the *pellicula*; when cells lie upon the surface, and only the free surface of the cells is covered by a membrane, it is known as the *cuticula*.

3. **The Nucleus** (Fig. 1).—This is a vesicular body embedded in the cytoplasm. Its size and shape usually correspond somewhat to the size and shape of the cell. Considered by earlier cytologists an unessential part of the cell, the nucleus is now known to be most intimately associated with cellular activities. It is not only essential to the carrying on of the ordinary metabolic processes of the cell, but is an active agent in the phenomena of mitosis, which in most cases determine cell reproduction.

As a rule each cell contains a *single nucleus*. Some cells contain more than one nucleus, as, *e.g.*, such multinuclear cells as are found in marrow and in developing bone. Some cells, such as the human red blood cell and the respiratory epithelium, are, in their mature condition, non-nucleated. All non-nucleated cells, however, contained nuclei in the earlier stages of their development. Non-nucleated cells, while capable of performing certain functions, are wholly incapable of proliferation. The non-nucleated condition must therefore be regarded as not only a condition of maturity, but of actual senility, at least so far as reproductive powers are concerned.

Chemically the nucleus is extremely complex, being composed of the proteids nuclein, paranuclein, linin, nuclear fluid, and lantanin.

Morphologically also the nucleus is complex, much of the structural differentiation being determined by the staining reactions of the different elements when treated with certain aniline dyes. The nuclear structures and their relations to the chemical constituents of the nucleus are as follows:[1]

(*a*) The *nuclear membrane* (*amphipyrenin*). This forms a limiting membrane separating the nucleus from the cell protoplasm. It is wanting in some nuclei.

(*b*) The *intranuclear network*, or *nucleoreticulum*, consists of a *chromatic element* (*nuclein* or *chromatin*) and of an *achromatic element* (*linin*). At nodal points of the network there are often considerable accumulations of chromatin. These nodal points, at first thought to be nucleoli, are now known as *false nucleoli*, or *karyosomes*. Instead of a distinct network there may be disconnected threads or simply granules of chromatin. Chromatin is the most characteristic of the chemical constituents of the nucleus and the only one which contains phosphoric acid. Within the linin, fine granules occur (lantanin). These are differentiated from chromatin by the fact that they are most susceptible to acid dyes, while chromatin takes basic dyes.

(*c*) The *nucleolus* or *plasmosome* (*paranuclein*, *pyrenin*) is a small spherical body within the nucleus. It stains intensely with basic dyes. Its function is unknown.

(*d*) *Nucleoplasm* (*karyoplasm*, *nuclear fluid*, *nuclear sap*). This is the fluid or semi-fluid material which fills in the meshes of the nucleoreticulum.

While the nucleus is a perfectly distinct structure and is usually separated by a membrane from the rest of the cell, a marked similarity exists between the structure of nucleoplasm and cytoplasm. This similarity is emphasized by the absence in some resting cells of any nuclear membrane, by the apparent direct continuity in some cases of nucleoreticulum and cytoreticulum, and by the continuity of nucleoplasm and cytoplasm in all cells during cell division.

4. **The centrosome** (Fig. 1) is a small spherical body found sometimes in the nucleus, or more commonly in the cytoplasm near the nucleus. Surrounding the centrosome there is usually an area of fine radiating fibrils, the *centrosphere* (*attraction sphere*, *protoplasmic ra-*

---

[1] Bracketed words refer to chemical substance of which structure is composed.

diation, archoplasm). The main significance of the centrosome is in connection with cell division, under which head it will be further considered (page 44).

Vital Properties of Cells.

It has already been noted that the essential peculiarity of the cell is that it possesses certain properties which are characteristic of life. By this is meant that a cell is able: 1. To nourish itself and to grow—*metabolism.* ~~2. To do work—*function.*~~ 3. To respond to stimulation—*irritability.* 4. To move—*motion.* 5. To produce other cells—*reproduction.*

In single-cell animals such as the amœba, all of these functions are performed by the single cell. In all higher multicellular animals, there is a morphological differentiation of cells corresponding to a physiological division of function.

1. **Metabolism.**—This term is used to designate those cellular activities which have to do with the nutrition of the cell. A cell is able (1) to take up from without substances suitable for its nutrition and to transform these into its own peculiar structure, and (2) to dispose of the waste products of intracellular activities. The former is known as *constructive metabolism* or *anabolism*, the latter as *destructive metabolism* or *katabolism.*

2. **Function.**—This is the special work which it is the part of the cell to perform. It varies greatly for different cells. Some cells, as, *e.g.*, the surface cells of the skin, appear to act mainly as protection for more delicate underlying structures. Other cells—gland cells—in addition to maintaining their own nutrition, produce specific substances (secretions), which are of great importance to the body as a whole. Still other cells, *e.g.*, nerve cells and muscle cells, have the power to store up their food substances in such a way as to make them available in the form of energy. This appears to be accomplished by the building up within the cell of highly complex and, consequently, unstable molecular combinations. By reduction of these unstable combinations, molecules of greater stability and less complexity are formed. This results in the transformation of potential into kinetic energy, and the expenditure of this energy is expressed in function.

3. **Irritability** is that property which enables a cell to respond to external stimuli. Cells vary in respect to their irritability, the most markedly irritable cells in higher animals being those of the neuro-

muscular mechanism. Stimulation may be mechanical, electrical, thermal, chemical, etc. The response of the cell to certain forms of chemical stimulation is known as chemotaxis. Some substances attract cells (positive chemotaxis); others repel cells (negative chemotaxis). Stimuli other than chemical possess similar properties, as indicated by the terms thermotaxis, galvanotaxis, etc. Some cells are so specialized as to react only to certain kinds of stimulation, *e.g.*, the retinal cells only to light stimuli.

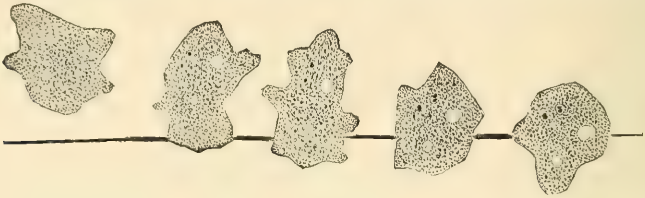


FIG. 3.—Amœboid Movement. Successive changes in shape and position of fresh-water amœba.

4. **Motion.**—This is dependent wholly upon the protoplasm of the cell, and is exhibited in several somewhat different forms.

(*a*) *Amœboid movement.* This consists in the pushing outward by the cell of processes (pseudopodia). These may be retracted or may draw the cell after them. In this way the cell may change both its shape and position (Fig. 3).

(*b*) *Protoplasmic movement.* This occurs wholly within the limits of the cell, changing neither its shape nor position. It occurs in both plant and animal cells, and consists of a sort of circulation or "streaming" of the protoplasm. It is evidenced by the movement of minute granules present in the protoplasm, by changes in the position of the nucleus, etc.

(*c*) *Ciliary movement.* This is the whipping motion possessed by little hair-like processes called cilia, which project from the surfaces of some cells.

Certain cells which are specialized for the particular purpose of motion, as *e.g.* muscle cells, possess such powers of contraction that they are able to move not only themselves but other parts with which they are connected. This power of contractility is dependent upon the spongioplasm, the hyaloplasm playing a more passive rôle. In muscle cells the highly developed contractile powers appear to be due to the excessive development and peculiar arrangement of the spongioplasm.

5. **Reproduction.**—The overthrow of the long-held biological fallacy of spontaneous generation was soon followed by the downfall of a similar theory regarding the origin of cells. We now know that all cells are derived from cells, and that the vast number and complex of cells which together form the adult human body are all derived from a *single primitive cell*, the *ovum*.

Reproduction of cells takes place in two ways, by *direct cell division* or *amitosis*, and by *indirect cell division* or *mitosis*. In both amitosis and mitosis the division of the cell body is preceded by division of the nucleus.

DIRECT CELL-DIVISION—AMITOSIS (Fig. 4).—In this form of cell-division the nucleus divides into two daughter nuclei without any apparent preliminary changes in its structure. The division of the nucleus may or may not be followed by division of the cell body, in the latter case resulting in the formation of polynuclear cells. This form of cell-division is uncommon in higher animals where Flemming considers it a degenerative phenomenon rather than a normal method of cell-increase. It is a common method of cell-division in the protozoa.

INDIRECT CELL-DIVISION—MITOSIS (Fig. 5).—In this form of cell-division also the nucleus divides into two daughter nuclei, but only after having undergone certain characteristic changes in structure. On account of their complexity it is convenient for purposes of description to arbitrarily divide these changes into *stages* or *phases*. Thus we recognize in mitosis: (*a*) the *prophase;* (*b*) the *metaphase;* (*c*) the *anaphase;* (*d*) the *telophase*.

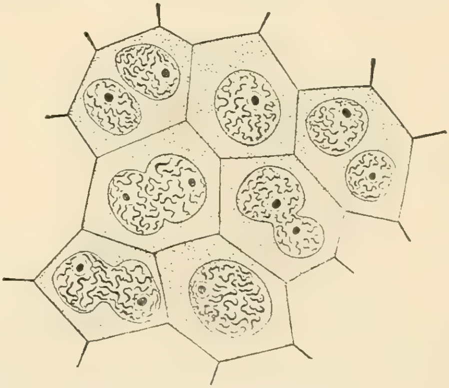


FIG. 4.—Epithelial Cells from Ovary of Cockroach, showing Nuclei dividing Amitotically. (Wheeler.)

(*a*) *The Prophase* (Fig. 5, *B*, *C*, *D*). This is the stage of preparation on the part of the nucleus for division. It is marked by the following changes in the nucleus:

1. The chromatic part of the intranuclear network becomes changed into a twisted *skein* or *spireme*. This is formed of a single long thread of chromatin or of several shorter threads (Fig. 5, *B*).

During these changes in the nuclear network, the nucleolus and nuclear membrane disappear.

2. About the same time the centrosome and its surrounding attraction sphere increase in size and the centrosome divides into two equal parts. The division of the centrosome frequently occurs earlier, even before any changes in the nucleus (Fig. 5, *A* and *B*).

3. The two *daughter centrosomes*, each surrounded by its attraction sphere, move apart but remain connected by fibrils, probably derived from the linin (Fig. 5, *B*). These fibrils form the *central* or *achromatic spindle*. Two other sets of fibrils radiate from each centrosome—one, known as the *polar rays*, passes out toward the periphery of the cell; the other, known as the *mantle fibres*, extends from the centrosome to the chromosomes (Fig. 5, *C*).

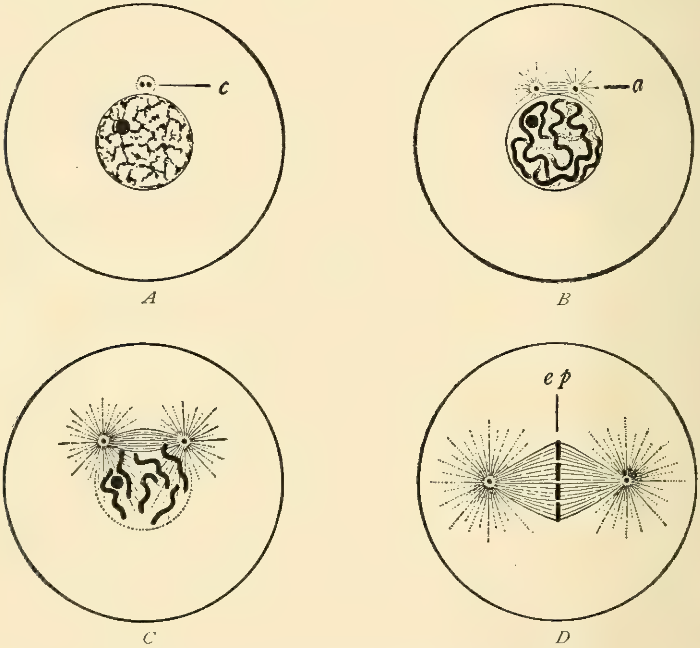


FIG. 5.—Diagrams of Successive Phases of Mitosis.

A, *Resting cell*, with reticular nucleus and true nucleolus; *c*, attraction sphere with two centrosomes.

B, *Early prophase*. Chromatin forming continuous thread—the spireme; nucleolus still present; *a*, amphiaster; the two centrosomes connected by fibrils of achromatic spindle.

C, *Later prophase*. Segmentation of spireme to form the chromosomes; achromatic spindle connecting centrosomes; polar rays; mantle fibres; fading of nuclear membrane.

D, *End of prophase*. Monaster—mitotic figure complete; *ep*, chromosomes arranged around equator of nucleus; fibrils of achromatic spindle connecting centrosomes; mantle fibres passing from centrosomes to chromosomes.

4. The spireme next breaks up into a number of segments—*chromosomes* (Fig. 5, *C*). These arrange themselves regularly around the equator of the nucleus, forming loops, the closed ends of which are directed centrally. This is known as the *closed skein*, *mother star*, or *monaster* (Fig. 5, *D*). It is most important to note that the number of chromosomes varies for different species of plants and animals, but is *fixed and characteristic for a given species.*

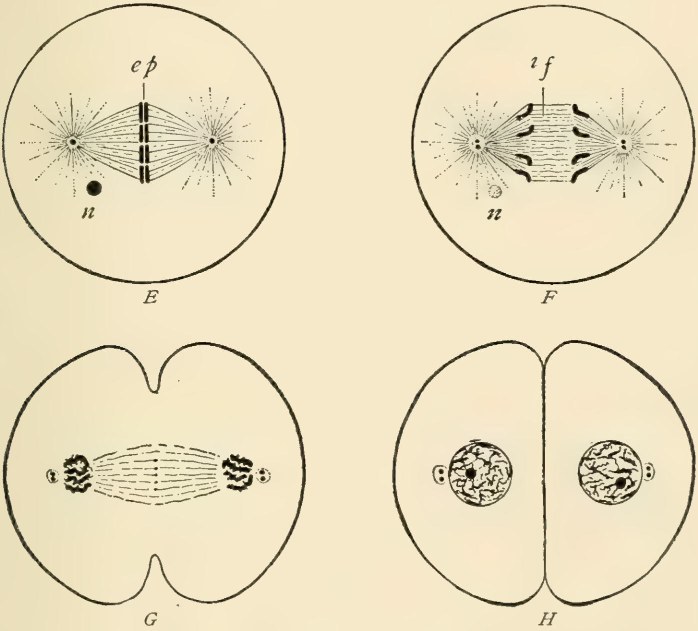


FIG. 5.—Diagrams of Successive Phases of Mitosis.

E, *Metaphase.* Longitudinal cleavage; splitting of chromosomes to form daughter chromosomes, *ep*; *n*, cast-off nucleolus.

F, *Anaphase.* Daughter chromosomes passing along fibrils of achromatic spindle toward centrosomes; division of centrosomes; *if*, interzonal fibres or central spindle.

G, *Late anaphase.* Formation of diaster; beginning division of cell body.

H, *Telophase.* Reappearance of nuclear membrane and nucleolus; two complete daughter cells, each containing a resting nucleus. (E. B. Wilson, "The Cell," The Macmillan Co.)

(*b*) *Metaphase* (Fig. 5, *E*). This marks the beginning of actual division of the nucleus.

Each chromosome splits longitudinally (longitudinal cleavage) into two *daughter chromosomes.*

(*c*) *Anaphase* (Fig. 5, *F*, *G*).—An equal number of daughter chromosomes now travels along the fibrils of the achromatic spindle—apparently under the influence of the mantle fibres—toward each daughter centrosome. In this way are formed two *daughter stars,* the mitotic figure being known at this stage as the *diaster* (Fig. 5, *G*). These daughter stars are at first connected by the fibrils of the achromatic spindle. In this stage may also occur beginning division of the cell body.

(*d*) *Telophase* (Fig. 5, *H*).—This is marked by division of the cell protoplasm and consists of a cycle of changes, by means of which each group of daughter chromosomes is transformed into the chromatin network of a *resting nucleus.* These changes are the same as those described in the prophase, but occur in the reverse order, the chromosomes uniting to form the spireme, and the spireme becoming transformed into the nuclear network. The result is the formation of two *daughter cells.* The nuclear membrane reappears, as does also the nucleolus. Each daughter cell is thus provided with a resting nucleus.

It is through the above-described process of cell-division that the vast number of cells which make up the adult body are developed from one original cell—the ovum. Such powers of evolution are not, however, inherent in the ovum itself, but are acquired only after its union with germinal elements from the male. This union of male and female germinal elements is known as *fertilization of the ovum.*

FERTILIZATION OF THE OVUM.

Prior to and in preparation for fertilization, both male and female cells must pass through certain changes. These are known as *maturation of the spermatozoon* on the male side and of the *ovum* on the female.

The *spermatozoon* (Fig. 6) is developed from a cell of the seminiferous tubule of the testis. The nucleus of this cell so divides its chromosomes that *each spermatozoon contains just one-half the number of chromosomes characteristic of cells of the species.* These are contained in the *head* of the spermatozoon, which thus represents the *nucleus* of the male sexual cell, the *middle piece* being the *centrosome,* the tail piece the *remains of the protoplasm.*

The nucleus of the *ovum* or *germinal vesicle* also passes through a series of changes by which it loses one-half its chromosomes. The germinal vesicle or nucleus of the ovum first undergoes mitotic division with the usual longitudinal cleavage of its chromosomes and the formation of *two daughter nuclei.* One of these and its centrosome are extruded from the cell as the *first polar body.* The remaining nucleus and centrosome again divide mitotically only in this second division, instead of the usual longitudinal cleavage of chromosomes, by which each daughter nucleus is provided with the same number of chromosomes as the mother nucleus: the chromosomes simply separate, *one-half going to each daughter nucleus.* One of the daughter nuclei and its centrosome is now extruded as the *second polar body.* The polar bodies ultimately disappear, as does also the centrosome remaining within the egg. This leaves in the now matured ovum a single nucleus, which is known as the *female pronucleus,* and which *contains one-half the number of chromosomes characteristic of cells of the species.*

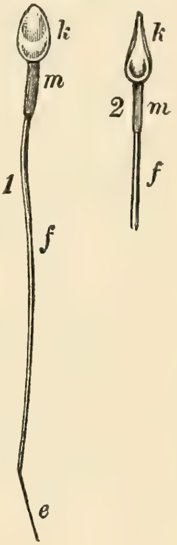


FIG. 6.—Human Spermatozoa. (After Retzius.) *1*, Head seen on flat; *2*, head seen on edge; *k*, head; *m*, body; *f*, tail; *e*, end piece.

During this process in some animals—in others after its completion—the spermatozoon enters the ovum, losing its now useless tailpiece. The head of the spermatozoon becomes the *male pronucleus,* while the middle piece becomes a *centrosome.* The chromatin of the male next becomes arranged as chromosomes. Male and female pronuclei now lose their limiting membranes and approach each other, their chromosomes intermingling. *As each pronucleus contained one-half the number, the monaster thus formed contains the full number of chromosomes characteristic of the species.* Meanwhile the male centrosome, formed from the body of the spermatozoon, divides into *two daughter centrosomes.* These with their radiating fibrils have the same arrangement relative to the monaster of mingled male and female chromosomes, already described under mitosis. By longitudinal cleavage of these chromosomes, as in ordinary mitosis, two sets of daughter chromosomes are formed. Each set passes along the filaments of the achromatic spindle to its centrosome. Thus is formed the *diaster.* By continuation of the mitotic process two new nuclei are formed, each nucleus containing the number of chromosomes characteristic of the species, and each being made up *equally of male and female chromosome elements.* Thus occurs the first division of the fertilized ovum into two daughter cells. By similar mitotic processes these two cells become four, the four cells become eight, etc. This is known as *segmentation of the ovum.*

The earlier generations of these cells are morphologically alike and

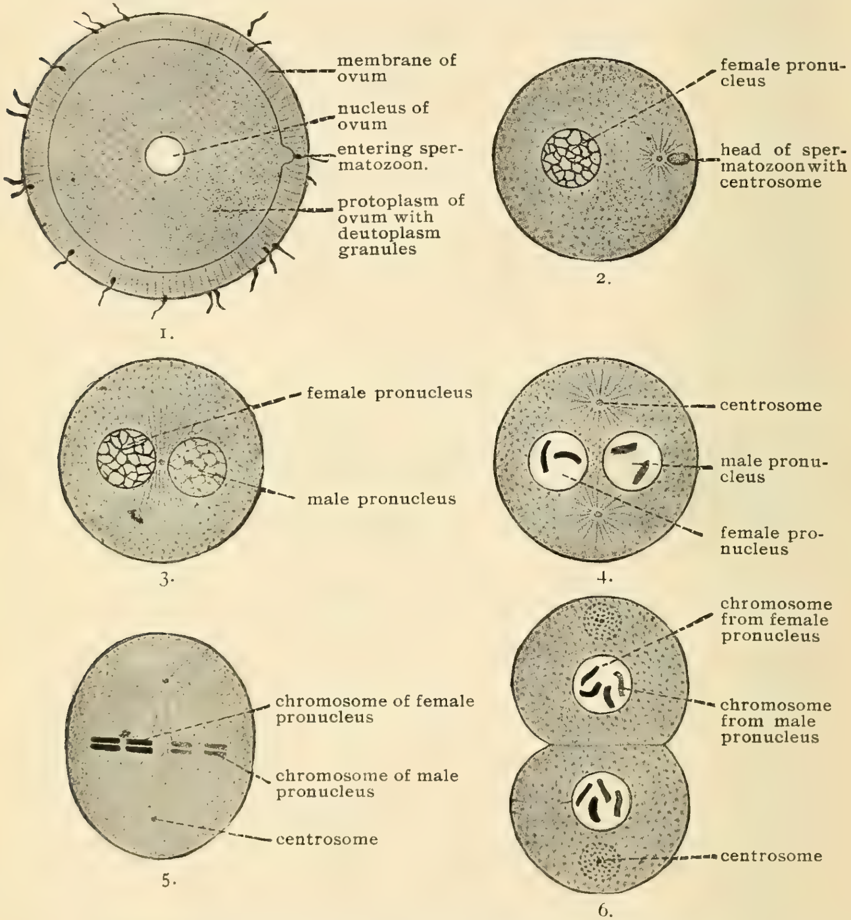

membrane of ovum
nucleus of ovum
entering spermatozoon.
protoplasm of ovum with deutoplasm granules
1.
female pronucleus
head of spermatozoon with centrosome
2.
female pronucleus
male pronucleus
3.
centrosome
male pronucleus
female pronucleus
4.
chromosome of female pronucleus
chromosome of male pronucleus
centrosome
5.
chromosome from female pronucleus
chromosome from male pronucleus
centrosome
6.

FIG. 7.—Diagram of Fertilization of the Ovum. (The somatic number of chromosomes being four.) (From Bohm and von Davidoff, after Boveri.)

1, Ovum surrounded by spermatoza, only one of which is in the act of penetration. Toward the latter the protoplasm of the ovum sends out a process; 2, Head of spermatozoon has entered ovum, its body becoming the male centrosome, its tail having disappeared; 3, The head of spermatozoon has become the male pronucleus. Male and female pronuclei approach each other. Between them is the (male) centrosome; 4, The spiremes of male and female pronuclei have each formed two chromosomes. The centrosome has divided; 5, Male and female chromosomes have mingled and by longitudinal cleavage (see Mitosis, p. 39) have become eight. These become arranged in the equatorial plane of the ovum. Mantle fibres extend from centrosomes to chromosomes; 6, Division of the ovum; two daughter cells, each containing a daughter nucleus. Each daughter nucleus contains four chromosomes, two derived from each pronucleus.

are known as *blastomeres*. Soon, however, these cells become spread out and at the same time separated into *two primary germ layers*. The outer of these is known as the *ectoderm* or *epiblast*, the inner as

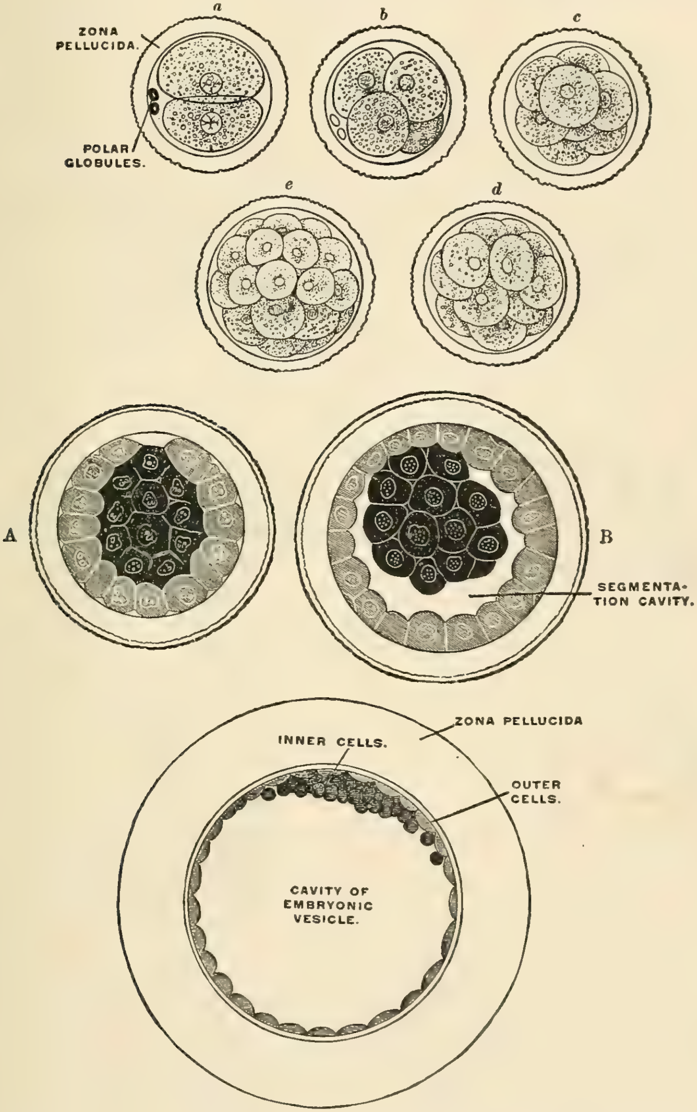

a
b
c
ZONA PELLUCIDA.
POLAR GLOBULES.
e
d
A
B
SEGMENTATION CAVITY.
ZONA PELLUCIDA
INNER CELLS.
OUTER CELLS.
CAVITY OF EMBRYONIC VESICLE.

FIG. 8.—Segmentation of the Ovum. (From Gerrish, after van Beneden.)

a, Two-cell stage resulting from first division of fertilized ovum; *b*, four-cell stage; *c*, *d*, *e*, later stages. *A*, Differentiation into inner and outer cells; *B*, Formation of segmentation cavity; *C*, Embryonic vesicle, showing two primary germ layers. *Outer cells*, ectoderm; *inner cells*, entoderm.

the *entoderm* or *hypoblast.* Between these two layers and derived from them a third layer is formed, the *mesoderm* or *mesoblast.* These three layers constitute the *blastoderm.*

TECHNIC.

1. Fresh cells may be studied by gently scraping the surface of the tongue, transferring the mucus thus obtained to a glass slide and covering with a cover-glass.

2. Red blood cells from the frog are prepared as follows: After killing the frog the heart is opened and the blood allowed to drop into a tube containing Hayem's fluid (sodium chlorid 1 gm., sodium sulphate 5 gm., mercuric chlorid 0.5 gm., distilled water 100 c.c.). After shaking, the cells are allowed to settle for from twelve to twenty-four hours. The fixative is then replaced by water, the tube again shaken, the cells allowed to settle, and the water is replaced with 80-per-cent alcohol tinged with iodin. After from twelve to twenty-four hours the alcohol is decanted and the tube partly filled with alum-carmine solution (page 16). About twenty-four hours usually suffices for staining the nuclei. The alum-carmine is then poured off and the cells well shaken in water. After settling, the water is replaced by glycerin, to which a small amount of picric acid has been added. In this the cells may be permanently preserved. The nuclei are stained red by the carmine, the cytoplasm yellow by the picric acid.

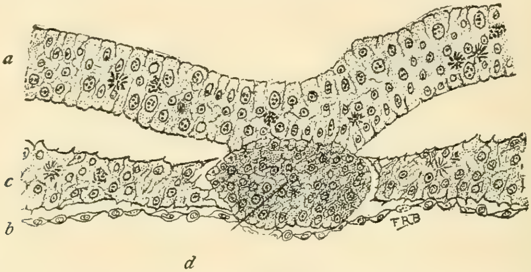


FIG. 9.—The Two Primary Germ Layers; from transverse section through primitive groove of a chick of 27 hrs. incubation. *a*, Ectoderm (outer germ layer); *b*, entoderm (inner germ layer); *c*, mesoderm (middle germ layer); *d*, anlage of notochord.

3. Surface cells from the mucous membrane of the bladder. The bladder is removed from a recently killed animal, pinned out mucous membrane side up on a piece of cork and floated, specimen side down, on equal parts Müller's fluid and Ranvier's alcohol (technic 4, p. 6, and *a*, p. 4) for from twenty-four to forty-eight hours. The specimen is then washed in water and the cells removed by gently scraping the surface. These may then be stained and preserved in the same manner as the preceding. Cells from the different layers should be studied; also the appearance of the large surface cells seen on flat and on edge, showing pitting of under surface by cells beneath.

4. Amœboid movement may be studied by watching fresh-water amœbæ or white blood cells. A drop of water containing amœbæ is placed on a slide, covered and a brush moistened with oil is passed around the cover to prevent evaporation. The activity of the amœbæ may be increased by slightly raising the temperature. An apparatus known as the warm stage is convenient for demonstrating amœboid movement. A drop of blood, human, or, better, from one of the cold-blooded

animals, may be used for the study of amœboid movement in the white blood cells. It should be placed on a slide, covered, and immediately examined on the warm stage.

5. Ciliary movement is conveniently studied by removing a small piece of the gill of an oyster or mussel, teasing it gently in a drop of normal salt solution and covering. The cilia being very long, their motion may be easily studied, especially after it has become slow from loss of vitality.

6. Mitosis. The salamander tadpole and the newt are classical subjects for the study of cell-division. The female salamander is usually full of embryo tadpoles in January and February. The embryos are removed and fixed in Flemming's fluid (technic 7, p. 7), after which they may be preserved in equal parts of alcohol, glycerin, and water. Mitotic figures may be found in almost any of the tissues. Pieces of epidermis from the end of the tail, the parietal peritoneum, and bits of the gills are especially satisfactory. If the newt's tail is used, it should be fixed in the same manner, embedded in paraffin and cut into thin sections. These are stained with Heidenhain's hæmatoxylin, technic 3, p. 15.

Certain vegetable tissues, such as the end roots of a young, rapidly growing onion, or magnolia buds are excellent for the study of mitosis. The technic is the same as for animal tissues.

General References for Further Study of the Cell.

Wilson: The Cell in Development and Inheritance.
McMurrich: The Development of the Human Body.
Minot: Human Embryology. A Laboratory Text-book of Embryology.
Hertwig: Die Zelle und die Gewebe.

PART III.

THE TISSUES.

CHAPTER I.

HISTOGENESIS—CLASSIFICATION.

ECTODERM, mesoderm, and entoderm (see page 50) are known as the primary layers of the blastoderm. They differ from one another not only in position, but also in the structural characteristics of their cells. The separation of the blastomeres into these three layers represents the first morphological differentiation of the cells of the developing embryo. By further and constantly increasing differentiation are developed from these three primary layers all tissues and organs, each layer giving rise to its own special group of tissues. The tissue derivations from the primary layers of the blastoderm are as follows:

Ectoderm.—(1) Epithelium of skin and its appendages—hair, nails, sweat, sebaceous and mammary glands, including smooth muscle of sweat glands.

(2) Epithelium of mouth and anus, of glands opening into mouth and enamel of teeth.

(3) Epithelium of nose and of glands and cavities connected with nose.

(4) Epithelium of external auditory canal and of membranous labyrinth.

(5) Epithelium of anterior surface of cornea, of conjunctiva, and of crystalline lens.

(6) Epithelium of male urethra, except prostatic portion.

(7) Epithelium of pineal bodies and of pituitary body.

(8) Entire nervous system, including retina.

Entoderm.—(1) Epithelium of digestive tract excepting mouth and anus, and of glands connected with digestive tract.

(2) Epithelium of respiratory tract and of its glands.

(3) Epithelium of bladder, ureters, female urethra, and of prostatic portion of male urethra.

(4) Epithelium of tympanum and of Eustachian tube.

(5) Epithelium of thyroid and of Hassall's corpuscles of thymus.

Mesoderm.—The cells of the mesoderm soon differentiate to form three sub-groups—the mesothelium, the mesenchyme, and the mesamœboid cells.

Mesothelium.—The mesothelial cells form tissues resembling epithelium. They line the serous membranes—pleura, pericardium, and peritoneum; form the epithelium of the genito-urinary system except that of ureters, bladder, and urethra; and give rise to striated and heart muscle.

Mesenchyme.—From the mesenchyme cells are derived all connective tissues; the lymphatic organs, including the spleen; cells classed as "endothelial" cells, which line the vascular and lymphatic systems; smooth muscle and bone marrow.

Mesamœboid Cells.—From these are derived the embryonic red and the white blood cells.

In all but the lowest forms of animal life the body consists of an orderly arrangement of many kinds of *cells.* From the cells is developed a substance which lies outside the cells and is known as *intercellular substance.* The association of a particular type of cell with a particular type of intercellular substance is known as a *tissue.* The character of a tissue depends upon the character of its cells, of its intercellular substance, and their relations to each other. Further differentiation of cells and intercellular substance within a particular tissue gives rise to various sub-groups of the *tissue.* The association of tissues to form a definite structure for the performance of a particular function is known as an *organ.*

A scientific classification of the tissues is at present impossible.

The foregoing list of tissue derivations shows how unsatisfactory is any attempt at classification on the basis of histogenesis, many tissues which are morphologically similar being derived from two or even all three of the blastodermic layers.

The following is the usual classification of adult tissues: (1) Epithelial tissues; (2) connective tissues; (3) blood; (4) muscle tissue; (5) nerve tissue.

Of these, epithelium and connective tissue may be regarded as the more elementary tissues, being common to both plants and animals. Blood is sometimes classified among the connective tissues. Muscle and nerve are the most highly specialized tissues and are peculiar to animals.

CHAPTER II.

EPITHELIUM (INCLUDING MESOTHELIUM AND ENDOTHELIUM).

Histogenesis.—Epithelium is derived from all three of the primary blastodermic layers. It is at first a thin membrane-like structure composed of a single layer of cells. This condition may persist or new cells may develop between the older cells and the underlying connective tissue, thus forming epithelium several layers of cells in thickness.

General Characteristics.—Epithelium consists almost wholly of cells. The intercellular substance is merely sufficient to attach the cells to one another and is, consequently, known as cement substance. In some instances the protoplasm of adjacent epithelial cells is seen to be even more closely associated, the intervening cement substance being bridged over by delicate processes of protoplasm which pass from one cell to another and are known as "*intercellular bridges*" (see Fig. 14, p. 61). It seems probable that the minute spaces between the processes serve as channels for the passage of food (lymph) to the cells. The surface cells of epithelium are united by continuous cement substance in which there are apparently no spaces. In this way escape of lymph is prevented.

Epithelial cells vary in size and shape, the element of pressure being a frequent determining factor as regards shape. Their protoplasm may be clear, finely or coarsely granular, or pigmented. Each cell usually contains a single well-defined nucleus. Two or more nuclei are sometimes present. Some epithelial cells are, when fully matured, non-nucleated, *e.g.*, respiratory epithelium of lung.

When epithelium rests upon connective tissue, it is usually separated from the latter by a thin, apparently homogeneous membrane known as the *basal membrane* or *membrana propria.* Authorities differ as to whether this membrane is of connective-tissue or of epithelial origin.

Surface epithelial cells frequently have thickened free borders or *cuticulæ*, which unite to form a continuous membrane, the *cuticular membrane*. Striations extend from the cytoplasm into the cuticulæ. A still greater specialization of the surface of the cell is seen in the ciliated cell. In these cells fine hair-like projections—*cilia*—extend from the surface of the cell.

Some epithelial cells show important changes dependent upon their functional activities. An example of this is seen in the mucous cell in which there is a transformation of the greater part of the cytoplasm into, or its replacement by, mucus.

Epithelia are devoid, as a rule, of both blood and lymph vessels. An exception to this is the stria vascularis of the cochlea. Nerves, on the other hand, are abundant.

Classification.—Epithelia may be classified according to shape and arrangement of cells as follows:

(1) Simple Epithelium.—(*a*) Squamous; (*b*) columnar.

(2) Stratified Epithelium.—(*a*) Squamous; (*b*) columnar.

(3) Mesothelium and Endothelium.

Specializations of the above-mentioned types are known as: (*a*) Ciliated epithelium; (*b*) pigmented epithelium: (*c*) glandular epithelium; (*d*) neuro-epithelium.

1. Simple Epithelium.

In simple epithelium the cells are arranged in a single layer.

(*a*) *Simple squamous epithelium* consists of flat scale-like cells which are united by an extremely small amount of intercellular substance. The edges of the cells are smooth or serrated. Seen on flat, they present the appearance of a mosaic. Seen on edge, the cells appear fusiform, being thickest at the centre, where the nucleus is situated, and thinning out toward the periphery. Simple squamous epithelium has but a limited distribution in man. It occurs in the lungs as non-nucleated respiratory epithelium, in Bowman's capsule of the renal corpuscle, in the descending arm of Henle's loop of the uriniferous tubule, in the retina in the form of pigmented cells, and on the posterior surface of the anterior lens capsule.

(*b*) *Simple columnar epithelium* consists of a single layer of elongated cells. The bases of the cells are usually separated from the underlying connective tissue by a basement membrane. The nucleus is, as a rule, in the deeper part of the cell, near the basement membrane. Many of these cells have prominent thickened free borders or cuticulæ. This form of epithelium is often ciliated. When the height of the cell about equals its other dimensions, the epithelium is called *cuboidal.* Simple columnar epithelium lines the gastro-intestinal canal, the uriniferous tubule (excepting the descending arm of Henle's loop), simple tubular glands, the ducts of some compound tubular glands, the smaller bronchi, the membranous and penile portions of the male uretha, and the gall bladder.

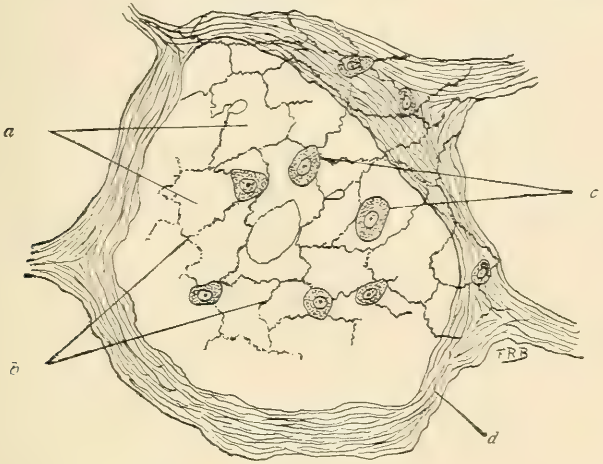


FIG. 10.—From Section of Cat's Lung, stained with silver nitrate, showing outlines of the Simple Squamous Epithelium Lining the Air Vesicle. *a*, Two epithelial cells; *b*, the wavy stained intercellular substance; *c*, fœtal cells; *d*, connective tissue.

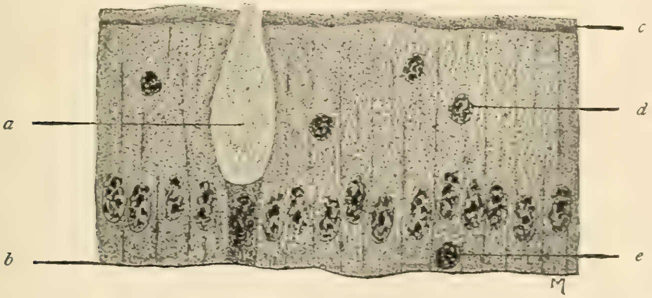


FIG. 11.—Simple Columnar Epithelium from the Human Small Intestine. *a*, Mucous (goblet) cell; *b*, basement membrane; *c*, thickened free border (cuticula); *d*, leucocyte among the epithelial cells; *e*, replacing cell.

In simple columnar epithelium, in addition to the single row of epithelial cells, there are found lying near the basement membrane, between the bases of the epithelial cells, small, spherical or irregular cells, which frequently show mitosis and which are known as *replacing cells*. They appear to develop into columnar epithelial cells as they are needed to replace older cells. The so-called *pseudostratified epithelium* is a form of simple columnar epithelium, in which, from crowding of the cells, the nuclei have come to lie at different levels, thus giving the appearance of stratification.

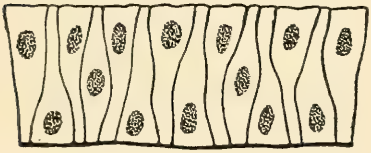


FIG. 12.—Diagram of Pseudostratified Epithelium, showing Nuclei Situated at Different Levels.

2. Stratified Epithelium.

In stratified epithelium the cells are arranged in more than one layer.

(*a*) *Stratified squamous epithelium* is developed from simple epithelium by the growth of new cells between the old cells and the underlying connective tissue. It consists of several layers of cells which vary greatly in size and shape. The surface cells are large

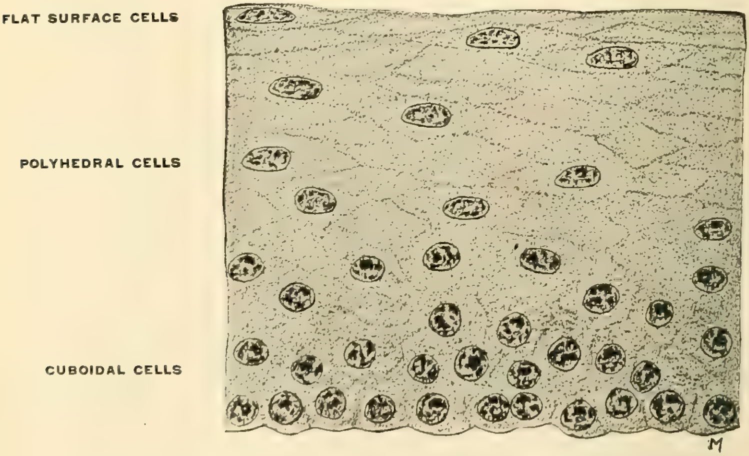


FIG. 13.—Stratified Squamous Epithelium from Cat's Œsophagus.

and flat. Beneath these are several layers of polyhedral cells, with often very distinct protoplasmic intercellular connections ("intercellular bridges," see also page 57). The deepest cells are columnar or cuboidal. It is thus seen that in stratified squamous epithelium only the surface cells are squamous. This form of epithelium rests upon a more or less distinct basement membrane, which is frequently thrown up into folds by papillæ of the underlying connective tissue. Stratified squamous epithelium forms the surface of the skin and of mucous membranes of cavities opening upon it, mouth and œsophagus, conjunctiva, external ear, vagina, and external sheath of hair follicle.

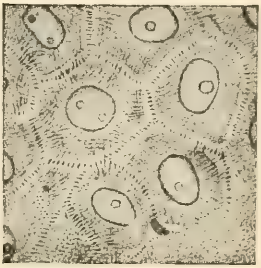


FIG. 14.—Epithelial Cells from the Stratum Spinosum of the Human Epidermis, showing "Intercellular Bridges." × 700. (Szymonowicz.)

(*b*) *Stratified Columnar Epithelium.*—Only the surface cells are columnar, the deeper cells being irregular in shape. The surface cells frequently send long processes down among the underlying cells. The free surface is often marked by a well-developed cuticula.

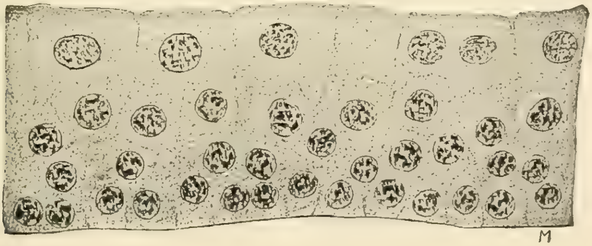


FIG. 15.—Transitional Epithelium from the Human Bladder.

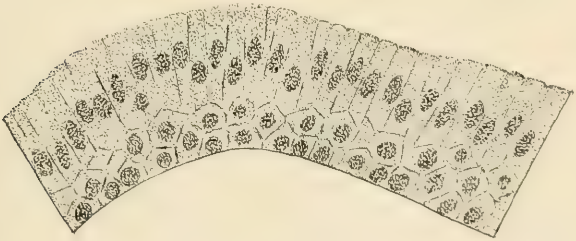


FIG. 16.—Stratified Columnar Epithelium from the Human Male Urethra. × 400.

Some epithelia of this type are ciliated. Stratified columnar epithelium is found in the larynx, nose, palpebral conjunctiva, largest of the gland ducts, the vas deferens, and part of the male urethra.

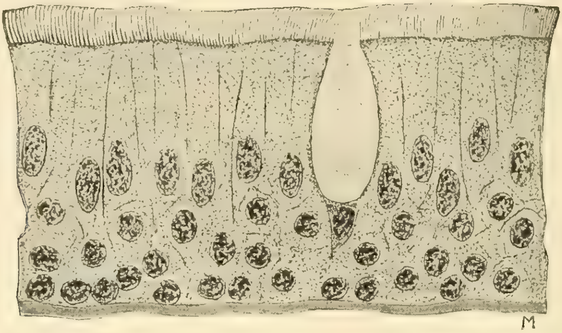


FIG. 17.—Stratified Columnar Ciliated Epithelium from the Human Trachea. A mucous (goblet) cell also is present.

Stratified epithelium composed of only from three to six layers of cells is sometimes designated "*transitional epithelium.*" This type of epithelium usually rests upon a basement membrane free from papillæ. The surface cells are large and frequently contain two or three nuclei. Their free surfaces are flat, while their under surfaces show depressions due to pressure from underlying cells. The deeper cells are polygonal or irregularly cuboidal. This form of epithelium lines the bladder, ureter, pelvis of the kidney, and prostatic portion of male urethra.

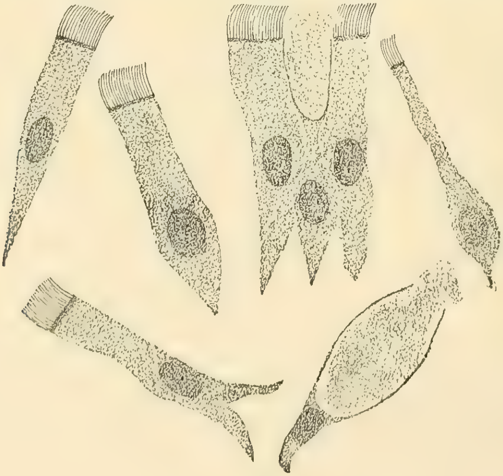


FIG. 18.—Isolated Ciliated Cells and Goblet Cells from Dog's Trachea. × 700.

Modified Forms of Epithelium.

(*a*) *Ciliated Epithelium.*—In this form of epithelium, fine hair-like processes—cilia—extend from the surface of the cell. These cilia vary from twelve to twenty-five for each cell and may be short as in the trachea or long as in the epididymis. There is usually a well-defined cuticula from which the cilia appear to spring. According to Apáthy, the cilia extend through the cuticulæ, giving to the latter a striated appearance (Fig. 19). Just beneath the cuticula each cilium shows a swelling—the *basal granule.* Lenhossék considers these granules centrosomes. The intracellular extensions of the cilia converge toward the nucleus, and are continuous with the reticular or fibrillar structure of the cell body. The motion of cilia is wave-like, the wave always passing in the same direction. Various explanations of ciliary motion have been given. The most plausible is that it is due to the contractile powers of the spongioplasm.

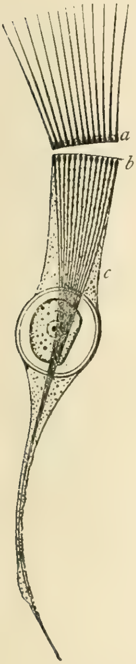


FIG. 19.

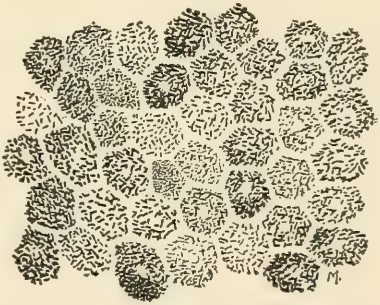


FIG. 20.

FIG. 19.—Ciliated Epithelial Cell from Intestine of Mollusk (Engelmann), showing, *a*, cuticula, *b*, basal granules, and *c*, intracellular extensions of cilia.

FIG. 20.—Pigmented Epithelial Cells from the Human Retina (× 350), showing different degrees of pigmentation. The clear spots in the centres of the cells represent the unstained nuclei.

Cilia are confined to the surface cells of simple columnar and stratified columnar epithelium.

Simple columnar ciliated epithelium occurs in the smaller bronchi, uterus, Fallopian tubes and central canal of the spinal cord.

Stratified columnar ciliated epithelium occurs in large bronchi, trachea, larynx, nose, Eustachian tube, vas deferens and epididymis.

(*b*) *Pigmented Epithelium* consists of cells the cytoplasm of which contains brown or black pigment. It is usually present in the form of spherical or rod-like granules. Examples of it are seen in the pigmented epithelium of the retina and in the pigmented cells of the deeper layers of the epidermis in colored races (Fig. 20).

(*c*) *Glandular Epithelium.*—This forms the essential or secreting element of glands and is mostly of the simple cylindrical variety. The different kinds of glands and their epithelia will be described among the organs.

(*d*) *Neuro-epithelium.* — This is a highly specialized form of epithelium which occurs in connection with the end organs of nerves, under which heading it will be described.

3. Mesothelium and Endothelium.

While recognizing the present tendency toward considering those tissues formerly classified as endothelium, as simple squamous epithelium, the correctness of the newer classification still remains *sub judice* and, so long as this is the case, we prefer to retain the certainly much more convenient classification of Minot, which coincides

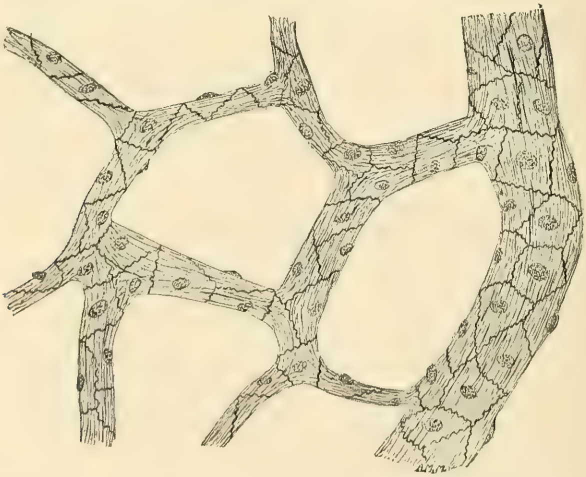


FIG. 21.—Mesothelium from Omentum of Dog Treated according to Technic 7, p. 66. × 350. Black wavy lines indicate the intercellular cement substance. The mesothelial cells cover the strands of connective tissue, the fibres of the latter being visible through the transparent cell bodies.

with his subdivision of the mesoblast. According to this classification, for those tissues which resemble epithelium in structure and which are derived from the mesenchyme, the term *endothelium* is

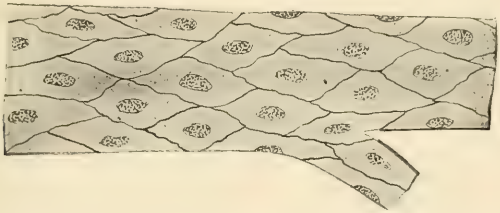


FIG. 22.—The Endothelium of a Small Blood-vessel. Silver nitrate stain. × 350.

retained. The term *mesothelium* is used for those tissues which resemble epithelium but are derived from the mesothelial layer.

Mesothelium and endothelium are similar in structure. Each consists of thin flattened cells with clear or slightly granular protoplasm and bulging oval or spherical nuclei. The edges of the cells are usually wavy or serrated. The cells are united by an extremely small amount of intercellular "cement" substance, which is usually indistinguishable except by the use of a special technic.

Endothelium forms the walls of the blood and lymph capillaries and lines the entire blood-vessel and lymph-vessel systems.

Mesothelium lines the body cavities—the pleura, the pericardium and the peritoneum.

TECHNIC.

1. Simple Squamous Epithelium.—That of the lung may be demonstrated by injecting with silver solution (technic 1, p. 25) through a bronchus and then immersing the tissue in the same solution. The lungs of young kittens furnish especially satisfactory material.

2. Simple Columnar Epithelium.—A piece of small intestine, human or animal, is pinned out flat on cork and fixed in formalin-Müller's fluid (technic 5, p. 6). Sections are cut perpendicular to the surface, stained with hæmatoxylin and eosin (technic 1, p. 18) and mounted in glycerin, tinged with eosin (page 20). Little processes known as villi project from the inner surface of the intestine. These are covered by a single layer of columnar epithelial cells. The cuticulæ and cuticular membrane are usually well shown. Among the simple cylindrical cells are seen large clear or slightly blue-stained cells. These are known from their secretion as mucous cells, from their shape as goblet cells, and are classed as modified epithelium of the glandular type. These should be studied in their various stages of secretion, from the cell in which only a small amount of mucus is present near the outer margin, to the cell whose protoplasm is almost wholly replaced by mucus. Some cells will be found in which the surface has ruptured and the mucus can be seen pouring out of the cell.

3. Stratified Squamous Epithelium.—The cornea furnishes good material for the study of stratified squamous epithelium. An eye is removed from a freshly killed animal and the cornea cut out and fixed in formalin-Müller's fluid. Sections are cut perpendicular to the surface, and treated as in the preceding. The cells are laid down in from six to eight layers. The œsophagus may be used instead of the cornea, its mucous membrane being lined by a somewhat thicker epithelium.

4. Transitional Epithelium.—This is conveniently studied in the mucous membrane of the bladder. Technic same as 2, p. 65.

5. Stratified Columnar Epithelium.—A portion of trachea from a recently killed animal is treated according to same technic. The surface cells are ciliated so that this specimen also serves to demonstrate that type of modified epithelium. Isolated cells or clumps of cells may be obtained from the trachea in the manner described in technic 3, p. 50.

6. Pigmented Epithelium.—Fix a freshly removed eye in formalin-Müller's fluid (page 6). After hardening, cut transversely and remove the vitreous and retina. The pigmented cells remain attached to the inner surface of the chorioid, and may be removed by gently scraping. They may be preserved and mounted in glycerin.

7. Mesothelium.—Part of the omentum of a recently killed animal is removed and washed in water, care being taken not to injure the tissue in handling. The water is then replaced by a 1 to 500 aqueous solution of silver nitrate. After half an hour the specimen is removed from the silver, washed in water, transferred to 80-per-cent alcohol and placed in the sunlight until it becomes of a light brown color. It is then preserved in fresh 80-per-cent alcohol. The nuclei may be stained with hæmatoxylin (stain 5, p. 15). The specimen should be mounted in glycerin. Wavy black lines indicate the intercellular cement substance. The nuclei of the mesothelial cells are stained blue, those of the underlying connective-tissue cells a paler blue. It must be borne in mind in studying this specimen that the strands or trabeculæ of the omentum are not composed of mesothelium, but of fibrous connective tissue, and that the flat mesothelial cells merely lie upon the surface of the connective-tissue strands.

8. Endothelium may be demonstrated by removing the bladder from a recently killed frog, distending it with air and subjecting it to the same technic. By this means the intercellular substance of the endothelium of the blood-vessels of the bladder wall is stained and the outlines of the cells are thus shown.

CHAPTER III.

THE CONNECTIVE TISSUES.

Histogenesis. — All of the connective tissues, with the single exception of the connective tissue peculiar to the nervous system (neuroglia), are developed from the sub-layer of the mesoblast known as the mesenchyme.

The mesoderm consists at first wholly of round or polygonal cells. With the division of the mesoderm into its three sub-layers, the cells of the mesenchyme gradually become more and more separated from one another by the interposition of an intercellular substance. This intercellular substance is a product of the cells and is at first homogeneous or granular. The appearance presented at this stage is that of irregular, branching, anastomosing cells, lying in a semi-fluid ground substance. This is *embryonic connective tissue.*

With further changes in both cells and intercellular substance, but mainly in the latter, embryonic connective tissue differentiates to form the adult types of connective tissue.

General Characteristics.—A characteristic of the connective tissues, with the exception of adenoid tissue and fat, is the predominance of the intercellular substance. In this respect the connective tissues differ markedly from epithelial tissues. Moreover, with the same exception, it is the intercellular substance and not the cells which determines the physical character of the tissue. The division of connective tissue into its various sub-groups is also based upon structural differences in the intercellular substance.

Classification. — The connective tissues may be classified as follows, although embryonal tissue and mucous tissue are essentially developmental forms :

1. Fibrillar connective tissue, including areolar tissue.
2. Elastic tissue.
3. Embryonal tissue and mucous tissue.
4. Reticular tissue.
5. Lymphatic or adenoid tissue.

6. Fat tissue.
7. Cartilage.
    - (*a*) Hyaline.
    - (*b*) Elastic.
    - (*c*) Fibrous.
8. Bone tissue.
9. Neuroglia.

I. Fibrillar Connective Tissue.

Fibrillar connective tissue, also known as *white fibrous tissue* or *connective tissue proper*, consists of cells and fibres lying in a basement or ground substance. The elements of fibrillar tissue may be classified as follows:

1. Cells..................
    - (*a*) Fixed cells.
    - (*b*) Plasma cells.
    - (*c*) Mast cells.
2. Intercellular substance.
    - (*a*) Fibres
        - white or fibrillated,
        - yellow or elastic.
    - (*b*) Ground or basement substance.

1. **Connective-Tissue Cells.**—(*a*) *Fixed connective-tissue cells* are frequently the only connective-tissue cells seen in ordinary preparations. They are flat, irregularly stellate cells with many branches (Fig. 25). The nucleus lies in the thickest part of the cell. The cytoplasm is usually clear or slightly granular. Each cell lies in a *cell space* or *lacuna*. From the cell spaces minute channels (*canaliculi*) extend in all directions to unite with canaliculi from adjoining spaces (Fig. 24). Delicate cell processes extend into the canaliculi and there anastomose with processes from other cells (Fig. 25). Owing to the extreme sensitiveness of the protoplasm of the connective-tissue cell to most fixatives, its usual appearance is that of a minute amount of cytoplasm shrunken down around a nucleus. The so-called *wandering cells* are not properly a part of connective-tissue, being merely amœboid white blood cells (see page 90) which have passed out from the vessels into the tissues. They are not peculiar to connective tissue, being found in other tissues, *e.g.*, in epithelium.

(*b*) *Plasma Cells.*—These cells occur mainly near the smaller blood-vessels. Their protoplasm is finely granular and stains with basic aniline dyes. They frequently contain vacuoles. Small plasma cells are about the size of leucocytes, which they closely resemble. Large plasma cells are larger than leucocytes and richer in protoplasm.

(*c*) *Mast cells* are spherical or irregular-shaped cells, found like the preceding in the neighborhood of the blood-vessels. Their protoplasm contains coarse granules which stain intensely with basic aniline dyes. They are believed by some investigators to be connected with the formation of fat; by others to represent a stage in the development of the fixed connective-tissue cell.

Connective-tissue cells may be pigmented (Fig. 26). In such cells the cytoplasm is more or less filled with brown or black pigment granules. In man pigmented connective tissue-cells occur in the skin, chorioid and iris.

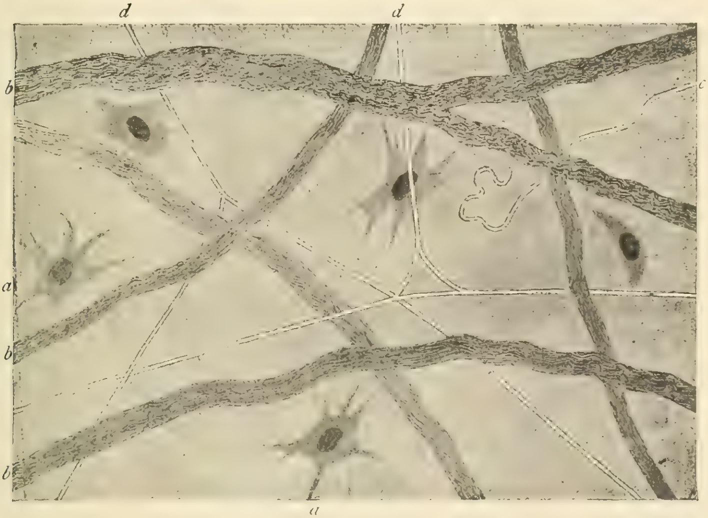


FIG. 23.—Fibrillar Connective Tissue (Areolar Type) from Subcutaneous Tissue of Rabbit (technic 2, p. 74). × 500. *a*, Fixed connective-tissue cell; *b*, fibrillated fibres; *c*, elastic fibre with curled broken end; *d*, elastic fibres showing Y-shaped branching.

2. **The Intercellular Substance.**—(*a*) *Fibres.* *White* or *fibrillated fibres* are bundles of extremely fine fibrillæ (0.5 μ in diameter) (Fig. 23). The fibrillæ lie parallel to one another and are united by a small amount of cement substance. The fibrillæ do not branch. The fibre bundles, on the other hand, branch dichotomously and anastomose. White fibres, on boiling, yield *gelatin.*

Yellow or *elastic fibres* are apparently homogeneous, highly refractive fibres, varying in diameter from 1 to 10 μ (Fig. 23). They branch and anastomose, forming networks. The smaller fibres are round on cross section, the larger flattened or hexagonal (Figs. 28 and 29). Their elasticity is easily demonstrated in teased specimens by curling of the broken ends of the fibres (Fig. 23). On boiling they yield elastin. Although, when subjected to the usual technic, elastic fibres appear homogeneous, they are probably composed of a thin sheath or membrane, enclosing a granular substance, *elastin.* The latter stains intensely with magenta, the sheath remaining unstained.

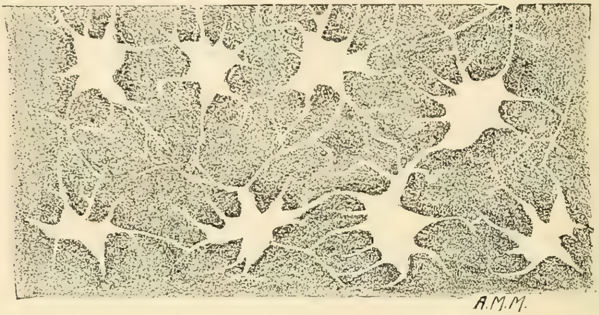


FIG. 24.—Section of Human Cornea Cut Tangential to Surface. × 350. (Technic 9, p. 75.) Connective-tissue Cell Spaces (Lacunæ) and Anastomosing Canaliculi, white; whole Intercellular Substance (Ground Substance and Fibres), dark.

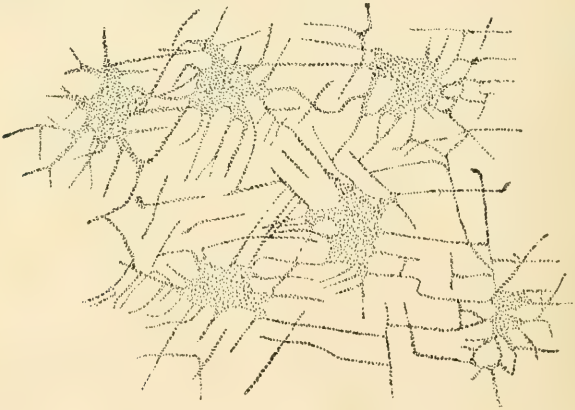


FIG. 25.—Section of Human Cornea Cut Tangential to Surface. × 350. (Technic 8, p. 75.) Connective-tissue Cells with Anastomosing Processes, stained; Intercellular Substance (Ground Substance and Fibres), unstained.

In addition to the white fibres and elastic fibres above described, so-called "reticular" fibres are frequently present in fibrillated connective tissue. (See p. 76.)

(*b*) *Basement* or *ground substance* occurs in extremely minute amounts between the individual fibrillæ of the white fibres, where it acts as a cement substance. The same material also forms the basement or ground substance in which the connective-tissue cells and fibres lie (Fig. 24). Difficulty in seeing this ground substance is due to its transparency. It may be demonstrated by staining with silver nitrate (see technic 9, p. 75).

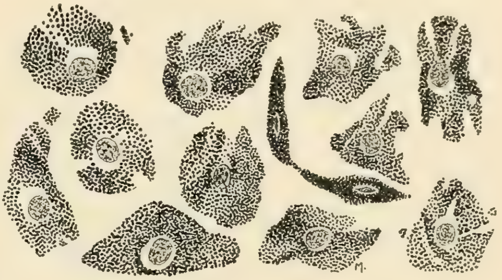


FIG. 26.—Pigmented Connective-tissue Cells from Chorioid Coat of Human Eye. × 350. (Technic 7, p. 75.)

Much variation exists in regard to the proportions of the different elements. This gives rise to variations in the physical characteristics of the tissue. When fibres predominate over cells and ground substance, the tissue is dense and hard and is known as *dense fibrous tissue*. The terms *fine* connective tissue and *coarse* connective tissue designate the character of the fibres. When many cells are present, the tissue is softer and is known as *cellular* connective tissue.

According to the arrangement of the white fibres, fibrous connective tissue is subdivided as follows:

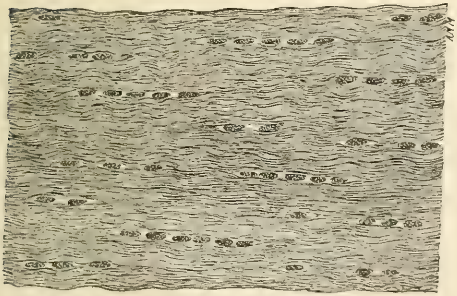


FIG. 27.—Longitudinal Section of Tendon from Frog's Gastrocnemius. × 250. The nuclei of the flattened cells are seen lying in rows between the connective-tissue fibres.

(1) AREOLAR OR LOOSE CONNECTIVE TISSUE.—In this the fibres are irregular, running in all directions and interlacing, leaving between them meshes or *areolæ* (Fig. 23).

(2) FORMED CONNECTIVE TISSUE.—In this the fibres all run in approximately the same direction, and are united by a small amount of ground substance (Fig. 27). There are but few cells and these are flattened out by pressure and lie between the fibres, their long axes corresponding to the direction of the fibres. This arrangement of tissue elements forms a firm, dense tissue,

such as is found in tendons and ligaments. Formed connective tissue also occurs as anastomosing networks of fibres, as, *e.g.*, in the omentum (page 64). It should be noted that between dense "formed" connective tissue on the one hand and loose "areolar" tissue on the other, all gradations exist.

Regarding the development of the connective-tissue fibrils, there are two theories: (1) According to one, they are developed directly from the protoplasm of the connective-tissue cells. The cells increase in length, and fine granules appear, which arrange themselves in rows in the cytoplasm; these granules unite to form fibrils. Such cells are known as *fibroblasts*, and their fibrils are the forerunners of the intercellular fibrils of connective tissue. A modification of this theory derives the fibrils from the peripheral portion of the cell—the exoplasm. (2) According to the other theory the fibrils are developed from the matrix, minute granules first becoming arranged in rows and later uniting to form fibrils.

Regarded as opposing theories, there is in reality but little antagonism between them. There is no doubt as to the intercellular matrix being a product of the cell. Whichever theory, therefore, is accepted, the entire intercellular substance, fibres and ground substance are ultimate derivatives of the cell. Recent studies, especially those of Mall, are confirmatory of the second of the theories given above. He maintains that the connective-tissue fibrils, both white and elastic, are derivatives of an active intercellular matrix, which latter is a direct product of the cell.

Two similar theories exist as to the development of elastic fibres, a cellular theory and an extracellular theory. According to some advocates of the cellular theory, the elastic fibres are derived from the exoplasm; according to others, from the cytoplasm immediately surrounding the nucleus. Recent researches favor the extracellular theory. Mall describes extremely minute fibrils in the ground substance, which later develop into elastic fibres.

2. Elastic Tissue.

Elastic fibres occurring in fibrous connective tissue have been described. When the elastic fibres are greater in amount than the white fibres, the tissue is known as *elastic tissue*. Almost pure elastic tissue is found in the ligamentum nuchæ of quadrupeds. Here the fibres are coarse and held together by a small amount of cement substance. A few white fibres and connective-tissue cells are also present (Figs. 28 and 29).

Elastic tissue may be arranged as thin *membranes*, as, *e.g.*, in the walls of blood-vessels. These membranes are usually described as composed of a dense mass of flat, ribbon-like elastic fibres, which interlace in such a manner as to leave openings in the membrane. Hence the term "fenestrated membrane." They have been recently described as consisting of a central layer composed of elastin, staining with magenta, and on either side a thin, transparent sheath unstained by magenta. This is seen to correspond to Mall's description of the structure of the elastic fibre. Only the middle of these layers is fenestrated.

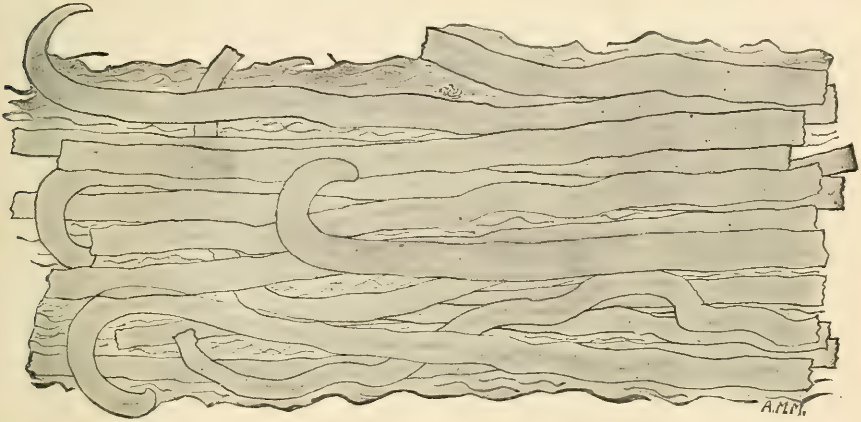


FIG. 28.—Coarse Elastic Fibres from Ligamentum Nuchæ. × 500. Teased specimen. (Technic 10, p. 75.)

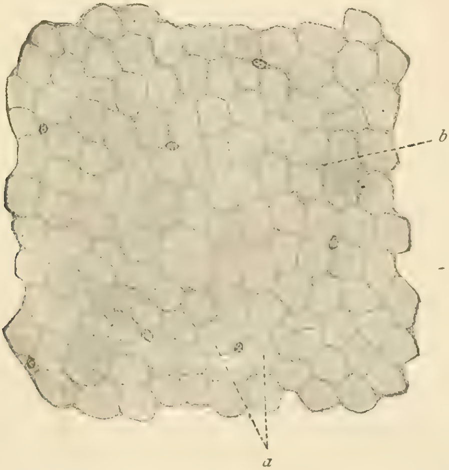


FIG. 29.—Cross Section of Coarse Elastic Fibres from Ligamentum Nuchæ. × 500. (Technic 10, p. 75). *a*, Elastic fibres; *b*, white fibrous tissue and cement substance. The nuclei are the nuclei of fixed connective-tissue cells.

TECHNIC.

1. Areolar Tissue, to show White and Elastic Fibres.—Remove a bit of the subcutaneous tissue, as free from fat as possible, from a recently killed animal. Place it upon a mounting slide and with teasing needles quickly spread it out in a thin layer. During this manipulation the specimen should be kept moist by breathing on it. Put a drop of sodium chlorid solution upon the specimen and cover.

As the specimen is unstained, a small diaphragm should be used for the microscopic examination.

The white fibres are straight or wavy, are crossed in all directions, and are longitudinally striated. The elastic fibres have been stretched and show as sharp lines with curled ends where the fibres are broken.

Place a drop of hydric acetate, 1-per-cent aqueous solution, at one side of the cover and a bit of filter paper at the other side. The filter paper absorbs the salt solution, which is replaced by the hydric acetate. The latter causes the white fibres to swell and become indistinct while the elastic fibres show more plainly.

2. Areolar Tissue, to show Cells and Elastic Fibres.—Prepare second specimen of areolar tissue in the same manner as the preceding. Instead of mounting in salt solution, allow it to become perfectly dry, then stain in the following solution:

Gentian violet saturated aqueous solution	40 c.c.
Water	60 c.c.

Wash thoroughly, dry, and mount in balsam.

The nuclei of the fixed connective-tissue cells are stained violet. Their delicate cell bodies show as an irregular haze around the nuclei. Both nuclei and cell bodies appear cut in all directions by the stretched elastic fibres. Wandering cells (leucocytes) may usually be seen. Plasma cells are frequently not demonstrable, and mast cells are only occasionally present. The elastic fibres are stained violet. The white fibres are almost unstained.

3. Formed Connective Tissue.—Fibrous tissue arranged in the form of a network may be seen in the specimen of omentum (technic 7, p. 66).

4. Densely formed connective tissue may be studied in tendon. Cut through the skin of the tail of a recently killed mouse about half an inch from the tip and break the tail at this point. By pulling on the end of the tail this portion may now be separated from the rest of the tail, carrying with it long delicate tendon fibrils, which have been pulled out of their sheaths. This should be immediately examined in salt solution, using the high power and a small diaphragm. The fibrils are seen arranged in parallel bundles.

5. Place a drop of hydric acetate (2-per-cent aqueous solution) at one side of the cover-glass, absorbing the salt solution from the opposite side by means of filter paper. The fibres swell and become almost invisible, while rows of connective-tissue cells (tendon cells) can now be seen. The cells may be stained by allowing a drop of hæmatoxylin or of carmine solution to run under the cover. After the cells are sufficiently stained, the excess of stain is removed by washing and the specimen mounted in glycerin.

6. Fix a small piece of any good-sized tendon in formalin-Müller's fluid (page 6). After a week, harden in alcohol, embed in celloidin, and make longitudinal

and transverse sections. Stain strongly with hæmatoxylin, followed by picro-acid fuchsin (page 16). Mount in balsam.

7. Pigmented connective-tissue cells are most conveniently obtained from the chorioid coat of the eye. Fix an eye in formalin-Müller's fluid (see page 5), cut in half, remove chorioid and retina and pick of the dark shreds which cling to the outer surface of the chorioid and inner surface of the sclera. These may be transferred directly to glycerin, in which they are mounted, or the bits of tissue may be first stained with hæmatoxylin (page 14). In addition to the pigmented cells should be noted the ordinary fixed connective-tissue cells which lie among them. Only the nuclei of these cells can be seen.

8. Connective-Tissue Cells to show Anastomosing Processes.—Stain a cornea with gold chlorid (see page 25). Sections are made tangential to the convex surface and are mounted in glycerin.

9. Connective-tissue cell spaces (lacunæ) and their anastomosing canaliculi may be demonstrated by staining a cornea with silver nitrate (see page 25). The silver stains the ground substance of the cornea, leaving the lacunæ and canaliculi unstained. The relation which this picture bears to the preceding should be borne in mind (see Figs. 24 and 25).

10. Coarse elastic fibres may be obtained from the ligamentum nuchæ, which consists almost wholly of elastic tissue. A piece of the ligament is fixed in saturated aqueous solution of picric acid and hardened in alcohol. A bit of this tissue is teased apart on a glass slide in a drop of pure glycerin, in which it is also mounted. Before putting into glycerin, the specimen may be stained with picro-acid-fuchsin. This intensifies the yellow of the elastic fibres and brings out in red the fibrillar connective tissue. Pieces of the ligament fixed and hardened in the same manner may be embedded in celloidin and cut into longitudinal and transverse sections. These stained with picro-acid-fuchsin show well the relation of the coarse elastic fibres (yellow) to the more delicate fibrous tissues (red).

3. Embryonal and Mucous Tissue.

Embryonal and mucous tissue are essentially developmental forms and represent early differentiations from the general parent type. They consist according to their age of oval, fusiform, or irregular branching and anostomosing cells, lying in a matrix, which is just beginning to show evidences of a fibrillar structure. By some histologists the term "embryonic" connective tissue is limited to the stage of fusiform cells with slightly fibrillar matrix (Fig. 30), the term "mucous" tissue being applied to an embryonic form of connective tissue in which irregular branching and anastomosing cells lie in a slightly fibrillated matrix which gives the chemical reaction for mucin (Fig. 31).

Embryonal tissue is not found in the adult, while mucous tissue has only a very restricted distribution.

Much variation exists as to the shape and size of the cells in embryonal and mucous tissue. This is due to the fact that these cells represent transition stages in the development of the adult connective-tissue cell. Thus in embryonic connective tissue, while most of the cells are fusiform, one finds spherical and oval cells and some

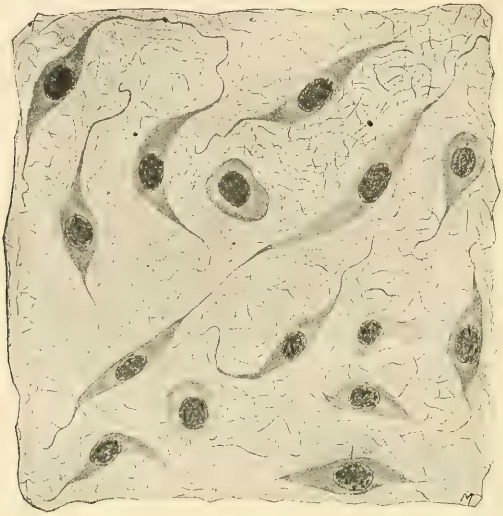


FIG. 30.—Embryonal Connective Tissue from Axilla of Five-inch Fœtal Pig. × 600. (Technic 1, p. 77.) Various shaped connective-tissue cells are seen lying in a slightly fibrillated matrix.

few cells which are triangular or stellate. The same holds true of mucous tissue, where, while most of the cells are of the triangular or stellate variety, round, oval and fusiform cells are also present.

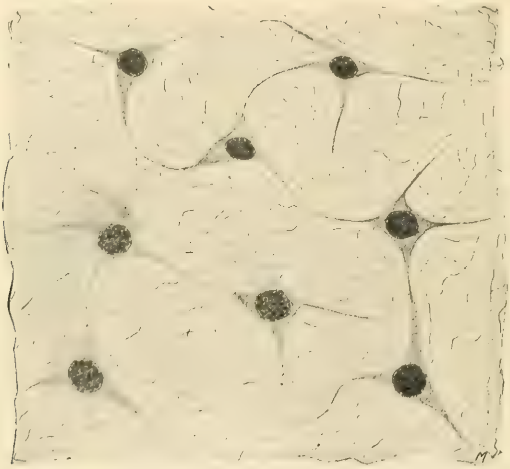


FIG. 31.—Mucous Connective Tissue from Umbilical Cord of Eight-inch Fœtal Pig. × 600. (Technic 2, p. 77.)

TECHNIC.

1. Embryonal Tissue.—Bits of the subcutaneous tissue from the axilla or groin of a five-inch fœtal pig are fixed in Zenker's fluid (technic 9, p. 7), hardened in alcohol and stained for twelve hours in alum-carmine (technic *b*, p. 16). They are then transferred to eosin-glycerin, in which they are teased and mounted. Note the intercellular substance, that it is composed of delicate single fibrils interlacing in all directions with no arrangement into bundles, as in adult tissue, and that there is as yet no differentiation into two kinds of fibres.

2. Mucous Tissue.—The umbilical cord of a four or five months human fœtus, or of a nine-inch fœtal pig is fixed in formalin-Müller's fluid (page 6), hardened in alcohol, and transverse sections stained with hæmatoxylin-eosin (technic 1, p. 17) and mounted in eosin-glycerin. Note the central blood-vessels with their thick walls and the surface epithelium. The mucous tissue is best studied near the surface just beneath the epithelium.

4. Reticular Tissue.

Reticular connective tissue is a form of fibrillar connective tissue. It consists of small bundles of extremely delicate white fibrillæ. These interlace in all directions and form a network enclosing spaces of various sizes and shapes (Fig. 32). The cells are flat and wrap themselves around the bundles of fibrils. This led to the belief that reticular connective tissue was composed wholly of anastomosing cells.[1] Later, when the underlying fibrillar basis was understood, the overlying cells were referred to as "epithelioid" cells, the designation being based upon morphological characteristics. With the recogni-

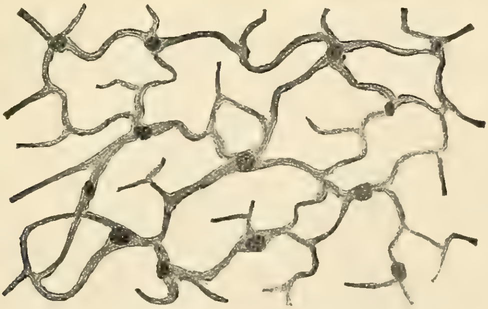


FIG. 32.—Reticular Connective Tissue from Human Lymph Node. × 600. (Technic, p. 79.) The nuclei belong to flat connective-tissue cells which *lie upon* the fibres of the reticulum, their cell bodies being invisible.

---

[1] In some lower animals and in the embryos of some higher animals, such wholly cellular reticular tissues are found.

tion of the impossibility of differentiating on a morphological basis between certain forms of epithelial and of connective-tissue cells, these cells were classified where their histogenesis properly places them, as connective-tissue cells.

Reticular connective tissue differs in chemical composition from both fibrous and elastic tissue. It does not yield gelatin in boiling and is not digested by pancreatin, while white fibres yield gelatin and are slowly digested by pancreatin. Reticular connective tissue forms the framework of adenoid tissue and of bone marrow. Fibrils giving

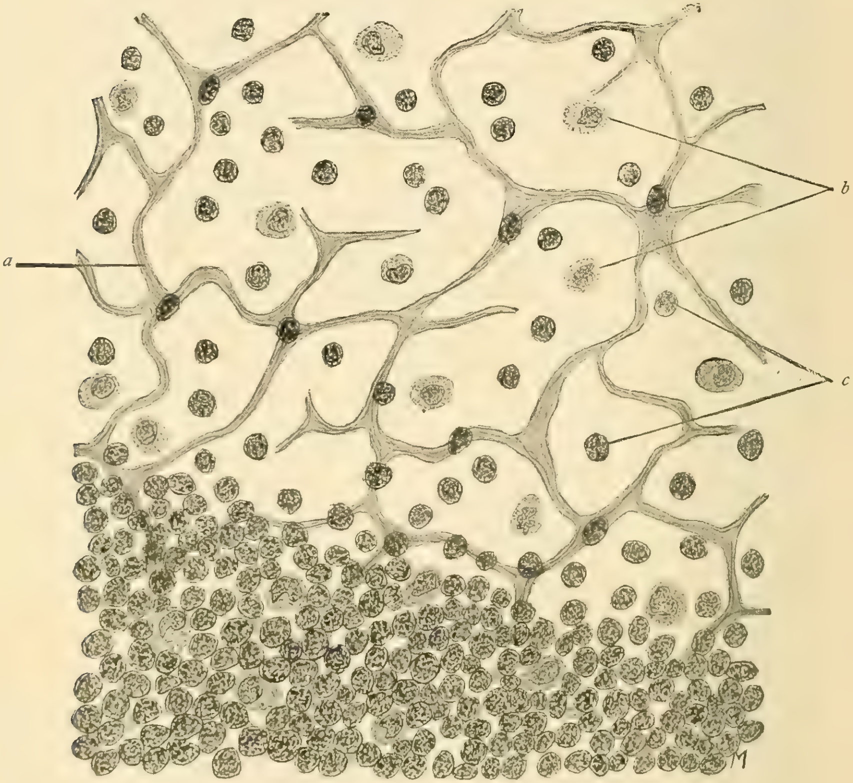


FIG. 33.—Diffuse and Dense (Circumscribed) Lymphatic Tissue from a Human Lymph Node. (Technic, p. 79.) *a*, Reticular connective tissue, in the meshes of which are suspended *b*, leucocytes, and *c*, lymphocytes. The reticular connective tissue is present also in the dense lymphatic tissue, but is not visible on account of the closely packed cells.

the chemical reaction of reticular tissue are associated with the fibrous and elastic-tissue framework of the lung, liver, kidney, and other organs.

5. Lymphatic Tissue.

Lymphatic tissue consists of *reticular connective tissue* and a special type of connective-tissue cells, *lymphoid cells*, filling the meshes of the reticulum. Lymphoid cells are small spherical cells. Each cell has a single nucleus which almost fills the cell. In lymphatic tissue the cell is a much more important factor in determining the character of the tissue than in most forms of connective tissue.

Lymphatic tissue may be *diffuse* or *circumscribed*. In *diffuse* lymphatic tissue (Fig. 33) the cells are not closely packed and there is no distinct demarcation between the lymphatic and the surrounding tissues. An example of diffuse lymphatic tissue is seen in the stroma of the mucous membrane of the gastro-intestinal canal. In *circumscribed* lymphatic tissue (Fig. 34) the cells are very closely packed, often completely obscuring the reticulum. There is also a quite distinct demarcation between the lymphatic and the surrounding tissues. Such a circumscribed mass of lymphatic tissue is known as a *lymph nodule*.

TECHNIC.

Fix a lymph node in formalin-Müller's fluid (technic 5, p. 6), and stain very thin sections with hæmatoxylin and picro-acid-fuchsin (technic 3, p. 17). In the lymph sinuses of the medulla the reticulum can usually be plainly seen. This specimen serves also for the demonstration of diffuse and compact lymphatic tissue, the former in the lymph sinuses of the medulla, the latter in the nodules of the cortex and in the medullary cords.

6. Fat Tissue.

Adipose tissue or *fat tissue* is a form of connective tissue in which most of the cells have become changed into fat cells. Fat tissue is peculiar among the connective tissues in that the cells and not the intercellular substance make up the bulk of and determine the character of the tissue. The adult fat cell is surrounded by a distinct cell *membrane*, and almost the entire cell is occupied by a single spherical droplet of fat (Figs. 36 and 37). The nucleus, flattened and surrounded by a small amount of cytoplasm, is usually found pressed against the cell wall (Fig. 37). This appearance of a distinct cell membrane enclosing the spherical fat droplet, with the nucleus and cytoplasm pressed into a crescent-shaped mass at one side, has given rise to the term "signet-ring cell." Fat cells which occur singly, or in small groups, or in the developing fat of young

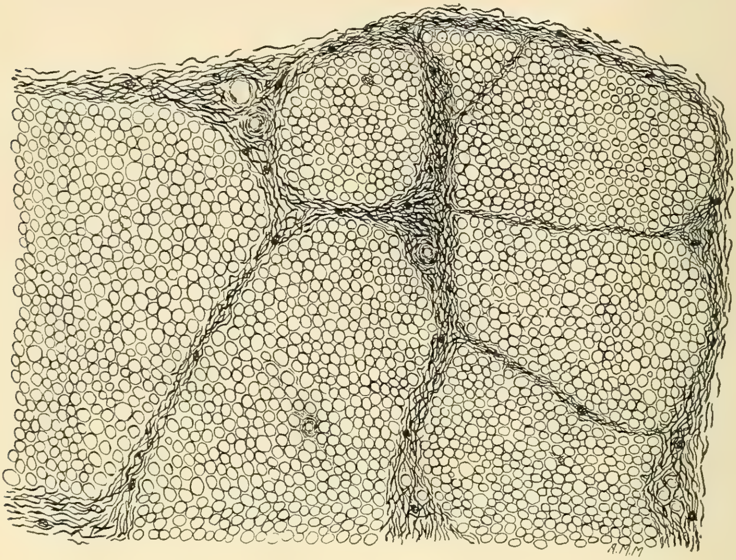


FIG. 35.—Fat Tissue from Human Subcutaneous Tissue (Child) to show Lobulation. × 25. (Technic 1, p. 83.)

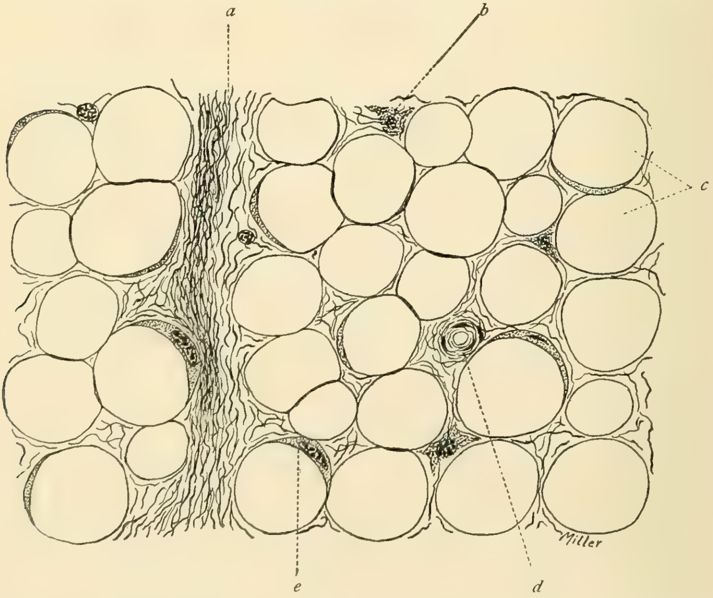


FIG. 36.—Young Fat from Human Subcutaneous Tissue (Child). × 175. (Technic 1, p. 83.) *a*, Interlobular connective tissue; *b*, fixed connective-tissue cell; *c*, fat cells; *d*, artery; *e*, nucleus of fat cell and remains of cytoplasm ("signet ring").

animals, are spherical (Fig. 36). In large masses of adult fat, the closely packed cells are subjected to pressure and are polyhedral (Fig. 37). Fat cells are usually arranged in groups or lobules, each lobule being separated from its neighbors by fibrillar connective tissue (Fig. 35). Adipose tissue is usually associated with loose fibrous tissue.

The appearance which adult fat presents can be understood only by reference to its histogenesis. Fat cells are developed directly from embryonic connective-tissue cells. In the human embryo they are first distinguishable as fat cells about the thirteenth week. The connective-tissue cells which are to become fat cells gather in groups in the meshes of the capillary network which marks the ending of a small artery. *Each group is destined to become an adult fat lobule* (Fig. 38).

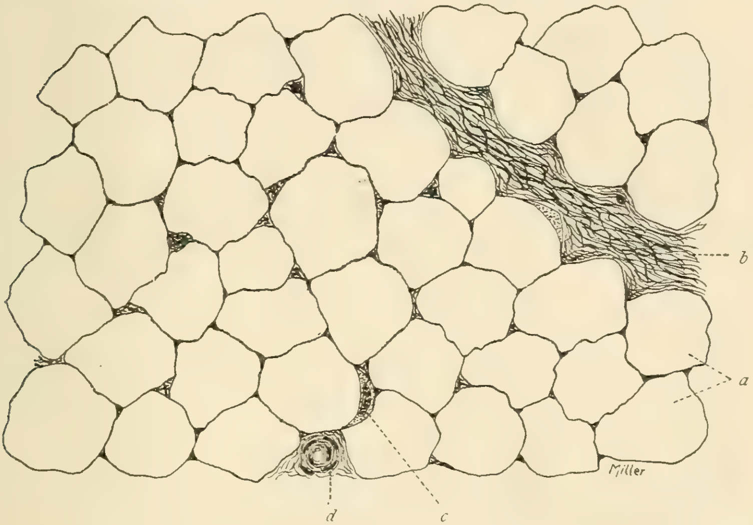


FIG. 37.—Adult Fat Tissue from Human Subcutaneous Tissue. × 175. (Technic 1, p. 83.) *a*, Fat cells; *b*, interlobular connective tissue; *c*, nucleus of fat cell and remains of cytoplasm ("signet ring"); *d*, artery.

Fat first appears as minute droplets in the cytoplasm of the embryonic connective-tissue cell (Fig. 39). These small droplets increase in number and finally coalesce to form a single larger droplet. This increases in size and ultimately almost wholly replaces the cytoplasm. In this way the nucleus and remaining cytoplasm are pressed to one side and come to occupy the inconspicuous position which they have in adult fat.

The blood supply of fat is rich and the adult lobule maintains its embryonic vascular relations, in that the vascular supply of each lobule is complete and independent. One artery runs to each lobule,

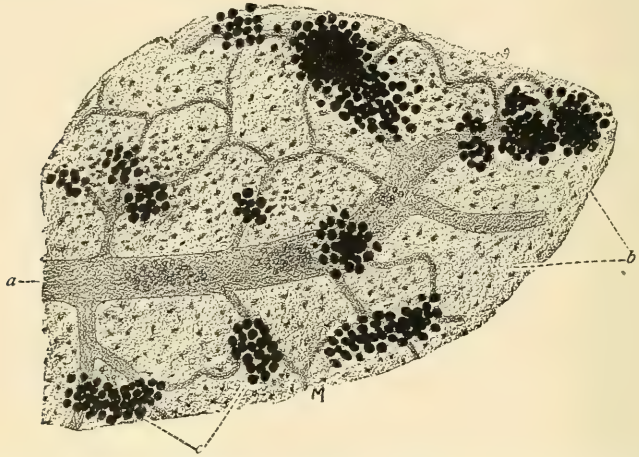


FIG. 38.—Developing Fat Tissue from Subcutaneous Tissue of Five-inch Fœtal Pig. × 75. (Technic 2, p. 83.) *a*, Arteriole breaking up into capillary network; *b*, embryonal connective tissue; *c*, embryonal fat lobules developing around blood-vessels.

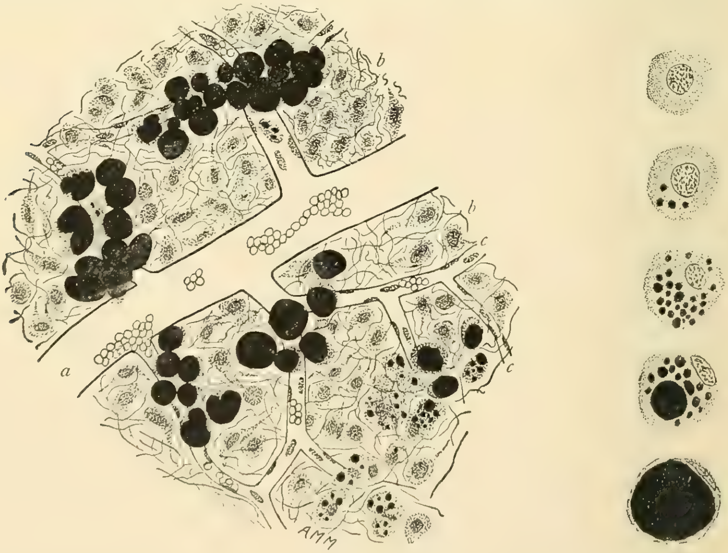


FIG. 39.—Developing Fat Tissue from Subcutaneous Tissue of Five-inch Fœtal Pig. (Technic 2, p. 83.) *a*, Arteriole breaking up into capillary network; *b*, embryonal connective tissue, embryonal cells from which fat cells are developing; *c*, capillaries. Fat droplets stained black. At the right are five individual cells showing stages of development from an embryonal cell to an adult fat cell.

where it breaks up into an intralobular capillary network, which in turn gives rise to the intralobular veins, usually two in number.

Fat is thus seen to be a connective tissue in which some of the cells have undergone specialization. There still remain, however, embryonal connective-tissue cells which are not destined to become fat cells, but which develop into cells and fibres of ordinary fibrous connective tissue. A few of these remain among the fat cells to become the delicate intralobular connective tissue seen in adult fat. The majority are, however, pushed to one side by the developing lobules, where they form the interlobular septa.

TECHNIC.

1. Fat Tissue.—Human subcutaneous fat as fresh as possible is fixed in formalin-Müller's fluid (technic 5, p. 6), hardened in alcohol and embedded in celloidin. Sections are stained with hæmatoxylin and picro-acid-fuchsin (technic 3, p. 18). The alcohol and ether of the celloidin remove the fat from the fat cells, leaving only the cell membranes. The fat gives the celloidin a milky appearance. Such celloidin does not cut well. The celloidin should, therefore, be changed until it ceases to turn white. The sections are cleared in oil of origanum or carbol xylol, and mounted in balsam. The fibrillar tissue is stained red by the fuchsin, and the protoplasm of the fat cell yellow by the picric acid.

2. Developing Fat Tissue.—Remove bits of tissue from the axilla or groin of a five-inch fœtal pig, or other fœtus of about the same development. Fix twenty-four hours in a 1-per-cent aqueous solution of osmic acid (technic 6, p. 26), wash thoroughly and mount in glycerin. A part of the tissue mounted should be thoroughly teased, the rest gently pulled apart. The teased portion will show the fat cells in various stages of development. The unteased part will usually show brownish blood-vessels and the grouping of fat cells around them, to form embryonic fat lobules. Note the developing connective tissue between the groups of fat cells. It is from this that the areolar tissue, which envelops and separates the lobules of adult fat, is developed.

7. Cartilage.

Cartilage is a form of connective tissue in which the ground substance is firm and dense and determines the physical character of the tissue. *Cartilage cells* are differentiated connective-tissue cells. While varying greatly in shape they are most frequently spherical or oval. Each cell lies in a cell space or *lacuna,* which it completely fills. The intercellular substance immediately surrounding a lacuna is frequently arranged concentrically, forming a sort of *capsule.* Fine canaliculi connecting the lacunæ are present in some of the lower animals and have been described in human cartilage. They can be demonstrated, however, in human cartilage, only by special methods, and probably represent artefacts.

Cartilage contains no blood-vessels, and in human cartilage no lymph channels have been positively demonstrated.

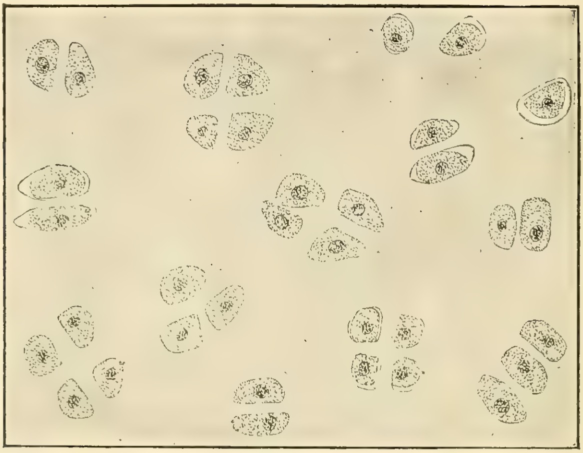


FIG. 40.—Hyaline Cartilage from Head of Frog's Femur. × 350. (Technic 1, p. 86.) Groups of cartilage cells in apparently homogeneous matrix.

Cartilage is subdivided according to the character of its intercellular substance into three varieties: (1) Hyaline, (2) elastic, (3) fibrous.

1. Hyaline Cartilage (Fig. 40).—The cells occur singly or in groups of two or multiples of two. An entire group of cells frequently lies in one lucuna surrounded by a single capsule. Such a group of cells has developed within its capsule from a single parent cell. In other cases delicate hyaline partitions separate the cells of a group. The cells are spherical or oval, with flattening of adjacent sides. The nucleus is centrally placed, and has a distinct intranuclear network and membrane. The cytoplasm is finely granular, and may contain droplets of fat, of glyco-

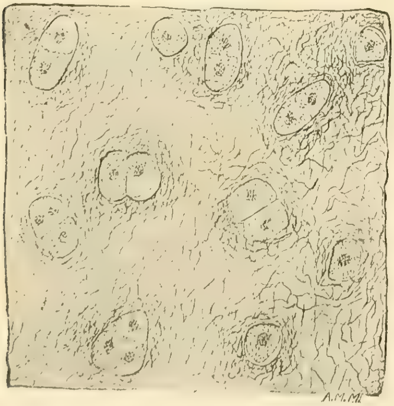


FIG. 41.—Elastic Cartilage from Dog's Ear. × 350. (Technic 2, p. 86.) Groups of cartilage cells in fibro-elastic matrix.

gen, or of both. Toward the perichondrium the arrangement of the cells in groups is less distinct. Here the cells are fusiform and parallel to the surface.

The intercellular matrix, when subjected to the usual technic, appears homogeneous. By the use of special methods, such, *e.g.*, as artificial digestion, this apparently structureless matrix has been shown to be made up of bundles of fibres, quite similar to those found in fibrous connective tissue.

Hyaline cartilage forms the articular cartilages of joints, the costal cartilages, and the cartilages of the nose, trachea, and bronchi. In the embryo a young type of hyaline cartilage, known as embryonal cartilage, forms the matrix in which most of the bones are developed.

2. **Elastic cartilage** (Fig. 41) resembles hyaline, but differs from the latter in that its hyaline matrix contains a large number of elastic fibres. These vary in size, many being extremely fine. The elastic fibres branch and run in all directions, forming a dense network of interlacing and anastomosing fibres.

Elastic cartilage occurs in the external ear, the Eustachian tube, the epiglottis, and in some of the laryngeal cartilages.

3. **Fibrous cartilage** (Fig. 42) is composed mainly of fibrillar connective tissue. The fibres may have a parallel arrangement, or may run in all directions. Cells are few, and are usually arranged in rows of from two to six, lying in elongated cell spaces between the fibre bundles.

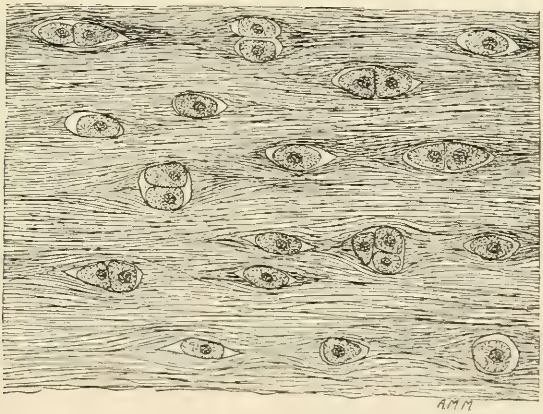


FIG. 42.—Fibrous Cartilage from Dog's Intervertebral Disc. × 350. (Technic 3, p. 86.) Groups of cartilage cells in matrix of fibrillar connective tissue.

Fibrous cartilage occurs in the inferior maxillary and sterno-clavicular articulations, in the symphysis pubis, and in the intervertebral discs.

Cartilage, except where it forms articular surfaces, is covered by a membrane, the *perichondrium.* This is composed of fibrillar connective tissue, and blends without distinct demarcation with the superficial layers of the cartilage.

Like the other connective tissues, cartilage develops from mesenchyme. It is at first *wholly cellular.* Each cell forms a *capsule* around itself, and by blending of these capsules are formed the first elements of the *intercellular matrix.* This increases in quantity and assumes the structural characteristics of one of the forms of cartilage. The white fibres of fibro-cartilage and the yellow fibres of elastic cartilage develop in the same manner as in fibrillar and elastic tissue.

TECHNIC.

(1) Hyaline Cartilage.—Remove a frog's femur and immediately immerse the head in saturated aqueous solution of picric acid. Cut sections tangential to the rounded head, keeping knife and bone wet with the picric-acid solution. As bone must be cut, a special razor kept for the purpose should be used. Cut sections as thin as possible. The first sections consist wholly of cartilage. As bone is reached, the cartilage is confined to a ring around the bone. Mount in the picric-acid solution, cementing the cover-glass immediately.

(2) Elastic Cartilage.—Remove a piece of cartilage from the ear and fix in formalin-Müller's fluid (technic 5, p.6). Stain sections strongly with hæmatoxylin, followed by picro-acid-fuchsin (technic 3, p. 18). Clear in carbol-xylol and mount in balsam. The capsules around the cartilage cells are thick and, as they usually retain some hæmatoxylin, can be readily seen. Note also the flattened cartilage cells near the surface, and the perichondrium.

(3) Fibro-cartilage.—Fix pieces of an intervertebral disc in formalin-Müller's fluid. Sections are stained either with hæmatoxylin-eosin or with hæmatoxylin-picro-acid-fuchsin and mounted in balsam.

8. Bone Tissue.

Bone is a form of connective tissue in which the matrix is rendered hard by the deposition in it of inorganic matter, chiefly the phosphate and the carbonate of calcium. These salts are not merely deposited in the matrix, but are intimately associated and combined with its histological structure. The intimacy of this association of the organic and inorganic constituents of bone is shown by the fact that, though the salts compose two-thirds of bone by weight, it is impossible to distinguish them by the highest magnification. Furthermore, if either the lime salts are dissolved out by means of acids (decalcification) or the organic matter removed by heating (calcination), the histological structure of the bone still remains.

Like the other connective tissues, bone consists morphologically of *cells* and *intercellular substance*.

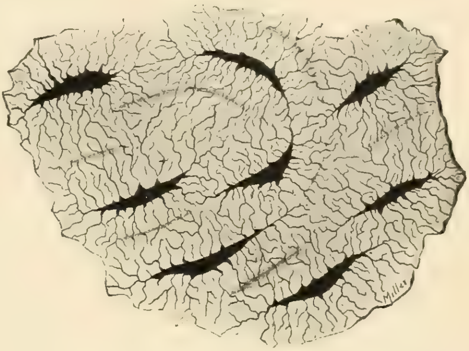


FIG. 43.—Bone Tissue showing Lacunæ and Canaliculi. × 700. (Technic 1, p. 87.)

Bone cells or *bone corpuscles* lie in distinct *cell spaces* or *lacunæ*. From the lacunæ pass off in all directions minute canals—*canaliculi*—which anastomose with canaliculi of neighboring lacunæ (Fig. 43). At the surface of bone these canaliculi open into the periosteal lymphatics. A complete system of canals is thus formed, which traverse the bone and serve for the passage of nutritive fluids. The bone cells themselves (Fig. 44) are flat, ovoid, nucleated cells, with numerous fine processes, which extend in all directions into the canaliculi. In young developing bones the processes of adjacent cells anastomose. In adult bone the processes extend but a short distance into the canaliculi, and probably do not anastomose.

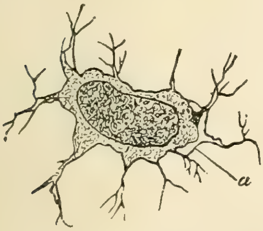


FIG. 44.—Bone Cell and Lacuna. (After Joseph.) At *a* the cell body has shrunken, allowing the outline of the lacuna to be seen.

The basement substance or matrix has a fibrous structure, closely resembling that of fibrillar connective tissue, and it is in this fibrillar matrix that the lime salts are deposited. The fibrils are held together by cement substance into bundles. In most bone the bundles are fine and arranged in layers or *lamellæ*. Less commonly the fibre bundles are coarser and have an irregular arrangement.

TECHNIC.

(1) For the study of the minute structure of bone a section of undecalcified or hard bone is required. Part of the shaft of one of the long bones is soaked for several days in water and all the soft parts are removed. It is then placed in equal

parts alcohol and ether to remove all traces of fat and thoroughly dried (the handle of a tooth or nail brush frequently furnishes good material and is already dried). Thin longitudinal and transverse sections are now cut out with a bone saw. One surface is next ground smooth, first on a glass plate, using emery and water, then on a hone. The specimen is now fastened polished side down on a block of wood or glass by means of sealing wax, and the other side polished smooth in the same manner as the first, the bone being ground as thin as possible. The sealing wax is removed by soaking in alcohol and the specimen looked at with the low power. If not thin enough, it is gently rubbed on a fine hone. It is then soaked in equal parts alcohol and ether, dried thoroughly and mounted in hard balsam. This is accomplished by placing a small bit of hard balsam on a slide, melting, pushing a bit of the bone into the hot balsam, covering and cooling as quickly as possible. The object of the hard balsam and quick cooling is to prevent the balsam running into the lacunæ and canaliculi and obscuring them by its transparency. The air imprisoned in the lacunæ and canaliculi causes them to appear black when viewed by reflected light.

(2) The structure of the bone cell is best studied in sections of decalcified bone which has first been carefully fixed. (See technic 1, p. 160.)

9. Neuroglia.

This peculiar form of connective tissue is confined entirely to the central nervous system and is most conveniently studied in connection with nervous tissue (see page 115).

CHAPTER IV.

THE BLOOD.

Blood is best considered as a tissue, the intercellular substance of which is fluid. This fluidity of the intercellular substance allows the formed elements or cells to move about freely, so that there is not the same definite and fixed relation between cells and intercellular substance as in other tissues.

The formed elements of the blood are: (1) Red blood cells (red blood corpuscles, erythrocytes); (2) white blood cells (colorless corpuscles—leucocytes); (3) blood platelets (thrombocytes).

1. **Red blood cells** (erythrocytes) (Fig. 45, *1*, *2*, *3*) are in man non-nucleated circular discs. Their average diameter is about 7.5 μ, their thickness 2 μ at the thin centre. They are biconcave, with rounded edges. Seen on the flat, the difference in thickness between centre and periphery is evidenced by the difference in refraction (Fig. 45, *1*). Seen on edge, the shape resembles that of a dumbbell (Fig. 45, *2*). Singly or in small numbers, red blood cells have a pale straw color. Redness of the cells is apparent only when they are seen in large numbers. If fresh blood be allowed to stand for a moment, the red cells are seen to adhere to one another by their flat surfaces, forming rows or rouleaux (Fig. 45, *3*).

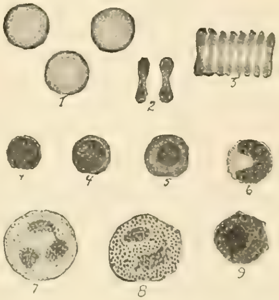


Fig. 45.—Cells from Human Blood. × 600. (Technic 2, p. 94.) *1*, Red blood cell seen on flat; *2*, red blood cell seen on edge; *3*, red blood cells forming rouleaux; *4*, *4*, small and large lymphocytes; *5*, mononuclear leucocyte; *6*, transitional leucocyte; *7*, polymorphonuclear leucocyte, containing neutrophile granules; *8*, polynuclear leucocyte, containing eosinophile granules; *9*, mononuclear leucocyte, containing basophile granules.

Subjected to the usual technic, the red blood cell appears homogeneous. By the use of special methods, this apparently homogeneous substance can be separated into (*a*) a color-bearing proteid—*hæmoglobin*, and (*b*) a *stroma*, the latter representing the protoplasm of the cell. It is the hæmoglobin which gives color to the corpuscles. Hæmoglobin is a complex proteid, and is held in solution or in suspension in the stroma.

The red blood cells are soft and elastic, and are easily twisted to accommodate themselves to the smallest capillaries.

The red blood cell is extremely susceptible to changes in the plasma. Thus even slight evaporation of the plasma results in osmosis between the now denser surrounding fluid and the contents of the cell. This causes fluid to leave the cell, with the result that the latter becomes spheroidal and irregularly shrunken, with minute knob-like projections from its surface. This is known as *crenation* of the red cell. The addition of water to blood, thus decreasing the specific gravity of the plasma, has the opposite effect, resulting in swelling of the cell. It also causes solution of the hæmoglobin, which leaves the cell, the latter then appearing colorless. Dilute acetic acid causes swelling and fading of the red cells, with the formation of prismatic crystals of hæmoglobin.

The red blood cells number about 5,000,000 per cubic millimetre of blood.

2. **White blood cells** (leucocytes) (Fig. 45, *4* to *9* inclusive) are colorless nucleated structures which have a generally spherical shape, but which are able to change their shape on account of their powers of amœboid movement. They have a diameter of from 5 to 10 μ, and are much less numerous than the red cells, the proportion being about one white cell to from three hundred to six hundred red cells. This proportion is, however, subject to wide variation.

Leucocytes may be classified as follows: (*a*) Lymphocytes; (*b*) mononuclear leucocytes; (*c*) transitional leucocytes; (*d*) polymorphonuclear or polynuclear leucocytes.

(*a*) LYMPHOCYTES (Fig. 45, *4*).—These vary in diameter from 5 to 8 μ, and are sometimes subdivided into small lymphocytes and large lymphocytes. The nucleus is spherical, stains deeply, and almost completely fills the cell, the cytoplasm being confined to a narrow zone around the nucleus. Lymphocytes constitute about 20 per cent of the white blood cells.

(*b*) MONONUCLEAR LEUCOCYTES (Fig. 45, *5* and *9*) are of about the same size as large lymphocytes. The nucleus, however, stains more faintly and is smaller, while the cytoplasm is greater in amount. From 2 per cent to 4 per cent of the white cells are mononuclear leucocytes.

(*c*) Transitional leucocytes (Fig. 45, *6*) occur in about the same numbers as the preceding, and are of about the same size. There is relatively more cytoplasm, and the nucleus, instead of being spherical, is crescentic or horseshoe or irregular in shape. These cells represent a transitional stage between the mononuclear and the polymorphonuclear and polynuclear varieties.

(*d*) Polymorphonuclear and polynuclear leucocytes (Fig. 45, *7*, *8*) constitute about 70 per cent of the white blood cells. Their size is about the same as that of the mononuclear form, but they are somewhat more irregular in shape. The appearance of the nucleus is characteristic. In the polymorphonuclear form the nucleus consists of several round, oval, or irregular nuclear masses connected with one another by cords of nuclear substance. These cords are frequently so delicate as to be distinguished with difficulty. The polynuclear form is derived from the polymorphonuclear by breaking down of the connecting cords, leaving several separate nuclei or nuclear segments.

The protoplasm of leucocytes is granular, and these granules present very definite reactions when subjected to certain aniline dyes.

Aniline dyes may be divided into acid, basic, and neutral, according to whether the coloring matter is an acid, a base, or a combination of an acid and a base.

Upon the basis of their reaction to these dyes, Ehrlich divides these granules into five groups, which he designates by the first five letters of the Greek alphabet.

α-Granules (*acidophile*, or, because the most common acid dye used is eosin, *eosinophile*—Fig. 45, *8*). These are coarse, sharply defined granules which stain intensely with acid dyes. Eosinophile cells are mainly of the polynuclear and polymorphonuclear types. More rarely transitional forms contain eosinophile granules. They are actively amœboid. Eosinophile cells constitute from 1 per cent to 4 per cent of the leucocytes of normal blood. Under certain pathological conditions the number of eosinophile leucocytes is greatly increased.

β-Granules (*amphophile*). These are very fine granules, which react to both acid and basic dyes. β-Granules are not found in normal human blood. They are found in the blood cells of some of the lower animals.

γ-Granules (*basophile*) are small granules which stain with basic dyes. They occur in the so-called Mastzellen (p. 65), which are of rare occurrence in normal blood. They are present in certain pathological conditions, and are found normally in the blood cells of some of the lower animals, and in some of the cells of connective tissue.

δ-Granules (*basophile*) are small granules, which stain with basic dyes (Fig. 45, *9*). They are found mainly in the mononuclear leucocytes.

ε-Granules (*neutrophile*) react to mixtures of acid and basic dyes. ε-Granules are the most common of all granules, occurring in most of the polynuclear and polymorphonuclear forms, being thus present in about 68 per cent of all white blood cells (Fig. 45, *7*).

Through their powers of amœboid movement leucocytes are able not only to pass through the walls of the vessels—*diapedesis*—and out into the tissues, but to wander about more or less freely in the tissues. Both inside and outside of the vessels the leucocytes have an important function to perform in the taking up and disposal of waste and foreign particles. This is known as *phagocytosis*, and the cells thus engaged are known as *phagocytes*. Phagocytosis plays an extremely important rôle both in normal and in certain pathological processes.

3. **The blood platelets** (thrombocytes) are minute round or oval bodies about 2 μ in diameter. They are clear (colorless), and are described by some as containing chromatin granules, by others as having distinct nuclear structures. They may be separated by the action of a 10-per-cent saline solution into two elements—one hyaline, the other granular. They are said to possess amœboid properties and to be concerned in the coagulation of the blood. They number about 200,000 per cubic millimetre.

Development of the Blood.

At an early stage of embryonic development certain mesoblastic cells of the area vasculosa, which surrounds the embryo, become arranged in groups known as *blood islands*. It is from these "islands" that both blood and blood-vessels develop. The peripheral cells arrange themselves as the primitive vascular wall, within which the central cells soon become free as the first *blood corpuscles*. By union of the blood islands, vascular channels are formed, inside of which are the developing *blood cells*. At this stage the formed elements of blood consist almost wholly of *nucleated red cells*. These undergo mitotic division and multiply within the vessels. Two views are held in regard to the manner in which the embryonic nucleated red cell gets rid of its nucleus in becoming the non-nucleated red cell of the adult. According to one the nucleus is absorbed within the cell; according to the other the nucleus, as a whole, is extruded.

In early embryonic life especially active proliferation of red cells occurs in the blood-vessels of the liver. This has led to the considering of the liver as a blood-forming organ. The liver cells themselves, however, take no actual part in the formation of blood cells, the blind pouch-like venous capillaries of the liver, with their slow-moving blood currents, merely furnishing a peculiarly suitable place for cellular proliferation. Before birth the splenic pulp and bone marrow become blood-forming organs. In the adult the bone marrow is probably under normal conditions the main if not the sole seat of red-cell formation.

During fœtal life the number of nucleated red cells constantly diminishes while the number of non-nucleated red cells increases. At birth there are usually but few nucleated red cells in the general circulation, although even in the adult they are always found in the red bone marrow.

The earliest embryonic blood contains no white cells.

The origin of the leucocytes is not well understood. It seems probable that the earliest leucocytes are derived like the red cells from the cells of the blood islands of the area vasculosa. Later they are formed in widely distributed groups of cells, lymph nodules, which are found in various tissues and organs. These cells enter the circulation as lymphocytes. According to some, the mononuclear, transitional, polymorphonuclear and polynuclear forms are later stages in the development of these cells. According to others, the polymorphonuclear and polynuclear forms are derived from the myelocytes of bone marrow.

The origin of the blood platelets is not known. It is possible that they represent extrusion products of the blood cells.

TECHNIC.

(1) Fresh Blood.—Prick a finger with a clean needle. Touch the drop of blood to the centre of the slide and cover quickly. For immediate examination of fresh

blood no further preparation is necessary. Evaporation may be prevented by cementing or by smearing a rim of vaseline around the cover-glass.

(2) Blood Smears.—From the same or a second prick take up a drop of blood along the edge of a mounting slide. Quickly place the edge against the surface of a second slide and draw the edge across the surface in such a manner as to leave a thin film or smear of blood. Allow the smear to become perfectly dry and stain by technic 7, p. 26. By this method the acidophile granules are stained red, basophile granules purple, and neutrophile granules a reddish-violet.

(3) Good results may also be obtained by fixing the dried smear for half an hour in equal parts alcohol and ether and staining first in a strong alcoholic solution of eosin, then in a rather weak aqueous solution of methylene blue.

CHAPTER V.

MUSCLE TISSUE.

WHILE protoplasm in general possesses the property of contractility, it is in *muscle tissue* that this property reaches its highest development. Moreover, in muscle this contractility is along definite directions, and is capable of causing motion, not only in the cell itself, but in structures outside the cell.

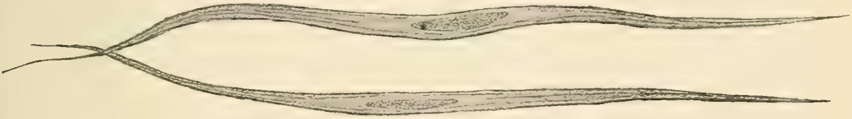


FIG. 46.—Isolated Smooth Muscle Cells from Human Small Intestine. × 400. (Technic 1, p. 103.) Rod-shaped nucleus surrounded by area of finely granular protoplasm; longitudinal striations of cytoplasm.

Muscle may be classified as: (1) Involuntary smooth muscle; (2) voluntary striated muscle; (3) involuntary striated muscle or heart muscle.

1. **Involuntary Smooth Muscle.**—This consists of long spindle-shaped cells (Fig. 46). The length of the cell varies from 30 to 200 μ, its width from 3 to 8 μ, except in the pregnant uterus, where the cells frequently attain a much greater size. At the centre of the cell, which

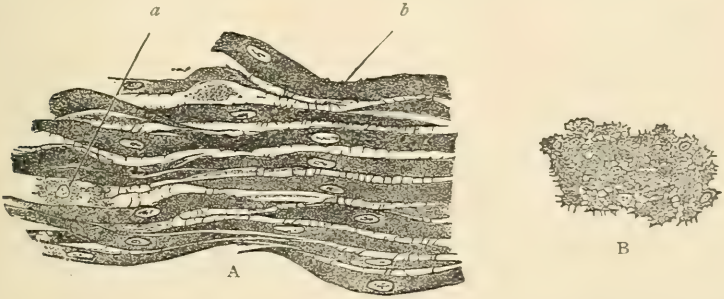


FIG. 47.—Apparent Intercellular Bridges of Smooth Muscle. A, From longitudinal section of intestine of guinea-pig; B, from transverse section of intestine of rabbit. × 420. *a*, Nerve cell; *b*, end of muscle cell. (Stöhr.)

is its thickest portion, is a long rod-shaped nucleus surrounded by an area of finely granular cytoplasm. The rest of the cytoplasm shows delicate longitudinal striations, which probably represent a longitudinal arrangement of the spongioplasm. The cells are united by a small amount of cement substance. Intercellular "bridges" similar to those connecting epithelial cells have been described (Fig. 47).

Smooth muscle cells may be arranged in layers of considerable thickness, the cells having a definite direction, as in the so-called "musculature" of the intestine (Fig. 48). In such masses of smooth muscle the cells are separated into groups or bundles by connective tissue. Smooth muscle cells may be arranged in a sort of network, the cells crossing and interlacing in all directions, as in the wall of the frog's bladder. Again, they may be scattered in small groups or singly among connective-tissue elements, as in the villi of the small intestine.

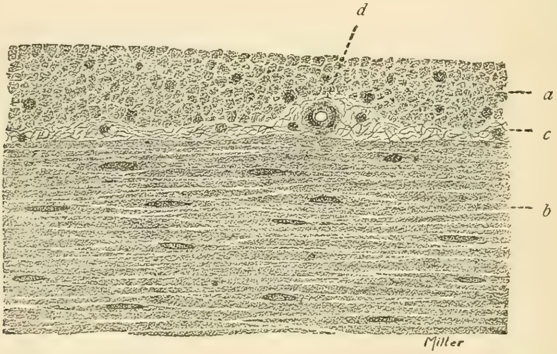


FIG. 48.—Smooth Muscle from Longitudinal Section of Cat's Small Intestine, showing Portions of Inner Circular and Outer Longitudinal Muscle Coats with Intervening Connective Tissue. × 350. (Technic 3, p. 104.) *a*, Transversely cut cells of inner circular layer; in comparatively few has the plane of section passed through the nucleus; *b*, longitudinally cut cells of outer longitudinal layer. In many of the cells the plane of section has not passed through the nucleus; *c*, intermuscular septum (connective tissue); *d*, small artery.

2. **Voluntary Striated Muscle.**—This consists of cylindrical fibres from 30 to 120 μ in length and from 10 to 60 μ in diameter.

Each muscle fibre consists of (*a*) a delicate sheath, the *sarcolemma*, enclosing (*b*) the *muscle substance proper*, in which lie (*c*) the *muscle nuclei*.

The *sarcolemma* is a clear, apparently structureless, membrane, which adheres so closely to the underlying muscle substance as to be indistinguishable in most preparations. In teased specimens it may frequently be seen at the torn ends of the fibres (Fig. 49).

The *muscle substance* consists of *fibrillæ* and *sarcoplasm*, and shows two sets of striations (Fig. 50), longitudinal striations and cross striations. The longitudinal striations are due to parallel running ultimate fibrillæ, of which the muscle fibre is composed. These fibrillæ are united by a minute amount of interfibrillar cement substance. The transverse striations appear in the unstained fibre examined by reflected light as alternate *light* and *dark bands* (Figs. 50 and 51). The light band is composed of a singly refracting (isotropic) substance, the dark band of a doubly refracting (anisotropic) substance. Through the middle of the light band runs a fine dark (anisotropic) line (*Krause's line*), while an even finer light (isotropic) line (*Hensen's line*) runs through the middle of the dark band. As both dark and light substances run through the entire thickness of the fibre, they in reality constitute *discs* of muscle substance (Fig. 51). By means of certain chemicals these discs may be separated, the separation taking place along the lines of Krause. Each "muscle disc" thus consists of that portion of a fibre included between two adjacent lines of Krause and is composed of a central dark disc, and on either side one-half of each adjacent light disc. A muscle fibre is thus seen to be divisible longitudinally into *ultimate fibrillæ*, transversely into *muscle discs*. What is known as the *sarcous element of Bowman* is that portion of a single fibrilla which is included in a single disc, *i.e.*, between two adjacent lines of Krause (Fig. 51).

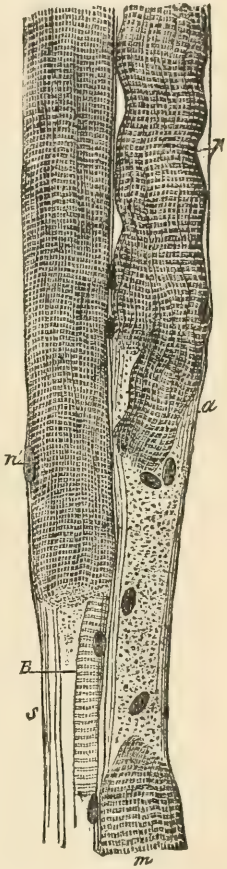


FIG. 49.—Semidiagrammatic Drawing of Parts of two Muscle Fibres which have been broken, showing the relations between Muscle Substance Proper and Sarcolemma. (Ranvier.) *m*, *a*, Retracted ends of muscle substance, between which is seen the sarcolemma with several adherent muscle nuclei; *B*, thin layer of muscle substance which has adhered to the sarcolemma; *n*, muscle nucleus; *s*, sarcolemma; *p*, space between sarcolemma and muscle substance.

The *sarcoplasm* is not evenly distributed throughout the fibre. On cross section irregular trabeculæ of sarcoplasm are seen extending in from the sarcolemma (Fig. 52). These separate the fibrillæ into bundles, the *muscle columns of Kölliker*. A transverse section of one of these columns presents the appearance of a network of sarcoplasm and of interfibrillar cement substance enclosing the fibrillæ. This appearance is known as *Cohnheim's field* (Figs. 51 and 52).

The *contractile element* of the fibre, the *fibrilla*, is anisotropic, the *sarcoplasm* isotropic; the former, therefore, appears dark, the latter light by transmitted light. Upon this is based Rollet's theory of the structure of the striated muscle fibre (Fig. 53). According to this theory, each fibrilla consists of a number of rod-shaped segments joined end to end. Each segment consists of a thicker central portion, which tapers almost to a point where it joins the next adjacent segment. The point of union is marked by a minute globular swell-

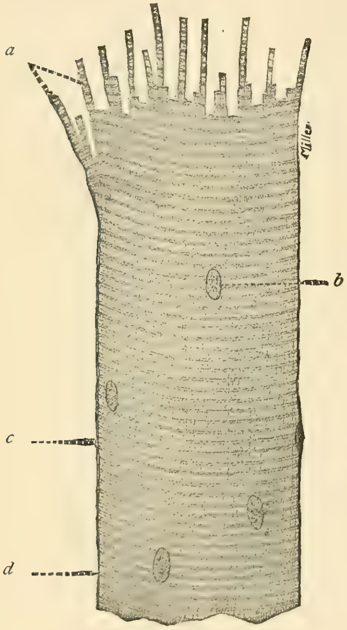


FIG. 50.

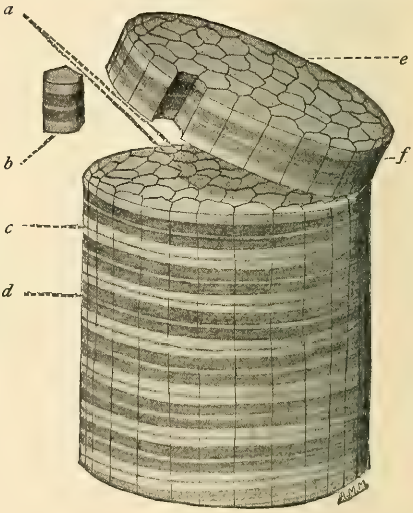


FIG. 51.

FIG. 50.—Portion of Striated Voluntary Muscle Fibre. × 350. (Technic 4, p. 104.) The fibre is seen to be marked transversely by alternate light and dark bands. Through the centre of the light band is a delicate dark line (Krause's line); through the centre of the dark band a fine light line indicates Henson's line. The black line outlining the fibre represents the sarcolemma. *a*, Fibrillæ; *b*, muscle nucleus; *c*, Krause's line; *d*, Henson's line.

FIG. 51.—Diagram of Structure of a Muscle Column of Kölliker. The appearance presented by the cross-cut muscle column=Cohnheim's field. *a*, Muscle fibrillæ; *b*, sarcous element; *c*, Krause's line, *d*, Hensen's line; *e*, Cohnheim's field; *f*, muscle disc.

ing. Between the fibrillæ is the semi-fluid sarcoplasm. In the formation of a fibre similar parts of each fibril segment lie in the same transverse plane. The thicker portions lying side by side form the dark disc in which there is comparatively little sarcoplasm. The attenuated portions, with their relatively large amount of sarcoplasm, form the light disc. The row of globular swellings forms the line of Krause.

Two varieties of striated voluntary muscle fibres are distinguished, *white fibres* and *red fibres*. The difference between the two is due to the amount of sarcoplasm—the red fibres being rich in sarcoplasm, the white fibres poor. Red fibres contract less rapidly than white, but are less easily fatigued. In man white fibres are in the large majority, red fibres never occurring alone, but mingled with white fibres in some of the more active muscles, such as those of respiration and mastication. In some of the lower animals are found muscles made up wholly of red fibres.

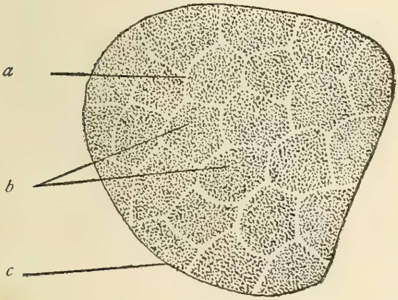


FIG. 52.

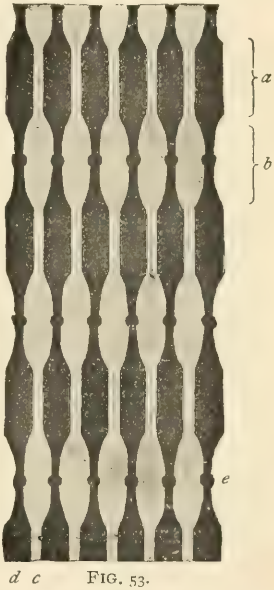


FIG. 53.

FIG. 52.—Semidiagrammatic Drawing of Transverse Section of a Voluntary Muscle Fibre, showing Sarcolemma; sarcoplasm separating fibrils into bundles, each bundle constituting a muscle column of Kölliker and the appearance of its cross cut end being Cohnheim's field. *a*, Sarcoplasm; *b*, Cohnheim's fields; *c*, sarcolemma.

FIG. 53.—Diagram representing Rollet's Theory of the Structure of a Voluntary Muscle Fibre. *a*, Dark disc; *b*, light disc; *c*, sarcoplasm; *d*, fibrilla; *e*, Krause's line.

Muscle fibres ending within the substance of a muscle have pointed extremities. Where muscle fibres join tendon, the fibre ends in a rounded or blunt extremity, the sarcolemma being continuous with the tendon fibres (Figs. 54 and 55).

Muscle fibres are usually unbranched. In some muscles—*e.g.*, those of the tongue and of the eye—anastomosing branches occur. When muscle fibres end in mucous membranes—*e.g.*, the muscle fibres of the tongue,—their terminations are often branched.

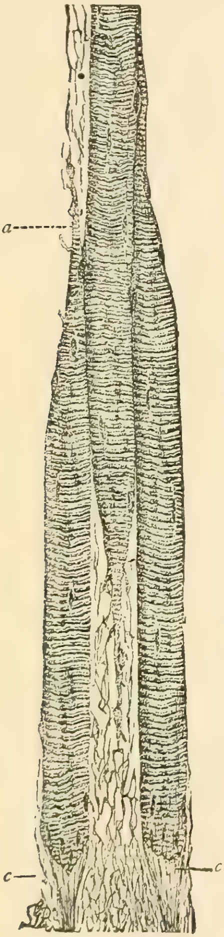


FIG. 54. — Semidiagrammatic Illustration of Endings of Muscle Fibres within a Muscle and in Tendon. (Gage.) *a*, Tapering end of fibre terminating within the muscle; the lower end of the central fibre shows the same method of termination; *c*, *c*, each fibre terminates above in pointed intramuscular ending, below in blunt ending connected with tendon.

Muscle fibres are multinuclear, some of the larger fibres containing a hundred or more nuclei. In the white fibres the nuclei are situated at the periphery just beneath the sarcolemma. In red fibres they are centrally placed.

3. Involuntary Striated Muscle (Heart Muscle).—This occupies an intermediate position, both morphologically and embryologically, relative to smooth muscle and to striated voluntary muscle. Like the former, it is composed of cells. Like the latter, it is both longitudinally and transversely striated. Heart-muscle cells are short, thick cylinders. These are joined end to end to form long fibres. By means of lateral branches the cells of one fibre anastomose with cells of adjacent fibres. Each heart-muscle cell usually contains one nucleus; some cells contain several nuclei. While there is no distinct sarcolemma, the sarcoplasm is more abundant at the surface of the cell, thus giving much the appearance of an enclosing membrane. The amount of sarcoplasm throughout the cell is large. Around the nucleus is an area of sarcoplasm free from fibrillæ. This area often extends some distance toward the ends of the cell.

The striations of heart muscle are less distinct than are those of voluntary muscle. According to McCallum, they represent very similar structures. The longitudinal striations indicate *fibrillæ* united by *cement substance.* From the central mass of sarcoplasm which surrounds the nucleus, strands radiate toward the periphery. These strands, anastomosing, separate the fibrillæ into columns, the *muscle columns of Kölliker.* In cross section these present the appearance described under voluntary muscle as *Cohnheim's fields.* The disposition of the sarcoplasm, extending outward from the region of the nucleus like the spokes of a wheel, gives to the cross section a characteristic radiate appearance (Fig. 57). The transverse markings represent, as in voluntary muscle, alternate *light* and *dark discs.* Through the middle of the light disc can be seen the *membrane of Krause.* McCallum describes Krause's membrane as belonging not only to the fibrillar element, but also to the sarcoplasm. The latter he describes as further subdivided by membranes, which are transversely continuous with Krause's membranes, into minute discs. The centre of the cell around the nucleus is wholly composed of these little discs of sarcoplasm.

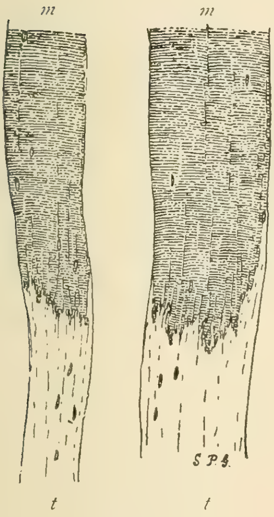


FIG. 55.

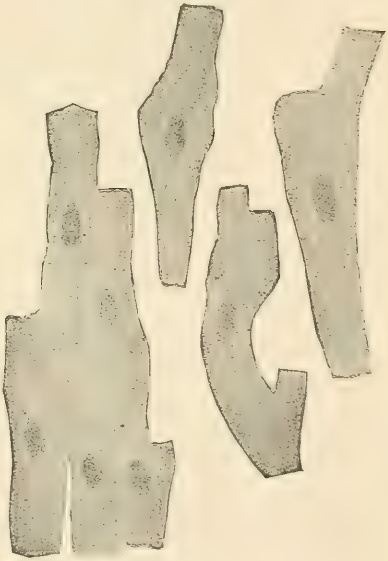


FIG. 56.

FIG. 55.—Two Muscle Fibres from Upper End of Human Sartorius, to show connection of muscle and tendon. × 350. (Gage.) *m*, Muscle fibres; *t*, tendon fibres.

FIG. 56.—Muscle Cells from the Human Heart (technic 6, p. 104), showing lateral branches and lines of union between cells. × 500.

McCallum describes two appearances which the lines of union between the muscle cells present. In one each fibrilla shows a thickening at the cement line, from which one or more delicate filaments cross the cement to unite with similar filaments from an opposite fibrilla. In the other form of union the cement substance is crossed by intercellular bridges similar to those described under epithelium.

Recent investigations tend to prove that what have been described as heart-muscle cells are not separate units, but that heart muscle is a syncytial tissue, each cell representing only a *growth segment* of the whole muscle fibre. The occurrence of non-nucleated segments and the fact that the longitudinal fibrillæ are described by some observers as passing uninterruptedly through the "intercellular" cement substance favor this view. On the other hand, the ease with which heart muscle may be separated into cells, especially in young animals and in the lower vertebrates, and the definite staining reaction which the intercellular substance gives when subjected to the action of silver nitrate are in favor of a cellular structure.

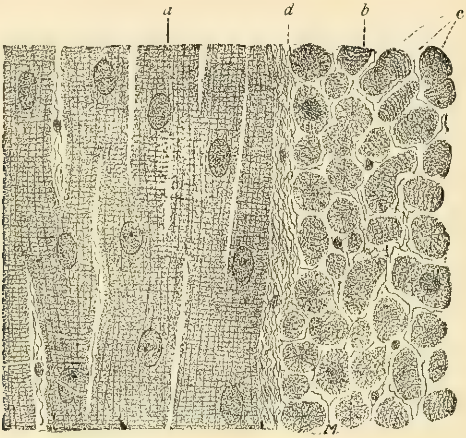


FIG. 57.—Section of Heart Muscle. × 350. (Technic 7, p. 104.) *a*, Cells cut longitudinally; *b*, cells cut transversely (only three nuclei have been included in the plane of section); *c*, cells cut obliquely; *d*, connective-tissue septum.

DEVELOPMENT OF MUSCLE TISSUE.

In the higher animals muscle tissue, with the single exception of the sweat-gland muscles (page 55), is derived wholly from mesoderm. Smooth muscle is developed from the mesenchyme, while heart muscle and voluntary muscle are derived from the mesothelium.

The smooth muscle cell shows the least differentiation. In becoming a smooth muscle cell the embryonal cell changes its shape, becoming greatly elongated, while at the same time its spongioplasm is arranged as longitudinally disposed contractile fibrils.

A voluntary muscle fibre is a highly differentiated multinuclear cell or syncytium. Each fibre is developed from a single cell (*myoblast*) of one of the embryonic muscle segments or *myotomes*. These cells, which are at first spherical, become elongated and spindle-shaped. The nucleus is at this stage centrally placed, and the spongioplasm occurs in the form of a reticulum. Regular arrangement of the spongioplasm first appears around the periphery, while the central portion of the cell is still occupied by reticular spongioplasm and the nucleus. The fibrils extend toward the centre until they fill the entire cell, which has now become a muscle fibre. During this process of fibrillation the nucleus has been undergoing mitotic division. In the white fibres these nuclei migrate to the surface and come to lie just beneath the sarcolemma. The cement substance which unites the fibrils, as well as the larger masses of sarcoplasm, represents the remains of still undifferentiated protoplasm (hyaloplasm).

McCallum describes the development of heart muscle in the pig as follows: In embryos 10 mm. long the heart muscle consists of closely packed spindle-shaped cells, each containing an oval nucleus. The spongioplasm is arranged in the form of a network, no fibrils being present. In embryos 25 mm. long the shape of the cell remains unchanged, but on cross section there can be seen around the periphery a row of newly formed fibril bundles which have developed from the spongioplasm. From the periphery fibril bundles spread toward the centre. In embryos 70 mm. long the heart-muscle cell has assumed its adult shape and structure.

Attention has already been called (page 42) to the spongioplasm as the contractile element of protoplasm. It is to be noted that in the development of muscle no new element appears, the *contractile fibrillæ representing nothing more than a specialization of the already contractile spongioplasm.*

TECHNIC.

(1) Isolated Smooth Muscle Cells.—Place small pieces of the muscular coat of the intestine in 0.1-per-cent aqueous solution of potassium bichromate, or in 30-per-cent alcohol for forty-eight hours. Small bits of the tissue are teased thoroughly and mounted in glycerin. Nuclei may be demonstrated by first washing the tissue and then staining for twelve hours in alum-carmine (page 16). This is poured off,

the tissue again washed in water and preserved in eosin-glycerin, which gives a pink color to the cytoplasm.

(2) Potassium hydrate in 40-per-cent aqueous solution is also recommended as a dissociater of smooth muscle cells. Pieces of the muscular coat of the intestine are placed in this solution for five minutes, then transferred to a saturated aqueous solution of potassium acetate containing 1-per-cent hydric acetate for ten minutes. Replace the acetate solution by water, shake thoroughly, allow to settle, pour off water, and add alum-carmine solution (page 16). After twelve hours' staining, wash and transfer to eosin-glycerin.

(3) Sections of Smooth Muscle.—Fix small pieces of intestine in formalin-Müller's (technic 5, p. 6) or in Zenker's fluid (technic 9, p. 7). Thin transverse or longitudinal sections are stained with hæmotoxylin-eosin (technic 1, p. 17), and mounted in balsam. As the two muscular coats of the intestine run at right angles to each other, both longitudinally and transversely cut muscle may be studied in the same section.

(4) Striated Voluntary Muscle Fibres.—One of the long muscles removed from a recently killed animal is kept in a condition of forced extension while a 1-per-cent aqueous solution of osmic acid is injected into its substance at various points by means of a hypodermic syringe. Fixation is accomplished in from three to five minutes. The parts browned by the osmic acid are then cut out and placed in pure glycerin, in which they are teased and mounted.

(5) Sections of Striated Voluntary Muscle.—Fix a portion of a tongue in formalin-Müller's fluid or in Zenker's fluid (page 7). Thin sections are stained with hæmatoxylin-picro-acid-fuchsin (technic 3, p. 18) and mounted in balsam. As the muscle fibres of the tongue run in all directions, fibres cut transversely, longitudinally, and obliquely may be studied in the same section. The sarcolemma, the pointed endings of the fibres, and the relation of the fibres to the connective tissue can also be seen.

(6) Isolated heart-muscle cells may be obtained in the same manner as smooth muscle cells (see technic 1, p. 103).

(7) Sections of Heart Muscle.—These are prepared according to technic 3, (above). By including the heart wall and a papillary muscle in the same section, both longitudinally and transversely cut cells are secured. The stain may be either hæmatoxylin-eosin (technic 1, p. 17), or hæmatoxylin-picro-acid-fuchsin (technic 3, p. 18).

CHAPTER VI.

NERVE TISSUE.

The Neurone.

In most of the cells thus far described the protoplasm has been confined to the immediate vicinity of the nucleus. In the smooth muscle cell was seen an extension of protoplasm to a considerable distance from the nuclear region, while in the connective-tissue cells of the cornea the protoplasmic extensions took the form of distinct processes. Processes, often extending long distances from the cell body proper, constitute one of the most striking features of nerve-cell structure. Some of these processes are known as nerve fibres; and nerve tissue was long described as consisting of two elements, *nerve cells* and *nerve fibres*. With the establishment of the unity of the nerve cell and the nerve fibre, the nerve cell with its processes was recognized as the *single structural unit* of nerve tissue. This unit of structure is known as a *neurone*. The *neurone* may thus be defined as a *nerve cell with all of its processes*.

In the embryo the neurone is developed from one of the ectodermic cells which constitute the wall of the primitive neural canal. This embryonic nerve cell, or *neuroblast*, is entirely devoid of processes. Soon, however, from one end of the cell a process begins to grow out. This process is known as the *axone* (axis-cylinder process, neuraxone, neurite). Other processes appear, also as outgrowths of the cell body; these are known as *protoplasmic processes* or *dendrites*.

Each adult neurone thus consists of a *cell body*, and passing off from this cell body two kinds of processes, the *axis-cylinder process* and the *dendritic processes* (Fig. 58).

I. The Cell Body. Like most other cells, the nerve cell body consists of a mass of protoplasm surrounding a nucleus (Fig. 59). Nerve cell bodies vary in size from very small cell bodies, such as those found in the granule layers of the cerebellum and of the olfactory lobe, to the large bodies of the Purkinje cells of the cerebellum and of the motor cells of the ventral horns of the cord, which are among the largest in the body. There is as much variation in shape as in size, and some of the shapes are characteristic of the regions in which the cells are situated. Thus the bodies of the cells of the spinal ganglia are spheroidal; of most of the cells of the cortex cerebri, pyramidal; of the cells of Purkinje, pyriform; of the cells of the ventral horns of the cord, irregularly stellate. According to the number of processes given off, nerve cells are often referred to as *unipolar*, *bipolar*, or *multipolar*.

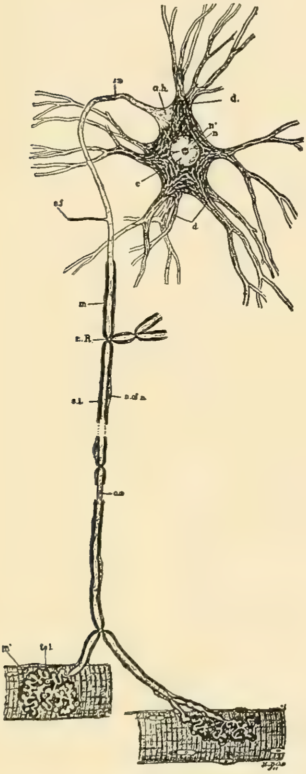


FIG. 58.

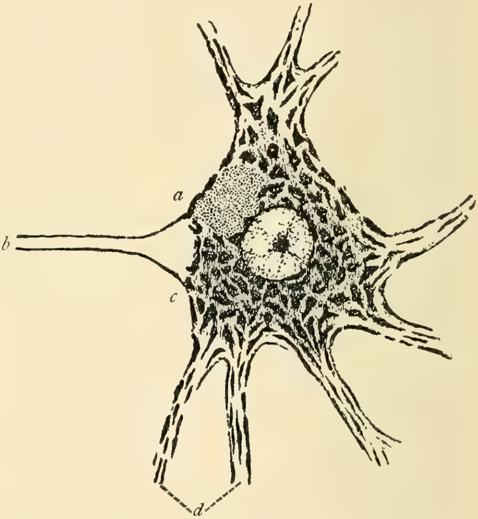


FIG. 59.

FIG. 58.—Scheme of Lower Motor Neurone. The cell body, protoplasmic processes, axone, collaterals, and terminal arborizations in muscle are all seen to be parts of a single cell and together constitute the *neurone*. (Barker). *c*, Cytoplasm of cell body containing chromophilic bodies, neurofibrils, and perifibrillar substance; *n*, nucleus; *n'*, nucleolus; *d*, dendrites; *a h*, axone hill free from chromophilic bodies; *ax*, axone; *sf*, side fibril (collateral); *m*, medullary sheath; *n R*, node of Ranvier where side branch is given off; *sl*, neurilemma and incisures of Schmidt; *m'*, striated muscle fibre; *tel*, motor end plate.

FIG. 59.—Large Motor Ganglion Cell from Ventral Horn of Spinal Cord of Ox, showing Chromophilic Bodies. (From Barker, after von Lenhossék.) *a*, Pigment; *b*, axone; *c*, axone hill; *d*, dendrites.

The NUCLEUS of the nerve cell (Fig. 59) differs in no essential from the typical nuclear structure. It consists of (1) a nuclear membrane, (2) a chromatic nuclear network, (3) an achromatic nucleoplasm, and (4) a nucleolus.

The CYTOPLASM of the nerve cell consists of two distinct elements: (1) Neurofibrils, and (2) perifibrillar substance. In most nerve cells a third element is present, (3) chromophilic bodies.

(1) The *neurofibrils* are extremely delicate fibrils which are continuous throughout the cell body and all of its processes. Within the body of the cell they cross and interlace and probably anastomose (Fig. 60).

(2) The *perifibrillar substance* (Fig. 60) is a fluid or semifluid substance which both in the cell body and in the processes surrounds and separates the neurofibrils. It is believed by some to be like the fibrils, continuous throughout cell body and processes, by others to be interrupted at certain points in the axone (see page 113).

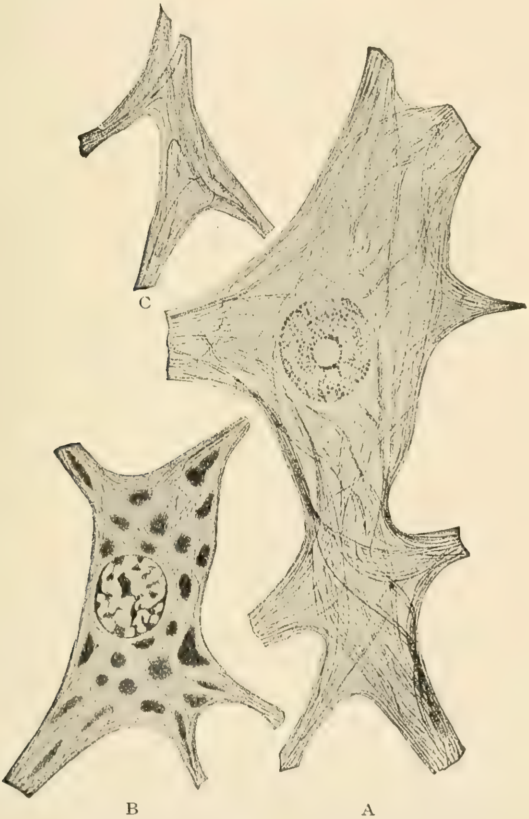


FIG. 60.—Ganglion Cells, Stained by Bethe's Method, showing Neurofibrils. A, Anterior horn cell (human); B, cell from facial nucleus of rabbit; C, dendrite of human anterior horn cell showing arrangement of neurofibrils. (Bethe.)

(3) The *chromophilic bodies* (Fig. 59) are granules or groups of granules which occur in the cytoplasm of all of the larger and of some of the smaller nerve cells. They are best demonstrated by means of a special technic known as the method of Nissl (page 32). When subjected to this technic, nerve cells present two very different types of reaction. In certain cells, only the nuclei stain. Such cells are found in the granule layers of the cerebellum, olfactory lobe, and retina. They are known as *caryochromes*, and apparently consist wholly of neurofibrils and perifibrillar substance. Other cells react, both as to their nuclei and as to their cell bodies, to the Nissl stain. These cells are known as *somatochromes*. Taking as an example of this latter type of cell one of the motor cells of the ventral horn of the cord and subjecting it to the Nissl technic, we note that the cytoplasm is composed of two distinct elements: (*a*) a clear, unstained *ground substance*, and, scattered through this, (*b*) deep blue-staining masses, the *chromophilic bodies* (Fig. 59). These bodies are granular in character and differ in shape, size, and arrangement. They may be large or small, regular or irregular in shape, may be arranged in rows or in an irregular manner, may be close together, almost filling the cell body, or quite separated from one another. Presenting these variations in different types of cells, the appearance which the chromophilic bodies present in a particular type of cell remains constant, and has thus been used by Nissl as a basis of classification.[1]

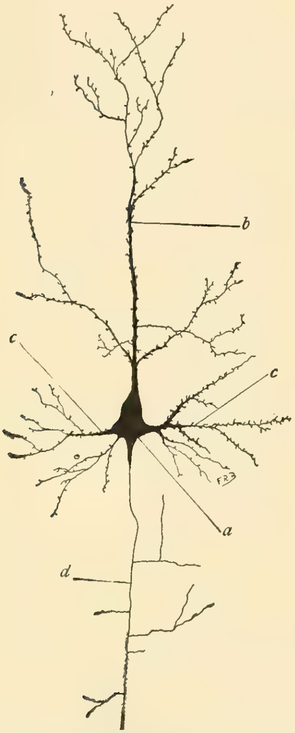


FIG. 61.—Pyramidal Cell from Human Cerebral Cortex. (Golgi bichlorid method. See 2, p 27.) Golgi cell type I. *a*, Cell body; *b*, main or apical dendrite showing gemmules; *c*, lateral dendrites showing gemmules; *d*, axone with collaterals. Only part of axone is included in drawing.

It is important to note in studying the nerve cell by this method that somatochrome cells of the same type frequently show marked variations in staining intensity. This appears to depend upon the size and closeness of arrangement of the chromophilic bodies, and this again seems dependent upon changes in the cytoplasm connected with functional activity.

---

[1] For this classification, the significance of which is somewhat doubtful, the reader is referred to Barker, "The Nervous System and Its Constituent Neurones," p. 121.

In cells stained by Nissl's method the cytoplasm between the chromophilic bodies remains unstained and apparently structureless, and it is this part of the cytoplasm that corresponds to the neurofibrils and perifibrillar substance.

The relation which the appearance of the Nissl-stained cell bears to the structure of the living protoplasm is still undetermined. According to some investigators the Nissl bodies exist as such in the living cell. Others believe that they are not present in the living cell, but represent precipitates due either to post-mortem changes or to the action of fixatives. The significance of the Nissl picture from the standpoint of pathology lies in the fact that when subjected to a given technic, a particular type of nerve cell always presents the same appearance, and that this appearance furnishes a norm for com-

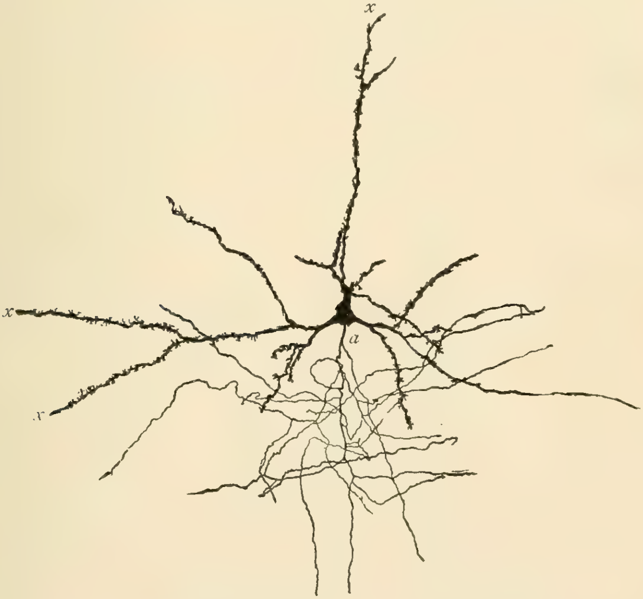


FIG. 62.—Golgi Cell Type II. from Cerebral Cortex of Cat. (Kölliker.) *x*, Coarse protoplasmic processes with gemmules easily distinguishable from the more delicate, smoother axone, *a*. The latter is seen breaking up into a rich plexus of terminal fibres near its cell of origin, practically the entire neurone being included in the drawing.

parison with cells showing pathological changes, and which have been subjected to the same technic.

Many nerve cells contain more or less brownish or yellowish *pigment* (Fig. 59). This pigment is not present in the cells of the new-born, but appears in increasing amounts with age. Its significance is not known.

II. The Protoplasmic Processes or Dendrites.—These have a structure similar to that of the cell body, consisting of neurofibrils, perifibrillar substance, and, in somatochrome cells, chromophilic bodies (Figs. 59 and 60). Dendrites branch dichotomously, become rapidly smaller, and usually end at no great distance from the cell body (Figs. 61 and 62).

III. The Axone.—This differs from the cell body and dendrites in that it contains no chromophilic bodies (Fig. 59), consisting wholly of neurofibrils and perifibrillar substance. Not only is it entirely achromatic itself, but it always takes origin from an area of the cell body, the *axone hill* or *implantation cone* (Fig. 59), which is free from chromophilic bodies. It is as a rule single, and while usually arising from the body of the cell may be given off from one of the larger protoplasmic trunks. Some few cells have more than one axone, and nerve cells without axones have been described. In Golgi preparations the axone is distinguished by its straighter course, more uniform diameter, and smoother outline (Fig. 61). It sends off few branches (*collaterals*), and these approximately at right angles. Both axone and collaterals usually end in *terminal arborizations*. In most cells the axone extends a long distance from the cell body. Such cells are known as *Golgi cell type I.* (Fig. 61). In others the axone branches rapidly and ends in the gray matter in the vicinity of its cell of origin—*Golgi cell type II.* (Fig. 62).

As they leave the cell body the neurofibrils of the axone converge to a very narrow portion of the axone, where the perifibrillar substance is much reduced in amount, or according to some, entirely interrupted. Beyond this the fibrils become more separated and the perifibrillar substance more abundant.

Some axones pass from their cells of origin to their terminations as "naked" axones, *i.e.*, uncovered by any sheath. Other axones are enclosed by a thin membrane, the *neurilemma* or *sheath of Schwann.* Still others are surrounded by a sheath of considerable thickness known as the *medullary sheath.*

Depending upon the presence or absence of a medullary sheath, axones may thus be divided into two main groups—*medullated axones* and *non-medullated axones*.

1. Non-medullated axones (non-medullated nerve fibres) (Fig. 63). These are subdivided into non-medullated axones without a neurilemma and non-medullated axones with a neurilemma.

(*a*) *Non-medullated axones without a neurilemma* are merely naked axones. Present in large numbers in the embryo, they are in the adult confined to the gray matter and to the beginnings and endings of sheathed axones, all of the latter being uncovered for a short distance after leaving the nerve cell body, and also just before reaching their terminations.

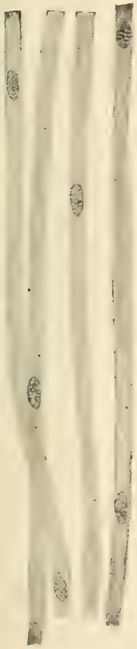


Fig. 63.

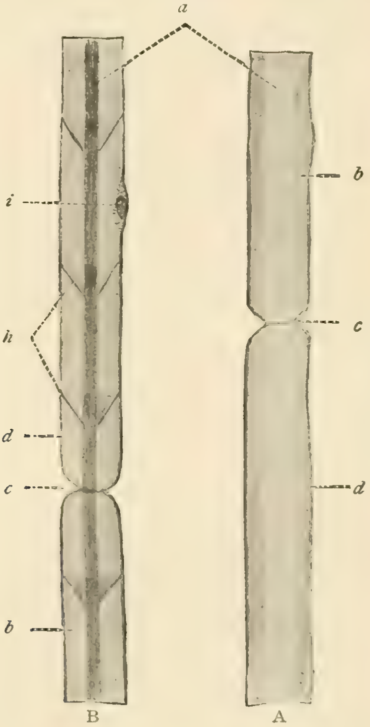


Fig. 64.

Fig. 63.—Non-medullated Nerve Fibres with Neurilemma, only the nuclei of which can be seen. × 300.

Fig. 64.—A, Fresh Medullated Nerve Fibre from Sciatic Nerve of Guinea-pig (× 700), showing relative size of axone and medullary sheath. B, Medullated Nerve Fibre from Human Cauda Equina (× 700) (technic 4, p. 117), showing shrunken axone. *a*, Axone; *b*, medullary sheath; *c*, node of Ranvier; *d*, neurilemma; *h*, incisures of Schmidt; *i*, nucleus of neurilemma.

(*b*) *Non-medullated axones with a neurilemma—fibres of Remak.* In these the axone is surrounded by a delicate homogeneous, nucleated sheath, the *neurilemma* or *sheath of Schwann* (Fig. 63). These axones are described by some writers as having no true neurilemma, but merely a discontinuous covering of flat connective-tissue cells, which wrap around the axone and correspond to the endoneurium of the nerve trunk (see page 343).

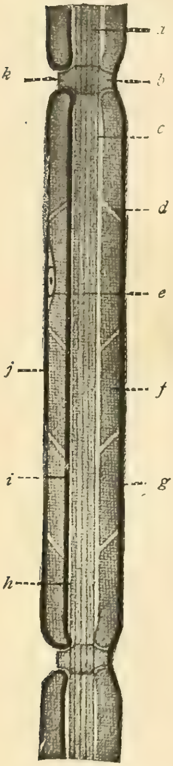


FIG. 65.

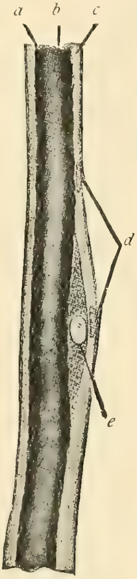


FIG. 66.

FIG. 65.—Diagram of Structure of a Medullated Nerve Fibre, showing two different views as to relations of neurilemma and axolemma and their behavior at the nodes of Ranvier. (Szymonowicz.) *a*, Neurofibrils; *b*, cement substance; *c*, axone; *d*, incisure of Schmidt; *e*, nucleus of neurilemma; *f*, medullary sheath; *g*, sheath of Schwann; *h*, axone; *i*, axolemma; *j*, sheath of Schwann; *k*, node of Ranvier.

FIG. 66.—Piece of Medullated Nerve Fibre from Human Radial Nerve. × 400. Osmic-acid fixation and stain. (Szymonowicz.) *a*, Medullary sheath; *b*, axone; *c*, sheath of Henle; *d*, nuclei of Henle's sheath; *e*, nucleus of neurilemma.

2. MEDULLATED AXONES (medullated nerve fibres).—These, like the non-medullated, are subdivided according to the presence or absence of a neurilemma into medullated axones with a neurilemma and medullated axones without a neurilemma.

(*a*) *Medullated axones with a neurilemma* constitute the bulk of the fibres of the cerebro-spinal nerves. Each fibre consists of (1) an axone, (2) a medullary sheath, and (3) a neurilemma.

(1) The *axone* is composed of neurofibrils continuous with those of the cell body, and like them lying in a perifibrillar substance or neuroplasm (Fig. 65). In the fresh condition the axone is broad, and shows faint longitudinal striations corresponding to the neurofibrils, or appears homogeneous (Fig. 64, *A*). Fixatives usually cause the axone to shrink down to a thin axial thread, whence its older name of axis-cylinder (Fig. 64, *B*). A delicate membrane has been described by some as enveloping the axone. It is known as the *axolemma* or *periaxial sheath* (Fig. 65).

(2) The *medullary sheath* (Figs. 64 and 65) is a thick sheath composed of a semifluid substance resembling fat and known as *myelin.* In the fresh state the myelin has a glistening homogeneous appearance. It is not continuous, but is divided at intervals of from 80 to 600 μ by constrictions, the *nodes* or *constrictions* of *Ranvier.* That portion of a fibre included between two nodes is known as an *internode* (Fig. 65). The length of the internode is usually proportionate to the size of the fibre, the smaller fibres having the shorter internodes. In fresh specimens the medullary sheath of an internode is continuous (Fig. 64, *A*), but in fixed specimens it appears broken up into irregular segments, *Schmidt-Lantermann segments,* by clefts which pass from the neurilemma to the axolemma or axone, and are known as the *clefts* or *incisures* of *Schmidt-Lantermann* (Fig. 64, *B*). On boiling medullated nerve fibres in alcohol and ether a fine network is brought out in the medullary sheath, the *neurokeratin network.* Owing to the resistance of neurokeratin to the action of trypsin, it has been considered as possibly similar in composition to horn.

(3) The *neurilemma* or *sheath of Schwann* (Figs. 64, *B*, and 65) is a delicate structureless membrane which encloses the myelin. At the nodes of Ranvier the neurilemma dips into the constriction and comes in contact with the axone or axolemma. Against the inner surface of the neurilemma, usually about midway between two nodes, is an oval-shaped nucleus, the *nucleus of the neurilemma* (Figs. 64, *B*, and 66). Each nucleus is surrounded by an area of granular protoplasm, and makes a little depression in the myelin and a slight bulging of the neurilemma (Fig. 64, *B*).

In addition to the above-described sheaths, most medullated fibres of peripheral nerves have, outside the neurilemma, a nucleated sheath of connective-tissue origin, known as the sheath of Henle (Fig. 66).

Two views as to the relation of the axolemma to the neurilemma are illustrated in Fig. 65. According to one the neurilemma is continuous, merely dipping into the nodes of Ranvier, where it touches the axolemma or the axone. According to the second both neurilemma and axolemma are interrupted at the node, but unite with each other there to enclose completely the medullary substance of the internode.

Recent experiments of Bethe and others tend to prove an interruption of the perifibrillar substance at the node of Ranvier. They consider the axone at the node as probably crossed by a sieve-like plate, through the holes of which the fibrils pass, but which completely interrupts the perifibrillar substance.

Medullated nerve fibres vary greatly in size. The finer fibres have a diameter of from 2 to 4 μ, those of medium size from 4 to 10 μ, the largest from 10 to 20 μ. They have few branches, and these are always given off at the nodes of Ranvier.

(*b*) *Medullated axones without a neurilemma* are the medullated nerve fibres which form the white matter of the central nervous system. Their structure is similar to the above-described structure of a medullated nerve fibre with a neurilemma, except for the absence of the latter sheath.

As to the physiological significance of the structural elements of the neurone, we have little absolute knowledge but certain fairly well-grounded theories.

That portion of the neurone which surrounds the nucleus—the cell body—is, as already stated, the *genetic* or *birth centre* of the neurone, the nucleus as in other cells being probably concerned in the general cell metabolism. From the behavior of the processes when cut off from the cell body it is evident that the latter is the *trophic* or *nutritive centre* of the neurone. It seems probable that from the standpoint of neurone activity, the cell body usually acts as the *functional centre* of the neurone, the processes acting mainly as channels through which impulses are received and distributed. Certain facts, such for example as the entire absence of chromophilic bodies in many nerve cells, which nevertheless undoubtedly functionate; the absence of these bodies in all axones; the diminution of the chromatic substance during functional activity; its much greater diminution if activity be carried to the point of exhaustion; these together with its behavior under certain pathological conditions all favor the theory that the stainable substance of Nissl is not the active nerve element of the cell, but is rather of the nature of a nutritive element.

There thus remain to be considered as possible factors in the transmission of the nervous impulse the neurofibrils and the perifibrillar substance. While a few investigators are inclined to magnify the importance of the latter, the majority agree in considering the *neurofibrils as the actual nervous mechanism of the neurone.* The already referred to observations of Bethe regarding the interruption of the perifibrillar substance at the constricted portion of the axone and at the nodes of Ranvier, thus making the neurofibrils the only continuous structure, are obviously in favor of this view. The neurofibrils are probably a differentiation of the spongioplasm, while the perifibrillar substance and chromophilic bodies are specializations of the hyaloplasm.

As to the manner in which neurones are connected, there are two main theories, the *contact theory* and the *continuity theory.*

According to the *contact theory* each neurone is a distinct and separate entity. Association between neurones is by contact or contiguity of the terminals of the axone of one neurone with the cell body or dendrites of another neurone, and never by continuity of their protoplasm. This theory, which is known as the "neurone theory" and which received general acceptance as a result of the work of Golgi, His, Forel, Cajal, and others, has been recently called in question if not actually disproved by the discovery of the continuity of the neurofibrils. Based upon this theory is the so-called "retraction theory," which held that a neurone being associated with other neurones only by contact was able to retract its terminals, thus breaking the association and throwing itself, as it were, out of circuit.

According to the more recent *continuity theory,* while the perifibrillar substance is interrupted as above described, the neurofibrils are continuous. According to this theory the neurofibrils, which form a plexus or network within the cell body and dendrites, are connected with a *pericellular network—the Golgi net*—which closely invests the cell body and its dendrites. Externally the Golgi net is further connected with the neurofibrils of the axones and collaterals of other nerve cells. This connection is either direct, or, as some believe, through another general (diffuse) *extracellular network.* The neurofibrils are thus, according to this theory, continuous and form two or possibly three continuous networks: (*a*) an intracellular network, (*b*) a pericellular network (Golgi), and (*c*) a more diffuse extracellular network, lying between the cells.

Neuroglia.

This is a peculiar form of connective tissue found only in the central nervous system. Unlike the other connective tissues, neuroglia is of ectodermic origin, being developed from the ectodermic cells which line the embryonic neural canal. These cells, at first morphologically identical, soon differentiate into *neuroblasts* or future neurones, and *spongioblasts* or future neuroglia cells. In the adult two main types of neuroglia cells are found—*spider cells* and *mossy cells* (Fig. 67). *Spider cells* consist of a central portion containing the nucleus and of delicate, radiating, straight, unbranched processes. *Mossy cells* also have a central nucleated portion and processes; the latter are, however, rough, thick, and branching. As in the nerve cell, the processes of neuroglia cells do not anastomose, but form a network of interlacing fibrils for the support of the nervous tissue proper. Spider cells occur chiefly in the white matter, mossy cells in the gray matter in connection with blood-vessels. While these represent the two most common types of neuroglia cells, many other forms occur, which are probably transitional between the two types described.

According to Weigert, what are in Golgi preparations apparently processes of the cells, are entirely separate neuroglia fibres, the neuroglia cells having no processes. Weigert would thus make the structure of neuroglia analogous to that of fibrous connective tissue, *i.e.*, composed of cells and a fibrillar intercellular substance. Other investigators using the special Weigert neuroglia stain claim that this stain fails to act upon the non-fibrillar elements of the cytoplasm body, and that the apparently separate fibrils are really a part of the protoplasm of the neuroglia cell.

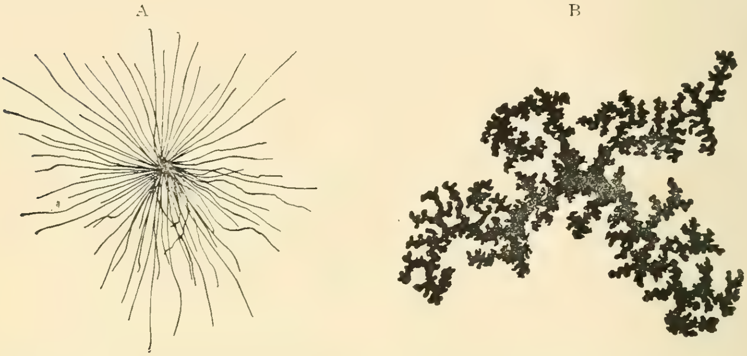


FIG. 67.—A, Neuroglia Cell—Spider Type—Human Cerebrum. B, Neuroglia Cell—Mossy Type—Human Cerebrum.

TECHNIC.

(1) Pieces of the cerebral cortex are stained by one of the Golgi methods. If the rapid or mixed silver method is used, sections must be mounted in hard balsam without a cover; if the slow silver or the bichloride method is used, the sections may be covered. Sections are cut from 75 to 100 μ in thickness, cleared in carbol-xylol or oil of origanum and mounted in balsam. This section shows only the external morphology of the neurone. It is also to be used for studying the different varieties of neuroglia cells as demonstrated by Golgi's method (see page 29).

(2) Thin transverse slices from one of the enlargements of the spinal cord are fixed in absolute alcohol. Thin sections (5 to 10μ) are stained by Nissl's method (page 32) and mounted in balsam. This section is for the purpose of studying the internal structure of the nerve cell and processes as demonstrated by the method of Nissl.

(3) Medullated Nerve Fibres (fresh).—Place a small piece of one of the sciatic or lumbar nerves of a recently killed frog in a drop of salt solution and tease longitudinally. Cover and examine as quickly as possible. Note the diameter of the axone and of the medullary sheath and the appearance of the nodes of Ranvier. An occasional neurilemma nucleus can be distinguished.

(4) Medullated nerve fibres—fibres from the cauda equina (this material has the advantage of being comparatively free from fibrous connective tissue) are fixed in formalin-Müller's fluid (technic 5, p. 6), and hardened in alcohol. Small strands are stained twenty minutes in strong picro-acid-fuchsin solution (technic 2, p. 18), washed thoroughly in strong alcohol, cleared in oil of origanum, thoroughly teased longitudinally and mounted in balsam.

General References for Further Study of Tissues.

Hertwig: Die Zelle und die Gewebe.
Kölliker: Handbuch der Gewebelehre.
Ranvier: Traité Technique d'Histologie.
Cabot: A Guide to the Clinical Examination of the Blood for Diagnostic Purposes.
Ewing: Clinical Pathology of the Blood.
Wood: Laboratory Guide to Clinical Pathology.
Prenant, Bouin et Maillard: Traité d'Histologie.
Barker: The Nervous System.
Van Gehuchten: Le Système nerveux de l'homme.
Bethe: Allgemeine Anatomie und Physiologie des Nervensystem.

PART IV.

THE ORGANS.

CHAPTER I.

THE CIRCULATORY SYSTEM.

THE circulatory apparatus consists of two systems of tubular structures, the blood-vessel system and the lymph-vessel system, which serve respectively for the transmission of blood and lymph.

THE BLOOD-VESSEL SYSTEM.

This consists of (*a*) a central propelling organ, the *heart;* (*b*) a series of efferent tubules—the *arteries*—which by branching constantly increase in number and decrease in calibre, and which serve to carry the blood from the heart to the tissues; (*c*) minute anastomosing tubules—the *capillaries*—into which the arteries empty and through the walls of which the interchange of elements between the blood and the other tissues takes place; (*d*) a system of converging tubules—the veins—which receive the blood from the capillaries, decrease in number and increase in size as they approach the heart, and serve for the return of the blood to that organ.

The entire system—heart, arteries, veins, capillaries—has a common and continuous lining, which consists of a single layer of endothelial cells. Of the capillaries this single layer of cells forms the only wall. In the heart, arteries, and veins, the endothelium serves simply as the lining for walls of muscle and connective tissue.

Capillaries.

It is convenient to describe these first on account of their simplicity of structure. A capillary is a small vessel from 7 to 16 μ in diameter. Its wall consists of a single layer of endothelial cells. The cells are somewhat elongated in the long axis of the vessel. Their edges are serrated and are united by a small amount of intercellular substance. Capillaries branch without diminution in calibre, and these branches anastomose to form capillary networks, the meshes of which differ in size and shape in different tissues and organs (Figs. 68, 69, 70).

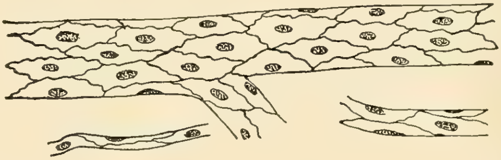


FIG. 68.—Vein and Capillaries. Silver-nitrate and hæmatoxylin stain (technic 7, p. 66), to show outlines of endothelial cells and their nuclei.

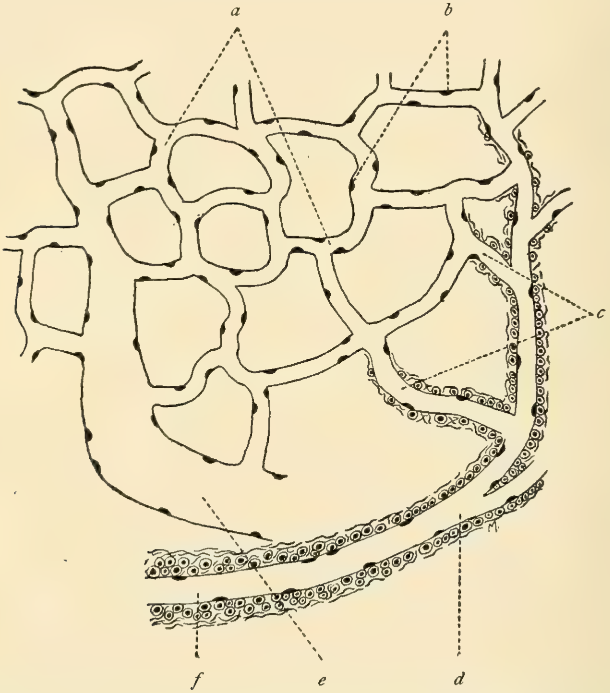


FIG. 69.—Diagram of Capillaries, Small Artery, and Vein, showing their structure and relations. *a*, Capillaries; *b*, nuclei of capillary endothelium; *c*, precapillary arteries; *d*, arteriole; *e*, small vein; *f*, small artery.

Arteries.

The wall of an artery consists of three coats:

(1) An inner coat, the *intima.*

(2) A middle coat, the *media.*

(3) An outer coat, the *adventitia.*

The intima consists of a single layer of endothelial cells, continuous with and similar to that forming the walls of the capillaries, or, in arteries of considerable size, of this layer plus more or less connective tissue. The middle coat consists mainly of smooth muscle, the outer of connective tissue.

The structure of these three coats varies according to the size of the artery, and while the transition between them is never abrupt, it is convenient, for purposes of description, to distinguish (*a*) small arteries, (*b*) medium-sized arteries, and (*c*) large arteries.

Small Arteries.—Passing from a capillary to an artery, the first change is the addition of a thin sheath of connective tissue around the outside of the endothelial tube. A little farther back isolated smooth muscle cells, circularly arranged, begin to appear between the endothelium and the connective tissue. Such an artery is known as a *precapillary artery.* The next transition is the completion of the muscular coat, the muscle cells now forming a continuous layer. Such an artery, consisting of three distinct coats, the middle coat composed of a single continuous layer of smooth muscle cells, is known as an *arteriole* (Fig. 69, *d*; Fig. 70, *b*).

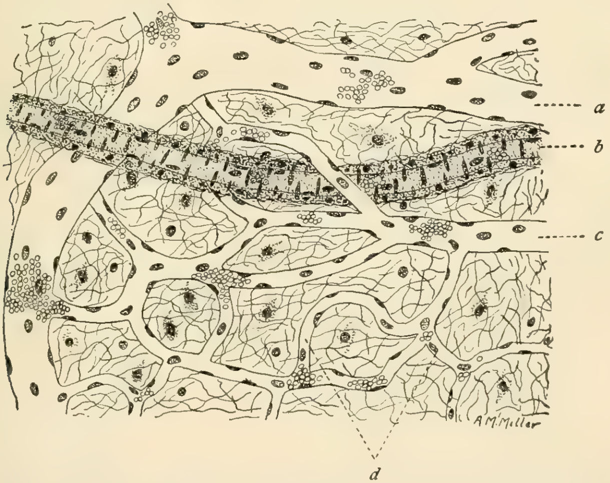


FIG. 70.—Capillary Network from Human Pia Mater, showing also an arteriole in "optical section" and a small vein. × 350. (Technic 1, p. 128.) *a*, Vein; *b*, arteriole; *c*, large capillary; *d*, small capillaries.

Medium-Sized Arteries.—This group comprises all the named arteries of the body with the exception of the aorta and the pulmonary. Their walls are formed of the same three coats found in the arteriole, but the structure of these coats is more elaborate.

1. The INTIMA consists of three layers (Fig. 71).

(*a*) An inner endothelial layer already described.

(*b*) A middle layer, the intermediary layer of the intima. This is composed of delicate white and elastic fibrils and connective-tissue cells.

(*c*) An outer layer, the elastic layer of the intima, or *membrana elastica interna*—a thin fenestrated membrane of elastic tissue. This membrane is intimately connected with the media and marks the boundary between the latter and the intima. In the smallest of the medium-sized arteries the intermediary layer is often wanting, the endothelial cells resting directly upon the elastic membrane. Owing to the extensive amount of elastic tissue in their walls, there is a post-mortem contraction of arteries which results in the intima being thrown up into folds. For this reason the elastic membrane presents, in transverse sections of an artery, the appearance of a wavy band (Fig. 71).

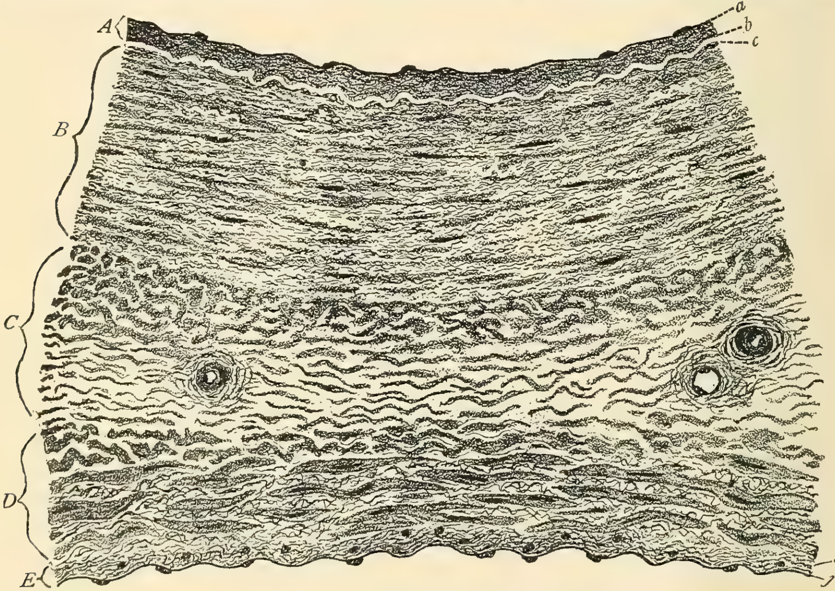


FIG. 71.—From Cross-section through Walls of Medium-sized Artery and its Accompanying Vein. × 75. (Technic 3, p. 129.) *A*, Intima of artery; *a*, its endothelial layer; *b*, its intermediary layer; *c*, its elastic layer; *B*, media of artery; *C*, adventitia, the upper part belonging to the artery, the lower to the vein; within the adventitia are seen the vasa vasorum; *D*, media of vein; *E*, intima of vein; *i*, its intermediary layer; *j*, its endothelial layer.

2. The MEDIA is a thick coat of circularly disposed smooth muscle cells (Fig. 71). Its thickness depends largely upon the size of the vessel, though varying somewhat for different vessels of the same size. A small amount of fibrillar connective tissue supports the muscle cells. Elastic tissue is present in the media, the amount being usually proportionate to the size of the vessel.[1] In the smaller of the medium-sized arteries, the elastic tissue is disposed as delicate fibrils among the muscle cells. In larger arteries many coarse fibres are intermingled with the fine fibrils. When much elastic tissue is present the muscle cells are separated into more or less well-defined groups. In such large arteries as the subclavian and the carotid, elastic tissue occurs not only as fibrils but also as circularly disposed plates or fenestrated membranes.

3. The ADVENTITIA (Fig. 71) is composed of loose fibrous connective tissue with some elastic fibres. Occasionally there are scattered smooth muscle cells. Both smooth muscle cells and elastic fibres are arranged longitudinally. The adventitia does not form a definitely outlined coat like the media or intima, but blends externally with the tissues surrounding the artery and serves to attach the artery to these tissues. In some of the larger arteries the elastic tissue of the adventitia forms an especially well-defined layer at the outer margin of the media. This is known as the *membrana elastica externa*. In general it may be said that the thickness of the adventitia and the amount of elastic tissue present are directly proportionate to the size of the artery.

Large arteries like the aorta (Fig. 72) have the same three coats as small and medium-sized arteries. The layers are not, however, so distinct. This is due mainly to the excessive amount of elastic tissue in the media (Fig. 73), which makes indistinct the boundaries between intima and media, and between media and adventitia. The walls of the aorta are thin in proportion to the size of the vessel, increased strength being obtained by the decided increase in the amount of elastic tissue. Of the *intima*, the endothelial cells are short and polygonal; the intermediary layer similar to that of a medium-sized artery; the elastic layer less distinct and often broken up into several thin layers. The *media* consists mainly of elastic tissue arranged in circular plates or fenestrated membranes. Between the elastic-tissue plates are groups of smooth muscle cells and some fibrillated connective tissue. The *adventitia* resembles that of the medium-sized artery. There is no external elastic membrane.

---

[1] This proportion does not obtain for all vessels. Thus in the radial, femoral, and cœliac arteries there is comparatively little elastic tissue, while in the common iliac, carotid, and axillary the elastic tissue is in excess of the muscular.

The disposition of elastic tissue in the walls of arteries which supply the brain is somewhat peculiar. The inner elastic membrane is especially well defined. There are but few elastic elements in the media, and the longitudinally disposed fibres of the adventitia are almost entirely wanting.

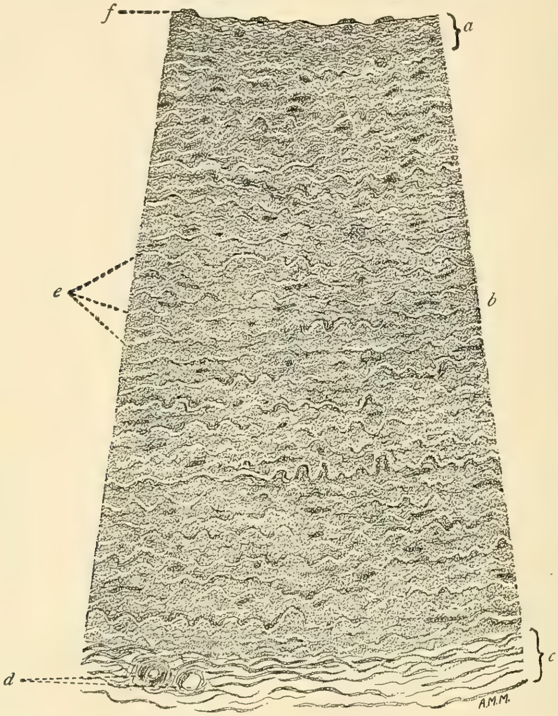


FIG. 72.—From Transverse Section of Dog's Aorta. × 60. (Technic 4, p. 129.) *a*, Intima; *b*, media; *c*, adventitia; *d*, vasa vasorum; *e*, elastic tissue; *f*, endothelium.

Veins.

The walls of veins resemble those of arteries. There are the same three coats, *intima, media,* and *adventitia,* and the same elements enter into the structure of each coat (Fig. 71). Venous walls are not, however, so thick as those of arteries of the same calibre, and the coats are not so distinctly differentiated from one another. The transition from capillary through the precapillary vein to the small vein is similar to that described under arteries (page 123). Unlike the artery, the thickness of the wall of a vein and its structure are not directly proportionate to the size of the vessel, but depend also upon other factors such as the position of the vein and the support given to its walls by surrounding structures.

Of the INTIMA the endothelial layer and the intermediary layer are similar to those of the artery. The elastic layer is not always present, is never so distinct, and is not wavy as in the artery (Fig. 71). The result is a lack of demarcation between intima and media, the connective tissue of the intermediary layer of the intima merging with the mixed muscle and connective tissue of the media. Projecting at intervals from the inner surface of the wall of most veins are *valves.* These are derived entirely from intima and consist of loose fibrous and elastic tissue covered by a single layer of endothelium.

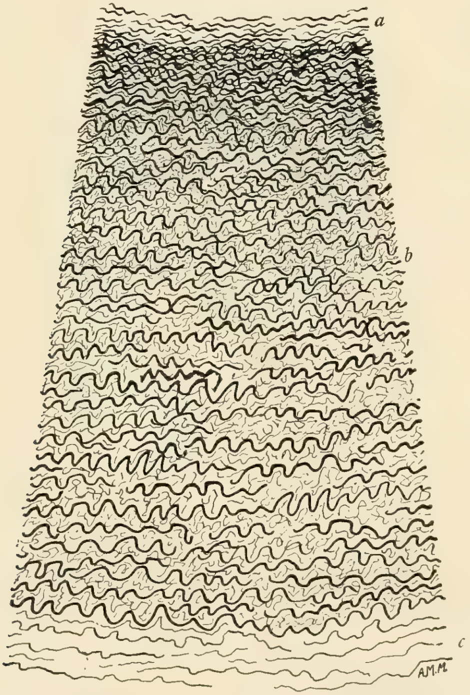


FIG. 73.—From Transverse Section of Dog's Aorta, to show Elastic Tissue. × 60. (Technic 7, p. 129. Elastic tissue stained black. *a*, Intima; *b*, media; *c*, adventitia.

The MEDIA of veins is thin as compared with that of arteries of the same size. It consists of fibrous and elastic tissue and smooth muscle cells. The amount of muscle is comparatively small and the cells are arranged in groups through the connective tissue.

The ADVENTITIA is well developed in proportion to the media. It consists of mixed fibrous and elastic tissue and usually contains along its inner margin small bundles of longitudinally disposed smooth muscle cells.

The media is thickest in the veins of the lower extremities and in the veins of the skin. In the veins of the head and abdomen the media is very thin, while in the subclavian and superior vena cava and in the veins of bones, of the pia mater, dura mater, and retina, there is an almost entire absence of media.

Arteries are as a rule empty after death, while veins contain blood. The absence of much elastic tissue in the walls of the veins prevents any such extensive post-mortem contraction as occurs in the arteries. Veins tend to collapse after death, but are usually prevented from doing so by the presence of blood in them.

Vasa Vasorum.—Medium and large arteries and veins are supplied with small nutrient vessels—vasa vasorum. These vessels run in the adventitia, small branches penetrating the media (Figs. 71 and 72).

Lymph channels are found on the outer surface of many blood-vessels. Some of the smaller vessels are surrounded by spaces lined by endothelium—*perivascular lymph spaces*. These communicate with the general lymphatic system.

Nerves.—The walls of the blood-vessels are supplied with both medullated and non-medullated fibres. The latter are axones of sympathetic neurones. As these nerves control the calibre of the vessels they are known as vasomotor nerves. They form plexuses in the adventitia, from which are given off branches which penetrate the media and terminate on the muscle cells (page 354). The medullated fibres are the peripheral arms of spinal or cranial ganglion cells. The larger fibres run in the connective tissue outside the adventitia. From these are given off branches which enter the media, divide repeatedly, lose their medullary sheaths, and terminate mainly in the media, although some fibres have been traced to their terminations in the intima.

TECHNIC.

(1) Capillaries, Arterioles, Small Arteries, and Veins.—Fix an entire brain, or slices about an inch thick from its surface, in formalin-Müller's fluid for twenty-four hours (technic 5, p. 6). Remove the pia mater, especially the thinner parts

which lie in the sulci between the convolutions, and harden in graded alcohols. Select a thin piece, stain with hæmatoxylin (lightly) and eosin (strongly), (technic 1, p. 17), and mount in balsam or in eosin-glycerin. The veins, having thin walls and being usually well filled with blood, appear distinct and red from the eosin-stained red cells. The arteries, having thicker walls, in which are many hæmoglobin-stained nuclei, have a rather purple color. Between the larger vessels can be seen a network of anastomosing capillaries with their thin walls and bulging nuclei. Some are filled with blood cells; others are empty with their collapsed walls in apposition. Note the appearance of an arteriole, first focussing on its upper surface, then focussing down through the vessel. In this way what is known as an "optical section" is obtained, the artery appearing as if cut longitudinally. Trace the transition from arteriole to precapillary artery and the breaking up of the latter into the capillary network. Similarly follow the convergence of capillaries to form a small vein.

(2) Instructive pictures of the relations of arteries, capillaries, and veins in living tissues may be obtained by curarizing a frog, distending the bladder with normal saline introduced through a small catheter or cannula, opening the abdomen and drawing out the bladder, which can then be arranged upon the stage of the microscope. The passage of the blood from the arteries through the capillary network and into the veins is beautifully demonstrated.

(3) For studying the structure of the walls of a medium-sized artery and vein remove a portion of the radial artery, or other artery of similar size, and its accompanying vein, together with some of the surrounding tissues. Suspend the vessels, with a small weight attached, in formalin-Müller's fluid (technic 5, p. 6). Sections should be cut transversely, stained with hæmatoxylin-eosin (technic 1, p. 17), or with hæmatoxylin-picro-acid fuchsin (technic 3, p. 18), and mounted in balsam. The vessels of the adventitia—vasa vasorum—are convenient for studying the structure of arterioles and small veins.

(4) Fix a piece of aorta in formalin-Müller's fluid, care being taken not to touch the delicate endothelial lining. Stain transverse sections with hæmatoxylin-eosin or with hæmatoxylin-picro-acid fuchsin and mount in balsam.

(5) The outlines of the lining endothelial cells may be demonstrated as follows: Kill a small animal, cut the aorta, insert a glass cannula and, under low pressure, thoroughly wash out the entire vascular system with distilled water. Follow the water by a one-per-cent aqueous solution of silver nitrate. Remove some of the smaller vessels, split longitudinally, mount in glycerin, and expose to the direct sunlight. After the specimen has turned brown examine with the low power. The outlines of the cells should appear brown or black.

(6) The endothelium of the smaller vessels and capillaries may also be demonstrated in the specimen, described under technic 8, p. 66.

(7) The elastic tissue of the blood-vessels is best demonstrated by means of Weigert's elastic tissue stain. Prepare sections of medium-sized vessels and of the aorta, as above described (3), and stain as in technic 3, p.25.

The Heart.

The heart is a part of the blood-vessel system especially differentiated for the purpose of propelling the blood through the vessels.

The main mass of the heart wall consists of a special form of muscle tissue already described as heart muscle (page 100). This constitutes the *myocardium*. On its inner and outer sides the myocardium is covered by connective-tissue membranes lined respectively with endothelium and mesothelium and known as the *endocardium* and *epicardium*.

The MYOCARDIUM varies in thickness in different parts of the heart, being thickest in the left ventricle, thinnest in the auricles. A ring of dense connective tissue, the *auriculo-ventricular ring*, completely separates the muscle of the auricles from that of the ventricles. The auricular muscle consists of an outer coat common to both auricles, the fibres of which have a transverse direction, and of an inner coat, independent for each auricle, the fibres of which are longitudinally disposed. Between the two coats bundles of muscle fibres are frequently found which run in various directions.

The disposition of the muscle tissue of the ventricles is much more complicated. It is usually described as composed of several layers, the fibres of which run in different directions. The meaning of these fibre layers becomes apparent when we study the arrangement of the fibres in embryonic hearts in which the connective tissue has been broken down by maceration. Thus dissected, the muscle of the ventricles is seen to consist mainly of two set of fibres, a *superficial set* and a *deep set*. These run at right angles to each other. Both sets of fibres begin at the auriculo-ventricular rings. The superficial fibres wind around both ventricles in a spiral manner, becoming constantly deeper, to terminate in the papillary muscles of the opposite ventricle. The deeper fibres pass from the auriculo-ventricular ring around the ventricle of the same side, through the interventricular septum and terminate in the papillary muscles of the opposite ventricle.

The ENDOCARDIUM covers the inner surface of the myocardium and forms the serous lining of all the chambers of the heart. At the arterial and venous orifices it is seen to be continuous with and similar in structure to the intima of the vessels. It consists of two layers: (*a*) an inner composed of a single layer of endothelial cells, corresponding to the endothelial lining of the blood-vessels; and (*b*) an outer composed of mixed fibrous and elastic tissue and smooth muscle cells. Externally the endocardium is closely attached to the myocardium.

Strong fibrous rings (*annuli fibrosi*), composed of mixed fibrous and elastic tissue, surround the openings between auricles and ventricles. Similar but more delicate rings encircle the openings from the heart into the blood-vessels.

The *heart valves* are attached at their bases to the annuli fibrosi. They are folds of the endocardium, and like the latter consist of fibrous and elastic tissue continuous with that of the rings and covered by a layer of endothelium.

The EPICARDIUM is the visceral layer of the pericardium. It is a serous membrane like the endocardium, which it resembles in structure. It consists of a layer of mixed fibrous and elastic tissue covered over by a single layer of mesothelial cells. Beneath the epicardium there is usually more or less fat.

Blood-vessels.—Blood for the nutrition of the heart is supplied through the coronary arteries. The larger branches run in the connective tissue which separates the bundles of muscle fibres. From these, smaller branches pass in among the individual fibres, where they break up into a rich capillary network with elongated meshes. From the myocardium, capillaries penetrate the connective tissue of the epicardium and endocardium. The auriculo-ventricular valves are supplied with blood-vessels, while in the semilunar valves blood-vessels are wanting.

Lymphatics.—Lymph channels traverse the epicardium and endocardium and enter the valves. Within the myocardium minute lymph vessels have been demonstrated between the muscle fibres and accompanying the blood-vessels.

Nerves.—These are derived from both cerebro-spinal and sympathetic systems, and consist of both medullated and non-medullated fibres. Sympathetic ganglion cells are distributed in groups throughout the myocardium. Among these cells the nerve fibres form plexuses from which both motor and sensory terminals are given off to the muscle. (For nerve endings in heart muscle see page 354.)

TECHNIC.

(1) The Heart.—Cut pieces through the entire thickness of the wall of one of the ventricles, care being taken not to touch either the serous surface or the lining endothelium. Fix in formalin-Müller's fluid (technic 5, p. 6). Cut transverse and longitudinal sections; stain with hæmatoxylin-eosin (technic 1, p. 17) and mount in balsam.

(2) Treat the entire heart of a small animal (*e.g.*, guinea-pig or frog) in the same manner as the preceding, making transverse sections through both ventricles.

(3) An entire heart, human or animal, may be fixed in the distended condition

by filling with formalin-Müller's fluid under low pressure and then tying off the vessels. The entire heart thus distended is placed in a large quantity of the same fixative.

DEVELOPMENT OF THE CIRCULATORY SYSTEM.

The blood-vessels and the heart begin their development separately and afterward become united. Both are derived from mesoderm. The earliest vessels to be formed are the capillaries. These make their appearance in the mesodermic tissue near the periphery of the area vasculosa which surrounds the developing embryo. Here groups of cells known as "*blood islands*" differentiate from the rest of the mesodermic cells. Within these islands channels appear which are lined with flat cells derived from cells of the islands. These represent the earliest capillaries. In post-embryonic life new capillaries develop by outgrowths from already existing capillaries. These capillary "buds," at first solid, push their way through the intervening tissue and unite with similar buds from other capillaries. Through this solid structure a lumen is hollowed out by extension of the lumina of the older capillaries. Arteries and veins are developed from the capillaries by a further differentiation of the surrounding mesodermic cells to form the muscular and connective-tissue coats outside the first-formed capillary tube.

The heart and the roots of the large vessels which spring from it, while also of mesoblastic origin, have an entirely different early development. The heart first appears as an *endothelial tube*, which develops like the capillaries by differentiation of mesodermic cells. Other mesodermic cells next form an entirely separate *muscular tube* around the endothelial tube. This is the *primitive myocardium*. These two tubes are at first united only in places by bands of connective tissue. Later they approach each other so that the inner tube, the *endocardium*, becomes a lining for the outer tube, the *myocardium*. The *epicardium*, as the visceral layer of the pericardium, has a separate origin, being constricted off from that portion of the mesoderm which lines the primary body cavity.

THE LYMPH-VESSEL SYSTEM.

The larger lymph vessels are similar in structure to veins. Their walls are, however, thinner than those of veins of the same calibre and they contain more valves. They are capable of great distention, and when empty collapse so that their thin walls are in apposition.

The largest of the lymph vessels, the thoracic duct, has three well-defined coats: an *intima* consisting of the usual lining endothelium resting upon a subendothelial layer of delicate fibro-elastic tissue, the outermost elastic fibres having a longitudinal arrangement; a fairly thick *media* of circularly disposed smooth muscle cells; and an *adventitia* which is strengthened by bundles of longitudinal smooth muscle.

Lymph capillaries resemble blood capillaries in that their walls are composed of a single layer of endothelial cells. The cells are rather larger and more irregular than in blood capillaries, the capillaries themselves are larger, and, instead of being of uniform diameter throughout, vary greatly in calibre within short distances. In certain tissues dense networks of these lymph capillaries are found. Cleft-like lymph spaces—perivascular lymph spaces—partially surround the walls of the smaller blood-vessels.

Lymph spaces without endothelial or other apparent lining also occur. Examples of these are the *pericellular lymph spaces* found in various tissues and the *canaliculi* of the cornea and of bone (pages 68 and 87).

Similar in character to lymph spaces are the body cavities, *peritoneal, pleural,* and *pericardial,* with their linings of serous membranes. These cavities first appear in the embryo as a cleft in the mesoderm —*the cœlom, body cavity,* or *pleuroperitoneal cleft.* This cleft is lined with mesothelium beneath which the stroma is formed. These membranes not only line the cavities, but are reflected over most of the viscera of the abdomen and thorax. They consist of a *stroma* of mixed fibrous and elastic tissue, covered on its inner side by a layer of *mesothelium,* the two being separated by a homogeneous basement membrane. The stroma contains numerous lymphatics. These communicate with the free surfaces by means of openings—*stomata* —surrounded by cuboidal cells, whose shape and granular protoplasm distinguish them from the neighboring flat mesothelium.

TECHNIC.

(1) Remove a portion of the central tendon of a rabbit's diaphragm. Rub the pleural surface gently with the finger or with a brush to remove the mesothelium. Rinse in distilled water and treat with silver nitrate as in technic 7, p. 66. Mount in glycerin. If the silver impregnation is successful, the networks of coarser and finer lymphatics can be seen as well as the outlines of the endothelium of their walls. If care has been taken not to touch the peritoneal surface, the peritoneal mesothelium and the stomata are frequently seen.

(2) The Thoracic Duct.—Remove a portion of the thoracic duct, fix in formalin-Müller's fluid (technic 5, p. 6), and stain sections with hæmatoxylin-eosin (technic 1, p. 17).

THE CAROTID GLAND.

This is a small ductless gland which lies at the bifurcation of the carotid artery. It is composed of a vascular connective tissue supporting spheroidal groups of polyhedral epithelial cells which are closely associated with tufts of capillaries. Some of the gland cells take a brownish stain with chromic acid similar to the medullary cells of the adrenal.

THE COCCYGEAL GLAND.

This is also a ductless gland similar in structure to the preceding, but with much more irregularly arranged groups of cells.

TECHNIC.

Technic same as for Thyroid Gland, page 257.

General References for Further Study of the Circulatory System.

Kölliker: Handbuch der Gewebelehre des Menschen, vol. iii.

Stöhr: Text-book of Histology.

Schäfer: Histology and Microscopic Anatomy, in Quain's Elements of Anatomy, tenth edition.

CHAPTER II.

LYMPHATIC ORGANS.

The Lymph Nodes.

Lymph nodes are small bodies, usually oval or bean-shaped, which are distributed along the course of the lymph vessels. In some regions they are arranged in series forming "chains" of lymph nodes as, *e.g.*, the axillary and inguinal.

Each lymph node is surrounded by a *capsule* of connective tissue which sends *trabeculæ* or *septa* into the organ. The capsule and septa constitute the *connective-tissue framework* of the node, and serve as a support for the lymphatic tissue (Fig. 74).

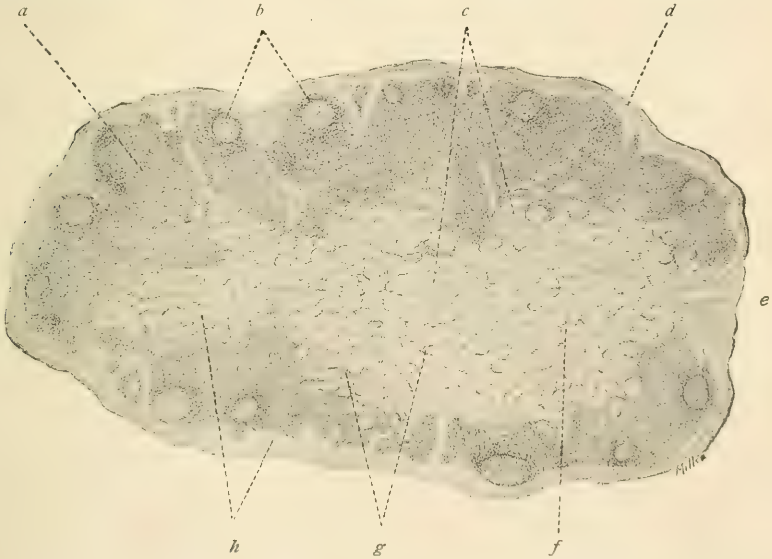


Fig. 74.—Section through Entire Human Lymph Node, including Hilum. × 15. (Technic 1, p. 138.) Dark zone, cortex ; light central area, medulla. *a*, Lymph nodule of cortex ; *b*, germinal centres ; *c*, trabeculæ containing blood-vessels ; *d*, capsule ; *e*, hilum ; *f*, lymph sinus of medulla ; *g*, lymph cords of medulla ; *h*, lymph sinuses of medulla and cortex.

The *capsule* is composed of fibrous connective tissue arranged in two layers. In the outer the fibres are loosely arranged and serve like the fibres of the arterial adventitia, to attach the node to the surrounding tissues. The inner layer of the capsule consists of a more dense connective tissue and contains some smooth muscle cells. At one point, known as the *hilum* (Fig. 74), there is a depression where the connective tissue of the capsule extends deep into the substance of the node. This serves as the point of entrance for the main arteries and nerves, and of exit for the veins and efferent lymph vessels.

The *connective-tissue septa*, which extend from the capsule into the interior of the node, divide it into irregular intercommunicating compartments. In the peripheral portion of the node these compartments are somewhat spheroidal or pear-shaped. Toward the centre of the node the septa branch and anastomose freely, with the result that the compartments are here narrower, more irregular, and less well defined. This arrangement of the connective tissue allows the division of the node into two parts, an outer peripheral part or *cortex* and a central portion, the *medulla* (Fig. 74).

Within the compartments formed by the capsule and the septa is the *lymphatic tissue* (for structure see page 79). In the cortex where the compartments are large and spheroidal or pear-shaped, the lymphatic tissue is of the compact variety, and is arranged in masses which correspond in shape to the compartments. These are known as *lymph nodules* (Fig. 74). In the centre of each nodule is usually an area in which the cells are larger, are not so closely packed, and show marked mitosis. As it is here that active proliferation of lymphoid cells takes place, this area is known as the *germinal centre* (Figs. 74 and 75). Immediately surrounding the germinal centre is a zone in which the lymphoid cells are more closely packed than elsewhere in the nodule (Fig. 75). This is apparently due to the active production of new cells at the germinal centre and the consequent pushing outward of the surrounding cells. In stained sections the centre of the nodule is thus lightly stained, while immediately surrounding this light area is the darkest portion of the nodule (Fig. 75). From the inner sides of the nodules strands of lymphoid tissue extend into the medulla. These are known as *lymph cords*, and anastomose freely in the small irregular compartments of the medulla. In both cortex and medulla the lymphoid tissue is always separated from the capsule or from the septa by a distinct space—the *lymph sinus*—which is bridged over by reticular tissue containing comparatively few lymphoid cells (Fig. 75). These sinuses form a continuous system of anastomosing channels throughout the node.

The *reticular connective tissue* (page 77), which forms a part of the lymphatic tissue proper, is closely attached to the fibrous connective-tissue framework of the organ. In the lymph nodules, and wherever the lymphoid cells are densely packed, the underlying reticular network is almost completely obscured. Crossing the sinuses, especially those of the medulla, and in specimens in which the cells have been largely washed out or removed by maceration, the reticular structure is well shown.

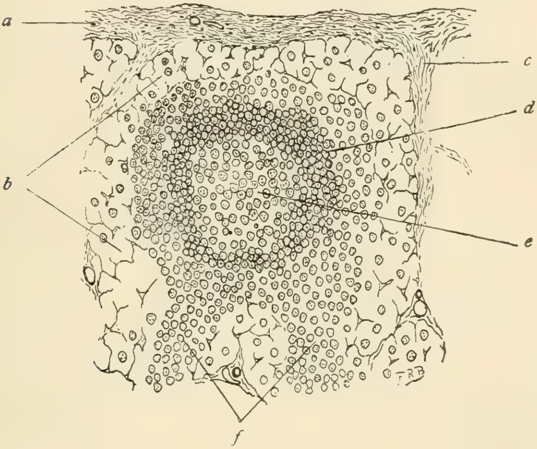


FIG. 75.—Section through Cortex and Portion of Medulla of Human Lymph Node. (Technic 2, p. 138). *a*, Capsule ; *b*, lymph sinus ; *c*, trabecula ; *d*, closely packed cells at outer border of lymph nodule ; *e*, germinal centre ; *f*, lymph cords in medulla.

The *lymphoid tissue proper*, as represented by the lymph nodules and anastomosing lymph cords, is thus, as it were, *suspended* in the meshes of a reticulum which is swung from the capsule and trabeculæ. As both nodules and cords are everywhere separated from capsule and trabeculæ by the sinuses, and as these latter serve for the passage of lymph through the node, it is seen that the lymphatic tissue of the node is broken up in such a manner as to be bathed on all sides by the circulating lymph.

In addition to the definitely formed lymph nodes and the well-defined collections of lymph nodules, such as those of the tonsil or of Peyer's patches, small nodules or groups of lymphoid cells have a wide distribution throughout the various organs. While many of these collections of lymphatic tissue are inconspicuous, still the aggregate of lymph tissue thus distributed is by no means inconsiderable. The most important will be described in connection with the organs in which they occur.

Blood-vessels.—Those which enter the hilum carry the main blood supply to the organ. Most of the arteries pass directly into the lymphatic tissue, where they break up into dense capillary networks. Some of the arteries, instead of passing directly to the lymphatic tissue, follow the septa, supplying these and the capsule, and also sending branches to the surrounding lymphatic tissue. A few small vessels enter the capsule along the convexity of the organ and are distributed to the capsule and to the larger septa.

Lymphatics.—The afferent lymph vessels enter the node on its convex surface opposite the hilum, penetrating the capsule, and pour their lymph into the cortical sinuses. The lymph passes through the sinuses of both cortex and medulla, and is collected by the efferent lymph vessels which leave the organ at the hilum. Within the node the lymph comes in contact with the superficial cells of the nodules and of the lymph cords. These cells are constantly passing out into the lymph stream so that the lymph leaves the node much richer in cellular elements.

Nerves are not abundant. Both medullated and non-medullated fibres occur. Their exact modes of termination are not known.

TECHNIC.

(1) Remove several lymph nodes from one of the lower animals (ox, cat, dog, rabbit), fix in formalin-Müller's fluid (technic 5, p. 6), and harden in alcohol. Cut thin sections through the hilum, stain with hæmatoxylin-eosin (technic 1, p. 17), or with hæmatoxylin-picro-acid-fuchsin (technic 3, p. 18), and mount in balsam.

(2) Expose a chain of lymph nodules (*e.g.*, the cervical or inguinal of a recently killed dog or cat). Insert a small cannula or needle into the uppermost node and inject formalin-Müller's fluid until the node becomes tense. By now slightly increasing the pressure the fluid may be made to pass into the second node, and so through the entire chain. The nodes are then carefully dissected out and

placed for twenty-four hours in formalin-Müller's fluid, then hardened in alcohol. Sections are cut through the hilum, stained with hæmatoxylin-eosin or with hæmatoxylin-picro-acid-fuchsin and mounted in balsam. Near the centre of the chain are usually found nodes in which the lymph sinuses are properly distended. The most proximal nodes are apt to be overdistended, but for this very reason are often excellent for the study of the reticular tissue from which most of the cells have been washed out, especially in the medulla.

(3) Human lymph nodes may be treated by either of the above methods. Owing to the coalescence of their cortical nodules their structure is apt to be less easily demonstrable than in the lower animals.

Hæmolymph Nodes.

These are lymphoid structures which closely resemble ordinary lymph nodes, but with the essential difference that their sinuses are *blood sinuses instead of lymph sinuses.*

Each node is surrounded by a *capsule* of varying thickness, composed of fibro-elastic tissue and smooth muscle cells. From the capsule *trabeculæ* of the same structure pass down into the node, forming its framework (Fig. 76). Beneath the capsule is a *blood sinus*, which may be broad or narrow, and usually completely sur-

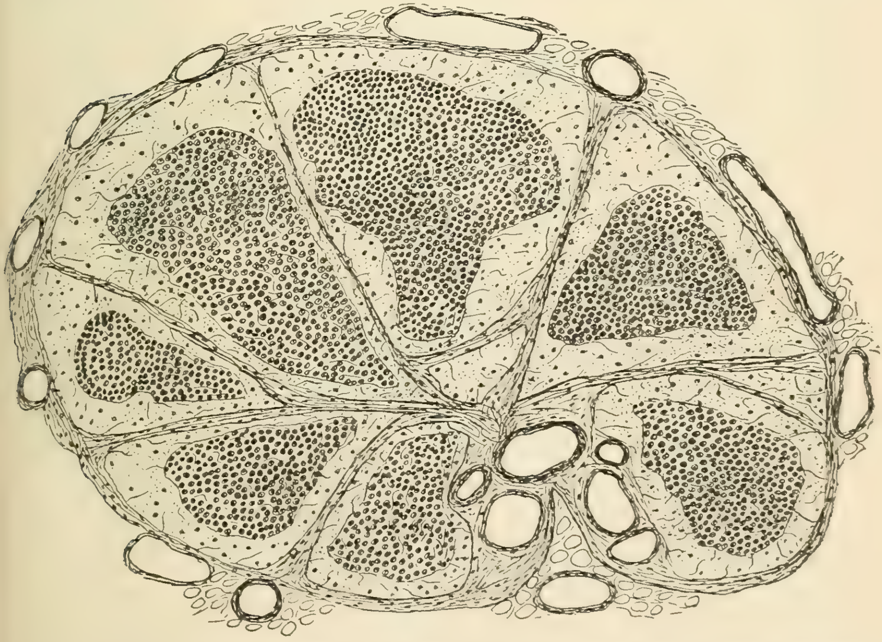


FIG. 76.—Section through Human Hæmolymph Gland, including Hilum, showing capsule, trabeculæ, sinuses filled with blood, and lymph nodules. (Warthin.)

rounds the node. Less commonly the sinus is interrupted by lymphoid tissue extending out to the capsule. From the peripheral sinus branches extend into the interior of the node, separating the lymphoid tissue into *cords* or *islands*. The relative proportion of sinuses and lymphoid tissue varies greatly, some nodes being composed almost wholly of sinuses, while in others the lymphoid tissue predominates. There is usually a fairly distinct *hilum*. In many glands no differentiation into *cortex* and *medulla* can be made. Where there are a distinct medulla and cortex the peripheral lymphoid tissue is arranged in *nodules* as in the ordinary lymph node. *Reticular connective tissue* crosses the sinuses and supports the cells of the lymph nodules and cords (Fig. 77).

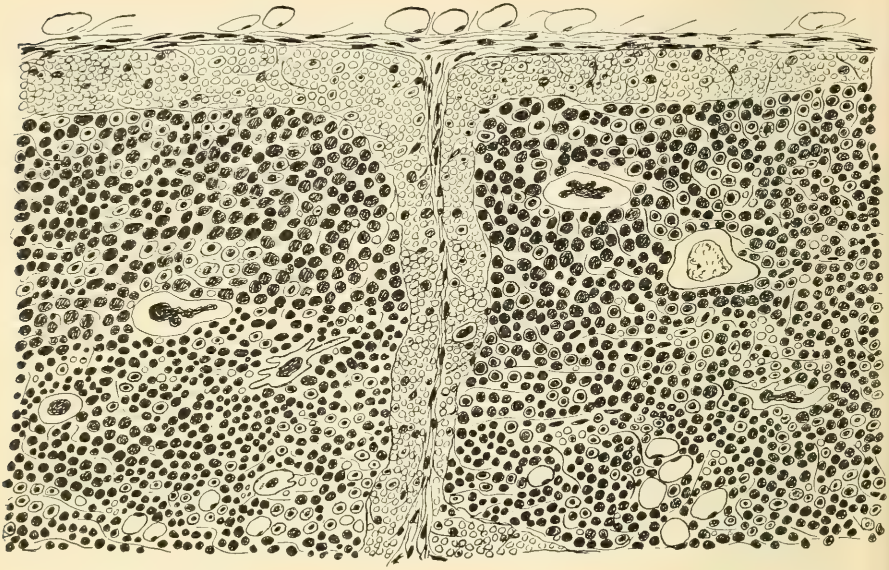


FIG. 77.—Section through Superficial Portion of Human Hæmolymph Gland (Marrow-lymph Gland). (Warthin.) Capsule, trabeculæ, and parts of two adjacent nodules; sinuses filled with blood; among the lymph cells are large multinuclear cells resembling those of marrow, nucleated red blood cells, etc.

The cellular character of the lymphoid tissue has led to the subdivision of hæmolymph nodes into *splenolymph nodes* and *marrow-lymph nodes*. In the *splenolymph node* the lymphoid tissue resembles that of the ordinary lymph node or of the spleen. In the *marrow-lymph node*, which is the much less common form, the lymphoid tissue resembles red marrow. There are no distinct nodules, and there is a quite characteristic distribution of small groups of fat cells. The most numerous cells are eosinophiles and mast cells (see page 91). Polynuclear leucocytes and large leucocytes with a single lobulated nucleus are less numerous. The very large multinuclear cells of red marrow are also found, but usually in small numbers.

Large *phagocytes* containing blood pigment and disintegrating red blood cells are found in both forms of hæmolymph nodes, but are most numerous in the splenolymph type. In nodes which have a brownish color when fresh, these phagocytes frequently almost completely fill the sinuses.

Further classification of hæmolymph nodes has been attempted, but is unsatisfactory, owing to the large number of transitional forms. Thus many nodes are transitional in structures between the hæmolymph node and the ordinary lymph node, between the splenolymph node and the marrow-lymph node, and between the splenolymph node and the spleen.

Under normal conditions the hæmolymph nodes appear to be concerned mainly in the destruction of red blood cells; possibly also in the formation of leucocytes. Under certain pathological conditions they probably become centres for the formation of red blood cells.

Blood-vessels.—An artery or arteries enter the node at the hilum, and break up within the node into small branches, which communicate with the sinuses where the blood comes into intimate association with the lymphoid tissue. From the sinuses the blood passes into veins, which leave the organ either at the hilum or at some other point on the periphery. The course which the blood takes in passing through the hæmolymph node is thus apparently similar to that taken by the lymph in passing through the ordinary lymph node.

The relation of the hæmolymph node to the *lymphatic system* is not known, and like ignorance exists as to its *innervation*.

TECHNIC.

Same as for lymph nodes (technic 1, p. 138). The nodes are found in greatest numbers in the prevertebral tissue, and are often difficult to recognize. Fixing the tissues in 5-per-cent formalin aids in their recognition as it darkens the nodes while bleaching the rest of the tissues.

The Thymus.

The thymus is an organ of fœtal and early extra-uterine life, reaching in man its greatest development at the end of the second year. After this age it undergoes a slow retrograde change into fat and connective tissue, until by the twentieth year scarcely a vestige of glandular tissue remains.

The thymus originates in the ectoderm and begins its fœtal existence as a typical epithelial gland. Into this epithelial structure mesodermic cells grow and differentiate into *lymphatic tissue*. This almost completely replaces the epithelial tissue, only rudiments of which remain.

Morphologically the fully developed thymus consists of *lobes* and *lobules* (Fig. 78). The whole gland is surrounded by a connective-tissue *capsule*, and the lobes are separated from one another by strong extensions of capsular tissue. Smaller connective-tissue septa extend into the lobes, subdividing them into lobules. From the perilobular connective tissue, septa extend into the lobule, separating it into a number of *chambers*. Each lobule consists of a *cortical portion* and a *medullary portion*. The cortex consists of *nodules*

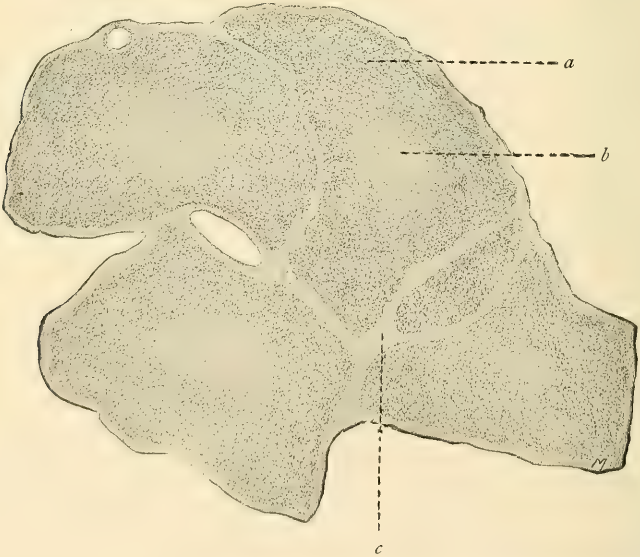


Fig. 78.—From Section of Human Thymus, showing parts of five lobules and interlobular septa. × 20. (Technic, page 143.) *a*, Cortex; *b*, medulla; *c*, interlobular septum.

of compact lymphatic tissue similar to those found in the lymph node. These occupy the chambers formed by the connective-tissue septa. The medulla consists of a more diffuse lymphatic tissue with no connective-tissue septa. In the medulla are found a number of spherical or oval bodies composed of concentrically arranged epithelial cells. These are known as *Hassall's corpuscles* (Fig. 79), and represent the only remains of the original glandular epithelium. The central cells of the corpuscles are usually spherical and contain nuclei, while the peripheral cells are flat and non-nucleated.

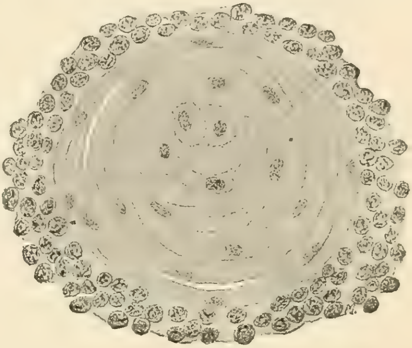


FIG. 79.—Hassall's Corpuscle and Small Portion of Surrounding Tissue. × 600. (See technic below.)

Unlike the other lymphatic organs, the lymph nodules of the thymus contain no germinal centres. Mitosis can, however, usually be seen in the lymphoid cells. Nucleated red blood cells also occur in the thymus. The thymus must therefore be considered one of the sources of lymphoid cells and of red blood cells.

Blood-vessels.—The larger arteries run in the connective-tissue septa. From these, smaller intralobular branches are given off, which break up into capillary networks in the cortex and medulla. The capillaries pass over into veins. These converge to form larger veins, which accompany the arteries.

Of the **lymphatics** of the thymus little is known. They appear to originate in indefinite sinuses within the lymphoid tissue, whence they pass to the septa, where they accompany the blood-vessels.

Nerves.—These are distributed mainly to the walls of the blood-vessels. A few fine fibres, terminating freely in the lymphatic tissue of the cortex and of the medulla, have been described.

TECHNIC.

Fix the thymus of a new-born infant in formalin-Müller's fluid (technic 5, p. 6), and harden in alcohol. Stain sections with hæmatoxylin-eosin (technic 1, p. 17), or with hæmatoxylin-picro-acid-fuchsin (technic 3, p. 18), and mount in balsam.

The Tonsils.

The Palatine Tonsils or True Tonsils.—These are *compound lymphatic organs*, essentially similar in structure to the lymphatic organs already described. The usual fibrous *capsule* is present only over the attached surface, where it separates the tonsil from surrounding structures. From the capsule, connective-tissue *trabeculæ* extend into the substance of the organ and branch to form its framework. The free surface of the tonsil is covered by a reflection of the *stratified squamous epithelium* of the pharynx (Fig. 80). The epithelium is separated from the underlying lymphatic tissue of the tonsil by a more or less distinct *basement membrane*. At several places on the surface of the tonsil deep indentations or pockets occur. These are known as the *crypts* of the tonsil (Fig. 80), and are lined through-

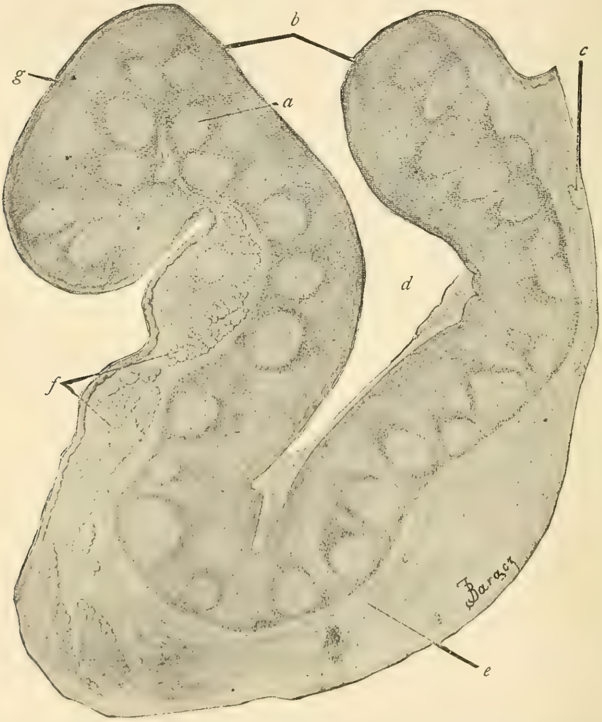


FIG. 80.—Vertical Section of Dog's Tonsil through Crypt. × 15. (Szymonowicz.) *a*, Lymph nodule ; *b*, epithelium of crypt ; *c*, blood-vessel ; *d*, crypt ; *e*, connective-tissue capsule ; *f*, mucous glands ; *g*, epithelium of pharynx.

out by a continuation of the surface epithelium. Passing off from the bottoms and sides of the main or primary crypts are frequently several *secondary crypts*, also lined with the same type of epithelium.

Beneath the basement membrane is the lymphoid tissue of the tonsil. This consists of diffuse lymphatic tissue in which are found *nodules* of compact lymphatic tissue similar to those in the lymph node. Each nodule has a *germ centre*, where active mitosis is going on, and a surrounding zone of more densely packed cells. The nodules have a fairly definite arrangement, usually forming a single layer beneath the epithelium of the crypts. At various points on the surface of the tonsil, and especially in the crypts, occurs what is known as *lymphoid infiltration of the epithelium* (Fig. 81). This consists in an invasion of the epithelium by the underlying lymphoid cells. It varies from the presence of only a few lymphoid cells scattered among the epithelial, to an almost complete replacement of epithelial by lymphoid tissue. In this way the latter reaches the surface and lymphoid cells are discharged upon the surface of the tonsil and into the crypts. These cells probably form the bulk of the so-called *salivary corpuscles*.

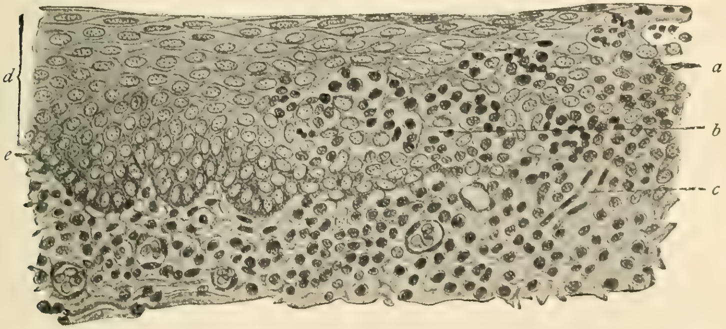


FIG. 81.—Vertical Section through Wall of Crypt in Dog's Tonsil, showing lymphoid infiltration of epithelium. × 150. (Böhm and von Davidoff.) *a*, Leucocytes in epithelium; *b*, space in epithelium filled with leucocytes and changed epithelial cells; *c*, blood-vessel; *d*, epithelium beyond area of infiltration; *e*, basal layer of cells.

The Lingual Tonsils—Folliculi Linguales.—These are small lymphatic organs situated on the dorsum and sides of the back part of the tongue, and are similar in structure to the true tonsils. Into their crypts frequently open the ducts of some of the mucous glands of the tongue.

The Pharyngeal Tonsils.—These are lymphatic structures which lie in the naso-pharynx. They resemble the lingual tonsils.

The tonsils make their first appearance toward the end of the fourth month of intra-uterine life. The earliest of the tonsillar lymphoid cells are white blood cells which have migrated from the vessels of the stroma of the mucosa and have infiltrated the surrounding connective tissue. Further development of the tonsil is by proliferation of these cells. The crypts are at first solid ingrowths of surface epithelium. These later become hollowed out.

The **blood-vessels** and **nerves** have a distribution similar to those of the lymph nodes, but enter the organ on its attached side and not at a definite hilum.

Of the **lymphatics** of the tonsil little is known.

TECHNIC.

Normal human tonsils are so rare, owing to the frequency of inflammation of the organ, that it is best to make use of tonsils from one of the lower animals (dog, cat, or rabbit). Treat as in technic 1, p. 138, care being taken that sections pass longitudinally through one of the crypts.

The Spleen.

The spleen is a *lymphatic organ*, the peculiar structure of which appears to depend largely upon the arrangement of its blood-vessels.

The surface, except where the organ is attached, is covered by a serous membrane, the *peritoneum* (page 133). Beneath this is a *capsule* of fibrous tissue containing numerous elastic fibres and smooth muscle cells. From the capsule strong connective-tissue *septa*, similar to the capsule in structure, extend into the interior of the organ. These branch and unite with one another to form very incomplete anastomosing chambers. The capsule and septa form, as in the lymph node, the *connective-tissue framework* of the organ (Fig. 82).

The chambers incompletely bounded by the connective-tissue septa are filled in with tissue resembling lymphatic tissue, composed of reticular connective tissue, lymphoid cells, and other varieties of cells described on p. 149. This tissue constitutes the *substantia propria* of the organ and is everywhere traversed by thin-walled vascular channels, the tissue and vascular channels together constituting the *splenic pulp* (Fig. 83). Compact lymphatic tissue occurs in the spleen as spherical, oval, or cylindrical aggregations of closely packed lymphoid cells. These are known as *Malpighian bodies* or *splenic* *corpuscles* (Figs. 82 and 83) and are distributed throughout the splenic pulp. Each splenic corpuscle contains one or more small arteries.

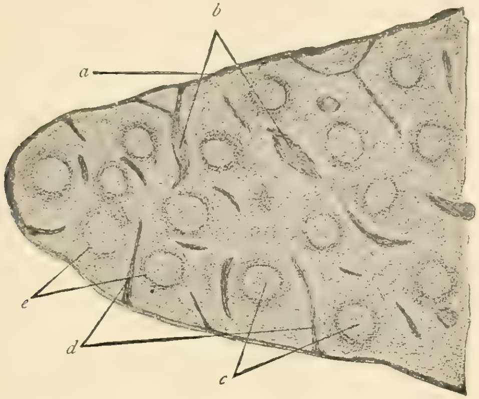


FIG. 82.—Section through Portion of Cat's Spleen, to show general topography. × 15. (Technic 1, p. 150.) *a*, Capsule; *b*, septa containing blood-vessels; *c*, germinal centres; *d*, septa; *e*, lymph nodules.

These usually run near the periphery of the corpuscle; more rarely they lie at the centre. Except for its relation to the blood-vessels, the splenic corpuscle is quite similar in structure to a lymph nodule.

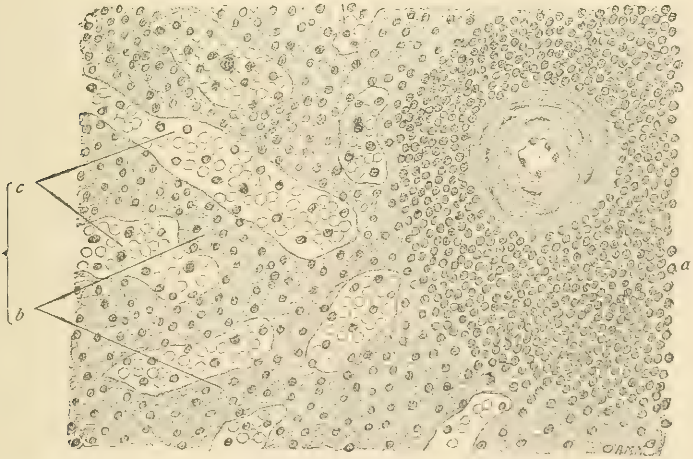


FIG. 83.—Section of Human Spleen, including portion of Malpighian body with its artery and adjacent splenic pulp. × 300. (Technic 2, p. 150.) *a*, Malpighian body; *b*, pulp cords, *c*, cavernous veins; *b* and *c* together constituting the splenic pulp.

It consists of lymphoid cells so closely packed as completely to obscure the underlying reticulum. In the centre of each corpuscle is a *germinal centre* (see page 136). The blood-vessels of the spleen have a very characteristic arrangement, which must be described before considering further the minute structure of the organ.

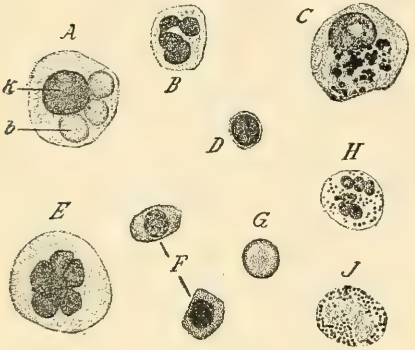


FIG. 84.—Isolated Spleen Cells. × 700. (Kölliker.) *A*, Cell containing red blood cells; *b*, blood cell; *k*, nucleus; *B*, leucocyte with polymorphous nucleus; *C*, "spleen" cell with pigment granules; *D*, lymphocyte; *E*, large cell with lobulated nucleus (megalocyte); *F*, nucleated red blood cells; *G*, red blood cells; *H*, multinuclear leucocyte; *J*, cell containing eosinophile granules.

The *arteries* enter the spleen at the hilum and divide, the branches following the connective-tissue septa. The arteries are at first accompanied by branches of the *splenic veins.* Soon, however, the arteries leave the veins and the septa and pursue an entirely separate course through the splenic pulp. Here the adventitia of the smaller arteries assumes the character of reticular tissue and becomes infiltrated with lymphoid cells. In certain animals, as, *e.g.*, the guinea-pig, this infiltration is continuous, forming long cord-like masses of compact lymphoid tissue. In man, the adventitia is infiltrated only at points along the course of an artery. This may take the form of elongated collections of lymphoid cells—the so-called *spindles*—or of distinct lymph nodules, the already mentioned *splenic corpuscles.* Although usually eccentrically situated with reference to the nodules, these arteries are known as *central arteries.* They give rise to a few capillaries in the spindles, to a larger number in the nodules. Beyond the latter the arteries divide into thick-sheathed terminal arteries—*ellipsoids*—which do not anastomose, but lie close together like the bristles of a brush or *penicillus.* The terminal arteries break up into arterial capillaries which still retain an adventitia, and which empty into broader spaces—*sinuses* or *ampullæ*—which in turn empty into the *cavernous veins* of the splenic pulp.

THE SPLENIC PULP.—The anastomosing cavernous veins break up the diffuse lymphatic tissue of the spleen into a series of anastomosing cords similar to those found in the medulla of the lymph node. These are known as *pulp cords* (Fig. 83), and with the cavernous veins constitute, as already mentioned, the *splenic pulp.* The pulp cords consist of a delicate framework of reticular connective tissue, in the meshes of which are found, in addition to lymphoid cells, the following (Fig. 84):

(1) *Red blood cells.*

(2) *Nucleated red blood cells.*

(3) *White blood cells.*

(4) *Mononuclear cells,* the so-called *spleen cells.* These are rather large granular, spherical, or irregular cells. From the fact that blood pigment and red blood cells in various stages of disintegration are found in their cytoplasm, these cells are believed to be concerned in the destruction of red blood cells.

(5) *Multinuclear cells.* These are most common in young animals. Each cell contains a single large lobulated nucleus, or more frequently several nuclei. These cells resemble the osteoclasts of developing bone and the multinuclear cells of bone marrow.

In macerated splenic tissue or in smears from the spleen, there are found, in addition to the above varieties of cells, long spindle-shaped cells with bulging nuclei. These come from the walls of the cavernous veins.

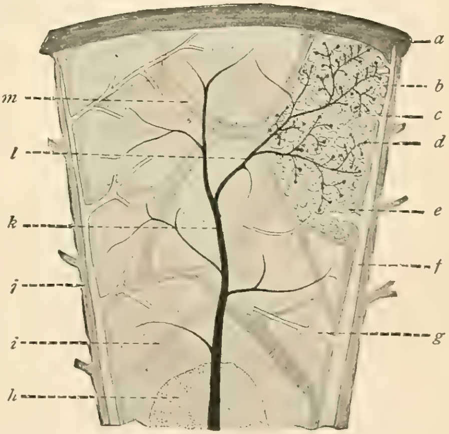


FIG. 85.—Diagram of Splenic Lobule, according to Mall. *a*, Capsule; *b*, intralobular venous spaces; *c*, intralobular vein; *d*, ampulla of Thoma; *e*, pulp cord; *f*, interlobular vein; *g*, intralobular vein; *h*, Malpighian body; *i*, intralobular trabecula; *j*, interlobular trabecula; *k*, intralobular artery; *l*, artery to one of the ten compartments; *m*, intralobular trabecula.

Two views are held regarding the vascular channels of the splenic pulp. According to one, these channels have complete walls, the arterial capillaries passing over into venous capillaries in the usual manner; according to the other, the arterial capillaries open into spaces, the cavernous veins or spleen sinuses which have fenestrated walls, thus allowing the blood to come into direct contact with the surrounding tissues. From these open-walled sinuses, the veins proper take origin. These uniting form veins which enter the septa and ultimately converge to form the splenic veins which leave the organ at the hilum.

According to Mall, the spleen, like the liver, is composed of a large number of lobules, which may be considered its anatomical units (Fig. 85). Each lobule is separated from its neighbors by several (usually three) connective-tissue septa (interlobular septa). Each interlobular septum gives off about three secondary septa (intralobular septa) which pass into the lobule and, anastomosing, divide it into about ten chambers, which are filled with splenic pulp. As the splenic pulp of neighboring chambers anastomoses, cord-like structures are formed which Mall designates pulp cords. It will be seen that the pulp cords of Mall are altogether different from the pulp cords previously mentioned. An artery passes through the centre of each lobule, giving off a branch to each of its chambers. These branch repeatedly in the pulp cords of Mall and end in small dilatations, the ampullæ of Thoma. The ampullæ pass over into minute veins which converge and empty into the interlobular veins. Mall believes the walls of the ampullæ and beginning venous plexuses to be very porous, "allowing fluids to pass through with great ease and granules only with difficulty." He further states that "in life the plasma constantly flows through the intercellular spaces of the pulp cords, while the blood corpuscles keep within fixed channels."

Lymphatics are not numerous. In certain of the lower animals large lymph vessels occur in the capsule and septa. These are not well developed in man. Lymph vessels are present in the connective tissue of the hilum. They probably do not occur in the splenic pulp or in the splenic corpuscles.

Nerves.—These are mainly non-medullated, although a few medullated fibres are present. Among the latter are dendrites of sensory neurones whose cell bodies are situated in the spinal ganglia. They supply the connective tissue of the capsule, septa, and blood-vessels. The non-medullated fibres—axones of sympathetic neurones—accompany the arteries, around which they form plexuses. From these plexuses terminals pass to the muscle cells of the arteries, to the septa, to the capsule, and possibly also to the splenic pulp. The exact manner in which both medullated and non-medullated fibres terminate is as yet undetermined.

TECHNIC.

(1) The spleen of a cat is more satisfactory for topography than the human spleen, as it is smaller, contains more connective tissue, and its Malpighian bodies are more evenly distributed and more circumscribed. Fix in formalin-Müller's fluid (technic 5, p. 6), and harden in alcohol. Cut sections through the entire spleen. Stain with hæmatoxylin-eosin (technic 1, p. 17), or with hæmatoxylin-picro-acid fuchsin (technic 3, p. 18).

(2) Human Spleen.—Small pieces are treated as in technic (1).

(3) Human Spleen (Congested).—Congested human spleens are usually easy to obtain from autopsies. Treat as in technic (1). The cavernous veins being dis-

tended with blood, the relations of the veins to the pulp cords are more easily seen than in the uncongested spleen. The contrasts are especially sharp in sections stained with hæmatoxylin-picro-acid-fuchsin.

(4) The cells of the spleen may be studied along the torn edges or in the thinner parts of any of the spleen sections. Or a smear may be made in a manner similar to that described in technic (page 94), by drawing the end of a slide across a freshly cut spleen surface and then smearing the tissue thus obtained across the surface of a second slide. Dry, fix in equal parts alcohol and ether (one-half hour), stain with hæmatoxylin-eosin and mount in balsam. Or the cut surface of the spleen may be scraped with a knife, the scrapings transferred to Zenker's fluid, hardened in alcohol, stained with alum-carmine (pages 16 and 94) and mounted in eosin-glycerin.

General References for Further Study.

Kölliker: Handbuch der Gewebelehre des Menschen, vol. iii.

Szymonowicz and MacCallum: Histology and Microscopic Anatomy.

Warthin: Hæmolymph Glands (with bibliography). Reference Handbook of the Medical Sciences, vol. iv.

Mall: Lobule of the Spleen. Bul. Johns Hopkins Hospital, vol. ix.—Architecture and Blood-vessels of the Dog's Spleen. Zeit. f. Morph. u. Anth., Bd. ii.

Oppel: Ueber Gitterfasern der menschlichen Leber und Milz. Anat. Anz., 6 Jahrg., S. 165.

CHAPTER III.

THE SKELETAL SYSTEM.

THE skeletal system consists of a series of bones and cartilages which are united by special structures to form the supporting framework of the body. Under this head are considered: (1) bones, (2) marrow, (3) cartilages, (4) articulations.

The Bones.

A bone considered as an organ consists of bone tissue laid down in a definite and regular manner. If a longitudinal section be made through the head and shaft of a long bone, the head of the bone and also part of the shaft are seen to be composed of anastomosing bony trabeculæ enclosing cavities. This is known as *cancellous* or *spongy bone*. The shaft of the bone consists of a large central cavity surrounded by spongy bone, which, however, passes over on its outer side into a layer of bone of great density and known as *hard* or *compact bone*. Spongy bone forms the ends

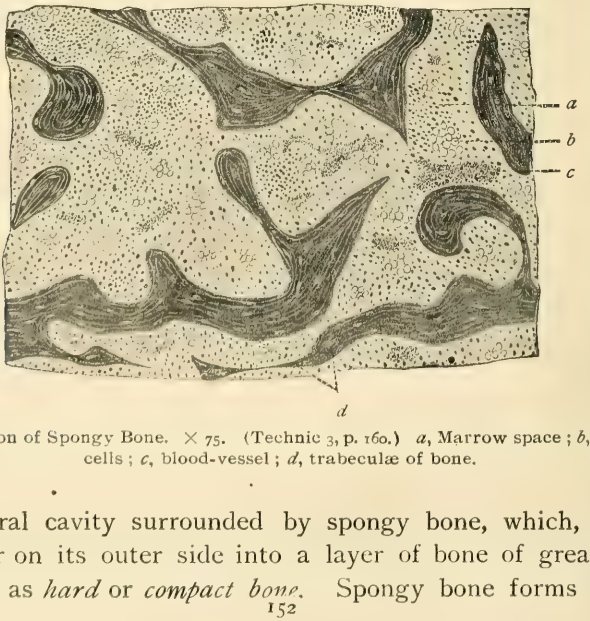


FIG. 86.—Section of Spongy Bone. × 75. (Technic 3, p. 160.) *a*, Marrow space; *b*, group of fat cells; *c*, blood-vessel; *d*, trabeculæ of bone.

and lines the marrow cavities of the long bones, and occurs also in the interior of short bones and flat bones. Compact bone forms the bulk of the shafts of the long bones and the outer layers of the flat and short bones.

In *compact bone* the layers or lamellæ of bone tissue have a definite arrangement into systems, the disposition of which is largely dependent upon the shape of the bone and upon the distribution of its blood-vessels.

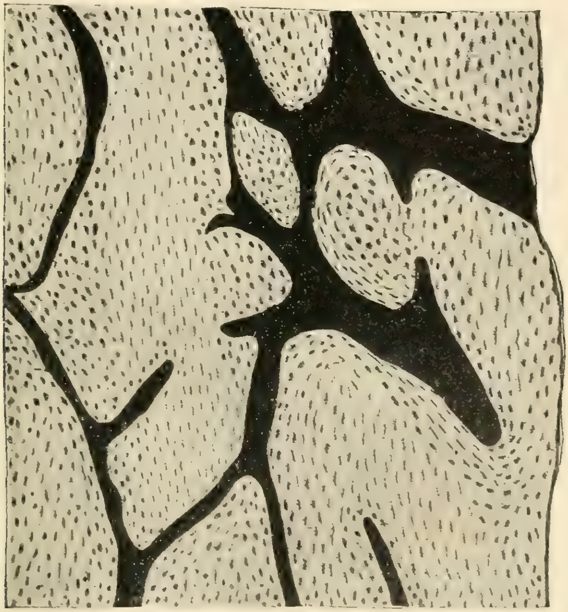


FIG. 87.—Longitudinal Section of Hard (Undecalcified Bone) Shaft of Human Ulna. × 90. (Szymonowicz.) Haversian canals, lacunæ, and canaliculi in black.

In *spongy bone* (Fig. 86) there is no arrangement of the bone tissue into systems. The trabeculæ consist wholly of bony tissue laid down in lamellæ. These trabeculæ anastomose and enclose spaces which contain marrow and which serve for the passage of blood-vessels, lymphatics, and nerves.

On examining a longitudinal section of compact bone (Fig. 87) there are seen running through it irregular channels, the general direction of which is parallel to the long axis of the bone. These channels anastomose by means of lateral branches, and form a complete system of intercommunicating tubes. They are known as *Haversian canals*, contain marrow elements, and serve for the transmission of blood-vessels, lymphatics, and nerves. They anastomose

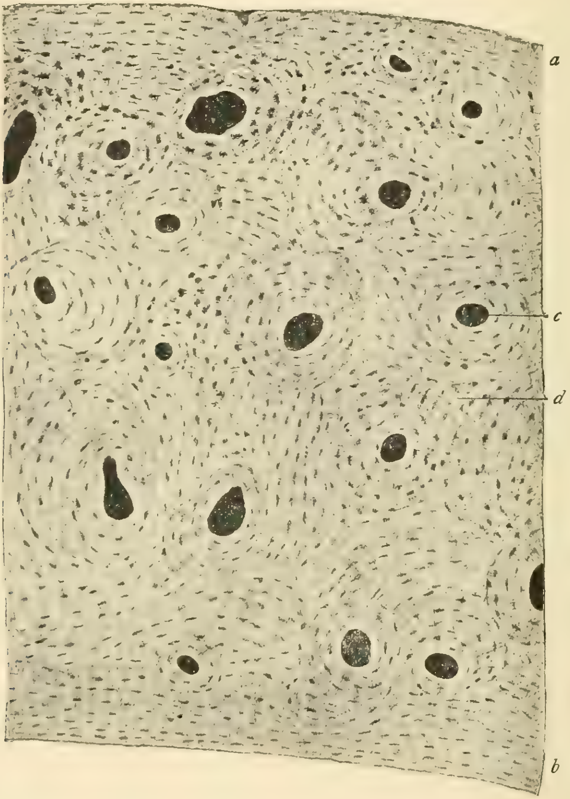


FIG. 88.—Cross section of Hard (Undecalcified) Bone from Human Metatarsus. × 90. (Szymonowicz.) Haversian canals, lacunæ, and canaliculi in black. *a*, Outer circumferential lamellæ; *b*, inner circumferential lamellæ; *c*, Haversian lamellæ; *d*, interstitial lamellæ.

not only with one another, but are in communication with the surface of the bone and with the central marrow cavity. Between the Haversian canals most of the lamellæ run parallel to the canals.

In a cross section through the shaft of a long bone (Fig. 88), three distinct systems of lamellæ are seen. These are known as *Haversian lamellæ*, *interstitial lamellæ*, and *circumferential lamellæ*.

(1) HAVERSIAN LAMELLÆ (Fig. 89).—These are arranged in a concentric manner around the Haversian canals. Between the lamellæ, their long axes corresponding to the long axes of the Haver-

sian canals, are the *lacunæ* with their enclosed *bone cells* (page 87). The lacunæ of adjacent lamellæ are usually arranged alternately. In a section of ordinary thickness the lacunæ are not nearly so numerous as the lamellæ, and are seen only between some of the lamellæ. The lacunæ of a Haversian system communicate with one another and with their Haversian canal by means of the *canaliculi.* In Haversian systems the fibres of the matrix (see page 87) run in some lamellæ parallel to the canal, in others concentrically. Adjacent fibres thus frequently cross at right angles.

(2) Interstitial (Intermediate or Ground) Lamellæ (Figs. 88 and 89).—These are irregular short lamellæ, which occupy the spaces left between adjacent Haversian systems.

(3) Circumferential Lamellæ (Fig. 88).—These are parallel lamellæ which run in the long axis of the bone, just beneath the periosteum and at the outer edge of the central marrow cavity. Occasionally circumferential lamellæ are absent, the Haversian systems abutting directly upon periosteum.

Channels for the passage of blood-vessels from the periosteum to the Haversian canals pierce the circumferential lamellæ. They are known as *Volkmann's canals,* and are not surrounded by concentric lamellæ as are the Haversian lamellæ, but are mere channels through the bone. Similar canals pass from the inner Haversian canals into the marrow cavity.

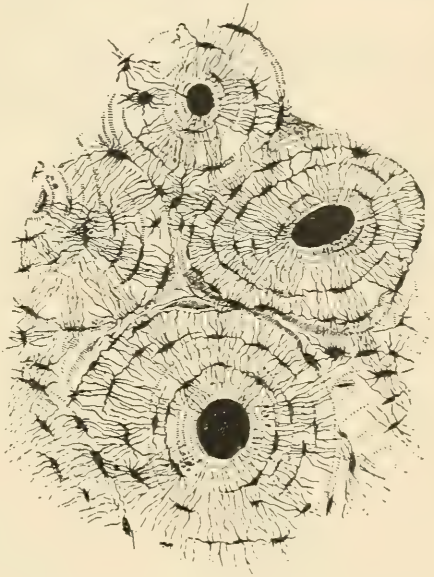


Fig. 89.—Transverse Section of Compact Bone from Shaft of Humerus. × 150 and slightly reduced. (Sharpey.) (Technic 1, p. 87.) Three Haversian canals with their concentric lamellæ and lacunæ; canaliculi connecting lacunæ with each other and with Haversian canal. Between the Haversian systems of lamellæ are seen the interstitial lamellæ.

The Periosteum.—This is a fibrous connective-tissue membrane which covers the surfaces of bones except where they articulate. It is firmly adherent to the superficial layers of the bone and consists of two layers. The outer layer is composed of coarse fibrillated fibres and contains the larger blood-vessels. The inner layer consists of fine white fibres and delicate elastic fibres which support the smaller blood-vessels.

From the periosteum distinct bundles of white fibres, with often some elastic fibres, pierce the outer layers of the bone. These are known as the *perforating fibres of Sharpey*. When tendons and ligaments are attached to bone, their fibres are prolonged through the periosteum into the bone as *perforating fibres*.

Bone Marrow.

Bone marrow is a soft tissue which occupies the medullary and Haversian canals of the long bones and fills the spaces between the trabeculæ of spongy bone. Marrow occurs in two forms—*red marrow* and *yellow marrow*.

Red marrow is found in all bones of embryos and of young animals, also in the vertebræ, sternum, ribs, cranial bones, and epiphyses of long bones in the adult. In the diaphyses of adult long bones the marrow is of the yellow variety. The difference in color between red marrow and yellow marrow is due to the much greater proportion of fat in the latter, yellow marrow being developed from the red by an almost complete replacement of its other elements by fat cells.

Red marrow is of especial interest as a blood-forming tissue, being in the healthy adult the main if not the sole source of red blood cells, and one of the sources from which the leucocytes are derived. The blood-forming function of marrow must be borne in mind in studying the various forms of marrow cells.

Red marrow (Fig. 90) consists of a delicate reticular connective tissue which supports the following varieties of cells:

(1) *Marrow Cells—Myelocytes.*—These resemble the mononuclear and some of the transitional forms of leucocytes. The nucleus is large and may be lobulated. It contains a comparatively small amount of chromatin and therefore stains faintly. The cytoplasm is finely granular and stains with neutrophile dyes. Myelocytes are not present in normal blood, but occur in large numbers in leukæmia. It is from the myelocytes that those leucocytes, which are of bone-marrow origin, are derived.

(2) *Nucleated Red Blood Cells.*—These are divisible into *erythroblasts* and *normoblasts.* The former represents an earlier, the latter a later stage in the evolution of the non-nucleated adult red blood cell.

The *erythroblast,* the younger of the two, has a well-formed nucleus with a distinct intranuclear network. The protoplasm contains but little hæmoglobin. In the *normoblast* the intranuclear network has disappeared and the protoplasm has become much richer in hæmoglobin. The normoblast is converted into the adult red blood cell either by extrusion of its nucleus or by the disintegration of the nucleus within the cell body.

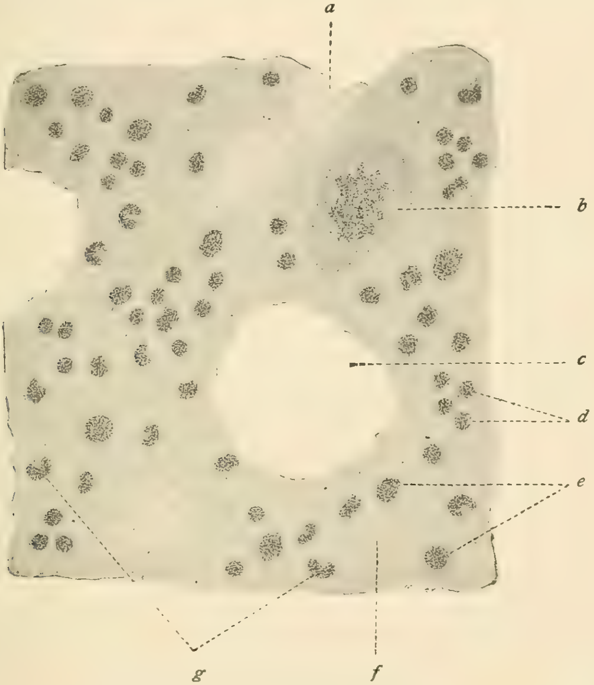


FIG. 90.—Section of Red Bone Marrow from Rabbit's Femur. × 700. (Technic 4, p. 160.) *a*, Red blood cells ; *b*, myeloplax ; *c*, fat space ; *d*, nucleated red blood cells ; *e*, myelocytes ; *f*, reticular connective tissue ; *g*, leucocytes.

(3) *Non-Nucleated Red Blood Cells.*—These are the same as are found in the blood (page 89).

(4) *Multinuclear Cells—Myeloplaxes.*—These are large cells with abundant protoplasm. Each cell may contain a single large spherical nucleus or a much lobulated nucleus or several nuclei. Myelo-

plaxes are probably derived from leucocytes, and are closely related to, if not identical with, the osteoclasts of developing bone.

(5) *Leucocytes* of all kinds are found in marrow. They have the same structure as in blood (page 90).

(6) *Mast cells* may be present. They are usually not numerous. (For description see page 92.)

(7) *Fat Cells.*—These are usually round and rather evenly distributed throughout the marrow.

Yellow marrow (Fig. 91) consists almost wholly of fat cells, which have gradually replaced the other marrow elements. Under certain conditions the yellow marrow of the bones of the old or greatly emaciated undergoes changes due for the most part to the absorption of its fat. Such marrow becomes reddish and assumes a somewhat gelatinous appearance. It is known as "*gelatinous marrow.*"

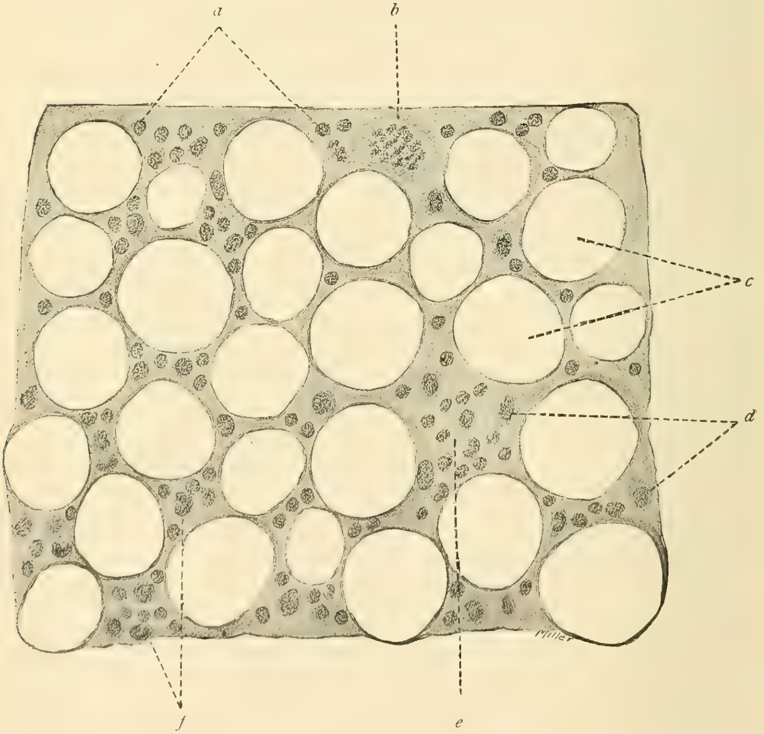


FIG. 91.—Yellow Marrow from Rabbit's Femur. × 560. (Technic 4, p. 160.) *a*, Nucleated red blood cells; *b*, myeloplax, *c*, fat cells; *d*, myelocytes; *e*, reticular connective tissue; *f*, leucocytes.

The large marrow cavities, such as those of the shafts of the long bones, are lined by a layer of fibrous connective tissue, the *endosteum.*

Blood-vessels.—The blood-vessels of bone pass into it from the periosteum. Near the centre of the shaft of a long bone a canal passes obliquely through the compact bone. This is known as the *nutrient canal* and its external opening as the *nutrient foramen.* This canal serves for the passage of the nutrient vessels—usually one artery and two veins—to and from the medullary cavity. In its passage through the compact bone the nutrient artery gives off branches to, and the veins receive branches from, the vessels of the Haversian canals.

Each of the flat and of the short bones has one or more nutrient canals for the transmission of the nutrient vessels.

In addition to the nutrient canals the surface of the bone is everywhere pierced by the already mentioned (page 155) Volkmann's canals, which serve for the transmission of the smaller vessels. In compact bone these vessels give rise to a network of branches which run in the Haversian canals. In spongy bone the network lies in the marrow spaces. Branches from these vessels pass to the marrow cavity, and there break up into a capillary network, which anastomoses freely with the capillaries of the branches of the nutrient artery.

The *capillaries* of marrow empty into wide veins without valves, the walls of which consist of a single layer of endothelium. So thin are these walls that the veins of marrow were long described as passing over into open or incompletely walled spaces in which the blood came into direct contact with the marrow elements. These veins empty into larger veins, which are also valveless. Some of these converge to form the vein or veins which accompany the nutrient artery; others communicate with the veins of the Haversian canals.

Lymphatics with distinct walls are present in the outer layer of the periosteum. Cleft-like lymph capillaries lined with endothelium accompany the blood-vessels in Volkmann's and in the Haversian canals. The *lacunæ* and *canaliculi* constitute a complete system of lymph channels which communicate with the lymphatics of the periosteum, of Volkmann's and the Haversian canals, and of the bone marrow.

Nerves.—Both medullated and non-medullated nerves accompany the vessels from the periosteum through Volkmann's canals, into the Haversian canals and marrow cavities. Pacinian bodies (page 354) occur in the periosteum. Of nerve endings in osseous tissue and in marrow little definite is known.

TECHNIC.

(1) Decalcified Bone.—Fix a small piece of the shaft of one of the long bones —human or animal—in formalin-Müller's fluid (technic 5, p. 6), and decalcify in hydrochloric or nitric-acid solution (page 9). After decalcifying, wash until all traces of acid are removed, in normal saline solution to which a little ammonia has been added. Dehydrate, and embed in celloidin. Transverse and longitudinal sections are made through the shaft, including periosteum and edge of marrow cavity. Stain with hæmatoxylin-eosin (technic 1, p. 17) and mount in eosin-glycerin.

(2) Hard Bone.—Transverse and longitudinal sections of undecalcified bone may be prepared as in technic 1, p. 87.

(3) Spongy Bone.—This may be studied in the sections of decalcified bone, technic (1), where it is found near the marrow cavity. Or spongy bone from the head of one of the long bones or from the centre of a short bone may be prepared as in technic (2).

(4) Red Marrow.—Split longitudinally the femur of a child or young animal, and carefully remove the cylinder of marrow. Fix in formalin-Müller's fluid and harden in graded alcohols. Cut sections as thin as possible, stain with hæmatoxylin-eosin, and mount in balsam.

(5) Marrow—fresh specimen. By means of forceps or a vice, squeeze out a drop of marrow from a young bone, place on the centre of a mounting slide, cover and examine it immediately.

(6) Place a similar drop of marrow on a cover-glass and cover with a second cover-glass. Press the covers gently together, slide apart and fix the specimen by immersion for five minutes in saturated aqueous solution of mercuric chlorid. Wash thoroughly, stain with hæmatoxylin-eosin, and mount in balsam.

DEVELOPMENT OF BONE.

The forms of bones are first laid down either in *cartilage* or in *embryonic connective tissue*. The bones of the trunk, extremities, and parts of the bones of the base of the skull develop in a matrix of cartilage. This is known as *intracartilaginous* or *endochondral ossification*. The flat bones, those of the vault of the cranium and most of the bones of the face, are developed in a matrix of fibrillar connective tissue—*intramembranous ossification*. A form of bone development, similar in character to intramembranous, occurs in connection with both intramembranous ossification and intracartilaginous ossification. This consists in the formation of bone just beneath the perichondrium—*subperichondrial ossification*—or, as with the development of bone perichondrium becomes periosteum—*subperiosteal ossification.*

There are thus three forms of bone development to be considered: (1) Intramembranous, (2) intracartilaginous, and (3) subperiosteal.

1. Intramembranous Development (Fig. 92).—In intramembranous ossification the matrix in which the bone is developed is connective tissue. The process of bone formation begins at one or more points in this matrix. These are known as *ossification centres.* Here some of the bundles of white fibres become *calcified, i.e.,* become impregnated with lime salts. There is thus first established a *centre* or *centres of calcification.* Between the bundles of calcified fibres the connective tissue is rich in cells and vascular, and from its future rôle in bone formation is known as *osteogenetic tissue* (Fig. 92). Along the surfaces of the calcified fibres certain of the osteogenetic cells arrange themselves in a single layer (Figs. 92 and 93). These are now known as *osteoblasts* or "*bone formers.*" Under the influence of these osteoblasts a thin plate of bone is formed between

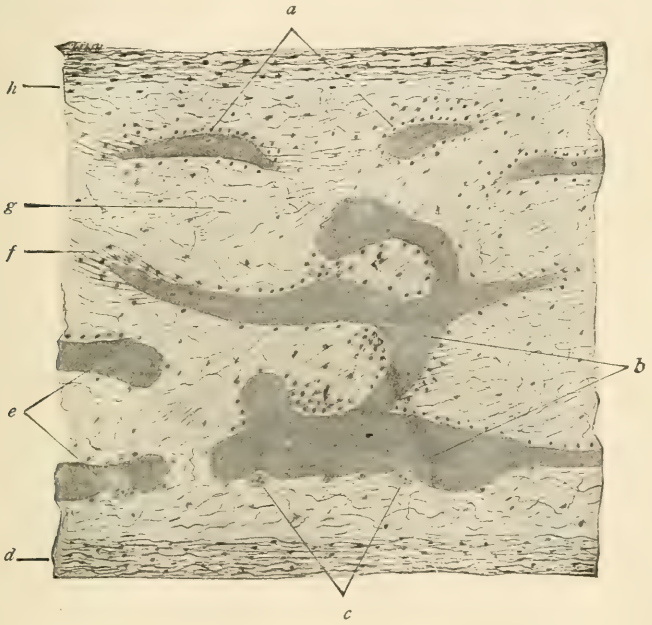


FIG. 92.—Intramembranous Bone Development. Vertical section through parietal bone of human fœtus. × 160. (Technic 4, p. 168.) *a*, Osteoblasts; *b*, bone trabeculæ; *c*, osteoclasts lying in Howship's lacunæ; *d*, internal periosteum; *e*, bone cells; *f*, calcified fibres; *g*, osteogenetic tissue; *h*, external periosteum (pericranium).

themselves and the calcified fibres. This plate of bone at first contains no cells, but as the lamella of bone grows in thickness, the layer of osteoblasts becomes completely enclosed by bone. The osteoblasts are thus transformed into *bone cells* (Fig. 93), the spaces in which they lie becoming *bone lacunæ.* The bone cell is thus seen to be derived from the embryonic connective-tissue cell, the osteoblasts being an intermediate stage in its development. In this way irregular anastomosing trabeculæ of bone are formed enclosing spaces (Fig. 92). The bony trabeculæ at first contain remains of calcified connective-tissue fibres, while the spaces, which are known as *primary marrow spaces,* contain blood-vessels, osteogenetic tissue, and developing marrow. The osteoblasts ultimately disappear and the spaces are then occupied by blood-vessels and marrow. The connective-tissue membrane has now been transformed into *cancellous* or *spongy bone* (Fig. 86).

The bone thus formed is covered on its outer surface by a layer of connective tissue, a part of the membrane in which the bone was formed, but which from its position is now known as the *periosteum,* or, in the case of the cranial bones, as the *peri-* or *epicranium* (Fig. 92).

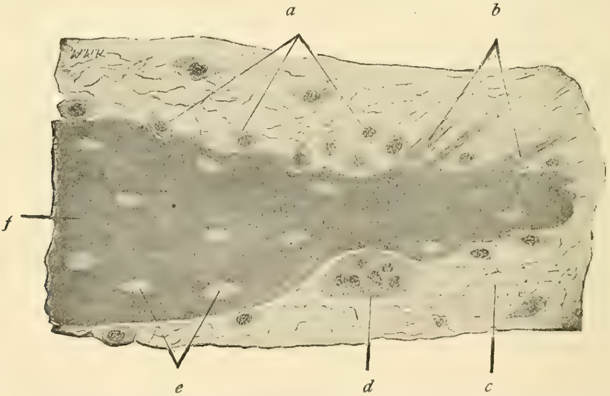


FIG. 93.—Intramembranous Bone Development. Vertical section through parietal bone of human fœtus. × 350. (Technic 1, p. 168.) *a*, Osteoblasts ; *b*, calcified fibres ; *c*, osteogenetic tissue ; *d*, osteoclast lying in Howship's lacuna ; *e*, bone lacunæ ; *f*, bone.

In this form of bone development, occurring as it does in the bones of the skull, provision must be made for increase in the size of the cranial cavity to accommodate the growing brain. This is accomplished in the following manner: Along the surface of the bone, directed toward the brain, large multinuclear cells—*osteoclasts* or "*bone breakers*"—make their appearance (Fig. 93). The origin of these cells is not clear. Similar cells are conspicuous elements of adult marrow. They have been variously described as derived from leucocytes, from osteoblasts, or directly from the connective-tissue cells. A recent theory holds that they are derived by a process of budding from the endothelial cells, which form the walls of the capillaries. These osteoclasts apparently possess the power of breaking down bone. They are found mainly along on its inner surface, and can be seen lying in little depressions—*Howship's lacunæ* (Fig. 92)—which they have hollowed out in the bone. Between the outer surface of the bone and the pericranium is a layer of *osteogenetic tissue*, the innermost cells of which are arranged as *osteoblasts* along the outermost osseous lamellæ. Here they are constantly adding new bone beneath the pericranium. This new bone is laid down, not in flat, evenly disposed layers, but in the form of anastomosing trabeculæ enclosing marrow spaces.

It is thus seen that subperiosteal bone, like intramembranous, is at first of the spongy variety, and that with the development of the cranium the original intramembranous bone is entirely absorbed, together with much of the subperiosteal.

2. Intracartilaginous Development.—In this form of ossification an embryonal type of hyaline cartilage precedes the formation of bone, the cartilage corresponding more or less closely in shape to the future bone (Fig. 94). Covering the surface of the cartilage is a membrane of fibrillar connective tissue, the *perichondrium* or *primary periosteum*.

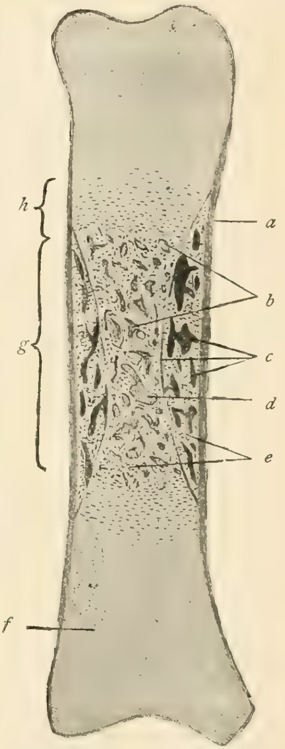


FIG. 94.—Intracartilaginous Bone Development. Longitudinal section of one of the bones of embryo sheep's foot, showing ossification centre. × 20. (Technic 2, p. 168.) *a*, Periosteum; *b*, blood-vessels; *c*, subperiosteal bone; *d*, intracartilaginous bone; *e*, osteogenetic tissue; *f*, cartilage; *g*, ossification centre; *h*, calcification zone.

In most of the long bones the earliest changes take place within the cartilage at about the centre of the shaft (Fig. 94). Here the cartilage cells increase in size and in number in such a way that several enlarged cartilage cells come to lie in a single enlarged cell space, and the cartilage assumes the character of *hyaline cartilage.* The cell groups next arrange themselves in *rows* or *columns,* which at first extend outward in a radial manner from a common centre, but later lie in the long axis of the bone. During these changes in the cells there is an increase in the intercellular matrix and a deposit there of calcium salts. In this way the cartilage becomes calcified, the area involved being known as the *calcification centre.* Further growth of cartilage at the calcification centre now ceases and, as growth of cartilage at the ends of the bone continues, the central portion of the shaft appears constricted. The changes up to this point seem to be *preparatory* to actual bone formation.

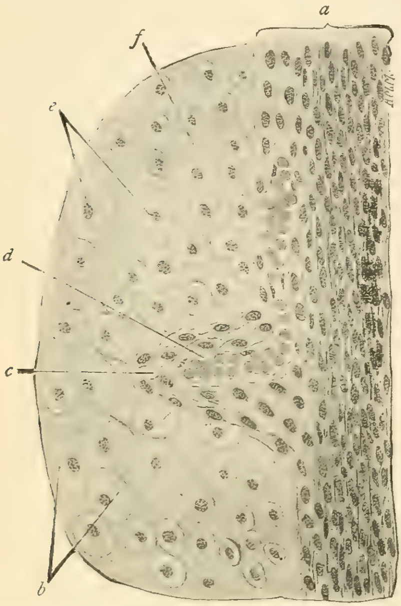


FIG. 95.—Intracartilaginous Bone Development. × 350. Showing osteogenetic tissue pushing its way into the cartilage (periosteal bud) at the ossification centre. *a*, Periosteum ; *b*, cartilage cell spaces ; *c*, periosteal bud ; *d*, blood-vessel ; *e*, cartilage cells ; *f*, cartilage matrix.

Ossification proper begins by blood-vessels from the periosteum [1] pushing their way into the calcified cartilage at the calcification centre, carrying with them some of the osteogenetic tissue from beneath the periosteum. These blood-vessels with their accompanying osteogenetic tissue are known as *periosteal buds* (Fig. 95). Osteoblasts now develop from the osteogenetic tissue and appear to dissolve the calcified cartilage from in front of the advancing vessels. In this way the septa between the cartilage cell spaces are broken down, the cartilage cells disappear, and a central cavity is formed—the *primary*

[1] The term "periosteum" is admissible from the fact that the first bone actually formed is beneath the perichondrium, which thus becomes converted into periosteum.

marrow cavity. From the region of the primary marrow cavity blood-vessels and osteogenetic tissue push in both directions toward the ends of the cartilage which is to be replaced by bone. These break down the transverse septa between the cell spaces, while many of the longitudinal septa at first remain to form the walls of long anastomosing channels, the *primary marrow spaces* (Fig. 96). As in intramembranous bone, these contain blood-vessels, embryonal marrow, and osteoblasts, all of which are derived from the osteogenetic tissue brought in from the periosteum by the periosteal buds. The osteoblasts next arrange themselves in a single layer along the remains of the calcified cartilage, where they proceed to deposit a thin layer of bone between themselves and the cartilage (Fig. 97). As this increases in thickness some of the osteoblasts are enclosed within the newly formed bone to become *bone cells,* while the remains of the cartilage diminish in amount and finally disappear. The *calcification centre* has now become the *ossification centre,* and its anastomosing osseous trabeculæ, with their enclosed spaces containing osteogenetic tissue and marrow, constitute *primary spongy bone.*

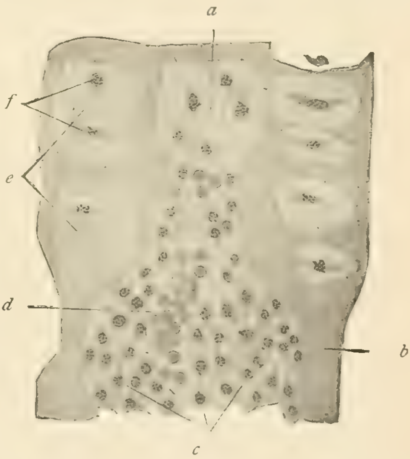


FIG. 96.—Intracartilaginous Bone Development. Same specimen as Fig. 94 (× 350), showing osteogenetic tissue pushing its way into the cartilage and breaking it up into trabeculæ ; also formation of primary marrow spaces and disintegration of cartilage cells. *a*, Disintegrating cartilage cells ; *b*, cartilage trabecula ; *c*, osteogenetic tissue in primary marrow space ; *d*, blood-vessel ; *e*, cell spaces ; *f*, cartilage cells.

At either end of the ossification centre the cartilage presents a special structure. Nearest the centre the cell spaces are enlarged, flattened, arranged in rows, and contain shrunken cells. Some of the walls break down and irregular spaces are formed. The ground substance is calcified. Passing away from the ossification centre, the cell spaces become less flattened, still arranged in rows, the contained cells larger, and there is a lesser degree of calcification. This area passes over into an area of hyaline cartilage which blends without distinct demarcation with the ordinary embryonal cartilage of the rest of the shaft. The area of calcified cartilage at either end of the ossification centre is known as the *calcification zone* and everywhere precedes the formation of true bone (Fig. 94).

3. **Subperiosteal or subperichondrial development** (Fig. 94) has already been largely described in connection with intramembranous ossification, and differs in no important respect from the latter. It always accompanies one of the other forms of ossification. Bone appears beneath the perichondrium somewhat earlier than within the underlying cartilage. Beneath the perichondrium is a layer of rich cellular osteogenetic tissue. The cells of this tissue nearest the cartilage become osteoblasts and arrange themselves in a single layer along its surface. Under their influence bone is laid down on the surface of the cartilage in the same manner as in intramembranous ossification.

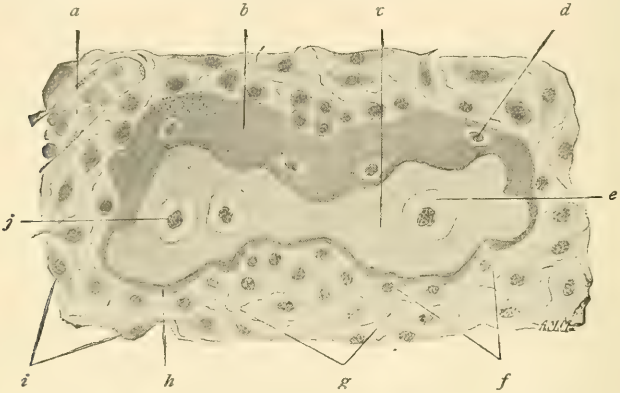


FIG. 97.—Intracartilaginous Bone Development. Same specimen as Fig. 94 (× 350), showing bone being deposited around one of the trabeculæ of cartilage. *a*, Blood-vessel; *b*, bone; *c*, cartilage remains; *d*, bone cell; *e*, cartilage cell space; *f*, osteoblasts; *g*, osteogenetic tissue; *h*, lamella of bone; *i*, connective-tissue cells; *j*, cartilage cell.

Intracartilaginous and subperiosteal bone can be easily differentiated by the presence of cartilaginous remains in the former and their absence in the latter.

All bone is at first of the spongy variety. When this is to be converted into compact bone, there is first absorption of bone by osteoclasts, with increase in size of the marrow spaces and reduction of their walls to thin plates. These spaces are now known as *Haversian spaces.* Within these new bone is deposited. This is done by osteoblasts which lay down layer within layer of bone until the Haversian space is reduced to a mere channel, the Haversian canal.

In this way are formed the *Haversian canals* and the *Haversian systems of lamellæ.* Some of the interstitial lamellæ are the remains of the spongy bone which was not quite removed in the enlargement of the primary marrow spaces to form the Haversian spaces; other interstitial lamellæ appear to be early formed Haversian lamellæ which have been more or less replaced by Haversian lamellæ formed later.

While these varieties of ossification have been described, we would emphasize the *essential unity* of the process. The likeness between intramembranous and subperiosteal ossification has been already noted. The differences observed in intracartilaginous ossification are more apparent than real. In intracartilaginous ossification the bone is developed *in* cartilage but not *from* cartilage. As in intramembranous and in subperiosteal ossification, intracartilaginous bone is developed *from osteogenetic tissue.* This osteogenetic tissue is a differentiation of embryonal connective tissue, in this case *carried into* the cartilage from the periosteum in the *periosteal buds.* In intramembranous ossification the bone is developed *within* and *directly from* the embryonal connective tissue of which the membrane is composed. In intracartilaginous ossification there is the same embryonal connective-tissue membrane, but within this membrane the form of the bone is first laid down in embryonal cartilage. Surrounding the cartilage there remains the embryonal connective tissue of the membrane, now perichondrium. It is from tissue which *grows into the cartilage* from this membrane—*embryonal connective tissue*—that the bone, although developed *in* cartilage, is formed.

GROWTH OF BONE.

The growth of intramembranous bone by the formation of successive layers beneath the periosteum has been already described (page 162).

Intracartilaginous bones grow both in *diameter* and in *length.*

Growth in *diameter* is accomplished by the constant deposition of new layers of bone beneath the periosteum. During this process, absorption of bone from within by means of osteoclasts leads to the formation of the *marrow cavity.* The hard bone of the shaft of a long bone is *entirely* of *subperiosteal origin,* the intracartilaginous bone being completely absorbed.

Growth in length takes place in the following manner: Some time after the beginning of ossification in the shaft or diaphysis, independent ossification centres appear in the ends of the bone (epiphyses). So long as bone is growing, the epiphyses and diaphysis remain distinct. Between them lies a zone of growing cartilage, the *epiphyseal* or *intermediate cartilage.* Increase in length of the bone takes place by a constant extension of ossification into this cartilage from the ossification centres of the epiphyses and diaphysis. After the bone ceases to grow in length, the epiphyses and diaphysis become firmly united.

TECHNIC.

(1) Developing Bone—Intramembranous.—Small pieces are removed from near the edge of the parietal bone of a new-born child or animal. These pieces should include the entire thickness of bone with the attached scalp and dura mater. Treat as in technic 1, p. 160, except that the sections which are cut perpendicular to the surface of the bone should be stained with hæmatoxylin-picro-acid-fuchsin (technic 3, p. 18) and mounted in balsam.

(2) Developing Bone—Intracartilaginous and Subperiosteal.—Remove the forearms and legs of a human or animal embryo by cutting through the elbow and knee-joints. (Fœtal pigs from five to six inches long are very satisfactory.) Treat as in technic (1). Block so that the two long bones will lie in such a plane that both will be cut at the same time. Cut thin longitudinal sections through the ossification centres, stain with hæmatoxylin-picro-acid-fuchsin, and mount in balsam. Cut away the ends of one or two of the embedded bones, leaving only the ossification centres. Block so as to cut transverse sections through the ossification centre. Stain and mount as the preceding.

In the picro-acid-fuchsin stained sections of developing bone the cartilage is stained blue; cells, including red blood cells, yellow; connective tissue from pale pink to red, according to density; bone a deep red.

The Cartilages.

The *costal cartilages* are hyaline. They are covered by a closely adherent connective-tissue membrane, the perichondrium. Where cartilage joins bone there is a firm union between the two tissues and the perichondrium becomes continuous with the periosteum.

The *articular cartilages* are described below under articulations.

The *other skeletal cartilages,* such as those of the larynx, trachea, bronchi, and of the organs of special sense, are more conveniently considered with the organs in which they occur.

Articulations.

Joints are *immovable* (synarthrosis) or *movable* (diarthrosis). In synarthrosis union may be cartilaginous (synchondrosis), or by means of fibrous connective tissue (syndesmosis).

SYNCHONDROSIS.—The cartilage is usually of the fibrous form except near the edge of the bone, where it is hyaline. The intervertebral discs consist of a ring of fibro-cartilage surrounding a central gelatinous substance, the nucleus pulposus, the latter representing the remains of the notochord.

SYNDESMOSIS.—Union is by means of ligaments. These may consist wholly of fibrous tissue, the fibres and cells being arranged much as in tendon, or mainly of coarse elastic fibres separated by loose fibrous tissue. In such syndesmoses as the sutures of the cranial bones, the union is by means of short fibrous ligaments between the adjacent serrated edges.

DIARTHROSIS.—In diarthrosis must be considered (*a*) the articular cartilages, (*b*) the glenoid ligaments and interarticular cartilages, (*c*) the joint capsule.

(*a*) *Articular cartilages* cover the ends of the bones. They are of the hyaline variety,[1] being the remains of the original cartilaginous matrix in which the bones are formed. Next to the bone is a narrow strip of cartilage in which the matrix is calcified. This is separated from the remaining uncalcified portion of the cartilage by a narrow so-called "striated" zone. The most superficial of the cartilage cells are arranged in rows parallel to the surface; in the mid-region the grouping of cells is largely in twos and fours as in ordinary hyaline cartilage (page 84); while in the deepest zone of the uncalcified cartilage the cells are arranged in rows perpendicular to the surface.

(*b*) The *glenoid ligaments* and interarticular cartilages conform more to the structure of dense fibrous tissue than to that of cartilage.

(*c*) The *joint capsule* consists of two layers, an outer layer of dense fibrous tissue intimately blended with the ligamentous structures of the joint and known as the *stratum fibrosum*, and an inner layer, the *stratum synoviale* or *synovial membrane*, which forms the lining of the joint cavity. The outer part of the stratum synoviale consists of areolar tissue with its loosely arranged white and elastic fibres interlacing in all directions and scattered connective-tissue cells and fat cells. Nearer the free surface of the membrane the fibres run parallel to the surface and the cellular elements are more abundant. The cells are scattered among the fibres and are stellate branching cells like those usually found in fibrous connective tissue. On the free surface, however, the cells are closely packed and although in places often several layers deep, are probably of the nature of endothelium.

---

[1] In the acromio-clavicular, sterno-clavicular, costo-vertebral, and maxillary articulations the cartilage is of the fibrous form. The same is true of the cartilage covering the head of the ulna, while the surface of the radius, which enters into the wrist-joint, is covered not by cartilage, but by dense fibrous tissue.

From the free surfaces of synovial membranes, processes (*synovial villi—Haversian fringes*) project into the joint cavity. Some of these are non-vascular and consist mainly of stellate cells similar to those of the synovial membrane. Others have a distinct core of fibrous tissue containing blood-vessels and covered with stellate connective-tissue cells. From the primary villi small secondary non-vascular villi are frequently given off.

TECHNIC.

(1) Joint Capsule and Articular Cartilage.—Remove one of the small joints—human or animal—cutting the bones through about one-half inch back from the joint. Treat as in technic 1, p. 160, making longitudinal sections through the entire joint.

(2) Synovial Villi.—Remove a piece of the capsular ligament from near the border of the patella and cut out a bit of the velvety tissue which lines its inner surface. Examine fresh in a drop of normal salt solution. Fix a second piece of the ligament in formalin-Müller's fluid (technic 5, p. 6), make sections perpendicular to the surface, stain with hæmatoxylin-eosin (technic 1, p. 17), and mount in balsam.

General References for Further Study.

Kölliker: Handbuch der Gewebelehre, vol. i.

Stöhr: Text-book of Histology.

Schäfer: Histology and Microscopical Anatomy, in Quain's Elements of Anatomy.

CHAPTER IV.

THE MUSCULAR SYSTEM.[1]

THE voluntary muscular system consists of a number of organs—*the muscles*—and of certain accessory structures—the *tendons*, *tendon sheaths*, and *bursæ*.

A VOLUNTARY MUSCLE consists of striated muscle fibres arranged in bundles or fascicles and supported by connective tissue.

The entire muscle is enclosed by a rather firm connective-tissue sheath or *capsule*—the *epimysium* (Fig. 98). This sends trabeculæ of more loosely arranged connective tissue into the substance of the muscle. These divide the muscle fibres into bundles or *fascicles*. Around each fascicle the connective tissue forms a more or less

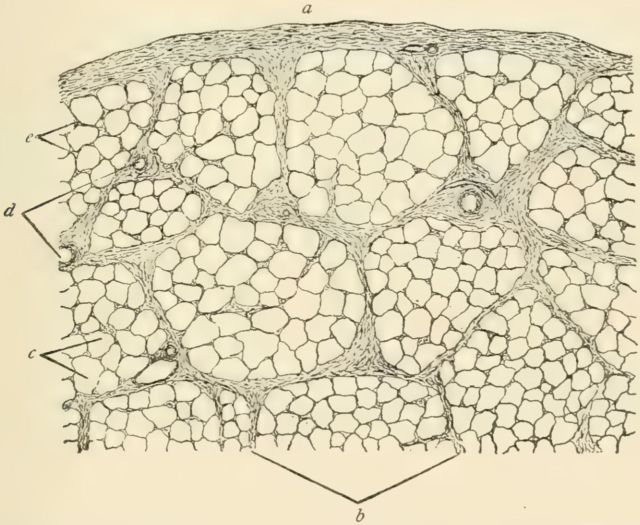


FIG. 98.—From a Transverse Section of a Small Human Muscle, showing relations of muscle fibres to connective tissue. *a*, Epimysium ; *b*, perimysium ; *c*, muscle fibres ; *d*, arteries ; *e*, endomysium.

---

[1] Definite arrangements of smooth muscle, such as are found in the stomach and intestines, also the muscle of the heart, are properly a part of the muscular system. They are, however, best considered under tissues and in connection with the organs in which they occur.

definite envelope, the *perifascicular sheath* or *perimysium.* From the latter delicate strands of connective tissue pass into the fascicles between the individual muscle fibres. This constitutes the *intrafascicular connective tissue* or *endomysium*, which everywhere completely separates the fibres from one another so that the sarcolemma of one fibre never comes in contact with the sarcolemma of any other fibre. It should be noted that these terms indicate merely location; epi-, peri-, and endomysium all being connective tissue grading from coarse to fine, as it passes from without inward. The structure of the muscle as an organ is thus seen to conform to the structure of other organs, in that it is surrounded by a connective-tissue capsule, which sends septa into the organ, dividing it into a number of compartments and serving for the support of the essential tissue of the organ, the muscle fibres or parenchyma.

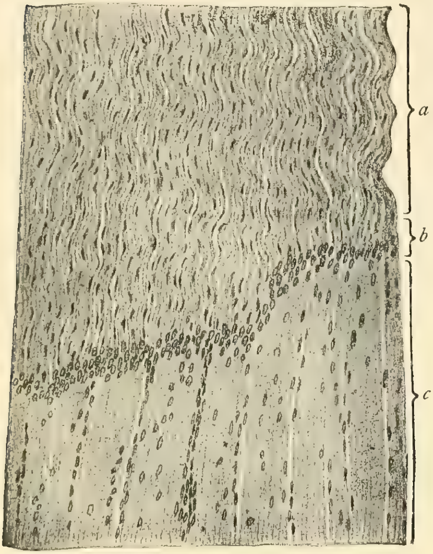


FIG. 99.—From a Longitudinal Section through Junction of Muscle and Tendon. ×150. (Böhm and Davidoff.) *a*, Tendon; *b*, line of union showing increase in number of muscle nuclei; *c*, muscle.

The structure of *tendon* has been described (see page 72).

Tendon sheaths and bursæ are similar in structure, consisting of mixed white and elastic fibres. Their free surfaces are usually lined by flat cells, which are described by some as connective-tissue cells, by others as endothelium.

At the junction of muscle and tendon, the muscle fibre with its sarcolemma ends in a rounded or blunt extremity (Fig. 54, p. 100) Here the fibrils of the tendon fibres are in part cemented to the sarcolemma, and in part are continuous with the fibres of the endo- and perimysium. Along the line of union of muscle and tendon the muscle nuclei are more numerous than elsewhere (Fig. 99, *b*), and it has been suggested that there is here a zone of indifferent or formative tissue which is capable of developing on the one hand into muscle, on the other into the connective tissue of tendon.

GROWTH OF MUSCLE takes place mainly at the ends of the fibres where the nuclei are most numerous. In addition to the growth incident to increase in size of the individual or of the particular muscle, there is a constant wearing out of muscle fibres and their replacement by new fibres. This is accomplished as follows: The muscle fibre first breaks up into a number of segments (sarcostyles), some of which contain nuclei while others are non-nucleated. The sarcostyles next divide into smaller fragments, and finally completely disintegrate. This is followed by a process of absorption and complete disappearance of the fibre. From the free sarcoplasm new muscle fibres are formed. In the early stages of their development these are known as myoblasts. The latter develop into muscle fibres in the same manner as described under the histogenesis of muscle (p. 103).

Blood-vessels.—The larger arteries of muscle run in the perimysium, their general direction being parallel to the muscle bundles. From these, small branches are given off at right angles. These in turn give rise to an anastomosing capillary network with elongated meshes, which surrounds the individual muscle fibres on all sides. From these capillaries, veins arise which follow the arteries. Even the smallest branches of these veins are supplied with valves.

In tendons blood-vessels are few. They run mainly in the connective tissue which surrounds the fibre bundles. Tendon sheaths and bursæ, on the other hand, are well supplied with blood-vessels.

The **lymphatics** of muscle are not numerous. They accompany the blood-vessels. In tendon definite lymph vessels are found only on the surface.

Nerves.—The terminations of nerves in muscle and tendon are described under nerve endings (page 354).

TECHNIC.

(1) A Muscle.—Select a small muscle, human or animal, and, attaching a weight to the lower end to keep it stretched, fix in formalin-Müller's fluid (technic 5, p. 6), and harden in alcohol. Stain transverse sections with hæmatoxylin-picro-acid-fuchsin (technic 3, p. 18) and mount in balsam.

(2) Junction of Muscle and Tendon.—Any muscle-tendon junction may be selected. Fix in formalin-Müller's fluid, keeping stretched by means of a weight attached to the lower end. Cut longitudinal sections through the muscle-tendon junction, stain with hæmatoxylin-picro-acid-fuchsin, and mount in balsam. The gastrocnemius of a frog is convenient on account of its small size, and because by bending the knee over and tying there, the muscle can be easily put on the stretch and kept in that condition during fixation. Place the entire preparation in the fixative, removing the muscle-tendon from the bone after fixation.

CHAPTER V.

GLANDS AND THE GENERAL STRUCTURE OF MUCOUS MEMBRANES.

Glands—General Structure and Classification.

ATTENTION was called in describing the functional activities of cells (page 41) to the fact that certain cells possess the power of not only carrying on the nutritive functions necessary to maintain their own existence, but also of elaborating certain products either necessary for the general body functions (secretions) or for the body to eliminate as waste (excretions). Such cells are known as *gland cells* or *grandular epithelium*, and an aggregation of these cells to form a definite structure for the purpose of carrying on secretion or excretion is known as a *gland*.

A gland may, however, consist of a single cell, as, *e.g.*, the mucous or goblet cell on the free surface of a mucous membrane. Such a cell undergoes certain changes by which a portion of its protoplasm is transformed into or replaced by a substance which is to be used outside the cell itself. When fully developed the free surface of the cell ruptures and the secretion is poured out.

Most glands are, however, composed of more than one cell, usually of a large number of cells, and these cells, instead of lying directly upon the surface, line more or less extensive invaginations into which they pour their secretions.

In the simplest form of glandular invagination all the cells lining the lumen are secreting cells. In more highly developed glands only the deeper cells secrete, the remainder of the gland serving merely to carry the secretion to the surface. This latter part is then known as the *excretory duct*, in contradistinction to the deeper *secreting portion*. In both the duct portion and secreting portion of a gland the epithelium usually rests upon a more or less definite *basement membrane* or *membrana propria* (page 57). Beneath the basement membrane, separating and supporting the glandular elements, is the connective tissue of the gland. This varies greatly in structure and quantity in different glands.

When the secreting portion of the gland is a tubule the lumen of which is of fairly uniform diameter, the gland is known as a *tubular gland.* When the lumen of the secreting portion is dilated in the form of a *sac* or *alveolus,* the gland is known as a *saccular* or *alveolar gland.*

A gland may consist of a single tubule or saccule, or of a single system of ducts leading to terminal tubules or saccules—*simple gland.* A gland may consist of a number of more or less elaborate duct systems with their terminal tubules or saccules—*compound gland.*

All compound glands are surrounded by connective tissue which forms a more or less definite *capsule.* From the capsule connective-tissue *septa* or *trabeculæ* extend into the gland. The broadest septa usually divide the gland into a number of macroscopic compartments or *lobes.* Smaller septa from the capsule and from the interlobular septa divide the lobes into smaller compartments usually microscopic in size—the *lobules.* A lobule is not only a definite portion of the gland separated from the rest of the gland by connective tissue, but represents a definite grouping of tubules or alveoli with reference to one or more terminal ducts. The glandular tissue is known as the *parenchyma* of the gland, in contradistinction to the connective or *interstitial* tissue.

Glands may thus be classified according to their shape and arrangement as follows:

1. Tubular glands.
   - (*a*) Simple tubular
     - straight.
     - coiled.
     - branched.
   - (*b*) Compound tubular.
2. Saccular or alveolar.
   - (*a*) Simple saccular.
   - (*b*) Compound saccular or racemose.

1. Tubular Glands.—(*a*) Simple tubular glands are simple tubules which open on the surface, their lining epithelium being continuous with the surface epithelium. All the cells may be secreting cells or only the more deeply situated. In the latter case the upper portion of the tubule serves merely as a duct. In the more highly developed of the simple tubular glands we distinguish a *mouth*, opening upon the surface, a *neck*, usually somewhat constricted, and a *fundus*, or deep secreting portion of the gland.

Simple tubular glands are divided according to the behavior of the fundus, into (1) straight, (2) coiled, and (3) branched.

(1) *A straight tubular gland* is one in which the entire tubule runs a straight unbranched course, *e.g.*, the glands of the large intestine (Fig. 100, *1*).

(2) *A coiled tubular gland* is one in which the deeper portion of the tubule is coiled or convoluted, *e.g.*, the sudoriferous glands of the skin (Fig. 100, *2*).

(3) *A forked or branched tubular gland* is a simple tubular gland in which the deeper portion of the tubule branches, the several branches being lined with secreting cells and opening into a superficial portion, which serves as a duct. Examples of slightly forked glands are seen in the cardiac end of the stomach and in the uterus. Other tubular glands show much more extensive branching: the main duct giving rise to a number of secondary ducts, from which are given off the terminal tubules. The mucous glands of the mouth,

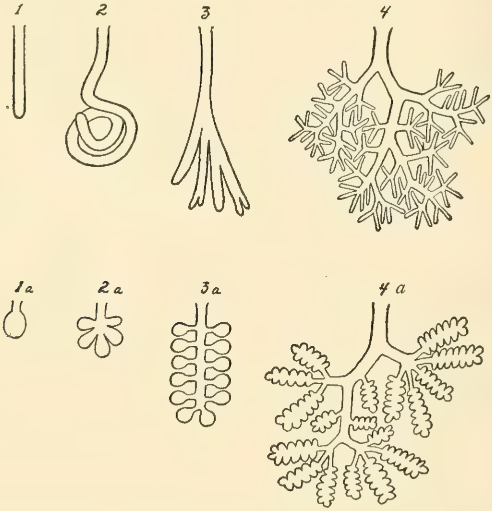


FIG. 100.—Diagram Illustrating Different Forms of Glands. Upper row, tubular glands ; *1*, *2*, and *3*, simple tubular glands ; *4*, compound tubular gland. Lower row, alveolar glands ; *1 a*, *2 a*, and *3 a*, simple alveolar glands ; *4a*, compound alveolar gland. For description of *1 a*, *2 a*, and *3 a*, see simple alveolar glands in text.

œsophagus, trachea, and bronchi are examples of these more elaborate simple tubular glands.

(*b*) Compound tubular glands consist of a number, often of a large number, of distinct *duct systems.* These open into a common or *main excretory duct.* The smaller ducts end in terminal tubules. Many of the largest glands of the body are of this type, *e.g.*, the salivary glands, liver, kidney, and testis.

In certain compound tubular glands, as, *e.g.*, the liver, extensive anastomoses of the terminal tubules occur. These are sometimes called *reticular glands.*

2. **Alveolar Glands.**—(*a*) Simple Alveolar Glands.—The simplest form of alveolar gland consists of a *single sac* connected with the surface by a constricted portion, the *neck*, the whole being shaped like a flask (Fig. 100, *1 a*). Such glands are found in the skin of certain amphibians; they do not occur in man. Simple alveolar glands, in which there are several saccules (Fig. 100, *2 a*), are represented by the smaller sebaceous glands. *Simple branched alveolar glands*, in which a common duct gives rise to a number of saccules (Fig. 100, *3 a*), are seen in the larger sebaceous glands and in the Meibomian glands.

(*b*) Compound Alveolar Glands.—These resemble the compound tubular glands in general structure, consisting of a large number of *duct systems*, all emptying into a *common excretory duct.* The main duct of each system repeatedly branches, and the small terminal ducts, instead of ending in tubules of uniform lumen, as in a tubular gland, end in sac-like dilatations, the *alveoli* or *acini* (Fig. 100, *4a*). The best example of a compound alveolar gland is the mammary gland, although the lung is constructed on the principle of a compound alveolar gland.

Certain structures remain to be considered which are properly classified as glands, but in which during development the excretory duct has disappeared. Such glands are known as *ductless glands.*

The ovary is a ductless gland, the specific secretion of which, the ovum, is under normal conditions taken up by the oviduct and carried to the uterus. This is known as a *dehiscent gland.*

Other ductless glands, such as the thyroid and adrenal, are known as glands of *internal secretion*, their specific secretions passing directly into the blood or lymph systems.

A few glands, *e.g.*, the liver and pancreas, have both an internal secretion and an external secretion.

General Structure of Mucous Membranes.

The alimentary tract, the respiratory tubules, parts of the genito-urinary system, and some of the organs of special sense are lined by *mucous membranes.* While differing as to details in different organs, the general structure of all mucous membranes is similar. The essential parts are (1) surface epithelium, (2) basement membrane, and (3) stroma or tunica propria. The *epithelium* may be simple columnar, as in the gastro-intestinal canal; ciliated, as in the bronchi; stratified squamous, as in the œsophagus, etc. The epithelium rests upon a *basement membrane* or *membrana propria* which, like the same membrane in glands, is described by some as a product of the epithelium, by others as a modification of the underlying connective tissue. Beneath the basement membrane is a connective-tissue *stroma,* or *tunica propria.* This usually consists of loosely arranged fibrous tissue with some elastic fibres. It may contain smooth muscle cells and lymphoid tissue.

In addition to the three layers above described there is frequently a fourth layer between the stroma and the submucosa. This consists of one or more layers of smooth muscle, and is known as the *muscularis mucosæ.*

A mucous membrane usually rests upon a layer of connective tissue rich in blood-vessels, lymphatics, and nerves—the *submucosa.*

CHAPTER VI.

THE DIGESTIVE SYSTEM.

THE *digestive system* consists of the alimentary tract and certain associated structures such as glands, teeth, etc.

The *alimentary tract* is a tube extending from lips to anus. Different parts of the tube present modifications both as to calibre and as to structure of wall.

The embryological subdivision of the canal into headgut, foregut, midgut, and endgut admits of further subdivision upon an anatomical basis as follows:

I. Headgut: (*a*) Mouth, including the tongue and teeth.
(*b*) Pharynx.
II. Foregut: (*a*) Œsophagus.
(*b*) Stomach.
III. Midgut: Small intestine.
IV. Endgut: (*a*) Large intestine.
(*b*) Rectum.

The entire canal is lined by *mucous membrane*, the modifications of which constitute the most essential difference in structure of its several subdivisions.

Beneath the mucosa is usually more or less connective tissue, which in a large portion of the canal forms a definite *submucosa*.

Muscular tissue is present beneath the submucosa throughout the greater part of the canal. In most regions it forms a definite, continuous, muscular tunic.

The upper and lower ends of the tube—mouth, pharynx, œsophagus, and rectum—are quite firmly attached by fibrous tissue to the surrounding structures. The remainder of the tube is less firmly attached, lying coiled in the abdominal cavity, its surface covered, except along its attached border, by a serous membrane, a reflection of the parietal peritoneum.

I. THE HEADGUT.

The Mouth.

The Mucous Membrane of the Mouth.—This consists of stratified squamous epithelium lying upon a connective-tissue stroma or tunica propria. The latter is thrown up into *papillæ*, which do not, however, appear upon the free surface of the epithelium. The submucosa is a firm connective-tissue layer with few elastic fibres. The thickness of the epithelium, the character of the stroma, and the height of the papillæ vary in different parts of the mouth. There is no muscularis mucosæ.

At the junction of skin and mucous membrane (red margin of the lips) the epithelial layer is much thickened, the stroma is thinned, and the papillæ are very high. At this point the stratum corneum of the skin passes over into the softer nucleated epithelium of the mouth, while the stratum lucidum and stratum granulosum of the skin terminate (see skin, page 318).

The mucous membrane of the gums has prominent, long, slender papillæ, the summits of which are covered by a very thin layer of epithelium. This nearness of the vascular stroma to the surface accounts for the ease with which the gums bleed. That portion of the gums which extends over the teeth is devoid of papillæ. The submucosa of the gums is firmly attached to the underlying periosteum.

The mucous membrane lining the cheeks has low, small papillæ, and the submucosa is closely adherent to the muscular fibres of the buccinator.

Covering the hard palate, the mucous membrane is thin and the short papillæ are obliquely placed, their apices being directed anteriorly. The submucosa is firmly attached to the periosteum.

Over the soft palate the papillæ of the mucous membrane are low or even absent. They are somewhat higher on the uvula, the posterior surface of which shows a transitional condition of its epithelium, areas of stratified squamous alternating with areas of stratified columnar ciliated epithelium. Throughout the mucous membrane of the soft palate, uvula, and fauces, the stroma and submucosa contain diffuse lymphatic tissue. In some places the lymphoid cells are so closely placed as to form distinct nodules.

Glands of the Oral Mucosa.[1]—Distributed throughout the oral mucosa are small branched tubular glands. Only in those parts of the mucous membrane which are closely attached to underlying bone, as on the gums and hard palate, are mucous glands few or entirely absent. While the deeper portions of the glands are in the submucosa, some of the tubules usually lie in the stroma of the mucous membrane.

The *ducts* open upon the surface and are lined with a continuation of the surface stratified squamous epithelium as far as the first bifurcation. Here the epithelium becomes stratified columnar, and this, as the smaller branches are approached, passes over into the simple columnar type. Not infrequently ducts of small secondary glands empty into the main duct during its passage through the mucosa.

According to the character of their secretions the oral glands are divided into:

(*a*) Mucous glands, which secrete a mucin-containing fluid (mucus);

(*b*) Serous glands, which secrete a serous (albuminous) fluid;

(*c*) Mixed glands, the secretion of which is partly mucous and partly serous.

Morphologically, also, a similar distinction can be made in regard to the glandular epithelium which lines the terminal tubules, the tubules of mucous glands being lined with "mucous" cells, those of serous glands with "serous cells," while of the mixed glands the cells of some tubules are mucous, of others serous. In certain tubules both mucous and serous cells occur. The appearance which these cells present depends largely upon their secretory condition at the time of death.

Serous cells when resting have a slightly granular protoplasm, which in the fresh condition is highly refractive, giving the cells a transparent appearance. With the beginning of secretion the granules increase in number and the cells become darker. Stained with hæmatoxylin-eosin, serous tubules have a pink or bluish-pink color. The nuclei are spherical or oval, and are situated between the centre and base of the cell (Fig. 135, p. 224).

Mucous cells are in the quiescent state rather small cuboidal or pyramidal cells, with cloudy cytoplasm and nuclei situated at the base of the cell. When active the mucous cells are much larger, with clear cytoplasm and with nuclei flattened against the basement membrane. Mucous tubules are larger and more irregular in shape than serous tubules, and when stained with hæmatoxylin-eosin either remain almost wholly unstained or take a pale blue hæmatoxylin stain (Fig. 135, p. 224). Many mucous tubules have in addition to the mucous cells a peculiar, often crescentic-shaped group of cells on one side of the tubule, between the mucous cells and the basement membrane. These cells are granular, stain rather deeply with eosin, and resemble serous cells. On account of the shape of the groups, they are known as the *crescents* of *Gianuzzi* or *demilunes* of *Heidenhain* (Fig. 135, p. 224). The cells of the crescents are connected with the lumen by means of *secretory tubules*, which pass between the mucous cells and end in branches within the protoplasm of the crescent cells.

---

[1] For description of the larger salivary glands see page 221.

Peculiar irregular branching cells have been described, extending from the basement membrane in between the mucous cells. They are known as "basket" cells and are supposed to be supportive in character.

The cells of both mucous and serous tubules rest upon a membrana propria, outside of which, separating the tubules, is a cellular connective-tissue stroma.

Of the small glands of the mouth, a group near the root of the tongue are of the mucous variety, some "lingual" glands in the region of the circumvallate papillæ are serous, while the remainder are of the mixed type.

Blood-vessels.—The larger vessels run mainly in the submucosa. The arteries of the submucosa give off one group of branches to the tunica propria, where they break up into a dense subepithelial capillary network, sending capillary loops into the papillæ. A second group of arterial branches pass to the submucosa, where they give rise to capillary networks among the tubules of the mucous glands. From the capillaries veins arise which accompany the arteries.

Lymphatics.—The larger lymph vessels lie in the submucosa. These send smaller branches into the tunica propria, where they open into small lymph capillaries and spaces.

Nerves.—Medullated nerve fibres form plexuses in the submucosa and deeper parts of the mucosa. From these plexuses, branches are given off which lose their medullary sheaths and form a second plexus of non-medullated fibres just beneath the epithelium. From this subepithelial plexus, branches pass in between the epithelial cells to terminate in end brushes or in tactile corpuscles (see nerve endings, page 352). The nerves belong to the cerebro-spinal system, and are dendrites of sensory ganglion cells. Axones of sympathetic neurones are also present in the oral mucosa, destined mainly for the muscle-tissue of the blood-vessels.

TECHNIC.

(1) The superficial cells of the oral mucous membrane may be prepared for examination as in technic 1, page 50.

(2) For the study of the mucous membrane of different parts of the mouth, fix small pieces in formalin-Müller's fluid (technic 5, p. 6) cut sections perpendicular to the surface, stain with hæmatoxylin-eosin (technic 1, p. 17), and mount in balsam.

(3) Small mucous and serous glands of the mouth may be studied in the preceding sections.

THE TONGUE.

The tongue is composed mainly of striated muscle fibres, supported by connective tissue and covered by a mucous membrane. While the bundles of fibres interlace in all directions, three fairly distinct planes can be differentiated.

(1) Vertical and somewhat radiating fibres—hyoglossus, genioglossus, and vertical fibres of the lingualis.

(2) Transverse fibres—transverse fibres of the lingualis.

(3) Longitudinal fibres—the styloglossus and longitudinal (superior and inferior) fibres of the lingualis.

The connective tissue which supports the muscle fibres and separates them into bundles contains mucous glands and fat. A strong band of connective tissue, the *septum linguæ*, extends lengthwise through the middle of the tongue, dividing it into right and left halves.

The *submucosa* of the tongue is not well developed, the stroma of the mucosa resting directly upon the underlying muscle.

The *mucous membrane* of the tongue resembles that of the mouth, but differs from the latter in that in addition to the low papillæ, such as are found in the oral mucosa, the upper surface of the tongue is studded with numerous and much larger papillæ or villi. These project from the surface and give to the tongue its characteristic roughness. Three forms of papillæ are distinguished. Filiform, fungiform, and circumvallate.

(1) Filiform Papillæ (Fig. 101).—These are the most numerous and are distributed over the entire dorsum of the organ. Each consists of a central core of connective tissue containing elastic fibres, which is long and slender and is covered by stratified squamous epithelium. From the summit of each papilla are given off several *secondary papillæ*. The epithelium covering the papillæ is hornified and often extends from the surface as a long thread-like projection—hence the name, *filiform*.

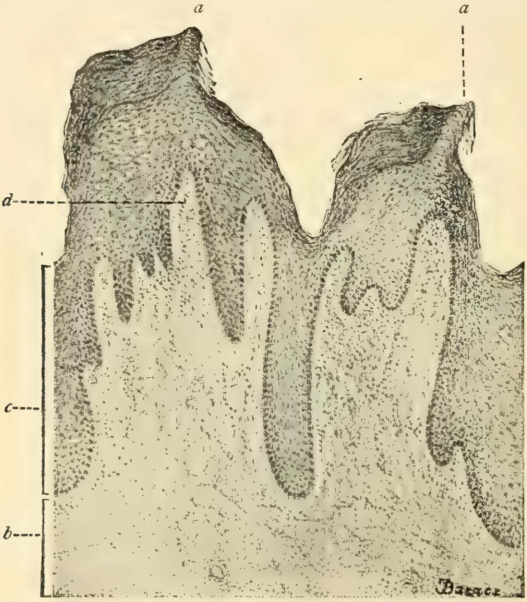


Fig. 101.—Vertical Section through Two Filiform Papillæ from Human Tongue. × 80. (Szymonowicz.) *a*, Horny epithelium; *b*, stroma; *c*, epithelium; *d*, secondary papilla.

(2) Fungiform Papillæ (Fig. 102).—Scattered irregularly over the entire dorsum among the filiform papillæ, but fewer in number, are larger papillæ of somewhat different structure known as fungiform papillæ. Their summits are rounded instead of pointed and their bases are narrowed. Secondary papillæ are given off not only from the summit, but from the sides of the papilla. The epithelial covering is comparatively thin and is not hornified. The connective-tissue core of these papillæ contains but few elastic fibres.

(3) The Circumvallate Papillæ (Fig. 103).—These are from nine to fifteen in number, and are grouped on the posterior surface of the dorsum of the tongue. They resemble the fungiform papillæ,

but are much larger. Each lies rather deep in the mucous membrane, surrounded by a groove or *trench* and *wall* (whence the name circumvallate). The wall is somewhat lower than the papilla, thus allowing the latter to project slightly above the surface. Secondary papillæ are confined to the upper surface of the papilla, the sides being free from secondary papillæ. The surface of the papilla and the borders of the groove and wall are covered by stratified squamous epithelium. Lying in the epithelium of the side wall and sometimes of the opposite trench wall are oval bodies, the so-called *taste buds*, which serve as organs for the nerves of taste (see nervous system). Into the trench surrounding the circumvallate papilla open the ducts of serous glands (Ebner's glands).

The *lymph follicles* of the tongue have been already described (page 145) under the head of the lingual tonsils.

For glands of the tongue see page 182.

The larger **blood-vessels** run in the connective-tissue septa. These give off smaller branches, which break up into capillary networks surrounding the muscle fibres and forming a plexus just beneath the epithelium. From the latter are given off capillaries to

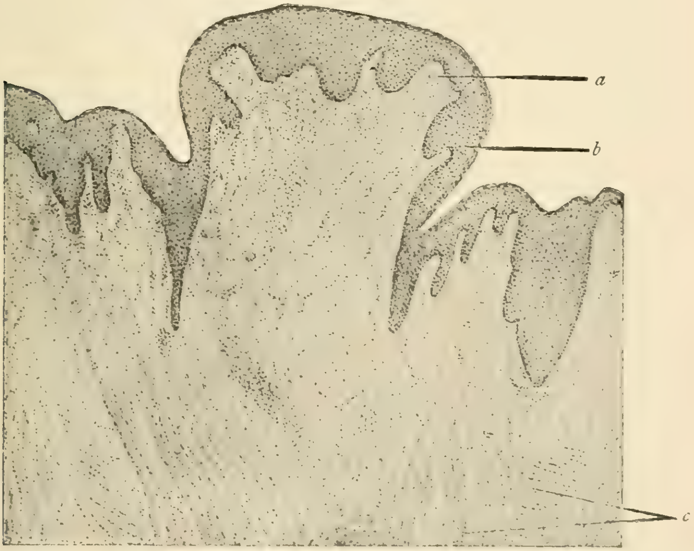


FIG. 102.—Vertical Section through Fungiform Papilla of Human Tongue. × 45. (Szymonowicz.) *a*, Secondary papilla ; *b*, epithelium ; *c*, muscle fibres.

the papillæ. The capillaries converge to form veins, which in general follow the course of the arteries.

Fine **lymph spaces** occur in the papillæ and open into a plexus of small lymph capillaries just beneath the papillæ. These communicate with a deeper plexus of larger lymphatics, which increase in size and number as they pass backward and form an especially dense lymphatic network at the root of the tongue in the region of the lingual tonsils.

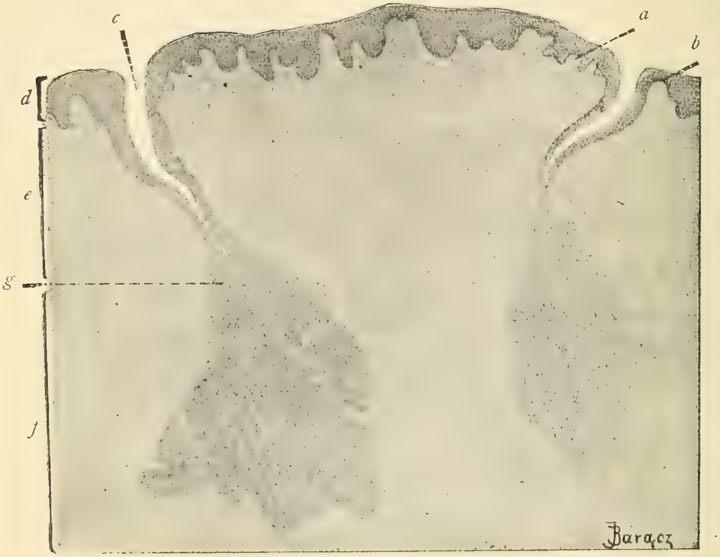


FIG. 103.—Vertical Section through a Circumvallate Papilla of Human Tongue. × 37. (Szymonowicz.) *a*, Secondary papilla; *b*, wall; *c*, trench; *d*, epithelium of tongue; *e*, stroma; *f*, submucosa; *g*, Ebner's glands.

Nerves.—Sympathetic fibres pass mainly to the smooth muscle of the blood-vessels and to the glands. Medullated motor nerve fibres supply the lingual muscles. (For motor nerve endings see page 357.) Medullated sensory nerves include those of the special sense of taste as well as those of ordinary sensation. They end freely among the epithelial cells or in connection with special end-organs—the *taste buds* mainly in the circumvallate papillæ, and the *end-bulbs of Krause* in the fungiform papillæ (see page 353).

TECHNIC.

Remove pieces of the dorsum of the tongue, selecting parts that will include the different forms of papillæ and cutting well into the underlying muscular tissue.

Treat as in technic 2, p. 183, or sections may be stained with hæmatoxylin-picro-acid-fuchsin (technic 3, p. 18).

In sections from the back part of the tongue good examples of mucous and serous glands are usually found.

In small sections of the tongue the muscle fibres are seen arranged in bundles, surrounded by connective tissue and interlacing in all directions. For the study of the arrangement of the different planes of muscle, complete transverse sections should be made at intervals through the entire tongue. The muscle and connective-tissue relations are best brought out by the hæmatoxylin-picro-acid-fuchsin stain.

THE TEETH.

A tooth is a hard bone-like structure, part of which projects above the surface of the jaw as the *crown*, while the deeper portion, the *root*, is buried in a socket of the alveolar margin (Fig. 104).

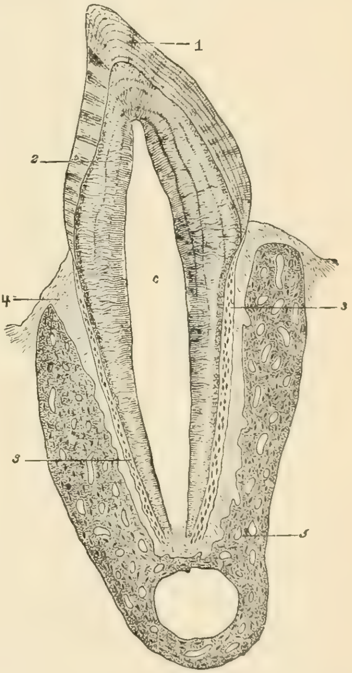


Fig. 104.—Vertical Section of Tooth in Situ. × 15. (Waldeyer.) *c*, Pulp cavity, the letter being at about the junction of crown and root; *1*, enamel showing radial and longitudinal markings; *2*, dentine showing dental canals; *3*, cementum (containing bone corpuscles); *4*, dental periosteum; *5*, bone of lower jaw.

A tooth consists of a soft central core, the *pulp cavity*, surrounded by *dentine* (Figs. 104 and 105). The latter constitutes the main bulk of the tooth. The exposed portion of the dentine is covered by a thin layer of extremely hard substance, the *enamel* (Fig. 104, *1*), while the alveolar portion of the dentine is covered with *cementum* (Fig. 104, *3*). Of these the dentine and cementum are of connective-tissue origin, the enamel of epithelial.

The *pulp cavity* occupies the central axis of the tooth (Figs. 104 and 105). In the root it is known as the *root canal*. At the apex of the root it communicates with the underlying tissue by means of a minute opening, through which blood-vessels and nerves enter the pulp cavity.

The *dentinal pulp* consists of loose connective tissue of an embryonal type, composed of fusiform and stellate cells and delicate fibrils not joined to form bundles. This tissue supports the blood-vessels and nerves which are found only in the pulp of the tooth. The surface of the pulp is covered by a single layer of columnar cells, the *odontoblasts*. These cells are closely allied to osteoblasts. Their nuclei lie toward their inner ends. Each cell sends out an inner process, which is usually single and passes into the dentinal pulp, and one or more outer fibre-like processes which enter the dentine, where they form the *dentinal fibres*.

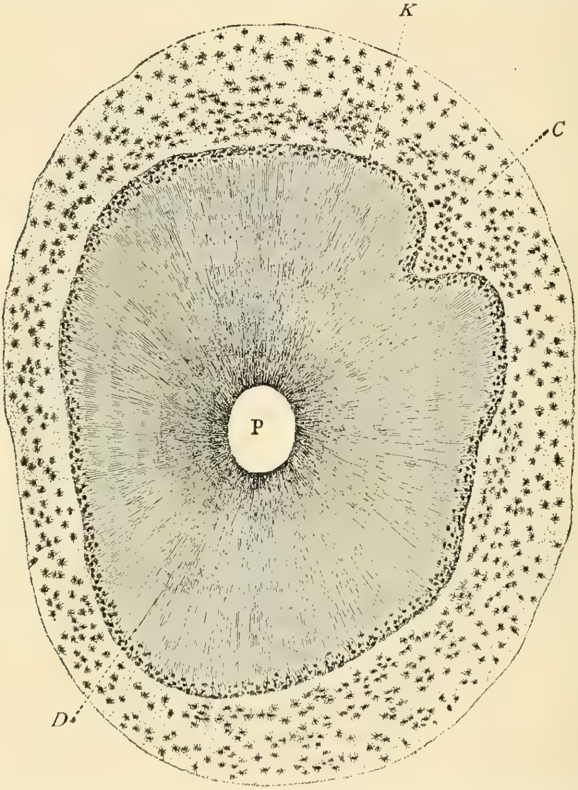


FIG. 105.—Cross-section through Root of Human Canine Tooth (× 25) (Sabotta), showing relations of pulp cavity, dentine, and cementum. *P*, Pulp cavity ; *D*, dentine ; *C*, cementum ; *K*, Tomes' granular layer.

DENTINE (Figs. 106 and 107, *D*) resembles bone. It is peculiar in that it contains canaliculi, *dental canals* (Figs. 106 and 107, *Dk*), but no lacunæ or bone cells. The latter are represented by the odontoblasts of the pulp, which, as already noted, lie at the inner side of the dentine, into the canaliculi of which they send the *dentinal fibres*. Dentine is non-vascular. The dental canals begin at the dental pulp, where they have a calibre of 2 to 3 μ. They pass outward, taking a somewhat curved course, to the limit of the dentine. In their passage through the dentine the main canals give off side branches, which anastomose with similar branches from other canals. This anastomosis takes place not only between branches of adjacent canals, but also between branches of canals some distance apart. The main canals terminate either in blind extremities, or form loops by anastomosing with neighboring tubules. A few tubules run slightly beyond the limits of the dentine into the enamel. They do not pass into the cementum. The dentine immediately around a dental canal is more dense and hard than elsewhere and forms a sort of sheath for the canal—*Neumann's dental sheath.* Between the dental canals is a calcified ground substance, in which are connective-tissue fibres running in the long axis of the tooth.

Spaces which probably represent incomplete calcification of the dentine occur in the peripheral portion of the dentine of the crown. These are known as *interglobular spaces* (Fig. 107, *Jg*). They are filled with a substance resembling uncalcified dentine.

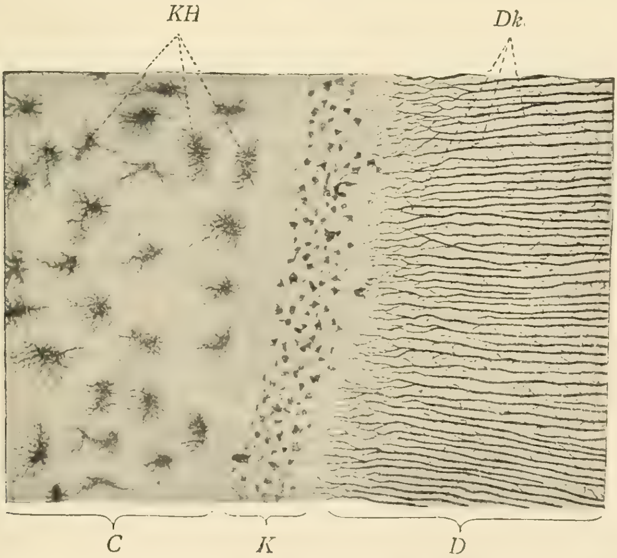


FIG. 106.—From Longitudinal Section through Root of Human Molar Tooth (× 200) (Sabotta), showing junction of dentine and cementum. *C*, Cementum; *D*, dentine; *K*, Tomes' granular layer; *Dk*, dental canals; *KH*, lacunæ of cementum.

In the outer part of the dentine of the root are similar spaces which are smaller and more closely placed. These form the so-called Tomes' granular layer (Fig. 106, *K*).

The ENAMEL is the hardest substance in the body. It contains little more than a trace of organic substance (3 to 5 per cent). It consists of long six-sided prisms—*enamel fibres* or *enamel prisms* (Fig. 107, *S*)—which take a slightly wavy course through the entire thickness of the enamel. The prisms are attached to one another by a small amount of cement substance. In the human adult the prisms are homogeneous; in the embryo they show a longitudinal fibrillation. Rather indistinct parallel lines (the *lines* of *Retzius*) cross the enamel prisms. They probably represent the deposition in layers of the lime salts. The enamel is covered by an apparently structureless membrane, the *cuticula dentis*.

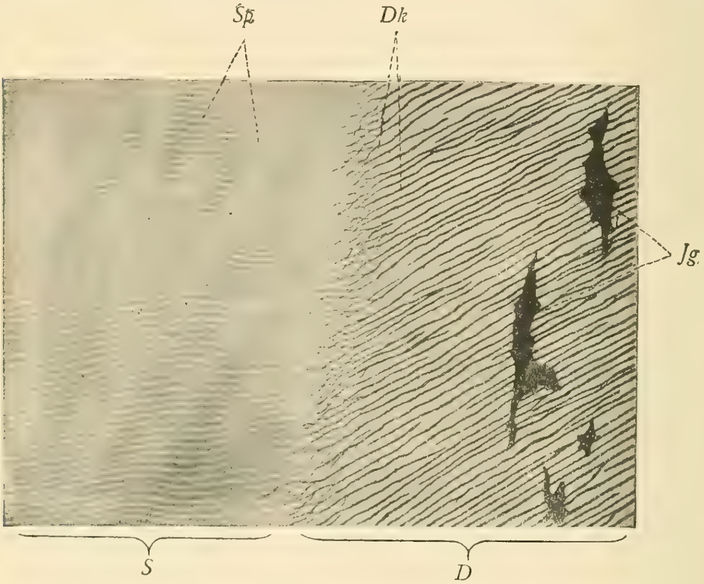


FIG. 107.—From Longitudinal Section of Crown of Human Premolar (× 200) (Sabotta), showing junction of enamel and dentine. *S*, Enamel; *D*, dentine; *Sp*, enamel prisms; *Dk*, dental canals; *Jg*, interglobular spaces. A few dentinal fibres are seen passing beyond the limits of the dentine into the enamel. The oblique dark bands in the enamel are the lines of Retzius.

The CEMENTUM (Fig. 106, *C*) covers the dentine of the root in a manner similar to that in which the enamel covers the dentine of the crown (Fig. 104, *1* and *3*). Cementum is *bone tissue*. It contains *lacunæ* and *bone cells*, but no distinct lamellation and no Haversian systems or blood-vessels, excepting in the large teeth of the larger mammalia, where they may be present. Many uncalcified Sharpey's fibres penetrate the cementum.

The union between the root of the tooth and the alveolar periosteum is accomplished by a reflection of the latter over the root, where it forms the *dental periosteum*, or *peridental membrane* (Fig. 104, *4*). At the neck of the tooth this membrane blends with the submucosa of the gum. The peridental membrane is formed of fibrillar connective tissue free from elastic fibres. These fibres are directly continuous with Sharpey's fibres of the cementum.

Blood-vessels of teeth are confined entirely to the pulp cavity. One or two small arteries reach the pulp cavity from the underlying connective tissue, through the foramen in the apex of the root. These break up into a capillary network in the dental pulp.

Lymphatics have as yet not been demonstrated in the dental pulp.

Medullated **nerve fibres** accompany the blood-vessels through the apical canal. In the pulp they break up into a number of nonmedullated branches, which form a plexus along the outer edge of the pulp, beneath the odontoblasts. From this plexus branches are given off which pass in between the odontoblasts, some terminating there, while others end between the odontoblasts and the dentine.

DEVELOPMENT.—The *enamel* of the teeth is of ectodermic origin, the remainder of mesodermic. The earliest indication of tooth formation occurs about the seventh week of intra-uterine life. It consists in a dipping down of the epithelium covering the edge of the jaw into the underlying connective tissue, where it forms the *dental ridge*, or *common dental germ*. At intervals along the outer side of this dental ridge, the cells of the ridge undergo proliferation and form thickenings, ten in number, each one corresponding to the position of a future milk tooth. These are known as *special dental germs*, and remain for some time connected with one another and with the surface epithelium by means of the rest of the dental ridge.

Into the under side of each special dental germ an invagination of the underlying connective tissue occurs. This forms the *dental papilla* (Fig. 108), over which the tissue of the special dental germ forms a sort of a cap, the latter being known from its subsequent function as the *enamel organ*. The next step is the almost complete separation of the special dental germs and ridge from the surface epithelium (Fig. 108), and the formation around each special dental germ of a vascular membrane, the *dental sac*. The attenuated strand of epithelial cells, which still maintains a connection between the dental germs and the epithelium of the gums, is known as the *neck* of the *enamel organ*, and it is from this that an extension soon occurs to the inner side of the dental germs of the milk teeth, to form the *dental germs* of the *permanent teeth* (Fig. 108). Into the latter, connective-tissue papillæ extend as in the case of the milk teeth. There are thus present as early as the fifth month of fœtal existence the germs of all milk and of some permanent teeth.

The *enamel organ* at this stage consists of three layers: (1) The outer enamel cells, somewhat flattened; (2) the inner enamel cells, high columnar epithelium; (3) a layer of enamel pulp, situated between the other layers, and consisting of stellate anastomosing cells with considerable intercellular substance (Figs. 108 and 109).

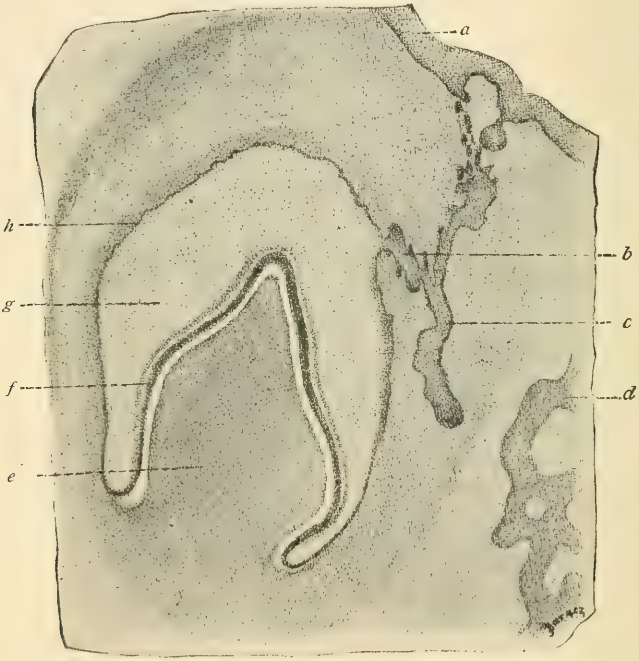


FIG. 108.—Developing Tooth from Three-and-one-half-months' Human Embryo. × 65. (Szymonowicz.) *a*, Epithelium of gums; *b*, neck of enamel organ; *c*, dental germ of permanent tooth; *d*, bone of lower jaw; *e*, dental papilla; *f*, inner enamel cells; *g*, enamel pulp; *h*, outer enamel cells.

The first of the dental tissue to become hard is the DENTINE. The surface cells of the papilla differentiate to form a layer of columnar cells, *odontoblasts*. Between these and the inner enamel cells a membrane-like structure, the *membrana præformativa*, is formed. This becomes converted into dentine by the deposition of lime salts, the process being similar to the formation of bone by the osteoblasts. Processes of the odontoblasts remain in the developing dentine as the *dental fibres*, lying in channels, the *dental canals*. Additional dentine continues to be laid down in layers, each new layer internal to the preceding. In this way the dental papilla is reduced in size to form the *pulp cavity*. Small spots remain, in which there is little or no calcification. These are the so-called *interglobular spaces*.

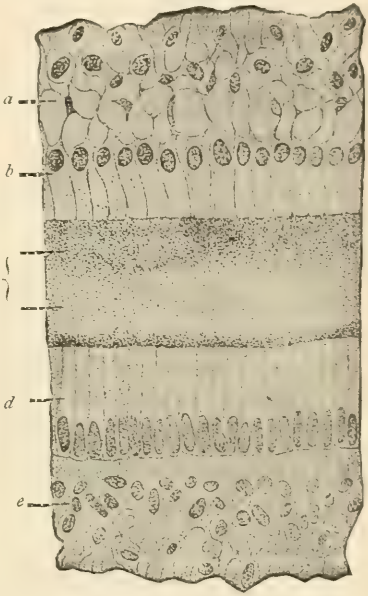


FIG. 109.—From Cross-section through a Developing Tooth. × 720. (Böhm and von Davidoff.) Note close relationship between odontoblasts and tissue of dental pulp. *a*, Dental pulp ; *b*, odontoblasts ; *c*, dentine ; *d*, inner enamel cells ; *e*, enamel pulp.

The EMAMEL is formed by the *enamel organ*. A membrane, the *cuticular membrane*, is first laid down between the inner enamel cells and the dentine. Each of the inner enamel cells now sends out a process, *Tomes' process*, from its inner end. The processes are separated by a considerable amount of cement, and are the beginnings of the *enamel prisms*. Calcification now takes place both in the prisms and in the cement substance, the latter at the same time becoming reduced in amount. Further growth in thickness of enamel occurs by lengthening of the enamel prisms. During the formation of the enamel, the enamel pulp and the external enamel cells disappear.

The CEMENTUM is developed by ossification of that part of the dental sac which covers the root.

TECHNIC.

(1) Teeth are extremely difficult organs from which to obtain satisfactory material for study. Sections of hard (undecalcified) and of decalcified teeth may be prepared in the same manner as sections of bone—technics 1 and 2, p. 160. The decalcified tooth should include if possible the alveolar margin of the jaw, so that

in longitudinal sections the mode of implantation and the relation of the tooth to the surrounding structures can be seen.

(2) For the study of developing teeth, embryo pigs, sheep, cats, dogs, etc., are suitable. For the early stages fœtal pigs should be five to six inches long; for the intermediate, ten to twelve inches. The later stages are best obtained from a small new-born animal, *e.g.*, kitten or small pup. The jaw—preferably the lower—or pieces of the jaw are fixed in formalin-Müller's fluid (technic 5, p. 6), hardened in alcohol, and decalcified (page 9). Subsequent treatment is the same as for developing bone (technic 1, p. 168).

The Pharynx.

The wall of the pharynx consists of three coats—mucous, muscular, and fibrous.

1. **The mucous membrane** has a surface epithelium and an underlying stroma.

The EPITHELIUM is stratified squamous except in the region of the posterior nares, where it is stratified columnar ciliated, continuous with the similar epithelium of the nasal mucosa.

The STROMA, or tunica propria, consists of mixed fibrous and elastic tissue infiltrated with lymphoid cells. In certain regions these cells form distinct *lymph nodules* (see pharyngeal tonsils, page 146). Beneath the stratified squamous epithelium the stroma is thrown up into numerous low *papillæ.* These are absent in regions covered by ciliated cells. Bounding the stroma externally is a strongly developed layer of longitudinal elastic fibres, the *elastic limiting layer*, which separates the stroma from the muscular coat and sends stout bands in between the muscle bundles of the latter.

2. **The muscular coat** lies beneath the elastic layer and is formed of very irregularly arranged muscle fibres belonging to the constrictor muscles of the pharynx.

3. **The fibrous coat** consists of a dense network of mixed fibrous and elastic tissue. It has no distinct external limit, and binds the pharynx to the surrounding structures.

The distribution of **blood-vessels, lymphatics**, and **nerves** is similar to that in the oral mucosa.

Small, branched, tubular, *mucous glands* are present in the stroma, and extend down into the intermuscular connective tissue. They are most numerous near the opening of the Eustachian tube.

TECHNIC.

For the study of the structure of the walls of the pharynx, material should be prepared as in technic 2, p. 183.

THE FOREGUT.

The Œsophagus.

The walls of the œsophagus are continuous with those of the pharynx and closely resemble the latter in structure. They consist of four layers, which from within outward are mucous, submucous, muscular, and fibrous (Fig. 110).

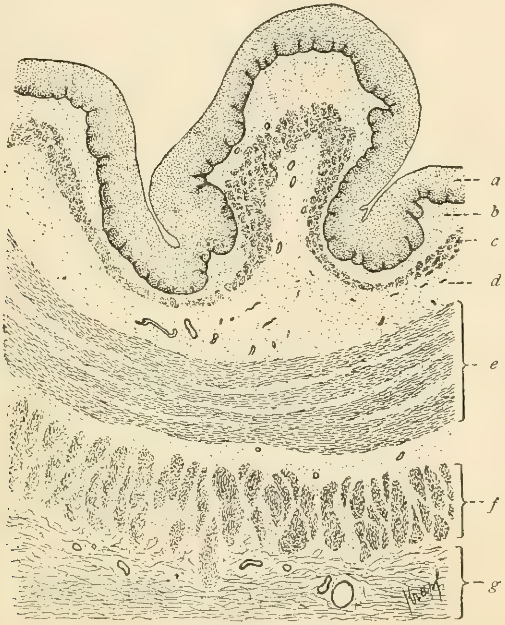


FIG. 110.—Transverse Section through Wall of Dog's Œsophagus. × 18. (Böhm and von Davidoff.) *a*, Epithelium; *b*, stroma; *c*, muscularis mucosæ; *d*, submucosa; *e*, circular muscle layer; *f*, longitudinal muscle layer; *g*, fibrous layer.

1. **The mucous membrane** resembles that of the pharynx except that beneath the stroma is a well-developed *muscularis mucosæ* composed of smooth muscle cells arranged longitudinally.

2. **The submucosa** is composed of loosely arranged fibrous and elastic tissue. It contains mucous glands, the larger blood-vessels, lymphatics, and nerves.

3. **The muscular coat.** In the upper portion of the œsophagus this coat is composed of striated muscle fibres; in the middle portion of mixed striated and smooth muscle. In the lower portion there are

two distinct layers of smooth muscle, an inner circular and an outer longitudinal. The latter is not continuous.

4. **The fibrous coat** consists of bundles of white fibrous tissue with many elastic fibres. It serves to connect the œsophagus with the surrounding structures.

Two kinds of *glands* occur in the œsophagus.

(1) MUCOUS GLANDS.—These are of the same structure as those of the tongue, but much smaller. They lie in the submucosa and are distributed throughout the entire œsophagus, though most numerous in its upper third. The ducts pass obliquely downward on their way to the surface. Just before entering the muscularis mucosæ the duct widens out to form a sort of *ampulla.* Beyond this it again becomes narrow and enters the epithelium in the depression between two adjacent papillæ. A small lymph nodule is usually attached to the duct as it passes through the tunica propria.

(2) SIMPLE BRANCHED TUBULAR GLANDS.—These resemble the glands of the cardiac end of the stomach, but branch much more profusely. Some contain both chief and acid cells, others only chief cells (see stomach, page 199). They lie in the tunica propria, and are for the most part confined to a narrow zone at the lower end of the œsophagus and to the level of the fifth tracheal ring. Scattered groups also occur in other regions.

TECHNIC.

Remove a portion of the wall of the œsophagus, wash carefully in normal salt solution, and pin out, mucous-membrane side up, on a piece of cork. Fix in formalin-Müller's fluid and harden in alcohol (technic 5, p. 6). Transverse or longitudinal sections should be cut through the entire thickness of the wall. If the details of the muscular coat are to be studied, sections from at least three different levels should be taken: one near the upper end, one at about the middle, and the other in the lower third. Stain with hæmatoxylin-eosin or hæmatoxylin-picro-acid-fuchsin (technic 1 or 3, p. 17) and mount in balsam.

GENERAL STRUCTURE OF THE WALLS OF THE GASTRO-INTESTINAL CANAL.

The walls of the stomach and intestines are made up of four coats (Fig. 111). These from the lumen outward are mucous, submucous, muscular, and serous.

1. **The mucous membrane** (Fig. 111) consists of surface epithe-

lium, glands, stroma, and muscularis mucosæ. The *surface epithelium* is simple columnar and rests upon a distinct *basement membrane*. The arrangement of the glands and the nature of the gland cells differ in different parts of the tract. The *stroma* is a richly cellular connective tissue, which in some places is so infiltrated with lymphoid cells as to constitute diffuse lymphatic tissue. In other places it contains circumscribed masses of lymphatic tissue, lymph nodules. The amount of stroma depends upon the closeness with which the glands are packed. The *muscularis mucosæ* consists of smooth muscle cells, which have a generally longitudinal arrangement. Where, however, the muscularis mucosæ is thick there are frequently

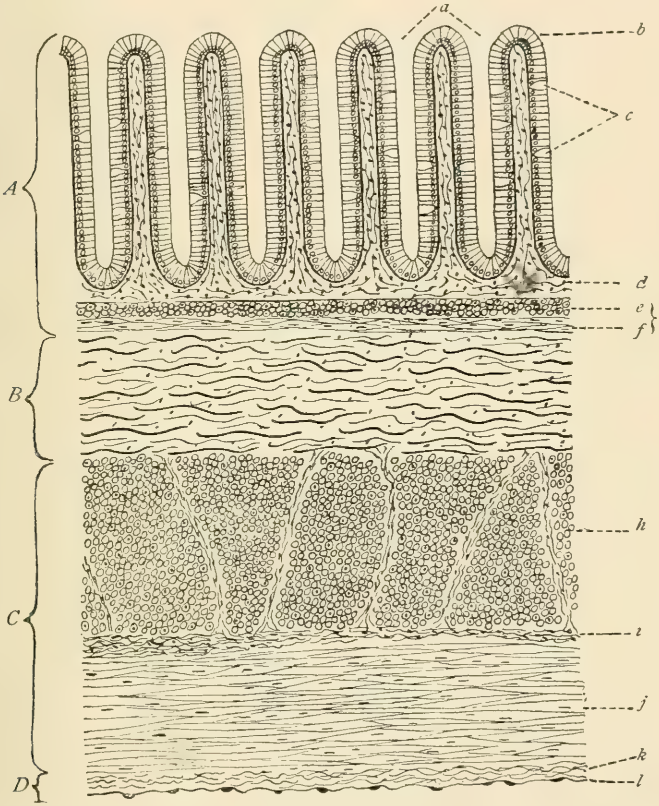


FIG. 111.—Diagram of Structure of Wall of Gastro-intestinal Canal. *A*, Mucous membrane; *a*, glands; *b*, epithelium; *c*, goblet cells; *d*, stroma; *e*, inner circular, *f*, outer longitudinal layers of *g*, muscularis mucosæ. *B*, Submucosa. *C*, Muscular coat; *h*, its inner circular layer; *j*, its outer longitudinal layer; *i*, intermuscular connective-tissue septum. *D*, serous coat; *k*, its connective-tissue layer; *l*, its endothelial layer.

two distinct layers—an inner circular and an outer longitudinal. Folds of considerable extent occur in the mucous membrane. Those of the stomach are known as *rugæ*, and are not constant, depending upon the degree of distention of the organ. Those of the small intestine are much more definite, and are known as *valvulæ conniventes*.

2. **The submucosa** (Fig. 111) is a loose connective-tissue structure. It contains the larger blood-vessels, lymphatics, and nerves.

3. **The muscular coat** (Fig. 111) consists of two layers of smooth muscle, which in the intestine are sharply differentiated into an *inner circular* and an *outer longitudinal*. In the stomach the direction of the layers of the muscular coat is less definite. A narrow layer of connective tissue separates the two layers of muscle. From this, septa extend into the muscle tissue, separating it into bundles.

4. **The serous coat** (Fig. 111) is the visceral layer of the peritoneum. It consists of a thin layer of connective tissue covered by a single layer of mesothelium. Along the attachment of the mesentery the serous coat is wanting.

The subdivisions of the gastro-intestinal canal differ from one another mainly in regard to the structure of their mucous membranes, and especially in regard to the structure of the glands of the mucous membrane and submucosa.

The Stomach.

1. **The mucous membrane** of the stomach is folded into ridges or *rugæ*, the height and number of which depend, as already noted, upon the degree of distention of the organ. The rugæ are most prominent in the collapsed organ, almost absent when the organ is fully distended. In addition to the rugæ the entire mucous membrane is studded with minute depressions barely visible to the naked eye, the so-called *gastric pits* or *crypts* (Fig. 112, *Mg*). These mark the openings of the *gastric glands*. In the fundus they are comparatively shallow, extending through about one-fifth the thickness of the mucosa; in the pylorus the crypts are much deeper, extending through half or more of the thickness of the mucous membrane (compare Figs. 112 and 116).

The Epithelium.—At the junction of œsophagus (Fig. 113) and stomach the stratified squamous epithelium of the former ends rather abruptly, being replaced by the simple columnar epithelium, which covers the entire surface of the gastric mucosa and extends down into the crypts (Fig. 112). The cells are of the high, clear, mucous type (Fig. 114, *M* and *M'*). The end of the cell toward the lumen is clear, usually consists mostly of mucus, and consequently stains lightly. The basal end of the cell contains the spheroidal, oval, or sometimes flattened nucleus, is granular, and takes a darker stain. The cells rest upon a distinct basement membrane.

The Gastric Glands.—Extending from the bottoms of the crypts, their epithelium continuous with that of the crypts themselves, are the gastric glands. These are of two kinds, *peptic* or *fundus glands,* distributed throughout the greater part of the gastric mucosa, and *pyloric glands,* confined to the immediate region of the pylorus.

The *peptic glands* (Fig. 112) are simple, sometimes branched, tubular glands, of which from three to seven open into each gastric crypt. They extend through the entire thickness of the stroma, to the muscularis mucosæ.

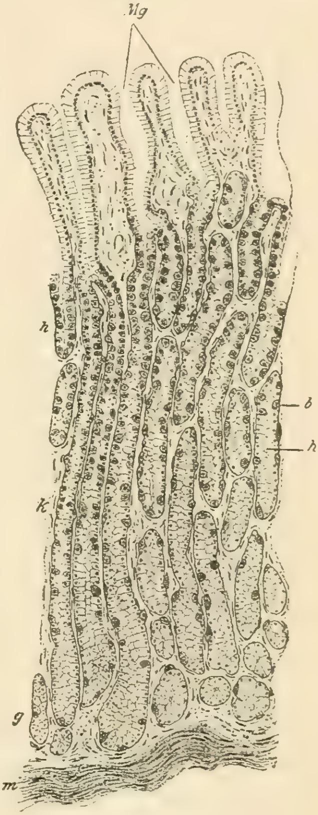


Fig. 112.—Vertical Section through the Mucous Membrane of the Fundus of the Stomach. × 85. (Kölliker.) *Mg*, Gastric crypts; *h*, neck; *k*, body; *g*, fundus of peptic glands; *h*, chief cells; *b*, parietal cells; *m*, muscularis mucosæ.

Each gland consists of (1) a *mouth* opening into the crypt; (2) a constricted portion, the neck; (3) the *body* or main portion of the tubule; and (4) a slightly dilated and bent blind extremity, the *fundus* (Fig. 112). The mouth marks the transition from the higher epithelium of the crypt to the low cuboidal of the neck (Fig. 114, *h*). In the body and fundus of the gland two types of cells are found: (*a*) *chief cells* (central, peptic, or adelomorphous), and (*b*) *parietal cells* (acid, oxyntic, or delomorphous).

The *chief cells* (Fig. 114, *a*) are the more numerous. They are of the low columnar type, often pyramidal with apices directed toward the lumen. Their protoplasm is granular and clear, taking a light stain. Their bases rest either on the basement membrane or against the parietal cells.

The *parietal cells* (Fig. 114, *b*) are oval or polygonal in shape, and lie against the basement membrane. The nucleus is spherical, somewhat larger than that of the chief cell, and is usually situated at the centre of the cell. The protoplasm is finely granular and stains intensely with the aniline dyes. In stained specimens the two kinds of cells are thus in marked contrast. Although lying against the basement membrane and frequently pushing it out so as to form little protuberances beyond the even line of the gland tubule, the parietal cells always maintain a connection with the lumen. This is accomplished by means of little clefts between the chief cells (*inter-*

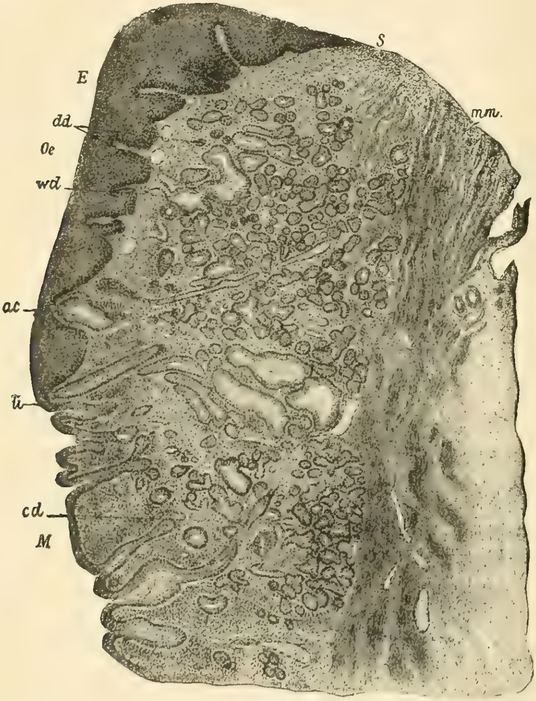


FIG. 113.—Section through Junction of Œsophagus and Stomach of Man. × 121. (Schäfer.) *Oe*, Œsophagus : *M*, stomach ; *cd*, cardiac glands ; *wd*, dilated ducts of cardiac glands ; *S*, stroma ; *E*, stratified squamous epithelium of œsophagus ; *mm*, muscularis mucosæ ; *cd*, irregularly cut tubules of cardiac glands ; *dd*, cardiac glands in lower end of the œsophagus ; *ü*, limit of stratified œsophageal epithelium.

cellular secretory tubules), which extend down to the parietal cells. By means of the method of Golgi may be demonstrated not only the intercellular secretory tubules, but also the fact that upon reaching the cells these are continuous with a network of minute spaces within the cell—the *intracellular secretory tubules* (Fig. 115). Parietal cells are not distributed uniformly throughout the gland, but are most numerous in the body, where they frequently almost obscure the chief cells. In the fundus of the gland parietal cells are less numerous. For this reason and because of the wider lumen of the fundus, transverse and longitudinal sections of this part of the tubule are most satisfactory for the study of the relations of the two kinds of cells (Figs. 112 and 114).

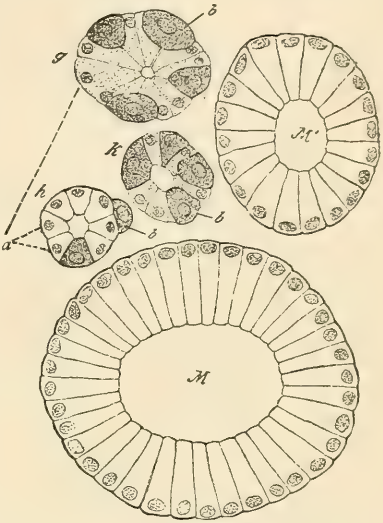


FIG. 114.—Cross-sections at Various Levels of Peptic Glands of Stomach. × 400. (Kölliker.) *M*, Section through gastric pit near surface ; *M'*, section through gastric pit near bottom ; *h*, mouth of gland ; *k*, neck ; *g*, body near fundus ; *a*, chief cells ; *b*, parietal cells.

Lying near the basement membrane among the bases of the columnar epithelial cells are small spherical or irregular cells with dark nuclei. These are young epithelial cells which from their function are known as "replacing cells" (see page 60).

The PYLORIC GLANDS (Figs. 116 and 117) are simple branched tubular glands, several of which open into each of the *deep pyloric crypts*. The glands, though short, are quite tortuous, so that in sections the tubules are seen cut mainly transversely or obliquely. In most of the pyloric glands but one type of cell is found. These resemble the chief cells of the fundus, but present a more uniform appearance, probably due to the absence of parietal cells. As in the fundus, "replacing cells" lie between the bases of the columnar epithelial cells. Parietal cells are not always entirely absent, but occur here and there in the pyloric tubules, especially near the fundus.

The transition from fundus to pylorus is not abrupt, but is marked by a "transitional border zone," in which fundus and pyloric glands are intermingled.

In the transition zone between œsophagus and stomach are found glands which resemble the peptic glands, but contain no parietal cells.

The STROMA (Figs. 112 and 116) or TUNICA PROPRIA, in which the glands are embedded, consists of mixed fibrillar and reticular connective tissue infiltrated with lymphoid cells. In the fundus of the stomach the glands are so closely packed that the stroma is reduced to thin strands, which pass up between the glands and also separate them from the muscularis mucosæ. In the pylorus the glands are more widely separated and the stroma is correspondingly greater in amount. In both fundus and pylorus thicker strands of stroma surround a number of gland tubules, thus separating them into more or less well-defined groups. In addition to the diffuse lymphatic tissue of the stroma, closely packed aggregations of lymphoid cells are found in the shape of distinct nodules, known as "*solitary follicles.*" These occur throughout the entire gastric mucosa, but are most numerous in the pylorus. The nodules are usually egg-shaped, their apices lying just beneath the epithelium, their bases resting upon the muscularis mucosæ. Less commonly they lie partly in the submucosa. Over the nodules the epithelium is more or less infiltrated with migratory leucocytes. Most of the nodules contain germinal centres, around which the lymphoid cells are more closely packed than elsewhere (see page 136).

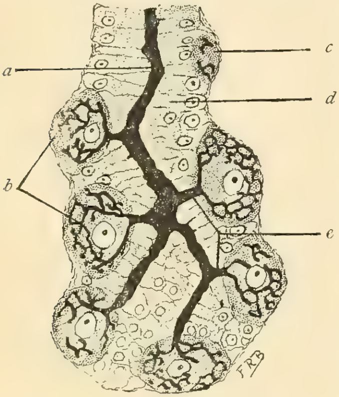


FIG. 115.—Longitudinal Section of Fundus of Gland from Pyloric End of Dog's Stomach. (Golgi method. See 4, p. 24.) *a*, Lumen of gland; *b*, intracellular canals in parietal cells; *c*, cut-off portion of parietal cell; *d*, chief cells; *e*, intercellular canals leading from lumen of gland to canals in parietal cells.

The MUSCULARIS MUCOSÆ (Figs. 112 and 116, *m*) may consist of a single *layer* of *smooth muscle* with cells arranged longitudinally or obliquely, or there may be two distinct layers, an *inner circular* and an *outer longitudinal.* From the muscularis mucosæ single cells and groups of cells extend into the stroma between the gland tubules.

2. **The submucosa** consists of connective tissue, loosely arranged, and contains large blood-vessels.

3. **The muscular coat** is usually described as consisting of three layers, an *inner oblique*, a *middle circular*, and an *outer longitudinal*. This division of the muscular coat into layers having definite directions can be made out only in the pylorus, the muscle bundles of the fundus running in various directions.

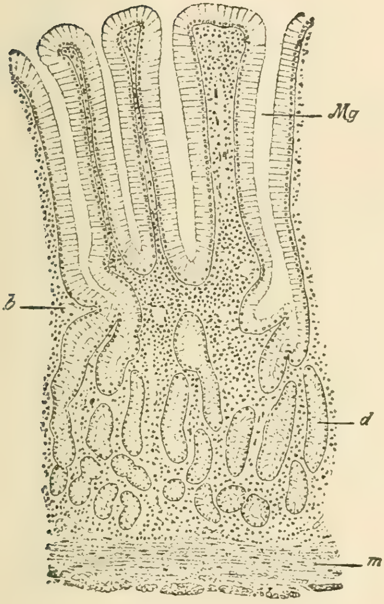


FIG. 116.

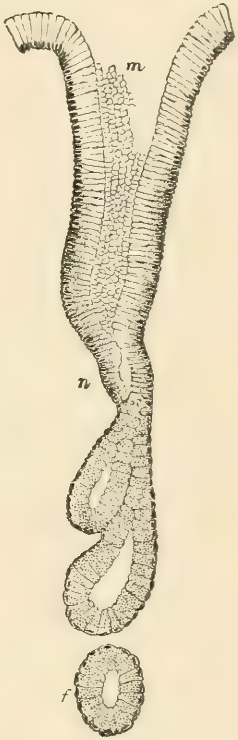


FIG. 117.

FIG. 116.—Vertical Section through Mucous Membrane of Pyloric End of Stomach. × 85. (Kölliker.) *Mg*, Gastric crypt; *b*, blood-vessel in stroma; *d*, longitudinal section of body of gland; *m*, muscularis mucosæ.

FIG. 117.—Pyloric Gland from Vertical Section through Wall of Dog's Stomach. (Ebstein.) *m*, Gastric pit in which are seen some transversely cut cells; *n*, neck of gland; *f*, fundus cut transversely.

4. **The serous coat** consists of a layer of loosely arranged connective tissue covered by a single layer of mesothelium.

TECHNIC.

(1) Remove a human stomach (not more than two or three hours after death) or that of a recently killed dog. Open along the lesser curvature, and carefully remove the excess of mucus by washing with normal saline. Cut pieces through

the entire thickness of the wall, one from the fundus and one from the pylorus; pin out, mucous membrane side up, on pieces of cork, fix in formalin-Müller's fluid (technic 5, p. 6) or in Zenker's fluid (technic 9, p. 7), and harden in alcohol. Sections are cut as thin as possible, care being taken that the plane is such that the glands are cut longitudinally, stained with hæmatoxylin-eosin (technic 1, p. 17), and mounted in balsam.

(2) Instead of removing pieces of stomach and pinning them out on cork, as suggested in the preceding technic, the entire stomach may be filled with the fixative, the ends being tied, and then placed in a large quantity of the fixing fluid. After fixation, pieces are removed and hardened in graded alcohols. If this method is used, great care must be taken not to overdistend the organ, only very moderate distention being desirable. Further treatment is the same as in the preceding technic (1).

(3) For comparison of resting with active gastric cells, preparations should be made from the stomach of an animal that has been for from twenty-four to forty-eight hours without food, and from a stomach during active digestion. Fix in Zenker's fluid as in technic (1), above. Examine unstained sections and sections stained with hæmatoxylin-eosin.

(4) Sections through the junction of œsophagus and stomach and through the junction of stomach and duodenum furnish instructive pictures. They should be prepared as in technic (1).

(5) For the study of the distribution of the blood-vessels sections of an injected stomach should be made. This is best accomplished by selecting a small animal, such as a rat or guinea-pig, and injecting *in toto* through the ascending aorta, or by injecting only the hind part of the animal through the abdominal aorta. Technic, p. 21.

III. THE MIDGUT.

The Small Intestine.

On passing from stomach to small intestine the rugæ of the former disappear, but are replaced by much more definite foldings of the mucosa, the *valvulæ conniventes* (Fig. 119). These folds involve the entire thickness of the mucous membrane and part of the submucosa. They are in general parallel to one another, and pass in a circular or oblique manner, partly around the lumen of the gut. The entire surface of the intestine, including the valvulæ, is studded with minute projections just visible to the naked eye, and known as *villi* (Figs. 119 and 120). These involve only the epithelium and stroma, although they also contain some muscular elements derived from the muscularis mucosæ. The villi differ in shape in the different parts of the small intestine, being leaf-shaped in the duodenum, rounded in the jejunum, club-shaped in the ileum. The valvulæ conniventes and the villi are characteristic of the small intestine. It is important to note that while the crypts of the stomach are *depressions in* the mucous membrane, the intestinal villi are definite *projections above* its general surface (Fig. 118).

The wall of the intestine consists of the same four coats described as constituting the wall of the stomach, *mucosa*, *submucosa*, *muscularis*, and *serosa*.

1. **The mucosa,** as in the stomach, is composed of a lining *epithelium*, *stroma*, *glands*, and *muscularis mucosæ*. Of these the epithelium, the stroma, and cells from the muscularis mucosæ are concerned in the formation of the villi.

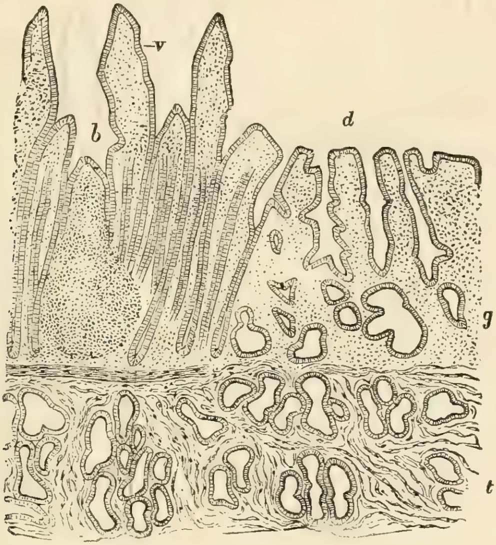


FIG. 118.—Section through Junction of Pylorus and Duodenum. (Klein.) *v*, Villi of duodenum ; *d*, stomach, showing gastric crypts ; *b*, apex of a solitary lymph nodule ; *c*, crypt of Lieberkühn ; *s*, secreting tubules of Brunner's glands ; *g*, pyloric glands ; *t*, tubules of Brunner's glands in submucosa of stomach ; *m*, muscularis mucosæ.

The VILLUS consists of a *central core*—a fold of the stroma—of mixed fibrous and reticular tissue infiltrated with lymphoid cells, and of a covering *epithelium.*

The *epithelium* is of the simple columnar type. The cells are high and have *thickened striated free borders* (Figs. 121 and 122). These contiguous thickened free borders unite to form a distinct membrane, the *cuticular membrane* (Fig. 122, *c*). Scattered among the columnar cells are numerous *mucous* or *goblet cells* (Figs. 121 and 122, *b*). The goblet cells are derived from the columnar cells, and vary in appearance according to the amount of secretion which they contain. A cell at the beginning of secretion contains only a small amount of mucus near its free border. As secretion increases the mucus gradually replaces the cytoplasm until the latter is represented only by a crescentic mass containing a flattened nucleus and pressed against the basement membrane. The cell now discharges its mucus upon the free surface. The goblet cells possess no thickened border, appearing, when seen from the surface, as openings surrounded on all sides by the cuticulæ of the adjacent columnar cells. Small spherical cells with deeply staining nuclei are found in varying numbers among the epithelial cells. These are so-called *wandering cells, migratory leucocytes*, from the underlying stroma (Figs. 121, *h*, and 122, *l*). Other cells with dark-staining nuclei, "*replacing cells*," are found between the bases of the columnar cells (pages 60 and 201).

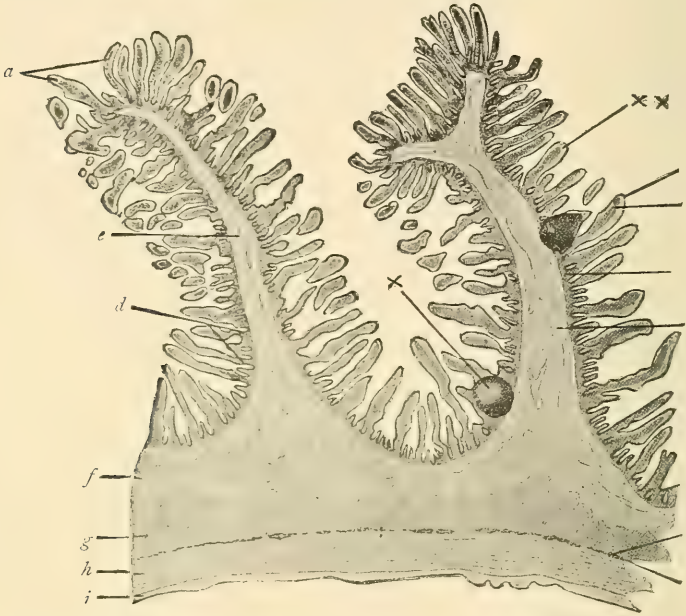


FIG. 119.—Vertical Longitudinal Section of Human Jejunum (× 16) (Stöhr), including two valvulæ conniventes. *a*, Villi, in many of which the stroma has shrunken away from the epithelium leaving a clear space, × ×. Lying free in the lumen of the gut are seen sections of villi cut in various directions. *b*, Epithelium ; *c*, stroma ; *d*, crypts of Lieberkühn ; ×, solitary lymph nodule with germinal centre ; *e*, tissue of submucosa forming centre of one of the valvulæ conniventes ; *f*, submucosa ; *g*, inner circular layer of muscle ; *h*, outer longitudinal layer of muscle ; *i*, Auerbach's plexus ; *j*, serous coat.

In addition to the connective-tissue and lymphoid cells, which constitute the main bulk of the villus core (Figs. 121 and 122), isolated smooth muscle cells derived from the muscularis mucosæ occur, running in the long axis of the villus. A single lymph or chyle vessel (Fig. 121, *f*; 122, *ch*) with distinct endothelial walls traverses the centre of each villus, ending at its tip in a slightly dilated blind extremity. As it is usually seen collapsed, it appears as two closely approximated rows of flat cells with bulging nuclei. The capillaries of the villus lie for the most part away from the chyle vessel, just beneath the basement membrane (Fig. 121, *e*; 122, *g*).

From the depths of the depressions between the villi, simple tubular glands—glands or crypts of Lieberkühn (Figs. 120 and 123)—extend down through the stroma as far as the muscularis mucosæ. These crypts are lined with an epithelium similar to and continuous with that covering the villi. The cells are, however, lower, and there are fewer goblet cells. In addition to these cells there are also found in the depths of the crypts of Lieberkühn peculiar coarsely granular cells, the cells of Paneth (Fig. 123, *k*). They are found in

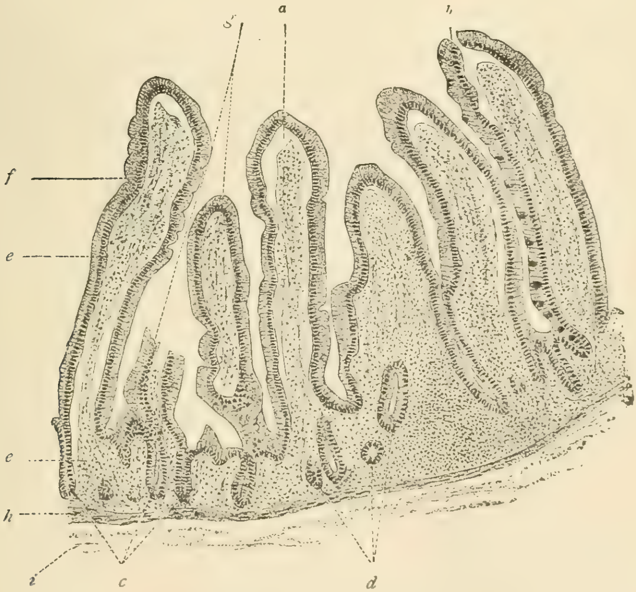


FIG. 120.—Vertical Section through Mucous Membrane of Human Jejunum. × 80. (Stöhr.) *a* and *b*, Artifacts due to shrinkage; *c*, intestinal crypts (Lieberkühn); *d*, oblique and transverse sections of crypts; *e*, stroma; *f*, epithelium; *g*, tangentially cut villi; *h*, muscularis mucosæ; *i*, submucosa.

man and in rodents, but do not occur in the carnivora. They probably produce a specific secretion, the nature of which is unknown.

The *stroma*, besides forming the centres of the villi, fills in the spaces between the crypts of Lieberkühn and between the latter and the muscularis mucosæ. In places the lymphoid cells are closely packed to form distinct nodules or "solitary follicles," such as are found in the stomach (see page 202).

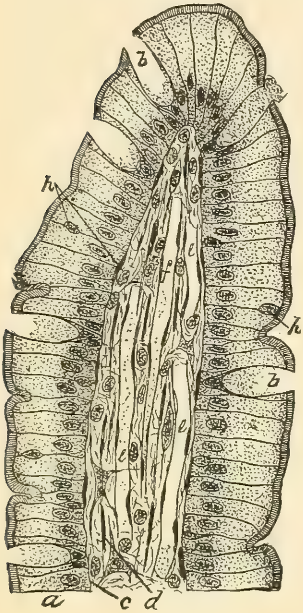


FIG. 121.

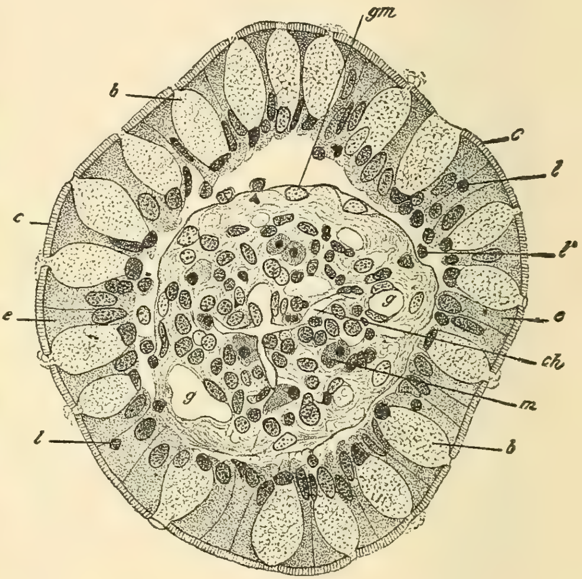


FIG. 122.

FIG. 121.—Longitudinal Section of Villus from Small Intestine of Dog. (Piersol.) *a*, Columnar epithelium; *b*, goblet cells; *h*, leucocytes; *c*, basement membrane; *d*, core of villus; *e*, blood vessels; *f*, lacteal.

FIG. 122.—Cross-section of a Villus of Human Small Intestine. × 530. (Kölliker.) The stroma of the villus has shrunken away from the epithelium. *b*, Goblet cell; *c*, cuticula showing striations; *e*, columnar epithelial cell; *gm*, basement membrane with nuclei; *l*, leucocyte in epithelium; *l'*, leucocyte just beneath epithelium; *m*, large leucocyte in stroma; *ch*, central chyle vessel; *g*, blood-vessel.

PEYER'S PATCHES (agminated follicles) (Fig. 124).—These are groups of lymph nodules found mainly in the ileum, especially near its junction with the jejunum. They always occur on the side of the gut opposite to the attachment of the mesentery. Each patch consists of from ten to seventy nodules, so arranged that the entire patch has a generally oval shape, its long diameter lying lengthwise of the intestine. The nodules of which a patch is composed lie side by side. Their apices are directed toward the lumen and project almost through the mucosa, being uncovered by villi, a single layer of columnar epithelium alone separating their surfaces from the lumen of the gut. The bases of the nodules are not confined to the stroma, but usually spread out in the submucosa. The relation of the patch to the stroma and submucosa can be best appreciated by following the course of the muscularis mucosæ. This is seen to stop abruptly at the circumference of the patch, appearing throughout the patch as isolated groups of smooth muscle cells. The nodules rarely remain distinct, but are confluent with the exception of their apices and bases. It should be noted that both solitary nodules and Peyer's patches are structures of the mucosa, and that their presence in the submucosa is secondary.

The MUSCULARIS MUCOSÆ (Figs. 120 and 125) consists of an inner circular and an outer longitudinal layer of smooth muscle.

2. **The submucosa** (Figs. 119, 120, 125) consists, as in the stomach, of loosely arranged connective tissue and contains the larger blood-vessels. It is free from glands except in the duodenum, where it contains the *glands* of *Brunner* (Fig. 125). These are branched tubular glands lined with a granular columnar epithelium similar to that of the pyloric glands. The ducts are also lined with simple columnar epithelium. They pass through the muscularis mucosæ and empty either into a crypt of Lieberkühn or on the surface between the villi. Brunner's glands frequently occur in the pylorus, and it is not uncommon for the pyloric glands to extend downward somewhat into the duodenum. *Meissner's plexus* of nerve fibres, mingled with groups of sympathetic ganglion cells, lies in the submucosa (see page 218).

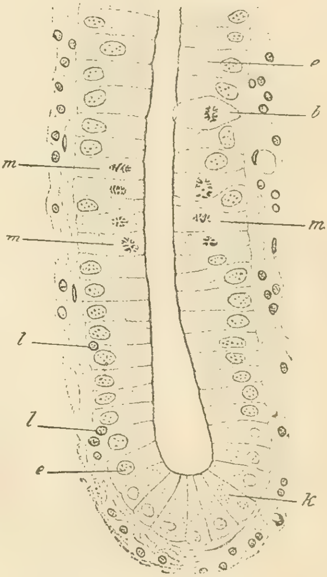


FIG. 123.—Longitudinal Section of Fundus of Crypt of Lieberkühn. × 530. (Kölliker.) *b*, Goblet cell showing mitosis; *e*, epithelial cell; *k*, cell of Paneth; *l*, leucocyte in epithelium; *m*, mitosis in epithelial cell. Surrounding the crypt is seen the stroma of the mucous membrane.

3. **The muscular coat** (Figs. 119 and 125) consists of two well-

defined layers of smooth muscle, an inner circular and an outer longitudinal. Connective-tissue septa divide the muscle cells into groups or bundles, while between the two layers of muscle is a connective-tissue septum which varies greatly in thickness at different places and contains a plexus of nerve fibres and sympathetic ganglion cells known as the plexus of Auerbach (see page 217).

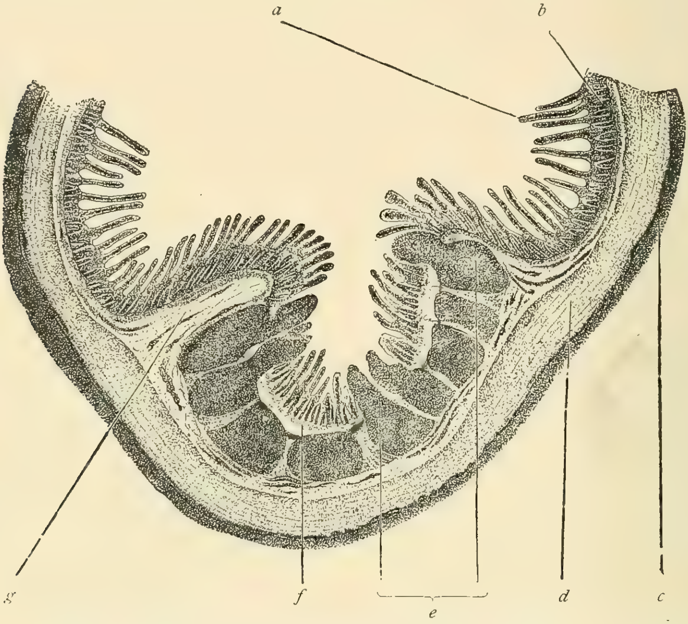


FIG. 124.—Transverse Section of Cat's Small Intestine through a Peyer's Patch. (Stöhr.) *a*, Villi; *b*, crypts; *c*, longitudinal muscle layer; *d*, circular muscle layer; *e*, lymph nodules; *f*, muscularis mucosæ; *g*, submucosa.

4. **The serous coat** consists as in the stomach of loose connective tissue covered by a single layer of mesothelium.

IV. THE ENDGUT.

The Large Intestine.

The wall of the large intestine consists of the same four coats which have been described as constituting the walls of the stomach and small intestine, *mucous*, *submucous*, *muscular*, and *serous*.

1. **The mucous membrane** has a comparatively smooth surface, there being neither crypts as in the stomach nor villi as in the small intestine (Fig. 126). The glands are of the simple tubular variety,

are considerably longer than those of the small intestine, are almost straight, and extend through the entire thickness of the stroma. Owing to the closeness with which the gland tubules are packed, the amount of stroma is usually small. The surface cells (Fig. 127, *c*) are very high and narrow, with small, deeply placed nuclei, and are not usually intermingled with goblet cells. Passing from the surface down into the glands, the cells become somewhat lower and goblet cells become numerous (Fig. 127, *B* and *C*). Both superficial and deep cells rest upon a *basement membrane* similar to that in the small intestine. The *stroma* also, though less in amount, is similar in structure to the stroma of the small intestine.

The MUSCULARIS MUCOSÆ (Fig. 126) consists of an inner circular and an outer longitudinal layer of smooth muscle.

2. The submucosa (Fig. 126) consists of loosely arranged connective tissue. It contains large blood-vessels and the nerve plexus of Meissner (see page 218). Solitary lymph follicles occur throughout the mucous membrane of the large intestine. While properly considered as structures of the stroma from which they originate, the follicles lie mainly in the submucosa. (For details of structure see page 136.)

3. Of the muscularis (Fig. 126) the inner circular layer only is complete, the muscle tissue of the external longitudinal coat being arranged mainly as three strong, flat, longitudinal bands, the lineæ coli. Between these bands the longitudinal muscular coat is either very thin or entirely absent. In the connective tissue, lying to the outer side of the circular muscle coat, is the nerve plexus of Auerbach. (For details see page 217.)

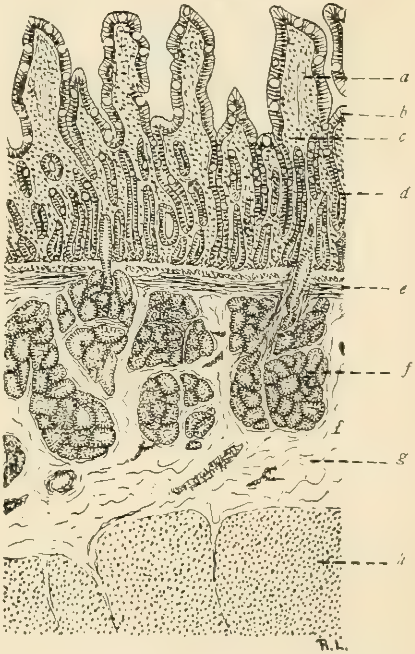


FIG. 125.—From Vertical Longitudinal Section of Cat's Duodenum to show Brunner's Glands. (Larrabee.) *a*, Villus; *b*, epithelium; *c*, stroma; *d*, crypts; *e*, muscularis mucosæ; *f*, Brunner's glands; *g*, submucosa; *h*, circular muscle layer.

4. **The serous coat** consists, as in the stomach and small intestine, of loose connective tissue covered by a single layer of mesothelium.

THE VERMIFORM APPENDIX.

The vermiform appendix is a diverticulum from the large intestine. Its walls are continuous with those of the latter, and closely resemble them in general structure. There are the same four coats, *mucous*, *submucous*, *muscular*, and *serous*.

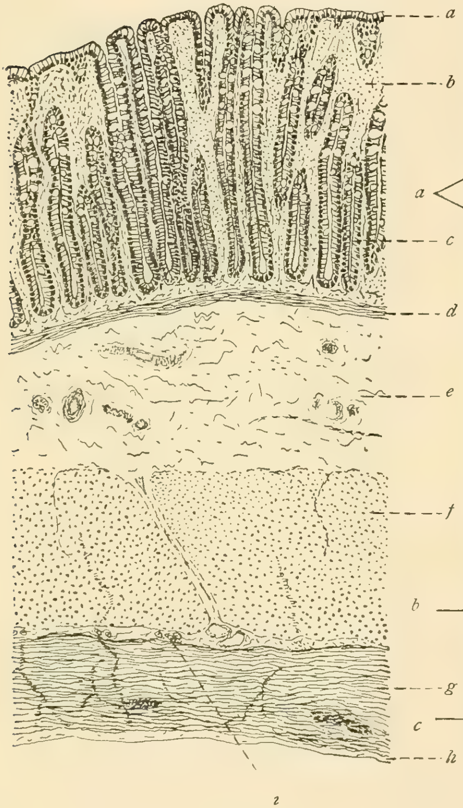


FIG. 126.

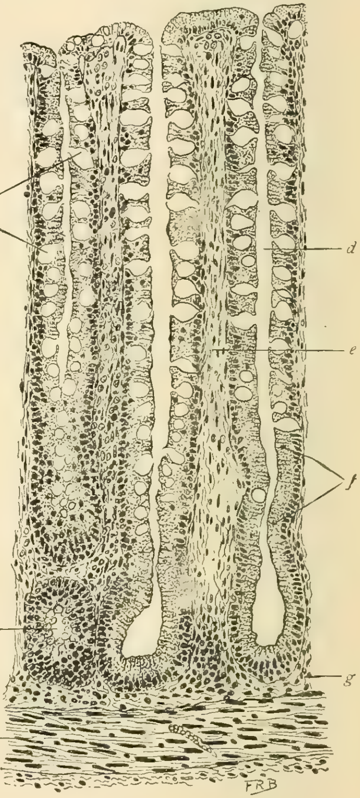


FIG. 127.

FIG. 126.—From Vertical Longitudinal Section of Cat's Large Intestine. (Larrabee.) *a* Epithelium; *b*, stroma; *c*, fundus of gland; *d*, muscularis mucosæ; *e*, submucosa; *f*, circular muscle layer; *g*, longitudinal muscle layer; *h*, serous coat; *i*, Auerbach's plexus.

FIG. 127.—From Vertical Longitudinal Section of the Mucous Membrane of the Human Large Intestine. (Technic 1, p. 220.) *a*, Mucous (goblet) cells; *b*, fundus of a gland cut obliquely; *c*, muscularis mucosæ; *d*, lumen of a gland cut longitudinally; *e*, stroma between the glands; *f*, leucocytes in the epithelium; *g*, stroma between fundi of glands and muscularis mucosæ.

1. **The mucous membrane** (Fig. 128) consists of epithelium, glands, stroma, and muscularis mucosæ. The *epithelium* resembles that of the large intestine. The glands vary in number, but are usually much less closely packed than in the large intestine. They are most numerous in the appendices of infants and children. The *gland tubules* (Fig. 128, *j*) are usually rudimentary, but in most cases have the same structure as the intestinal glands, and are evidently functional as they contain mucous cells in all stages of secretion. In consequence of the wider separation of the tubules the *stroma* is more abundant than in the large intestine, but has the same structure. The *muscularis mucosæ* (Fig. 128, *d*) is usually fairly distinct as a thin circularly disposed band of smooth muscle cells just beneath the stroma. In some cases the mucosa as such is practically absent,

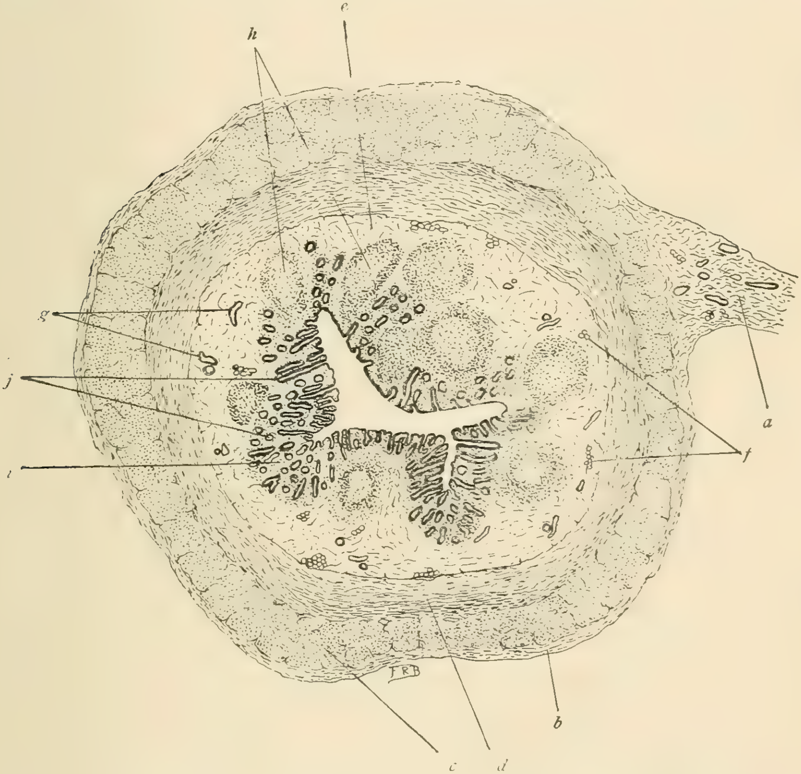


FIG. 128.—Transverse Section of Human Vermiform Appendix. (Technic 2, p. 220.) *a*, Meso-appendix; *b*, serous membrane (serosa); *c*, outer longitudinal muscle layer; *d*, inner circular muscle layer; *e*, submucosa; *f*, groups of fat cells in submucosa; *g*, blood-vessels in submucosa; *h*, lymph nodules; *i*, stroma; *j*, glands opening into lumen and cut in various planes.

being replaced by fibrous tissue. This condition is especially common after middle age, and may or may not be associated with obliteration of the lumen.

2. **The submucosa** (Fig. 128, *c*) is similar to that of the intestine.

3. **The muscular coat** varies greatly, both as to thickness and as to the amount of admixture of fibrous tissue. The inner circular layer (Fig. 128, *d*) is usually thick and well developed. The outer longitudinal layer (Fig. 128, *e*) differs from that of the large intestine in having no arrangement into lineæ, the muscle tissue forming a continuous layer. Less commonly a more or less marked tendency to an arrangement of the cells of the longitudinal coat into bundles, between which the outer coat is thin or wanting, is observed.

4. **The serosa** has the usual structure of peritoneum.

The lymph nodules (Fig. 128, *h*) constitute the most conspicuous feature of the appendix. They lie mainly in the submucosa. In children and young adults the nodules are oval or spherical; in later life somewhat flattened. The nodules may be entirely distinct, or may be arranged as in a Peyer's patch with distinct apices and bases, but with their central portions confluent. The muscularis mucosæ either passes through the superficial portions of the nodules, or, where they are separated from the lumen, passes over them.

The distribution of **blood-vessels, lymphatics,** and **nerves** is similar to that in the large intestine.

The Rectum.

1. **The mucous membrane** of the rectum has a structure similar to that of the large intestine. The glands are longer and the mucosa consequently is somewhat thicker. In the lower part of the rectum definite longitudinal foldings of the mucosa occur, the so-called *columnæ rectales.* A change in the character of the mucous membrane begins at the upper end of the columnæ rectales. Here the simple columnar epithelium of the gut passes over into a stratified squamous epithelium, beneath which is a papillated stroma. The glands continue for a short distance beyond the change in the epithelium, but soon completely disappear. At the anus there is a transition from mucous membrane to skin similar to that described as occurring at the margin of the lips (page 180).

2. **The submucosa** is similar in structure to that of the large intestine.

The muscularis of the rectum differs from that of the large intestine in that the longitudinal layer is continuous and thick.

The serous coat is absent in the lower part of the rectum, being replaced by a fibrous connective-tissue layer, which connects the rectum with the surrounding structures.

Blood-Vessels of the Stomach and Intestines.

The arteries reach the gastro-intestinal canal through the mesentery and pass through the muscular coats to the submucosa, where they form an extensive plexus of large vessels (Heller's plexus) (Fig. 129, *c*). Within the muscular coats the main arteries give off small branches to the muscle tissue. From the plexus of the submucosa two main sets of vessels arise, one passing outward to supply the muscular coats, the other inward to supply the mucous membrane (Fig. 129). Of the former the larger vessels pass directly to the intermuscular septum, where they form a plexus from which branches

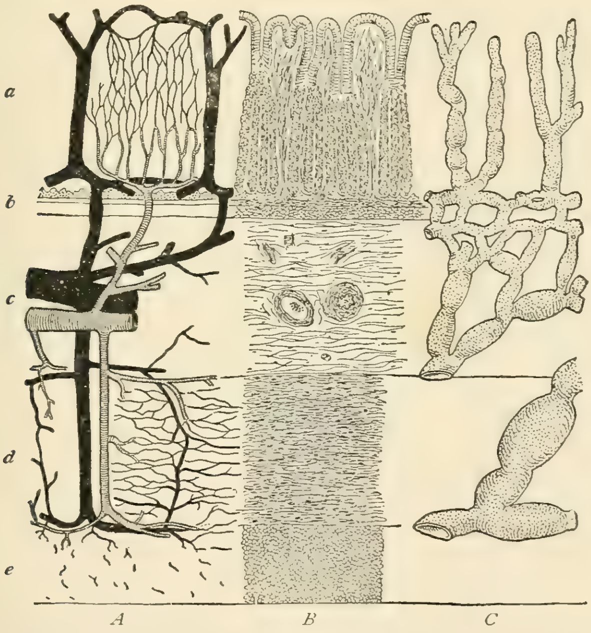


FIG. 129.—Scheme of Blood-vessels and Lymphatics of Stomach. × 70. (Szymonowicz, after Mall.) *a*, Mucous membrane; *b*, muscularis mucosæ; *c*, submucosa; *d*, inner circular muscle layer; *e*, outer longitudinal muscle layer; *A*, blood-vessels; *B*, structure of coats; *C*, lymphatics.

are given off to the two muscular tunics. A few small branches from the larger recurrent vessels also supply the inner muscular layer. Of the branches of the submucosa plexus which pass to the mucous membrane, the shorter supply the muscularis mucosæ, while

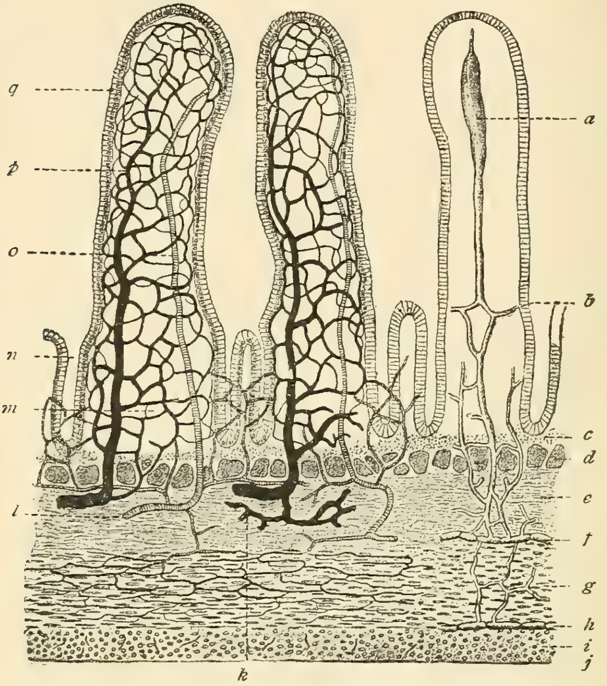


FIG. 130.—Scheme of Blood-vessels and Lymphatics of Human Small Intestine. (From Böhm and von Davidoff, after Mall.) *a*, Central lacteal of villus; *b*, lacteal; *c*, stroma; *d*, muscularis mucosæ; *e*, submucosa; *f*, plexus of lymph vessels; *g*, circular muscle layer; *h*, plexus of lymph vessels; *i*, longitudinal muscle layer; *j*, serous coat; *k*, vein; *l*, artery; *m*, base of villus; *n*, crypt; *o*, artery of villus; *p*, vein of villus; *q*, epithelium.

the longer branches pierce the latter to form a capillary plexus among the glands of the stroma. From the capillaries small veins take origin, which pierce the muscularis mucosæ and form a close-meshed venous plexus in the submucosa (Fig. 129). These in turn give rise to larger veins, which accompany the arteries into the mesentery.

In the small intestine the distribution of the blood-vessels is modified by the presence of the villi (Fig. 130). Each villus receives one small artery, or in the case of the larger villi two or three small arteries. The artery passes through the long axis of the villus close under the epithelium to its summit, giving off a network of fine capillaries, which for the most part lie just beneath the epithelium. From these, one or two small veins arise which lie on the opposite side of the villus from the artery.

Lymphatics of the Stomach and Intestine.

Small lymph or chyle capillaries begin as blind canals in the stroma of the mucous membrane among the tubular glands (Fig. 129). In the small intestine a lymph (chyle) capillary occupies the centre of the long axis of each villus, ending in a blind extremity beneath the epithelium of its summit (Fig. 130). These vessels unite to form a narrow-meshed plexus of lymph capillaries in the deeper part of the stroma, lying parallel to the muscularis mucosæ. Vessels from this plexus pass through the muscularis mucosæ and form a wider meshed plexus of larger lymph vessels in the submucosa. A third lymphatic plexus lies in the connective tissue which separates the two layers of muscle. From the plexus in the submucosa, branches pass through the inner muscular layer, receive vessels from the intermuscular plexus, and then pierce the outer muscular layer to pass into the mesentery in company with the arteries and veins.

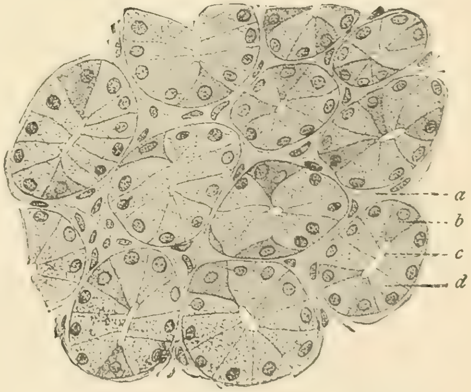


FIG. 131.—Section through Glands of Fundus of Human Stomach in Condition of Hunger. × 500. (Böhm and von Davidoff.) *a*, Stroma; *b*, parietal cell; *c*, lumen; *d*, chief cell.

Nerves of the Stomach and Intestine.

The nerves which supply the stomach and intestines are mainly non-medullated sympathetic fibres. They reach the intestinal walls through the mesentery. In the connective tissue between the two layers of muscle these fibres are associated with groups of sympathetic ganglion cells to form the *plexus myentericus* or *plexus of Auerbach.* The dendrites of the ganglion cells interlace, forming a large part of the plexus. The axones are grouped together in small bundles of non-medullated fibres, which pass into the muscular coats, where they form intricate plexuses, from which are given off terminals to the smooth muscle cells. From Auerbach's plexus fibres pass to the submucosa, where they form a similar but finer-meshed, more delicate plexus, also associated with groups of sympathetic ganglion cells, the *plexus of Meissner*. Both fibres and cells are smaller than those of Auerbach's plexus. From Meissner's plexus delicate fibrils pass to their terminations in submucosa, muscularis mucosæ, and mucous membrane.

SECRETION AND THE ABSORPTION OF FAT.

The secretory activities of epithelial cells have already been mentioned (page 41). The epithelium of the gastro-intestinal tract must be considered as having two main functions: (1) The *secretion* of substances necessary to digestion; and (2) the *absorption* of the products of digestion.

(1) SECRETION.—The production of mucus takes place in the mucous or goblet cell, which, as already mentioned, represents a differentiation of the ordinary columnar epithelial cell. The chief cells, "peptic cells," of the stomach glands are large and clear during fasting, become granular and cloudy with the onset of digestion,

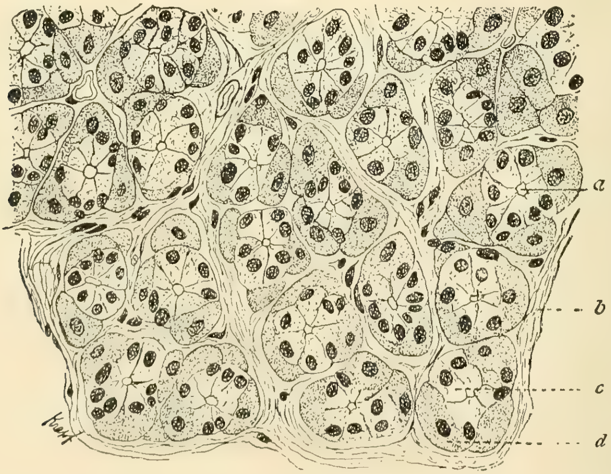


FIG. 132.—Section through Glands of Fundus of Human Stomach during Digestion. × 500. (Böhm and von Davidoff.) *a*, Lumen; *b*, stroma; *c*, chief cell; *d*, parietal cell.

and smaller with loss of granules during the digestive process. As activity of the chief cells (Fig. 132) is coincident with an increase in the pepsin found in the gastric mucosa, it is probable that these cells produce pepsin, and that the granules represent some stage in the elaboration of the ferment. As their name of "acid cells" would indicate, the parietal cells were considered the source of the hydrochloric acid of the stomach. While doubt still exists as to the function of these cells, recent investigations make it probable that it is not the secretion of hydrochloric acid. The cells of Brunner's glands undergo changes during digestion, which are quite

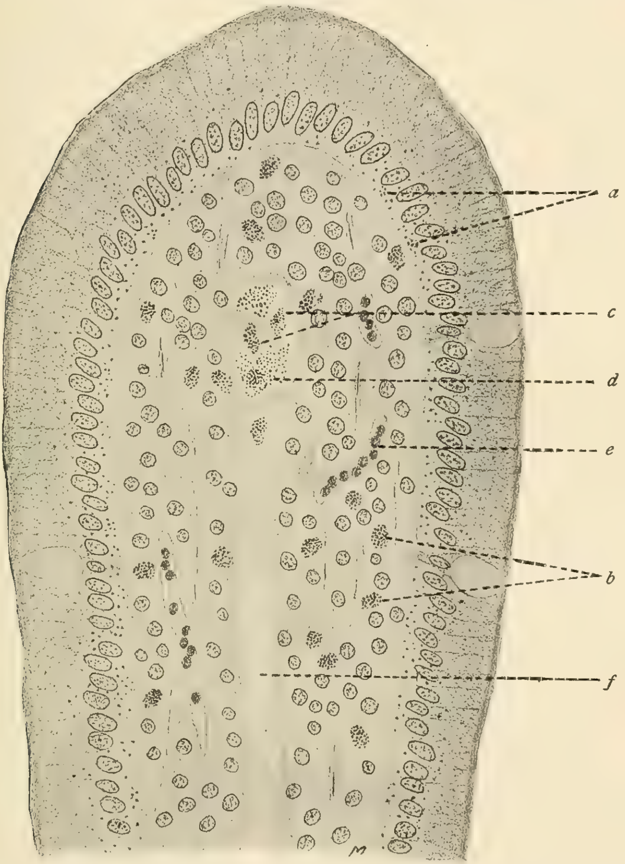


FIG. 133.—Fat Absorption. Longitudinal section of villus of cat's small intestine, three hours after feeding. × 350. Osmic acid. *a*, Fat droplets in epithelial cells; *b*, fat droplets in leucocytes in stroma; *c*, fat droplets in leucocytes within lacteal; *d*, fat droplets free in lacteal; *e*, capillary containing blood cells; *f*, central lacteal of villus.

similar to those described as occurring in the chief cells of the stomach glands, and are probably also concerned in the production of pepsin. The only function of the intestinal crypts which has yet been determined is the secretion of mucus. The possibility that certain cells of the crypts of the small intestine produce a specific secretion has been mentioned (page 208).

(2) ABSORPTION OF FAT.—While various other products of digestion are absorbed by the intestine, the absorption of fat is the one most easily observed. After feeding fat, fatty acids, or soaps, fat globules are found to have penetrated the intestinal mucosa, and may be seen in (*a*) the epithelial cells, (*b*) the leucocytes, and (*c*) the lacteals of the villi (Fig. 133). Fat globules are never seen in the thickened free borders of the cells. Hence it seems probable that the fat before passing through this part of the cell becomes split up into glycerin and fatty acids which are united again to form fat within the protoplasm of the cell. Leucocytes containing fat globules are seen throughout the stroma. Within the lacteals are found fat-containing leucocytes and free fat droplets of various size. It would thus seem probable that the process of fat absorption consisted in: (1) The passage of glycerin and fatty acids through the cell borders; (2) their reunion in the cell to form fat; (3) the transference of these fat globules to leucocytes; which (4) carry them to the lacteals. In the lacteals the fat is probably set free by disintegration of the leucocytes.

TECHNIC.

(1) The technic for the small and large intestines and rectum is the same as for the stomach. Accurate fixation of the villi is difficult, there being usually some shrinkage of the connective tissue of the core away from the epithelium.

A longitudinal section should be made through the junction of small and large intestine, showing the transition from the villus-covered surface of the former to the comparatively smooth surface of the latter.

To show Brunner's glands a section of the duodenum is required.

To show the varying shapes of the villi in the different regions, sections should also be made of the jejunum and ileum.

Solitary follicles may usually be seen in any of the above sections.

A small Peyer's patch, together with the entire thickness of the intestinal wall, should be removed, treated as above, stained with hæmatoxylin-eosin (technic 1, p. 17), or with hæmatoxylin-picro-acid-fuchsin (technic 3, p. 18), and mounted in balsam.

(2) A vermiform appendix, as fresh as possible, should be cut transversely into small pieces, fixed in formalin-Müller's fluid (technic 5, p. 6), and hardened in

alcohol. Thin transverse sections are made through the entire wall, stained with hæmatoxylin-eosin or hæmatoxylin-picro-acid-fuchsin, and mounted in balsam.

(3) Fat Absorption.—For the purpose of studying the process by which fat passes from the lumen of the gut into the chyle vessels, an animal should be killed at the height of fat absorption. A frog fed with fat bacon and killed two days later, a dog fed with fat meat, or a cat with cream and killed after from four to eight hours, furnishes good material. Usually if the preparation is to be successful, the lumen of the intestine will be found to contain emulsified fat and the lacteals of the mesentery are seen distended with chyle. Extremely thin slices of the mucous membrane of the small intestine are fixed in 1-per-cent osmic acid or in osmium bichromate solution (5-per-cent aqueous solution potassium bichromate and 2-per-cent aqueous solution osmic acid—equal parts) for twelve to twenty-four hours, after which they are passed rather quickly through graded alcohols. Sections should be thin and mounted, either unstained or after a slight eosin stain, in glycerin.

(4) The blood-vessels of the stomach are best studied in injected specimens. (See page 21.)

The Larger Glands of the Digestive System.

The smaller tubular glands which form a part of the mucous membrane and submucosa of the alimentary tract have been already described. Certain larger glandular structures, the development of which is similar to that of the smaller tubules but which come to lie wholly without the alimentary tract, connected with it only by their main excretory ducts, and which are yet functionally an important part of the digestive system, remain to be considered.

These are

1. The salivary glands
    - (*a*) The parotid.
    - (*b*) The sublingual.
    - (*c*) The submaxillary.
2. The pancreas.
3. The liver.

1. The Salivary Glands.

✓ The salivary glands are all compound tubular glands. In man the parotid is serous; the sublingual and submaxillary, mixed serous and mucous (page 181). Only the general structure of these glands is here described, the minute structure of mucous and serous glands having been described on page 181.

Each gland consists of gland tissue proper and of a supporting connective-tissue framework. The framework consists of a connective-tissue *capsule* which encloses the gland, but blends externally with and attaches the gland to the surrounding structures. From the capsule *trabeculæ* pass into the gland, subdividing it into *lobes* and *lobules*. The gland tissue proper consists of systems of *excretory ducts* opening into *secretory tubules*, all being lined with one or more layers of epithelial cells. Each gland has one *main excretory duct*. This divides into branches—*interlobar ducts*—which run to the lobes in the connective tissue which separates them. The interlobar ducts give rise to branches which, as they pass to the lobules in the interlobular connective tissue, are known as *interlobular ducts*. From the latter, branches enter the lobules—*intralobular ducts*—and split up into *terminal secreting tubules* which constitute the bulk of the lobule. From the interlobular connective tissue delicate extensions pass into the lobules, separating the gland tubules. The glandular tissue is known as the *parenchyma* of the gland in contradistinction to the connective or *interstitial tissue*.

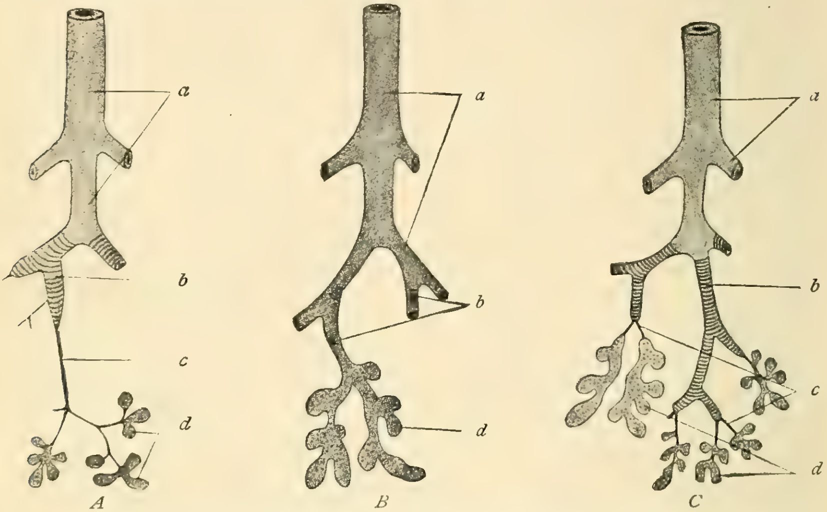


FIG. 134.—Diagrams to illustrate the Structure of the Salivary Glands. (Stöhr.) *A*, Parotid; *B*, sublingual; *C*, submaxillary. *a*, Excretory duct; *b*, secreting tubule; *c*, intermediate tubule; *d*, terminal tubule.

The parotid gland in man, dog, cat, and rabbit is a purely serous gland. Its duct system is complex. The main excretory duct (Stenoni) is lined by two layers of columnar epithelium resting upon a distinct basement membrane. The main duct divides into numerous branches, which in turn give rise to so-called *secreting* or *salivary* tubules. These are continuous with long narrow *inter-*

mediate tubules, from each of which are given off a number of short *terminal tubules* (Fig. 134, *A*). The two-layered epithelium of the main duct becomes reduced in the smaller ducts to a single layer of columnar cells. The salivary tubules are lined with high columnar epithelium, the bases of the cells showing distinct longitudinal striations. In the intermediate tubule the epithelium is flat, sometimes spindle-shaped. The terminal tubules are lined with serous cells (page 181).

The sublingual gland is a mixed gland in man, dog, cat, and rabbit. The duct system is less complex than in the parotid. The main duct (Bartholini) sends off branches which are continuous with tubules, showing a few secretory mucous cells. These open directly into the *terminal tubules* (Fig. 134, *B*). The excretory duct is like that of the parotid gland, lined with a two-layered columnar epithelium resting upon a basement membrane. In the smaller ducts the epithelium is reduced to a single layer of columnar cells. There are no intermediate tubules. The terminal tubules are lined with both serous and mucous cells (page 181). The crescents of Gianuzzi (page 182) are numerous and large. The connective tissue of the gland contains many lymphoid cells.

The submaxillary gland is also a mixed gland in man, dog, cat, and rabbit. In complexity of its duct system it stands between the parotid and the sublingual (Fig. 134). The main duct (Wharton's) has not only a two-layered epithelial lining resting upon a basement membrane, but is distinguished by a richly cellular stroma and a thin layer of longitudinally disposed smooth muscle. Branches of the main duct open into long *secreting tubules* which communicate with the *terminal tubules* by means of short narrow *intermediate tubules* (Fig. 134, *C*). The secretory tubules are lined as in the parotid with columnar cells whose bases are longitudinally striated. These cells usually contain more or less yellow pigment. The intermediate tubules have a low cuboidal or flat epithelium. Most of the end tubules contain serous cells only (page 181). The crescents of the mucous tubules (page 182) are less numerous and smaller than those in the sublingual, consisting as a rule of only from one to three cells (Fig. 135).

Blood-vessels.—The larger arteries run in the connective-tissue septa with the ducts, giving off branches which accompany the divisions of the ducts to the lobules, where they break up into capillary networks among the tubules. These give rise to veins which accompany the arteries.

The **lymphatics** begin as minute capillaries in the connective tissue separating the terminal tubules. These empty into larger lymph vessels which accompany the arteries in the septa.

The **nerves** of the salivary glands are derived from both cerebrospinal and sympathetic systems, consisting of both medullated and non-medullated fibres. The medullated fibres are afferent, probably the dendrites of cells located in the geniculate ganglion. Small bundles of these fibres accompany the ducts. Single fibres leave the bundles, lose their medullary sheaths, and form a non-medullated subepithelial plexus, from which delicate fibrils pass to end freely among the epithelial cells. Efferent impulses reach the gland through the sympathetic. The fibres are axones of cells situated in small peripheral ganglia; the cells sending axones to the submaxillary lying upon the main excretory duct and some of its larger branches; those sending axones to the sublingual being situated in a small ganglion—the sublingual—lying in the triangular area bounded by the chorda tympani, the lingual nerve, and Wharton's duct; those supplying the parotid probably being in the otic ganglion. Axones from these cells enter the glands with the excretory duct and follow

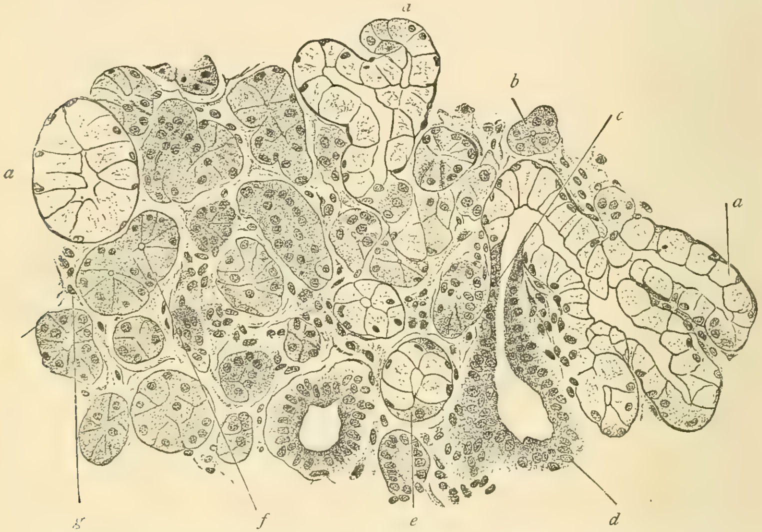


FIG. 135.—Section of Human Submaxillary Gland. × 252. (Stöhr.) *a*, Mucous tubule; *b*, serous tubule; *c*, intermediate tubule; *d*, "secretory" tubule; *e*, demilune; *f*, lumen; *g*, interstitial connective tissue.

its branchings to the terminal tubules, where they form plexuses beneath the epithelium. From these, terminals pass to the secreting cells. It is probable that the salivary glands also receive sympathetic fibres from cells of the superior cervical ganglia.

TECHNIC.

(1) The salivary glands should be fixed in Flemming's fluid (technic 7, p. 7), or in formalin-Müller's fluid (technic 5, p. 6). Sections are cut as thin as possible, stained with hæmatoxylin-eosin (technic 1, p. 17), and mounted in balsam.

(2) For the study of the secretory activities of the gland cells, glands from a fasting animal should first be examined and then compared with those of a gland the secretion of which has been stimulated by the subcutaneous injection of pilocarpine. Fix in Flemming's or in Zenker's fluid (technic 9, p. 7). Examine some sections unstained and mounted in glycerin, others stained with hæmatoxylin-eosin and mounted in balsam.

(3) The finer intercellular and intracellular secretory tubules are demonstrated by Golgi's method. Small pieces of absolutely fresh gland are placed for three days in osmium-bichromate solution (3-per-cent potassium bichromate solution, 4 volumes; 1-per-cent osmic acid, 1 volume), and then transferred without washing to a 0.75-per-cent aqueous solution of silver nitrate. Here they remain for from two to four days, the solution being frequently changed. The processes of dehydrating and embedding should be rapidly done, and sections mounted in glycerin, or, after clearing in xylol, in hard balsam.

Pancreas.

The pancreas is a compound tubular gland. While in general similar to the salivary glands, it has a somewhat more complicated structure. A connective-tissue capsule surrounds the gland and gives off trabeculæ, which pass into the organ and divide it into *lobules*.

In some of the lower animals, as for example the cat, these lobules are well defined, being completely separated from one another by connective tissue. In this respect they resemble the lobules of the pig's liver. A number of these *primary lobules* are grouped together and surrounded by connective tissue, which is considerably broader and looser in structure than that separating the primary lobules. These constitute a *lobule group* or *secondary lobule.*

In the human pancreas the division into lobules and lobule groups is much less distinct, although it can usually be made out. This is due to the incompleteness of the connective-tissue septa, the human pancreas in this respect resembling the human liver. Rarely the human pancreas is distinctly lobulated.

The gland has a main excretory duct, the pancreatic duct or *duct of Wirsung*. In many cases there is also a *secondary excretory duct*, the accessory pancreatic duct or *duct of Santorini*. Both open into the duodenum. The main duct extends almost the entire length of the gland, giving off short lateral branches, one of which enters the centre of each lobule group. Here it splits up into branches which pass to the primary lobules. From these *intralobular ducts*, are given off long, narrow, *intermediate tubules*, which in turn give rise to the *terminal secreting tubules* (Fig. 136).

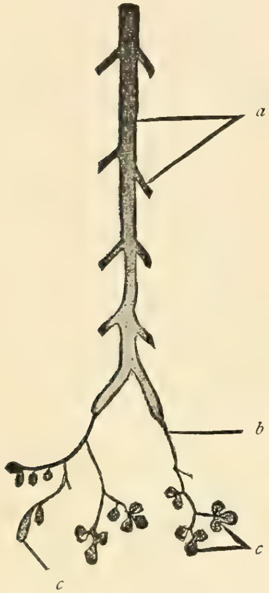


FIG. 136.—Diagram to illustrate Structure of Pancreas. (Stöhr.) *a*, Excretory duct; *b*, intermediate tubule; *c*, *c*, terminal tubules.

The *excretory ducts* are lined with a simple high columnar epithelium which rests upon a basement membrane. Outside of this is a connective-tissue coat, the thickness of which is directly proportionate to the size of the duct. In the pancreatic duct goblet cells are present, and the accompanying connective tissue contains small *mucous glands*. As the ducts decrease in size, the epithelium becomes lower until the intermediate tubule is reached where it becomes flat.

The *terminal tubules* themselves are most of them very short, frequently almost spherical. This and the fact that several terminal tubules are given off from the end of each intermediate tubule have led to the description of these tubules as *alveoli*, and of the pancreas as a *tubulo-alveolar gland*, although there is no dilatation of the lumen. The terminal tubules are lined with an irregularly conical epithelium resting upon a basement membrane (Figs. 137 and 138). The appearance of these cells depends upon their functional condition. Each cell consists of a central zone bordering the lumen, which contains numerous granules known as *zymogen granules*, and of a peripheral zone next to the basement membrane, which is homogeneous and contains the nucleus (Fig. 138). The relative size of these zones depends upon whether the cell is in the active or resting state (compare Fig. 139, *A* and *B*). During *rest* (fasting) the two zones are of about equal size. During the early stages of *activity* (intestinal digestion) the granules largely disappear and the clear zone occupies almost the entire cell. During the height of digestion the granules are increased in number, while after prolonged secretion they are again almost absent. The cell now returns to the resting state in which the two zones are about equal. The increase and disappearance of the granules are marked by the appearance of the fluid secretion of the gland in the lumen. It would thus seem probable that the zymogen granules are the intracellular representatives of the secretion of the gland.

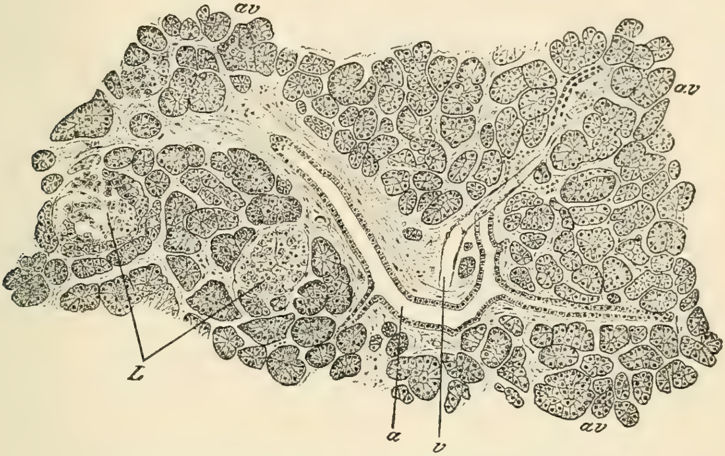


FIG. 137.—Section of Human Pancreas. × 112. (Kölliker.) *av*, Alveoli; *a*, interlobular duct surrounded by interlobular connective tissue; *L*, islands of Langerhans; *v*, small vein

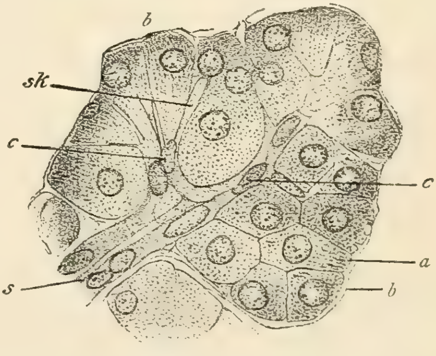


FIG. 138.—From Section of Human Pancreas. × 700. (Kölliker.) *a*, Gland cell; *b*, basement membrane; *s*, intermediate tubule; *c*, centroacinar cells; *sk*, intracellular secretory tubule.

In sections of the gland there are seen within the lumina of many of the secreting tubules one or more small cells of which little but the nucleus can usually be made out. These cells lie in contact with the secreting cells, and resemble the flat cells which line the intermediate tubule. They are known as the *centro-acinar* (*centro-tubular*) *cells of Langer-*

~~hans~~ (Fig. 138, *c*). Their significance is not definitely known. Langerhans believed that they were derived from the intermediate tubule, the epithelium of which, instead of directly joining that of the terminal tubule as in the submaxillary gland, was continued over into the lumen of the terminal tubule (Fig. 138). This interpretation has been quite generally accepted.

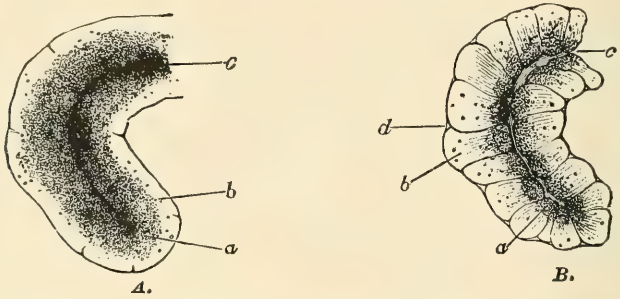


FIG. 139.—Sections of Alveoli from Rabbit's Pancreas. (Foster, after Kühne and Lea.) *A*, Resting alveolus, the inner zone (*a*), containing zymogen granules, occupying a little more of the cell than the outer clear zone (*b*) ; *c*, indistinct lumen. *B*, Active alveolus, granules coarser, fewer, and confined to inner ends of the cell (*a*), the outer clear zone (*b*) being much larger ; outlines of cells and of lumen much more distinct.

Cells which differ from the secreting cells are frequently found wedged in between the latter. They extend from the lumen to the basement membrane and are probably *sustentacular*.

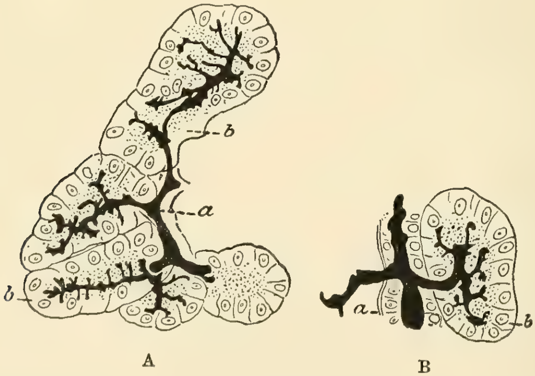


FIG. 140.—Sections through Alveoli of Human Pancreas—Golgi Method—(Dogiel), to show intracellular secretory tubules. *a*, Intermediate tubule giving off several terminal tubules, from which pass off minute intracellular secretory tubules ; *b*, gland cells lining terminal tubules.

Passing from the lumen of the terminal tubule, sometimes between the centro-tubular cells, directly into the cytoplasm of the secreting cells are minute *intracellular secretory tubules*. These are demonstrable only by special methods (Golgi) (Fig. 140).

The pancreas also contains peculiar groups of cells, the *cell-islands of Langerhans*, having a diameter from 200 to 300 μ (Figs. 137, 141, and 142). The "island" cells differ quite markedly from those which line the terminal tubules (Fig. 141). They contain no zymogen granules. Their protoplasm is unstained by basic dyes, but stains homogeneously with acid dyes. Their nuclei vary greatly in size, some, especially where the cells are closely packed, being small, others being large and vesicular. Some of the islands are quite sharply outlined by delicate fibrils of connective tissue (Fig. 141). Others blend with the surrounding tissues.

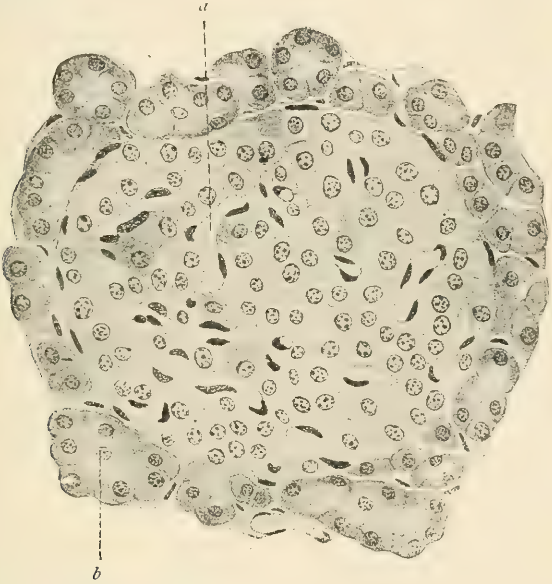


FIG. 141.—Island of Langerhans and few surrounding Pancreatic Tubules. (Böhm and von Davidoff.) *a*, Capillary ; *b*, tubule.

The origin, structure, and function of these islands have been subjects of much controversy. For some time they were considered of lymphoid origin. They are now believed to be epithelial cells having a developmental history similar to the cells lining the secreting tubules. Each cell-island consists of, in addition to the cells, a tuft or glomerulus of broad tortuous anastomosing capillaries, which arise from the network of capillaries which surround the secreting tubules. The close relation of cells and capillaries and the absence of any ducts have led to the hypothesis that these cells furnish a secretion—*internal secretion*—which passes directly into the blood-vessels.

In a recent publication Opie reviews previous work upon the histology of the pancreas and adds the results of his own careful researches. He concludes that the cell-islands of Langerhans are definite structures "formed in embryological life," that "they possess an anatomical identity as definite as the glomeruli of the kidney or the Malpighian body of the spleen, and that they subserve some special function." He calls attention to the similarity which Schafer noted between these cell-islands and such small ductless structures as the carotid and coccygeal glands and the parathyroid bodies. From his study of the pancreas in diabetes, Opie concludes that the islands of Langerhans are concerned in carbohydrate metabolism.

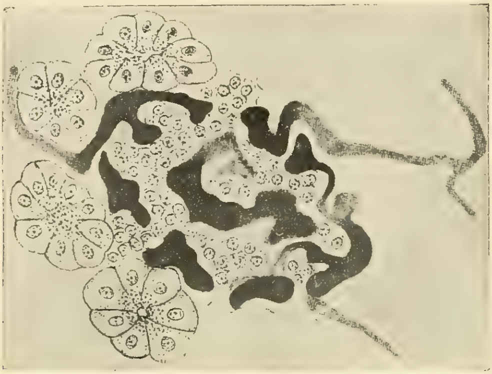


FIG. 142.—From Section of Pancreas, the blood-vessels of which had been injected (Kühne and Lea), showing island of Langerhans with injected blood-vessels, surrounded by sections of tubules. Zymogen granules are distinct in inner ends of cells.

Blood-vessels.—The arteries enter the pancreas with the main duct and break up into smaller arteries which accompany the smaller ducts. These end in a capillary network among the secreting tubules. From this, venous radicles arise which converge to form larger veins. These pass out of the gland in company with the arteries.

Lymphatics.—Of the lymphatics little is known.

Nerves.—The nerves are almost wholly from the sympathetic system, and are non-medullated. Some of them are axones of cells in sympathetic ganglia, outside the pancreas; others, of cells situated in small ganglia within the substance of the gland. They pass to plexuses among the secreting tubules, to which and to the walls of the vessels they send delicate terminal fibrils.

TECHNIC.

(1) The general technic for the pancreas is the same as for the salivary glands (page 225).

(2) Zymogen granules may be demonstrated by fixation in formalin-Müller's fluid (technic 5, p. 6), and staining with picro-acid-fuchsin (technic 2, p. 18), or with Heidenhain's iron hæmatoxylin (technic 3, p. 15).

(3) The arrangement of the blood-vessels in the islands of Langerhans may be studied in specimens in which the vascular system has been injected (page 21).

The Liver.

The liver is a compound tubular gland, the secreting tubules of which anastomose. There are thus, strictly speaking, no "terminal tubules" in the liver, the lumina and walls of neighboring tubules anastomosing without any distinct line of demarcation.

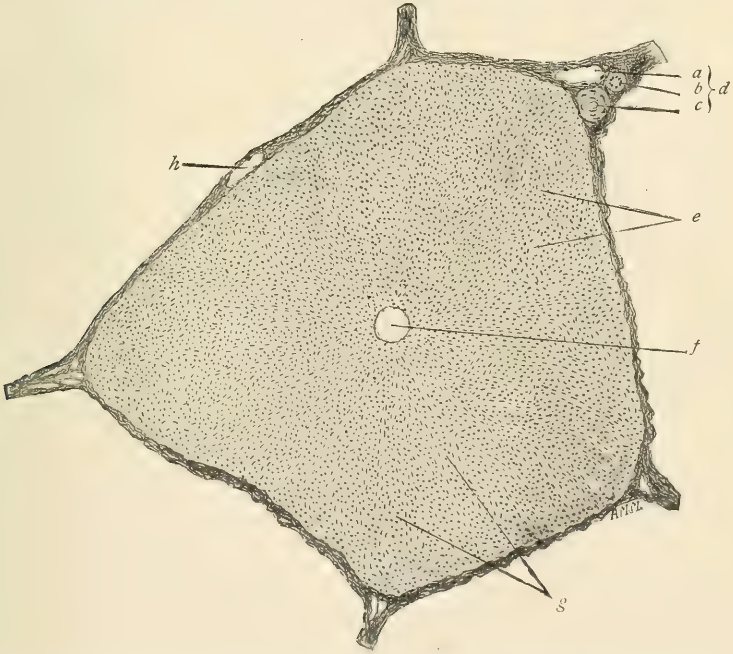


FIG. 143.—Section of Lobule of Pig's Liver × 60 (technic 1, p. 234), showing lobule completely surrounded by connective tissue. *a*, Portal vein; *b*, bile duct; *c*, hepatic artery; *d*, portal canal; *e*, capillaries; *f*, central vein; *g*, cords of liver cells; *h*, hepatic vein.

The liver is surrounded by a connective-tissue *capsule*, the *capsule of Glisson*. At the *hilum* this capsule extends deep into the substance of the liver, giving off broad connective-tissue *septa*, which divide the organ into *lobes*. From the capsule and from these interlobar septa, trabeculæ pass into the lobes, subdividing them into *lobules*. In some animals, as for example the pig, each lobule is completely invested by connective tissue (Fig. 143). In man, only islands of connective tissue are found, usually at points where three or more lobules meet (Fig. 144). The lobules are cylindrical or irregularly polyhedral in shape, about 1 mm. in breadth and 2 mm. in length. Excepting just beneath the capsule, where they are frequently arranged with their apices toward the surface, the liver lobules have an irregular arrangement.

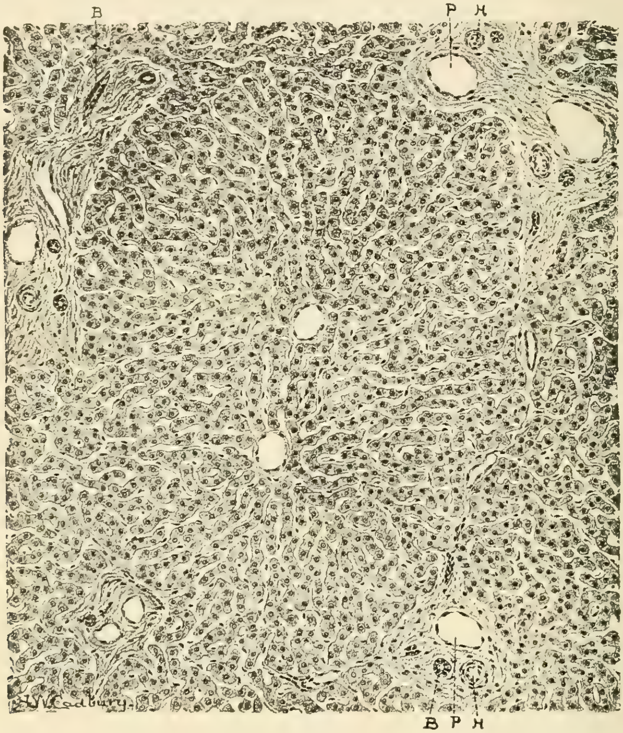


FIG. 144.—Section of Human Liver. × 80. (Hendrickson.) *P*, Portal vein; *H*, hepatic artery; *B*, bile duct. *P*, *H*, *B* constitute the portal canal and lie in the connective tissue between the lobules.

The lobule (Fig. 143) which may be considered the anatomic unit of structure of the liver, consists of secreting tubules arranged in a definite manner relatively to the blood-vessels. The blood-vessels of the liver must therefore be first considered.

The BLOOD SUPPLY of the liver is peculiar in that in addition to the ordinary arterial supply and venous return, which all organs possess, the liver receives venous blood in large quantities through the portal vein. There are thus *two afferent vessels,* the *hepatic artery* and the *portal vein,* the former carrying arterial blood, the latter venous blood from the intestine. Both vessels enter the liver at the hilum and divide into large *interlobar branches,* which follow the connective-tissue septa between the lobes. From these are given off *interlobular branches,* which run in the smaller connective-tissue septa between the lobules. From the interlobular branches of the portal vein arise veins which are still interlobular and encircle the lobules. These send off short branches which pass to the surface of the lobule, where they break up into a rich *intralobular capillary network.* These intralobular capillaries all converge toward the centre of the lobule, where they empty into the *central vein* (Fig. 143). The central veins are the smallest radicles of the hepatic veins, which are the efferent vessels of the liver. Each central vein begins at the apex of the lobule as a small vessel little larger than a capillary. As it passes through the centre of the long axis of the lobule the central vein constantly receives capillaries from all sides, and, increasing in size, leaves the lobule at its base. Here it unites with the central veins of other lobules to form the *sublobular vein* which is a branch of the hepatic.

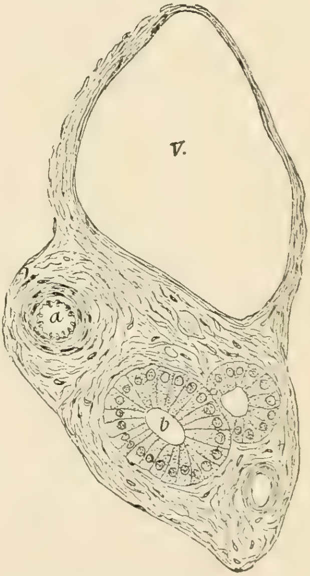


FIG. 145. — Portal Canal. × 315. (Klein and Smith.) *a*, Hepatic artery; *V*, portal vein; *b*, bile duct.

The hepatic artery accompanies the portal vein, following the branchings of the latter through the interlobar and interlobular connective tissue, where its finer twigs break up into *capillary networks.* Some of these capillaries empty into the smaller branches of the portal vein; others enter the lobules and anastomose with the intralobular portal capillaries.

The MAIN EXCRETORY DUCT—*hepatic duct*—leaves the liver at the hilum near the entrance of the portal vein and hepatic artery.

Within the liver the duct divides and subdivides, giving off *interlobar*, and these in turn *interlobular branches*. These ramify in the connective tissue, where they always accompany the branches of the portal vein and hepatic artery. These three structures—the hepatic artery, the portal vein, and the bile duct, which always occur together in the connective tissue which marks the point of separation of three or more lobules—together constitute the *portal canal* (Fig. 145). From the interlobular ducts short branches pass to the surfaces of the lobules. From these are given off extremely narrow tubules, which enter the lobule as *intralobular secreting tubules*.

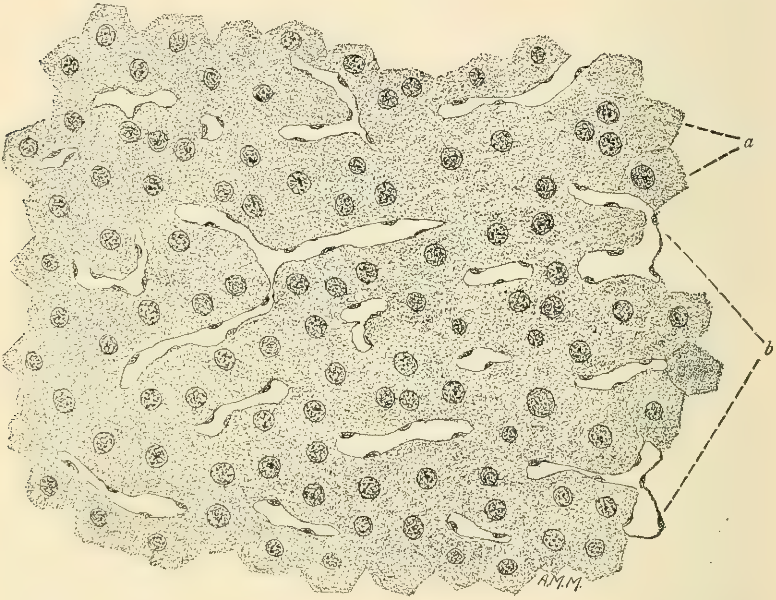


FIG. 146.—Part of Lobule of Human Liver, showing capillaries and anastomosing cords of liver cells. × 350. *a*, Liver cells; *b*, capillaries.

The walls of the ducts consist of a single layer of epithelial cells resting upon a basement membrane and surrounded by connective tissue (Fig. 145). The height of the epithelium and the amount of connective tissue are directly proportionate to the size of the duct. In the largest ducts there are usually a few scattered smooth muscle cells. The walls of the secreting tubules are formed by the liver cells.

The LIVER CELLS (Fig. 146) are irregularly polyhedral in shape.

They have a granular protoplasm which frequently contains glycogen, pigment granules, and droplets of fat and bile. Each cell contains *one* or *more spherical nuclei*. Like other gland cells, the granularity of the protoplasm depends upon its functional condition. Within the cells are minute irregular canals, some of which can be injected through the blood-vessels, while others are apparently continuous with the secreting tubules (Fig. 148, *A* and *B*).

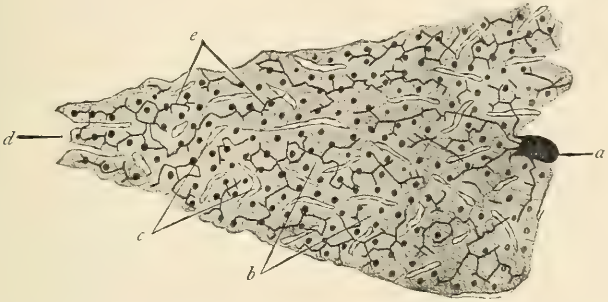


FIG. 147.—Part of Lobule of Human Liver, Golgi Method (technic 3, p. 238), to show relations of bile duct to intralobular secretory tubules and of the latter to the liver cells. *a*, Bile duct; *b*, cords of liver cells; *c*, blood capillaries; *d*, central vein; *e*, secretory tubules.

The capillaries of the portal vein, as they anastomose and converge from the periphery to the centre of the lobule, form long-meshed capillary networks. In the meshes of this network lie the anastomosing secreting tubules. On account of the shape of the

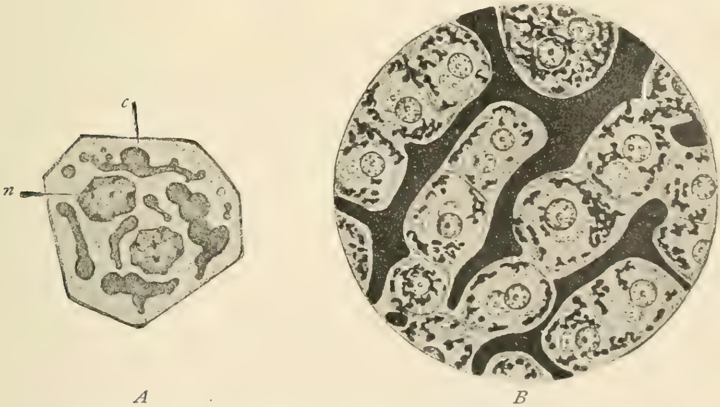


FIG. 148.—*A*, Cell from human liver showing intracellular canals (Browicz); *c*, intracellular canal; *n*, nucleus. *B*, From section of rabbit's liver injected through portal vein, showing intracellular canals (continuous with intercellular blood capillaries). (Schäfer.)

capillary network, the liver cells, which form the walls of these tubules, are arranged in anastomosing rows or cords, known as *hepatic cords* or *cords of liver cells* (Fig. 146).

The secreting tubules (Fig. 147) are extremely minute channels, the walls of which are the liver cells. A secretory *tubule* always runs between two contiguous liver cells, in each of which a groove is formed. The *blood capillaries*, on the other hand, are found at the corners where three or more liver cells come in contact. It thus results that bile tubules and blood capillaries rarely lie in contact, but are regularly separated by part of a liver cell. Exceptions to this rule sometimes occur. While most of the secretory tubules anastomose, some of them end blindly either between the liver cells or, in some instances, after extending a short distance within the cell protoplasm (Fig. 148, *A*). At the surface of the lobule there is a modification of some of the liver cells to a low cuboidal type, and these become continuous with the lining cells of the smallest bile ducts, the secretory tubule being continuous with the duct lumen.

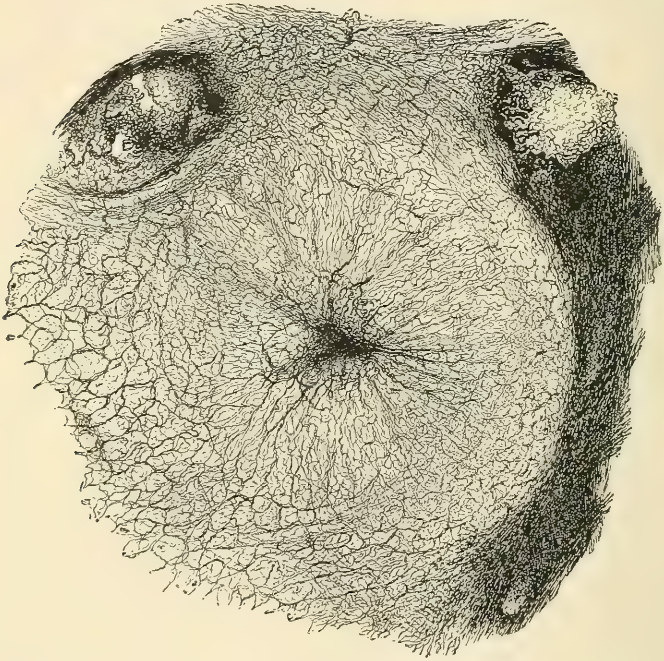


FIG. 149.—Liver Lobule, to show Connective-tissue Framework. (Mall.)

Special methods of technic have demonstrated a connective-tissue framework within the lobule. This consists of a *reticulum* of extremely delicate fibrils which envelop the capillary blood-vessels, and of a smaller number of coarser fibres which radiate from the region of the central vein—*radiate fibres* (Fig. 149).

Special technical methods also show the presence of stellate cells —*cells of Kupffer*—within the lobule. These are interpreted by Kupffer as belonging to the endothelium of the intralobular capillaries.

Blood-vessels.—These have been already described.

Lymph vessels form a network in the liver capsule. These communicate with deep lymphatics in the substance of the organ. The latter accompany the portal vein and follow the ramifications of its capillaries within the lobule as far as the central vein.

The nerves of the liver are mainly non-medullated axones of sympathetic neurones. The nerves accompany the blood-vessels and bile ducts, around which they form plexuses. These plexuses give off fibrils which end on the blood-vessels, bile ducts, and liver cells.

Three main ducts, all parts of a single excretory duct system, are concerned in the transportation of the bile to the intestine, the *hepatic*, the *cystic*, and the *common*. Their walls consist of a *mucous membrane*, a *submucosa*, and a layer of *smooth muscle*. The *mucosa* is composed of a simple columnar epithelium resting upon a basement membrane and a stroma which contains smooth muscle cells and small mucous glands. The *submucosa* is a narrow layer of connective tissue. Hendrickson describes the *muscular coat* as consisting of three layers, an inner circular, a middle longitudinal, and an external oblique. At the entrance of the common bile duct into the intestine, and at the junction of the duct of Wirsung with the common duct, there are thickenings of the circular fibres to form sphincters. In the cystic duct occur folds of the mucosa—the *Heisterian valve*—into which the muscularis extends.

The Gall-Bladder.

The wall of the gall-bladder consists of three coats—mucous, muscular, and serous.

The mucous membrane is thrown up into small folds or *rugæ*, which anastomose and give the mucous surface a reticular appearance. The epithelium is of the simple columnar variety with nuclei situated at the basal ends of the cells. A few mucous glands are usually found in the stroma.

The muscular coat consists of bundles of smooth muscle cells which are disposed in a very irregular manner, and are separated by considerable fibrous tissue. A richly vascular layer just beneath the stroma is almost free from muscle and corresponds to a submucosa. It frequently contains small lymph nodules.

The serous coat is a reflection of the peritoneum.

TECHNIC.

(1) Before taking up the study of the human liver, the liver from one of the lower animals in which each lobule is completely surrounded by connective tissue should be studied. Fix small pieces of a pig's liver in formalin-Müller's fluid (technic 5, p. 6.) Cut sections near and parallel to the surface. Stain with hæmatoxylin-picro-acid-fuchsin (technic 3, p. 18) and mount in balsam. In the pig's liver the lobules are completely outlined by connective tissue and the yellow picric-acid-stained lobules are in sharp contrast with the red fuchsin-stained connective tissue.

(2) For the study of the human liver treat small pieces of perfectly fresh tissue in the same manner as the preceding, but stain with hæmatoxylin-eosin (technic 1, p. 17).

(3) The secretory tubules and smaller bile ducts may be demonstrated by technic 4, p. 25. A light eosin stain brings out the liver cells.

(4) For the study of the blood-vessels of the liver, inject the vessels through the inferior vena cava or portal vein. If the vena cava is used, it is convenient to inject from the heart directly through the right auricle into the vena cava. Sections should be rather thick and may be stained with eosin, or even lightly with hæmatoxylin-eosin (technic 1, p. 17), and mounted in balsam.

(5) For demonstrating the intralobular connective tissue Oppel recommends fixing fresh tissue in alcohol, placing for twenty-four hours in a 0.5-per-cent aqueous solution of yellow chromate of potassium, washing in very dilute silver nitrate solution (a few drops of 0.75-per-cent solution to 50 c.c. of water) and then transferring to 0.75-per-cent silver nitrate solution, where it remains for twenty-four hours. Embed quickly in celloidin. The best tissue is usually found near the surfaces of the blocks. A similar result is obtained by fixing fresh tissue in 0.5-per-cent chromic-acid solution for three days, then transferring to 0.5-per-cent silver nitrate solution for two days.

Development of the Digestive System.

In the development of the digestive system all the layers of the blastoderm are involved. Mesoderm and entoderm are, however, the layers most concerned, as the ectoderm is used only in the formation of the oral and anal orifices. The *primitive alimentary canal* is formed by two folds which grow out from the ventral surface of the embryo and unite to form a canal, in a manner quite similar to the formation of the neural canal (page 336). In this way the primitive gut is lined with cells which previously formed the ventral surface of the embryo, *i.e.*, entoderm. A portion of the mesoderm accompanies the entoderm in the formation of the folds. This is known as the *visceral layer* of the mesoderm. The primary gut is thus a *closed sac* or *tube*. It is connected with the umbilical vesicle, but has no connection with the exterior. These connections are formed later by oral and anal invaginations of ectoderm which extend inward and open up into the ends of the hitherto imperforate gut. The ends of the alimentary tract, including the oral cavity and all of the glands and other structures connected with it, are of ectodermic origin. The epithelial lining of the gut and the parenchyma of all glands connected with it are derived from entoderm. The muscle, the connective tissue, and the mesothelium of the serosa are developed from mesoderm.

The mesodermic elements show little variation throughout the gut, the peculiarities of the several anatomical divisions of the latter being dependent mainly on special differentiation of the entoderm (epithelium). Beneath the entodermic cells is a narrow layer of loosely arranged tissue which later separates into stroma, muscularis mucosæ, and submucosa. Outside of this a broader mesodermic band of firmer structure represents the future muscularis.

The *stomach* first appears as a spindle-shaped dilatation about the end of the first month. Its entodermic cells, which had consisted of a single layer, increase in number and arrange themselves in short cylindrical groups. These are the first traces of tubular glands. They increase in length and extend downward into the mesodermic tissue. For a time the cells lining the peptic glands are all apparently alike, but at about the fourth month the differentiation into chief cells and parietal cells takes place.

In the *intestines* a proliferation of the epithelium and of the underlying stroma results in the formation of *villi*. These appear about the tenth week, in both small and large intestines. In the former they increase in size, while in the latter they atrophy and ultimately disappear. The simple tubular glands of the intestines develop in a manner similar to those of the stomach.

The mesothelium of the serosa is derived from the mesodermic cells of the primitive body cavity.

The *development of the larger glands*, connected with the digestive tract, takes place in a manner similar to the formation of the simple tubular glands. All originate in extensions downward of entodermic cords into the underlying mesodermic tissue. From the lower ends of these cords, branches extend in all directions to form the complex systems of tubules found in the compound glands.

The *salivary glands* being developed from the oral cavity, originate in similar invaginations of ectodermic tissue.

In the case of the *pancreas* a portion of the gland has an independent origin in the epithelium of the ductus choledochus. This portion ultimately unites with the main mass of the gland and its duct. The duct of Santorini sometimes remains patent, but in many cases atrophies so that the entire pancreatic secretion usually reaches the intestine through the pancreatic duct.

The *liver* begins as a ventral downgrowth of the intestinal epithelium into the mesoderm of the transverse septum. This almost immediately divides into two hepatic diverticula. About the ends of these diverticula active proliferation of entodermic cells takes place, and this represents the first appearance of liver tissue.

General References for Further Study.

Oppel: Lehrbuch der vergleichenden mikroskopischen Anatomie.
Kölliker: Handbuch der Gewebelehre des Menschen.
Opie: The Pancreas.
Stöhr: Salivary Glands, in Text-book of Histology.

CHAPTER VII.

THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM.

THE respiratory apparatus consists of a system of passages—nares, larynx, trachea, and bronchi, which serve for the transmission of air to and from the essential organ of respiration, the lungs.

The Nares.

The nares, or nasal passages, are divided into vestibular, respiratory, and olfactory regions, the differentiation depending mainly upon the structure of their mucous membranes.

The VESTIBULAR REGION marks the transition between skin and mucous membrane (page 180). Its epithelium is of the stratified squamous variety and rests upon a basement membrane, which is thrown into folds by papillæ of the underlying stroma. The latter is richly cellular and contains sebaceous glands (page 326) and the follicles of the nasal hairs.

The RESPIRATORY REGION is much larger than both the vestibular and olfactory regions. Its epithelium is of the stratified columnar variety. The cells of the surface layer are ciliated and are interspersed with goblet cells. The stroma is distinguished by its thickness (3 to 5 mm. over the inferior turbinates) and by the presence of networks of such large veins that the tissue closely resembles erectile tissue. It contains considerable diffuse lymphoid tissue and here and there small lymph nodules. In the stroma are small simple tubular glands lined with both serous and mucous cells. There is no submucosa, the stroma being connected directly with the periosteum and perichondrium of the nasal bones and cartilages.

The mucous membrane of the *accessory nasal sinuses* is similar in structure to that of the respiratory region of the nares, but is thinner and contains fewer glands.

The OLFACTORY REGION can be distinguished with the naked eye by its brownish-yellow color, in contrast with the reddish tint of the surrounding respiratory mucosa. The epithelium is of the stratified columnar type, and is considerably thicker than that of the respiratory region. The surface cells are of two kinds: (1) sustentacular cells, and (2) olfactory cells.

(1) The *sustentacular cells* are the more numerous. Each cell consists of three parts: (*a*) A superficial portion, which is broad and cylindrical, and contains pigment, and granules arranged in longitudinal rows. The cells have well-marked, striated, thickened free borders, which unite to form the so-called *membrana limitans olfactoria.* (*b*) A middle portion which contains an oval nucleus. As the nuclei of these cells all lie in the same plane, they form a distinct narrow band, which is known as the *zone of oval nuclei.* (*c*) A thin filamentous process which extends from the nuclear portion down between the cells of the deeper layers. This process is irregular and pitted by pressure of surrounding cells. It usually forks and apparently anastomoses with processes of other cells to form a sort of protoplasmic reticulum.

(2) The *olfactory cells* lie between the sustentacular cells. Their nuclei are spherical, lie at different levels, and are most of them more deeply placed than those of the sustentacular cells. They thus form a broad band, the *zone of round nuclei.* From the nuclear portion of the cell a delicate process extends to the surface, where it ends in several minute hair-like processes. From the opposite pole of the cell a longer process extends centrally as a centripetal nerve fibre. The olfactory cell is thus seen to be of the nature of a ganglion cell (see also page 450).

Between the nuclear parts of the olfactory cells and the basement membrane are the *basal cells.* These are small nucleated elements, the irregular branching protoplasm of which anastomoses with that of neighboring basal cells and of the sustentacular cells to form the peculiar protoplasmic reticulum already mentioned.

The *basement membrane* is not well developed.

The *stroma* consists of loosely arranged white fibres, delicate elastic fibres, and connective-tissue cells. Embedded in the stroma are large numbers of simple branched tubular glands, the glands of Bowman. Each tubule consists of a duct, a body, and a fundus. The secreting cells are large and irregular and contain a yellowish pigment, which with that of the sustentacular cells is responsible for the peculiar color of the olfactory mucosa. These glands were long described as serous, but are now believed to be mucous in character. They frequently extend beyond the limits of the olfactory region.

The Larynx.

The larynx consists essentially of a group of cartilages united by strong fibrous bands and lined by mucous membrane.

The *epithelium* covering the true vocal cords, the free margin of the epiglottis, and parts of the arytenoid cartilages is of the stratified squamous variety with underlying papillæ. With these exceptions the mucous membrane of the larynx is lined with stratified columnar ciliated epithelium similar to that of the respiratory portion of the nares. Numerous goblet cells are usually present, and the epithelium rests upon a broad basement membrane. On the posterior surface of the epiglottis many taste buds (see nerve endings, page 353) are embedded in the epithelium.

The *stroma* is especially rich in elastic fibres. The true vocal cords consist almost wholly of longitudinal elastic fibres covered by stratified squamous epithelium. Lymphoid cells are present in varying numbers. In some places they are so numerous that the tissue assumes the character of diffuse lymphoid tissue. Distinct nodules sometimes occur.

Owing to the absence of a muscularis mucosæ the stroma passes over with no distinct line of demarcation into the submucosa. This is a more loosely arranged, less cellular connective tissue, and contains simple tubular glands lined with both serous and mucous cells.

Externally the submucosa merges into a layer of more dense fibrous tissue which connects it with the laryngeal cartilages and with the surrounding structures. Immediately surrounding the cartilages the connective tissue forms an extremely dense layer, the perichondrium.

Of the cartilages of the larynx, the epiglottis, the middle part of the thyroid, the apex and vocal process of the arytenoid, the cartilages of Santorini and of Wrisburg are of the yellow elastic variety. The main body of the arytenoid, the rest of the thyroid and the cricoid cartilages are hyaline. After the twentieth year, more or less ossification is usually found in the cricoid and thyroid cartilages.

The Trachea.

The walls of the trachea consist of three layers—mucosa, submucosa, and fibrosa (Fig. 150).

The mucosa is continuous with that of the larynx, which it closely resembles in structure. It consists of a stratified columnar ciliated epithelium, with numerous goblet cells, resting upon a broad basement membrane, and of a stroma of mixed fibrous and elastic tissue containing many lymphoid cells.

The submucosa is not distinctly marked off from the stroma on account of the absence of a muscularis mucosæ. It is distinguished from the stroma by its looser, less cellular structure, by its numerous large blood-vessels, and by the presence of glands. These are of the simple branched tubular variety and are lined with both serous and mucous cells. Some of the mucous tubules have well-marked crescents of Gianuzzi. The glands are most numerous between the ends of the cartilaginous rings, where they extend into the fibrosa.

The fibrosa is composed of coarse, rather loosely woven connective-tissue fibres embedded in which are the *tracheal cartilages.* These are incomplete rings of hyaline cartilage shaped like the letter C (Fig. 151). They are from sixteen to twenty in number and encircle about four-fifths of the tube, being open posteriorly. The

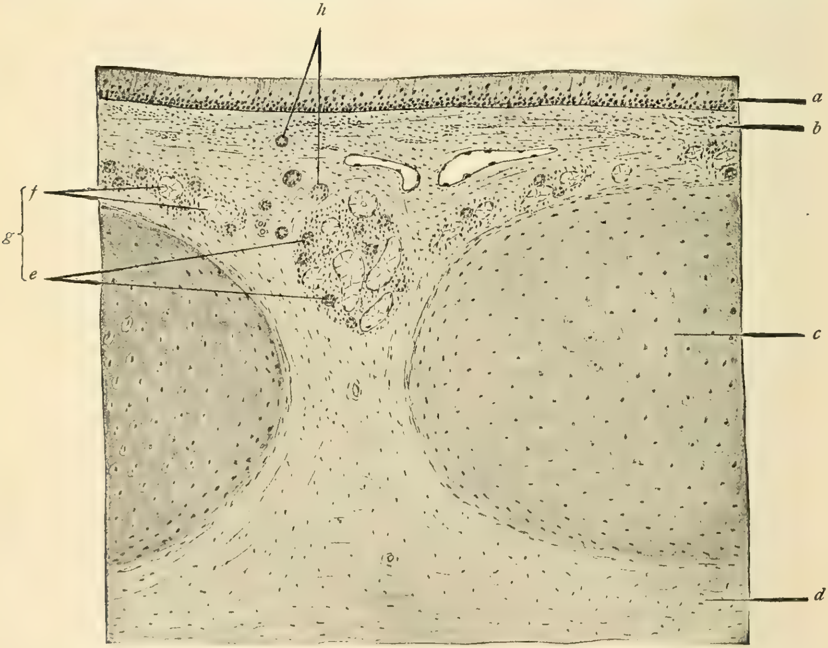


FIG. 150.—From Longitudinal Section of Human Trachea. × 40. (Technic 3, p. 246.) *a*, Epithelium ; *b*, stroma ; *c*, cartilage ; *d*, fibrous coat ; *e*, serous tubules ; *f*, mucous tubules ; *g*, glands in submucosa ; *h*, ducts.

openings between the ends of the cartilaginous rings are bridged over by a thickened continuation of the fibrous coat, strengthened by a layer of smooth muscle (Fig. 151, *m*). The bundles of muscle cells run mainly in a transverse direction, and extend across the intervals between adjacent rings as well as between their open ends. There are frequently a few bundles of longitudinally disposed cells.

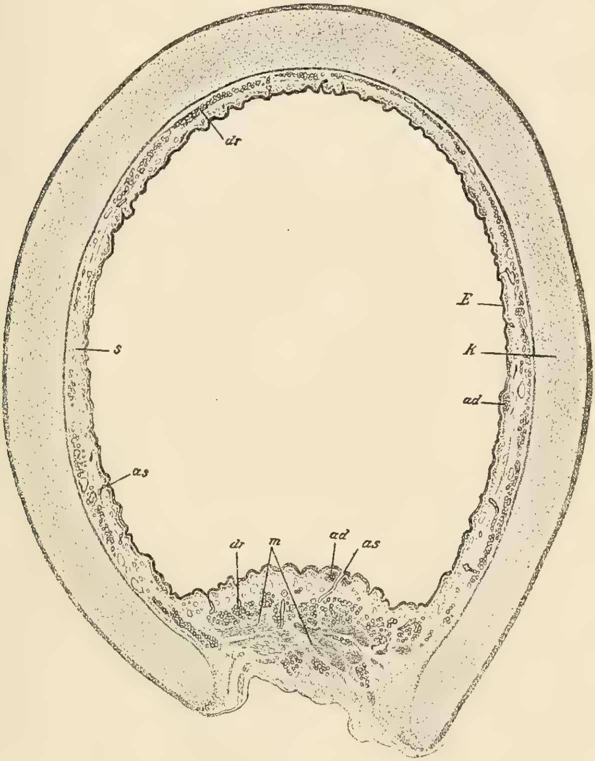


FIG. 151.—Transverse Section of Human Trachea through One of the Cartilage Rings. × 8. (Kölliker.) *E*, Epithelium of (*s*) mucous membrane; *dr*, glands; *as*, gland duct; *ad*, adenoid tissue; *K*, cartilage; *m*, smooth muscle cut longitudinally, extending across between ends of cartilage ring.

Outside the fibrous coat proper is a looser, more irregular connective tissue, which serves to attach the trachea to the surrounding structures.

Blood-vessels, lymphatics, and nerves have a similar distribution in larynx and trachea. The larger vessels pass directly to the submucosa. From these, smaller branches pass to the different coats, where they break up into capillary networks.

Lymphatics form plexuses in the submucosa and mucosa, the most superficial lying just beneath the subepithelial capillary plexus.

The nerves of the larynx and trachea are derived from both cerebro-spinal and sympathetic systems. The cerebro-spinal nerves are afferent, the dendrites of spinal ganglion cells. They form a subepithelial plexus from which are given off fibrils which pass into the epithelium and terminate freely among the epithelial cells. Other afferent fibres of cerebro-spinal nerves pass to the muscular coat of the trachea. Sympathetic nerve fibres form plexuses which are interspersed with minute groups of ganglion cells. Axones from these ganglion cells have been traced to the smooth muscle cells of the trachea. Sympathetic axones also pass to the glands of the trachea and larynx. On the under surface of the epiglottis small taste buds are found.

TECHNIC.

(1) For the study of the details of structure of the walls of the nares and larynx, fix small pieces of perfectly fresh material from different regions in formalin-Müller's fluid (technic 5, p. 6), harden in alcohol, stain sections with hæmatoxylin-eosin (technic 1, p. 17), and mount in balsam.

(2) The general relations of the parts can be studied by removing the larynx, upper part of the trachea, and corresponding portion of the œsophagus of an animal or of a new-born child, fixing and hardening as above, and cutting longitudinal sections through the entire specimen.

(3) Trachea.—Remove a portion of the trachea and treat as in technic (1). Both longitudinal and transverse sections should be made; the longitudinal including at least two of the cartilaginous rings; the transverse being through one of the rings.

The Bronchi.

The primary bronchi and their largest branches have essentially the same structure as the trachea except that the cartilaginous rings are not as complete.

As the bronchi decrease in calibre, the following changes take place in their walls (Figs. 152 and 153):

(1) The epithelium gradually becomes thinner. In a bronchus of medium size it has become reduced to three layers of cells, which Kölliker describes as an outer "basal" layer, a middle "replacing" layer, and a surface layer of ciliated and goblet cells. In the smaller bronchi the epithelium is reduced to a single layer of ciliated cells.

These are at first high, but become gradually lower as the bronchi become smaller, until in the terminal branches the epithelium is simple cuboidal and non-ciliated.

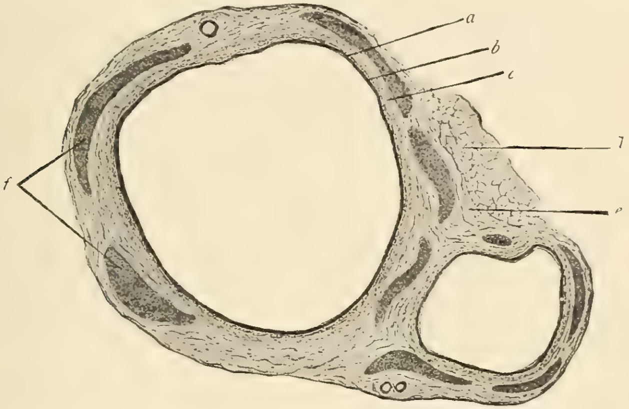


FIG. 152.—Transverse Section through a Large and a Medium-size Bronchus of the Human Lung. × 15. (Technic 2, p. 255.) In the fibrous coat are seen the bronchial arteries and veins. *a*, Epithelium; *b*, stroma; *c*, muscularis mucosæ; *d*, lung tissue; *e*, fibrous coat; *f*, plates of cartilage.

(2) The stroma decreases in thickness as the bronchi become smaller. It consists of loosely arranged white and elastic fibres.

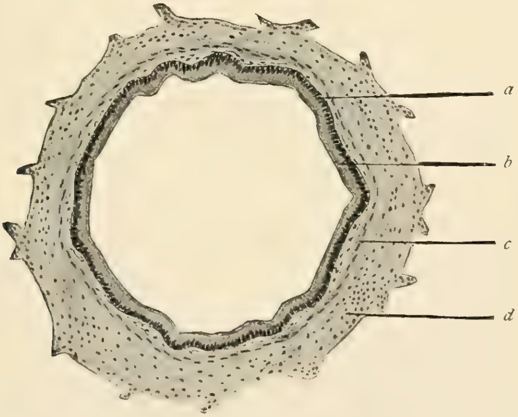


FIG. 153.—Transverse Section of Small Bronchus from Human Lung. × 115. (Technic 2, p. 255.) *a*, Stroma; *b*, epithelium; *c*, muscularis mucosæ; *d*, fibrous coat.

There is considerable diffuse lymphatic tissue, and in some places small nodules occur, over which there may be lymphoid infiltration of the epithelium (see Tonsil, page 145).

(3) With decrease in thickness of the epithelium and of the stroma, the thickness of the mucosa is maintained by the appearance of a layer of smooth muscle. In the larger bronchi this is a continuous layer of circularly disposed smooth muscle, and lies just external to the stroma, forming a muscularis mucosæ. As the bronchi become smaller the muscularis mucosæ becomes thinner, discontinuous, and in the smallest bronchi is represented by only a few scattered muscle cells.

(4) The submucosa decreases in thickness with decrease in the calibre of the bronchi. It consists of loosely arranged connective tissue. Mucous glands are present until a diameter of about 1 mm. is reached, when they disappear.

(5) The cartilages, which in the trachea and primary bronchi form nearly complete rings, become gradually smaller, and finally break up into short disconnected plates (Fig. 152). These plates decrease in size and number, and are absent after a diameter of 1 mm. is reached.

From the small bronchi are given off terminal bronchi. These are respiratory in character and are described with the lungs.

The Lungs.

The lung is built upon the plan of a compound alveolar gland, the trachea and bronchial ramifications corresponding to duct systems, the air vesicles to gland alveoli.

The surface of the lung is covered by a serous membrane—the *pulmonary pleura*—which forms its *capsule*, and which at the root of the lung, or hilum, is reflected upon the inner surface of the chest wall as the parietal pleura. From the capsule broad connective-tissue *septa* pass into the organ, dividing it into *lobes*. From the capsule and interlobar septa are given off smaller septa, which subdivide the lobes into *lobules*.

The *human pulmonary lobule* is irregularly pyramidal, and has a diameter of from 1 to 3 cm. The amount of interlobular connective tissue is so small that no distinct separation into lobules can usually be made out. The pulmonary lobule constitutes the anatomic unit of lung structure in the same sense that the liver lobule constitutes the anatomic unit of that organ. The most superficial lobules are arranged with their bases against the pleura. Elsewhere in the lung the lobules have an irregular arrangement.

The apex of each lobule is the point of entrance of a *small bronchus.* This gives off within the lobule several *terminal* or *respiratory bronchi* (Fig. 154, *b*; Figs. 155 and 156, *BR*). From each terminal bronchus open from three to six narrow passages—*alveolar passages* or *alveolar ducts* (Fig. 154, *a*; Figs. 155 and 156, *DA*). The alveolar passages open into wider chambers—*air passages* or *infundibula.* The latter are irregularly pyramidal, their bases being directed away from the alveolar passage. From the sides of the terminal bronchi, the alveolar passages, and the infundibula are given off the *alveoli—air vesicles* or *air cells* (Fig. 154, *i*; Figs. 155 and 156, *AS*).

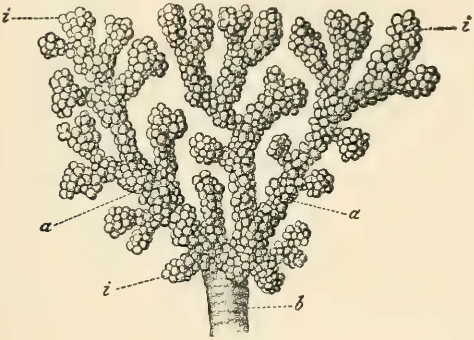


FIG. 154.—From Lung of an Ape. The bronchi and their dependent ducts and alveoli have been filled with quicksilver. × 15. (Kölliker, after Schulze.) *b*, Terminal bronchus; *a*, alveolar duct; *i*, alveoli.

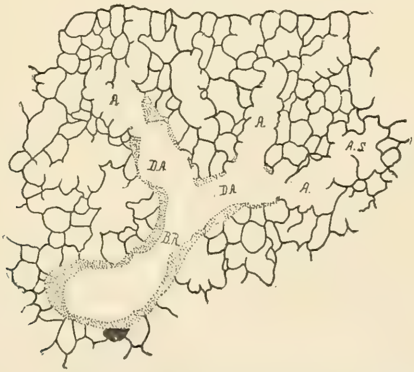


FIG. 155.—Camera Lucida Tracing of Calf's Lung (Miller). Stippling = nuclei of epithelium and position of smooth muscle. Pulmonary artery in black. *B.R.*, Respiratory bronchus; *D.A.*, alveolar duct; *A.*, atrium; *A.S.*, air sacs.

According to Miller a further subdivision of the alveolar passage can be made. He describes the terminal bronchus as about 0.5 mm. in diameter, and as opening into from three to six narrow tubules, the *vestibula*. Each vestibulum is about 0.2 mm. in diameter, and opens into several larger, nearly spherical chambers, the *atria*. Each atrium communicates with a number of very narrow—0.14 mm.—*air-sac passages* from which open the *air sacs*. From the latter are given off on all sides, the *air cells* or *alveoli*. Alveoli are not, however,

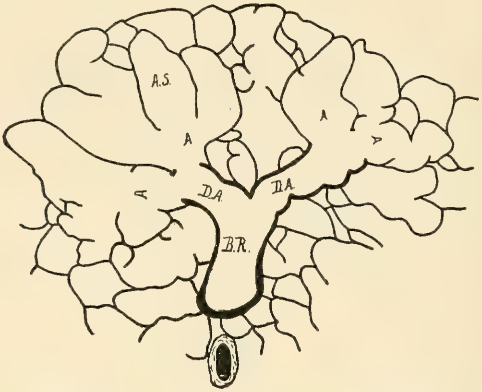


FIG. 156.—Camera Lucida Tracing of Section of Lung of Two and One-half Months' Old Child (Miller). Heavy black lines, smooth muscle; pulmonary artery in black; *B.R.*, respiratory bronchus; *D.A.*, alveolar duct; *A.*, atrium; *A.S.*, air sacs.

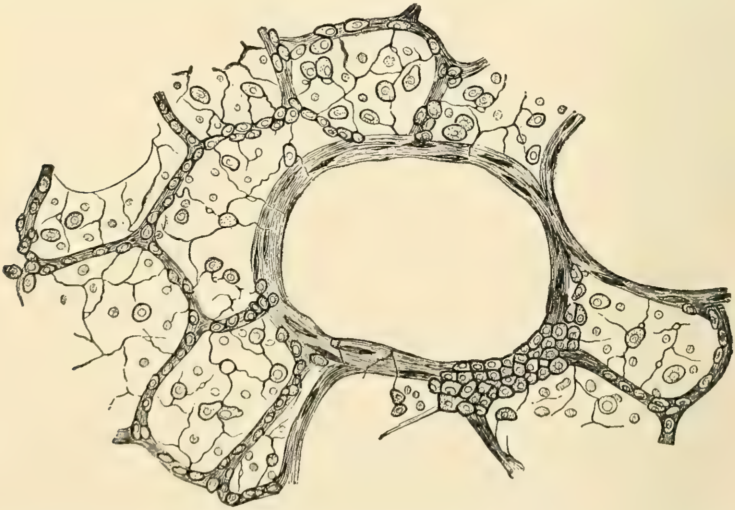


FIG. 157.—From Section of Cat's Lung Stained with Silver Nitrate. (Klein.) (Technic 1, p. 65.) Small bronchus surrounded by alveoli, in which are seen both flat cells (respiratory epithelium), and cuboidal cells (fœtal cells).

confined to the periphery of the air sacs, but are given off in small numbers from the terminal bronchus, and in constantly increasing numbers from the alveolar ducts and infundibula.

The *terminal bronchus.* The proximal portion of the terminal or respiratory bronchus is lined by a simple columnar ciliated epithelium, resting upon a basement membrane. Beneath this is a richly elastic stroma containing bundles of circularly disposed smooth muscle cells. The epithelium becomes gradually lower and non-ciliated, and near the distal end of the terminal bronchus there appear small groups or islands of flat, non-nucleated epithelial cells—*respiratory epithelium.*

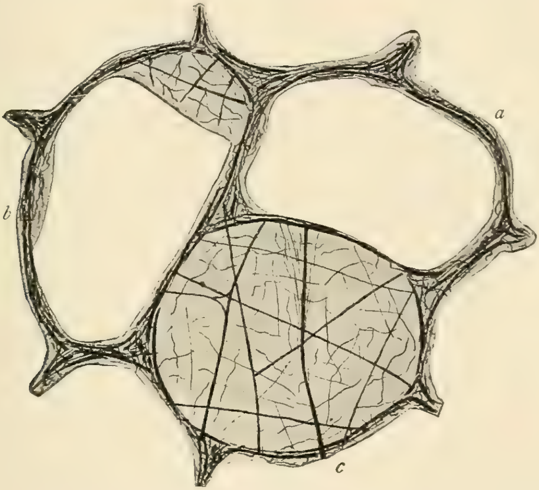


FIG. 158.—Section Through Three Alveoli of Human Lung. × 235. Weigert's elastic-tissue stain (technic 3, p. 25) to show arrangement of elastic tissue. *a*, Alveolus cut through side walls only; *b*, alveolus cut through side walls and portion of bottom or top; *c*, alveolus in which either the bottom or top is included in section.

The *alveolar passage.* Here the cuboidal epithelium is almost completely replaced by the respiratory. Beneath the epithelium the walls have a structure similar to those of the distal end of the terminal bronchus, consisting of delicate fibro-elastic tissue with scattered smooth muscle cells. The basement membrane is extremely thin.

The *air passage.* The epithelium of the air passage consists of two kinds of cells, respiratory cells and so-called "*fœtal*" cells (see Development, page 255).

The *respiratory cells* (Fig. 157) are some of them large, flat, non-nucleated plates, while others are much smaller, non-nucleated elements. The absence of nuclei and the extremely small amount of intercellular substance render these cells quite invisible in sections stained by the more common methods. The cell boundaries are best demonstrated by means of silver nitrate (technic 1, p. 65).

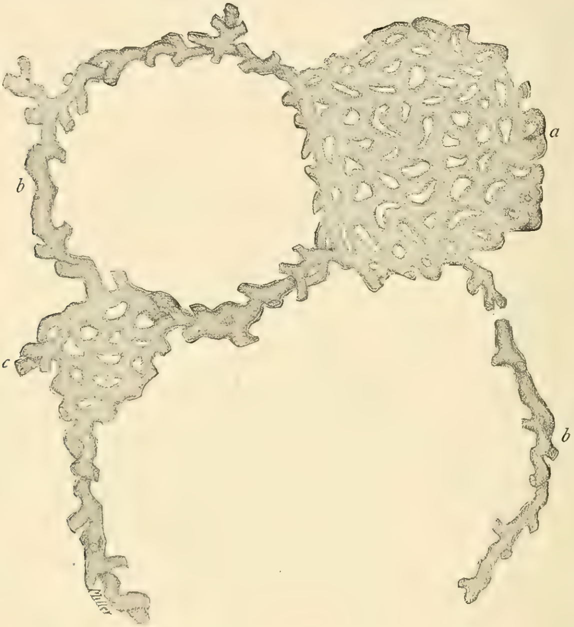


FIG. 159.—Parts of Four Alveoli from Section of Injected Human Lung. × 200. (Technic 5, p. 255.) *a*, Wall of alveolus seen on flat; *c*, same, but only small part of alveolarwall in plane of section; *b*, alveoli in which plane of section includes only side walls; alveolar wall seen on edge.

The "*fœtal*" *cells* are granular, nucleated cells which are scattered among the respiratory cells. Their position appears to be less superficial than that of the respiratory cells, the fœtal cells lying in the meshes of the capillary network, the respiratory cells covering the capillaries. In the embryonic lung the air passages and alveoli contain only this type of cells.

The *alveolus* is similar in structure to the alveolar passage, its walls consisting mainly of delicate elastic fibrils supporting respiratory and fœtal cells. Around the opening of the alveolus the elastic fibres are more numerous, forming a more or less definite ring.

The *interalveolar connective tissue*, while extremely small in amount, serves to separate the alveoli from one another. Somewhat thicker connective tissue separates the alveoli of one alveolar passage from those of another. Still stronger connective-tissue bands separate adjacent lobules.

Blood-vessels.—Two systems of vessels distribute blood to the lungs. One, the *bronchial system*, carries blood for the nutrition of the lung tissue. The other, the much larger *pulmonary system*, carries blood for the respiratory function.

The *bronchial artery* and the *pulmonary artery* enter the lung at its hilum. Within the lung the vessels branch, following the branchings of the bronchi, which they accompany. The pulmonary vessels are much the larger and run in the connective tissue *outside* the bronchial walls. The bronchial vessels lie *within* the fibrous coat of the bronchus. A section of a bronchus thus usually shows the large pulmonary vessels, one on either side of the bronchus, and two or more small bronchial vessels in the walls of the bronchus (Fig. 152).

The *pulmonary lobule* forms a distinct "blood-vascular unit." A branch of the pulmonary artery enters the apex of each lobule close to the lobular bronchus, and almost immediately breaks up into branches, one of which passes to each alveolar passage. From these are given off minute terminal arterioles which pass to the central sides of the alveolar passages and alveoli, where they give rise to a rich capillary network. This capillary network is extremely closemeshed, and invests the alveoli on all sides. Similar networks invest the walls of the respiratory bronchi, the alveolar ducts, and their alveoli. All of these capillary networks freely anastomose.

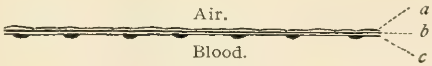


FIG. 160.—Diagram of Tissues Interposed Between Blood and Air in Alveolus. *a*, Respiratory epithelium; *b*, basement membrane and small amount of fibro-elastic tissue; *c*, endothelium of capillary.

There are thus interposed between the blood in the capillaries and the air in the alveoli only three extremely thin layers: (1) The thin endothelium of the capillary wall; (2) the single layer of flat respiratory epithelial plates; and (3) the delicate basement membrane upon which the respiratory epithelium rests together with an extremely small amount of fibrous and elastic tissues (see diagram, Fig. 160).

The *veins* begin as small radicles, one from the base of each alveolus. These empty into small veins at the periphery of the lobule.

These veins at first run in the interlobular connective tissue away from the artery and bronchus. Later they empty into the large pulmonary trunks which accompany the bronchi.

The *bronchial arteries* break up into capillary networks in the walls of the bronchi, supplying them as far as their respiratory divisions, beyond which point the capillaries belong to the pulmonary system. The bronchial arteries supply the walls of the bronchi, the bronchial lymph nodes, the walls of the pulmonary vessels, and the pulmonary pleura. Of the bronchial capillaries some empty into the bronchial veins, others into the pulmonary veins.

Lymphatics.—The lymphatics of the lung begin as small lymph spaces in the interalveolar connective tissue. These communicate with larger lymph channels in the interlobular septa. Some of these empty into the deep pulmonary lymphatics, which follow the pulmonary vessels to the lymph glands at the root of the lung. Others empty into the superficial pulmonary lymphatics, which form an extensive subpleural plexus connected with small subpleural lymph nodes, whence by means of several larger vessels the lymph is carried to the lymph nodes at the hilum.

Nerves.—Bundles of medullated and non-medullated fibres accompany the bronchial arteries and veins. Small sympathetic ganglia are distributed along these nerves. The fibres form plexuses in the fibrous layer of the bronchi, from which terminals pass to the muscle of the bronchi and of the vessel walls and to the mucosa. Free endings upon the epithelium of bronchi, air passages, and alveoli have been described.

DEVELOPMENT OF THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM.

The epithelium of the respiratory system develops from entoderm, the connective-tissue elements from mesoderm. The first differentiation of respiratory system appears as a dipping down of the entoderm of the floor of the primitive pharynx. The tubule thus formed divides into a larger and longer right branch, which subdivides into three branches corresponding to the three lobes of the future right lung, and a smaller and shorter left branch, which subdivides into two branches corresponding to the two lobes of the future left lung. By repeated subdivisions of these tubules the entire bronchial system is formed. The last to develop are the respiratory divisions of the bronchi with their alveolar passages and alveoli. The epithelium of the air passages and alveoli is at first entirely of the fœtal-cell type, the large flat respiratory plates appearing only after the lungs have become inflated. The fœtal and respiratory cells of the adult lung have therefore the same embryonic origin. During the early stages of lung development the mesodermic tissue predominates, but with the rapid growth of the tubules the proportion of the two changes until in the adult lung the mesodermic tissue becomes restricted to the inconspicuous pulmonary framework and the blood-vessels.

TECHNIC.

(1) The technic for the largest bronchi is the same as for the trachea (technic 3, p. 246). The medium size and small bronchi are studied in sections of the lung.

(2) Lung and Bronchi.—Carefully remove the lungs and trachea (human, dog, or cat) and tie into the trachea a cannula to which a funnel is attached. Distend the lungs moderately (pressure of two to four inches) by pouring in formalin-Müller's fluid (technic 5, p. 6), and then immerse the whole in the same fixative for twenty-four hours. Cut into small blocks, using a very sharp razor so as not to squeeze the tissue, harden in alcohol, stain thin sections with hæmatoxylin-eosin (technic 1, p. 17), and mount in balsam or in eosin-glycerin. The larger bronchi are found in sections near the root of the lung. The arrangement of the pulmonary lobules is best seen in sections near and horizontal to the surface. Sections perpendicular to and including the surface show the pulmonary pleura.

(3) Respiratory Epithelium (technic 1, p. 65).

(4) Elastic Tissue of the Lung (technic 3, p. 25).

(5) Blood-vessels.—For the study of the blood-vessels, especially of the capillary networks of the alveoli, sections of injected lung should be made. A fresh lung is injected (page 21) with blue gelatin, through the pulmonary artery. It is then hardened in alcohol, embedded in celloidin, and thick sections are stained with eosin and mounted in balsam.

The Thyroid.

The thyroid is a ductless structure built upon the general principle of a compound alveolar gland. There are usually two lateral lobes connected by a narrow band of glandular tissue, the "isthmus." Each lobe is surrounded by a connective-tissue capsule, from which septa pass into the lobe, subdividing it into lobules. From the perilobular connective tissue finer strands extend into the lobules, separating the alveoli. The latter are spherical, oval, or irregular in shape, and are as a rule non-communicating. At birth most of the alveoli are empty, but soon become more or less filled with a peculiar substance known as "colloid." The alveoli are lined with a single or double layer of cuboidal epithelial cells. Two types of cells are recognized, chief cells and colloid cells. It is probable that these represent different secretory conditions of the same cell. In the secretion of colloid the chief cell seems to be first transformed into a colloid cell. The latter appears in some cases simply to pour out its colloid secretion into the lumen, after which it assumes the character of a chief cell; in other cases the cell appears to be completely transformed into colloid, its place being taken by proliferation of the chief cells. In certain alveoli which are much distended with colloid the lining epithelium is flattened.

The **blood supply** of the thyroid is extremely rich, the vessels branching and anastomosing in the connective tissue and forming dense capillary networks around the alveoli.

Lymphatics accompany the blood-vessels in the connective tissue.

Nerves are mainly non-medullated fibres which form plexuses around the blood-vessels and in the connective tissue surrounding the alveoli. Terminals to the secreting cells end in club-like dilatations against the bases or between the epithelial cells. A few afferent medullated fibres are found in the plexuses surrounding the blood-vessels.

DEVELOPMENT.—The median portion of the thyroid or isthmus originates as a diverticulum from the entoderm of the primitive pharynx, the lateral lobes as diverticula from the fourth visceral cleft. These three bodies, at first independent, unite to form the thyroid and become entirely separated from the entoderm. The gland at first consists of solid cords of cells. Ingrowth of connective tissue divides these into groups or lobules, and at the same time breaks up the long tubules into short segments. Dilatation of the alveoli occurs with the formation of colloid.

The Parathyroids.

These are small ductless glands, usually four in number, which lie upon the lateral lobes of the thyroid. They consist of a vascular connective tissue and solid anastomosing cords of epithelial cells. After removal of the thyroids the parathyroids hypertrophy and apparently assume the function of the thyroid.

TECHNIC.

The thyroid and parathyroid glands are best fixed in formalin-Müller's fluid. Sections may be stained with hæmatoxylin-eosin or hæmatoxylin-picro-acid-fuchsin and mounted in balsam.

General References for Further Study.

Miller, W. S.: Das Lungenläppchen, seine Blut- und Lymphgefässe.
Councilman: The Lobule of the Lung and Its Relations to the Lymphatics.
Kölliker: Handbuch der Gewebelehre des Menschen.

CHAPTER VIII.

THE URINARY SYSTEM.

The Kidney.

THE kidney is a compound tubular gland. It is enclosed by a firm connective-tissue capsule, the inner layer of which contains smooth muscle cells. In many of the lower animals and in the human fœtus septa extend from the capsule into the gland, dividing it into a number of lobes or *renculi*. In some animals, *e.g.*, the guinea-pig and rabbit, the entire kidney consists of a *single lobe* (Fig. 161). In the adult human kidney the division into lobes is not complete, the peripheral parts of the different lobes blending. Rarely the fœtal division into lobes persists in adult life, such a kidney being known as a "lobulated kidney."

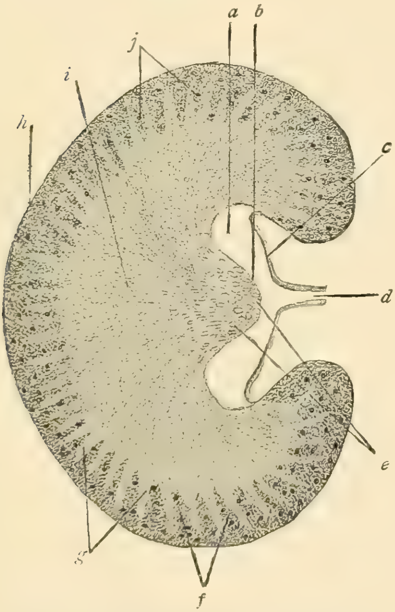


FIG. 161.—Longitudinal Section Through Kidney of Guinea-pig, including hilum and beginning of ureter. × 5. (Technic 1, p. 273). *a*, Pelvis; *b*, papilla; *c*, wall of pelvis; *d*, ureter; *e*, ducts of Bellini; *f*, cortical pyamids; *g*, medullary rays; *h*, cortex; *i*, medulla; *j*, renal corpuscles.

On the mesially directed side of the kidney is a depression known as the hilum (Fig. 161). This serves as the point of entrance of the *renal artery* and of exit for the *renal vein* and *ureter*.

On section a division of the organ into two zones is apparent to the naked eye (Figs. 161 and 162). The outer zone or *cortex* has a granular appearance, while the inner zone or *medulla* shows radial striations. This difference in appearance between cortex and medulla is mainly due, as will be seen subsequently, to the fact that in the cortex the kidney tubules are convoluted, while in the medulla they run in parallel radial lines alternating with straight blood-vessels. The medullary portion of the kidney projects into the *pelvis,* or upper expanded

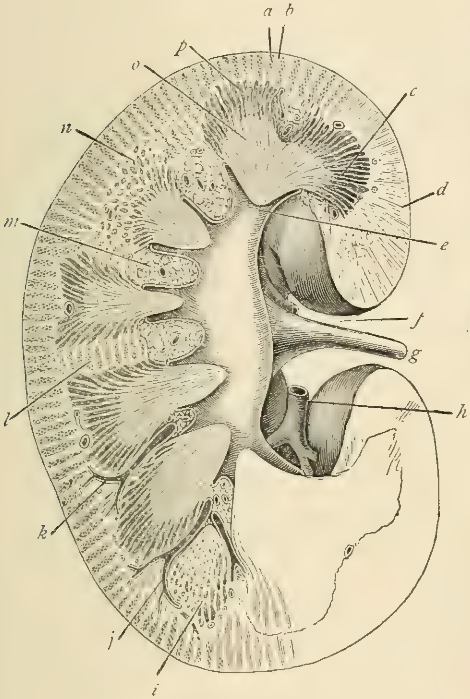


FIG. 162.

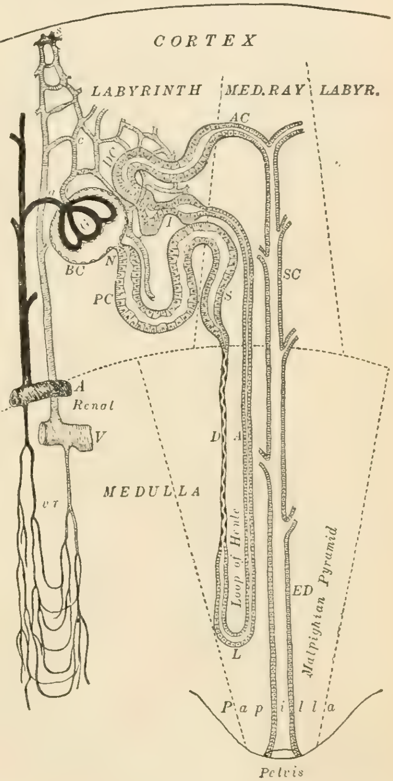


FIG. 163.

FIG. 162.—Longitudinal Section of Kidney Through Hilum. *a*, Cortical pyramid; *b*, medullary ray; *c*, medulla; *d*, cortex; *e*, renal calyx; *f*, hilum; *g*, ureter; *h*, renal artery; *i*, obliquely cut tubules of medulla; *j* and *k*, renal arches; *l*, column of Bertini; *m*, connective tissue and fat surrounding renal vessels; *n*, medulla cut obliquely; *o*, papilla; *p*, medullary pyramid. (Merkel-Henle.)

FIG. 163.—Scheme of Uriniferous Tubule and of the Blood-vessels of the Kidney showing their relation to each other and to the different parts of the kidney. *G*, Glomerulus; *BC*, Bowman's capsule; *N*, neck; *PC*, proximal convoluted tubule; *S*, spiral tubule; *D*, descending arm of Henle's loop; *L*, Henle's loop; *A*, ascending arm of Henle's loop; *I*, *DC*, distal convoluted tubule; *AC*, arched tubule; *SC*, straight collecting tubule; *ED*, duct of Bellini; *A*, arcuate artery, and *V*, arcuate vein, giving off interlobular vessels to cortex and vasa recta to medulla; *a*, afferent vessel of glomerulus; *e*, efferent vessel of glomerulus; *c*, capillary network in cortical labyrinth; *s*, stellate veins; *vr*, vasa recta and capillary network of medulla. (Pearsol.)

beginning of the ureter (Figs. 161 and 162) in the form of *papillæ.* The number of papillæ varies from ten to fifteen, corresponding to the number of lobes in the fœtal kidney. The pyramidal segment of medulla, the apex of which is a papilla—in other words, the medullary portion of a fœtal lobe—is known as a *medullary* or *Malpighian pyramid.* The extensions downward of cortical substance between the Malpighian pyramids constitute the *columns* of *Bertini* or *septa renis.* Radiating lines—*medullary rays* or *pyramids of Ferrein*—extend outward from the base of each Malpighian pyramid into the cortex (Fig. 162). As the rays extend outward in groups they outline pyramidal cortical areas. These are known as the *cortical pyramids* or *cortical labyrinths.*

The secreting portion of the kidney is composed of a large number of long tortuous tubules, the *uriniferous tubules.*

Each URINIFEROUS TUBULE begins in an expansion known as *Bowman's capsule* (Figs. 163, *B C*, and 164). This encloses a tuft of blood capillaries, the *glomerulus.* Bowman's capsule and the glomerulus together constitute the *Malpighian body* or *renal corpuscle.* As it leaves the Malpighian body the uriniferous tubule becomes constricted to form the neck (Figs. 163, *N*, and 164). It next broadens out into a greatly convoluted portion, the *first* or *proximal convoluted tubule.* The Malpighian body, the neck, and the first convoluted tubule are situated in the cortical pyramid (Fig. 163). The tubule next takes a quite straight course downward into the medulla—*descending arm of Henle's loop* (Fig. 163, *D*)—turns sharply upon itself—*Henle's loop* (Fig. 163, *L*)—and passes again toward the surface—*ascending arm of Henle's loop* (Fig. 163) *A*,—

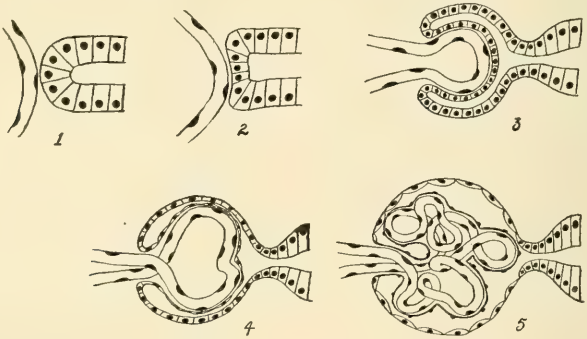


FIG. 164.—Diagrams Illustrating Successive Stages in Development of the Renal Corpuscle. 1 and 2, Approach of blood-vessel and blind end of tubule; 3, invagination of tubule by blood-vessels; 4 and 5, later stages, showing development of glomerulus and of the two-layered capsule of the renal corpuscle, the outer layer being the capsule of Bowman continuous with the epithelium of the first convoluted tubule.

through the medulla and medullary ray. Leaving the medullary ray, it enters a cortical pyramid (probably as a rule the same pyramid from which it took origin) to become the *second* or *distal convoluted tubule* (Fig. 163, *DC*). This passes into the *arched tubule* (*AC*) which enters a medullary ray and continues straight down through the medullary ray and medulla as the *straight* or *collecting tubule* (*SC*). During its course the collecting tubule receives other arched tubules. As it descends it becomes broader, enters the papilla, where it is known as the *duct of Bellini* (*ED*), and opens on the surface of the papilla into the kidney pelvis. About twenty

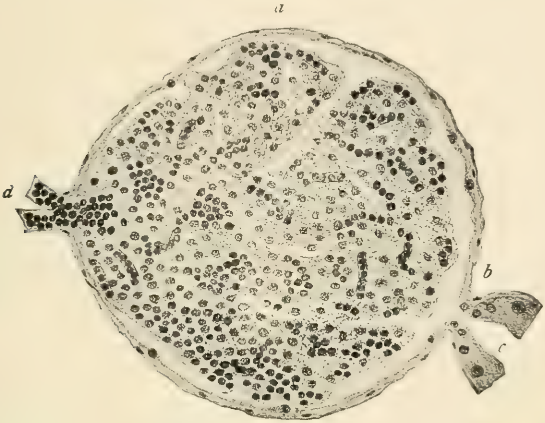


FIG. 165.—Malpighian Body from Human Kidney. × 280. (Technic 2, p. 273.) *a*, Bowman's capsule; *b*, neck; *c*, first convoluted tubule; *d*, afferent and efferent vessels.

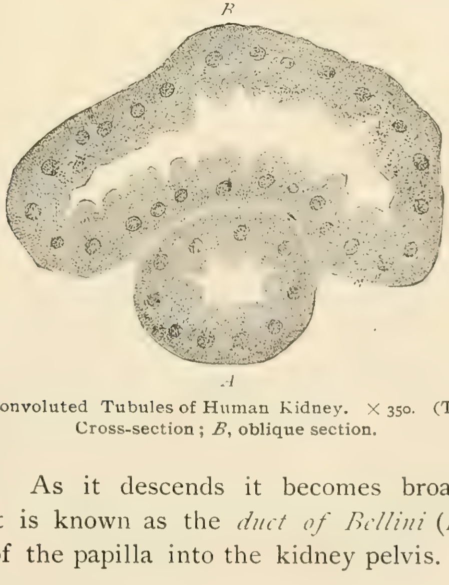


FIG. 166.—Proximal Convoluted Tubules of Human Kidney. × 350. (Technic 2, p. 273.) *A*, Cross-section; *B*, oblique section.

ducts of Bellini open upon the surface of each papilla, their openings being known as the *foramina papillaria.*

Each tubule consists of a delicate homogeneous *membrana propria* upon which rests a *single layer* of *epithelial cells.* The shape and structure of the epithelium differ in different portions of the tubule.

1. The *Malpighian body* is spheroidal, and has a diameter of from 120 to 200 μ. The structure of the Malpighian body can be best understood by reference to its development (Fig. 164). During the development of the uriniferous tubules and of the blood-vessels of the kidney the growing end of a vessel meets the growing end of a tubule in such a way that there is an invagination of the tubule by the blood-vessel (see Fig. 164). The result is that the end of the vessel which develops a tuft-like network of capillaries—the *glomerulus* —comes to lie within the expanded end of the tubule, which thus forms a two-layered capsule for the glomerulus. One layer of the capsule closely invests the tuft of capillaries. This layer by modification of the original tubular epithelium is finally composed of a single layer of flat epithelial cells with projecting nuclei. The outer layer of the

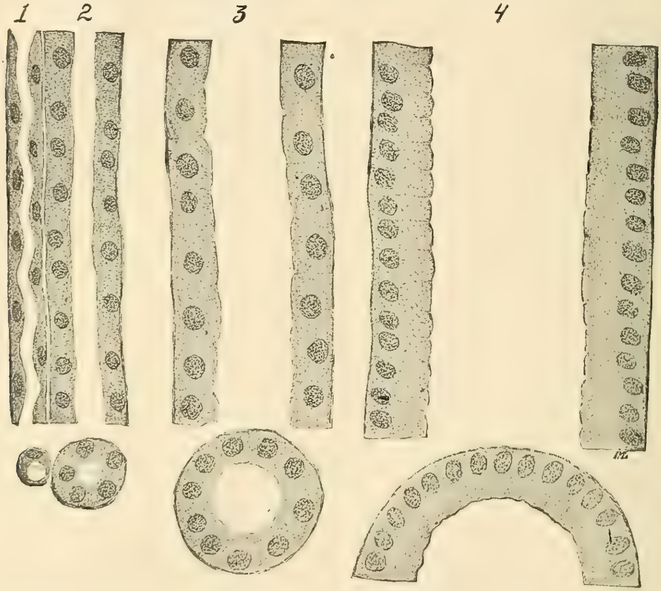


FIG. 167.—Tubules of Human Kidney. × 560. From longitudinal section. (Technic 2, p. 273.) 1, Descending arm of Henle's loop; 2, ascending arm of Henle's loop; 3, collecting tubule; 4, duct of Bellini. Beneath the longitudinal sections are seen cross sections of the same tubules.

capsule lies against the delicate connective tissue which surrounds the Malpighian body. This layer consists of a similar though slightly higher epithelium and is known as *Bowman's capsule*. Between the glomerular layer of the capsule and Bowman's capsule proper is a space which represents the beginning of the lumen of the uriniferous tubule (Fig. 165), the epithelium of Bowman's capsule being directly continuous with that of the neck of the tubule.

2. *The Neck.*—This is short and narrow, and is lined by a few cuboidal epithelial cells. Toward its glomerular end the epithelium is transitional between the flat epithelium of Bowman's capsule and the cuboidal epithelium of the neck proper. At its other end the epithelium of the neck becomes larger and more irregular as it passes over into that lining the next division of the tubule.

3. The *first* or *proximal convoluted tubule* (Fig. 166) measures from 40 to 70 μ in diameter. It is lined by irregularly cuboidal or pyramidal epithelium, with very indistinct demarcation between the cells. The cytoplasm is granular, and the granules are arranged in rows, giving the cell a striated appearance. This is especially marked at the basal end of the cell where the nucleus is situated. A zone of fine striations along the free surface frequently presents somewhat the appearance of cilia.

4. The *descending arm of Henle's loop* is narrow (Fig. 167, *1*), 10 to 15 μ in diameter. It is lined by a simple flat epithelium. The part of the cell which contains the nucleus bulges into the lumen, and as the nuclei of opposite sides of the tubule usually alternate, the lumen is apt to present a wavy appearance in longitudinal sections.

5. *Henle's Loop.*—The epithelium here changes from the flat of the descending arm to the cuboidal of the ascending arm. The exact point where the transition occurs varies. It may take place during the turn of the loop, or in either the ascending or descending arm.

6. The *ascending arm of Henle's loop* (Fig. 167, *2*) is broader than the descending, measuring from 20 to 30 μ in diameter. Its epithelium is cuboidal with granular striated protoplasm. The cells thus resemble those of the convoluted tubule, but are smaller, more regular, and less granular.

7. The *second* or *distal convoluted tubule* has a diameter of 40 to 50 μ. It is much less tortuous than the first convoluted tubule. Its epithelium is similar to that lining the first convoluted tubule except that it is slightly lower and less distinctly striated.

8. The *arched tubule* has a somewhat wider lumen than the second convoluted. It is lined with a low cuboidal epithelium with only slightly granular cytoplasm.

9. The *straight* or *collecting tubule* (Fig. 167, *3*) has at its commencement at the apex of a medullary ray a diameter about the same as that of the arched tubule. As it descends it receives other arched tubules, and increases in diameter until in the *ducts of Bellini* (Fig. 167, *4*) of the papilla it has a diameter of from 200 to 300 μ and a widely open lumen. The epithelium is at first low and gradually increases in height. In the ducts of Bellini it is of the high columnar type. The cytoplasm of these cells contains comparatively few granules, thus appearing transparent in contrast with the granular cytoplasm of the ascending arms or Henle's loops and of the convoluted tubules.

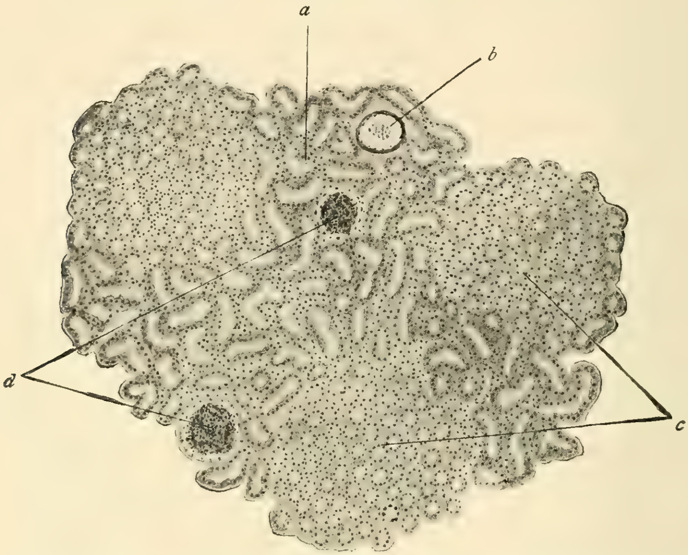


FIG. 168.—Cross Section Through Cortex of Human Kidney. × 60. (Technic 2, p. 273.) *a*, Convoluted tubules of cortical pyramid; *b*, interlobular artery; *c*, medullary rays; *d*, Malpighian bodies.

The epithelium of the uriniferous tubule rests upon an apparently structureless basement membrane. Rühle describes the basement membrane as consisting of delicate longitudinal and circular connective-tissue fibrils. He regards the fibrils as merely a more regular arrangement of the interstitial connective tissue. According to

Rühle the epithelium simply *rests upon* the basement membrane, being in no way connected with it. In the cortex the tubules are closely packed and the amount of interstitial connective tissue is extremely small. In the medulla the connective tissue is more abundant.

Of the function of the different parts of the uriniferous tubule our knowledge is extremely limited. The experiments of Heidenhain tend to prove that the urinary solids are secreted mainly or wholly by the cells of the proximal convoluted tubule and of the ascending arm of Henle's loop, the other parts of the tubule allowing only water to pass through their epithelium.

Blood-vessels (diagram, Fig. 170).—The blood supply to the kidney is rich and the blood-vessels come into intimate relations with the tubules. The *renal artery* enters the kidney at the hilum, and immediately splits up into a number of branches—the *interlobar arteries* (Fig. 170). These give off twigs to the calyces and to the capsule, then without further branching pass between the papillæ through the medulla to the junction of medulla and cortex. Here they bend sharply at right angles and following the boundary line between

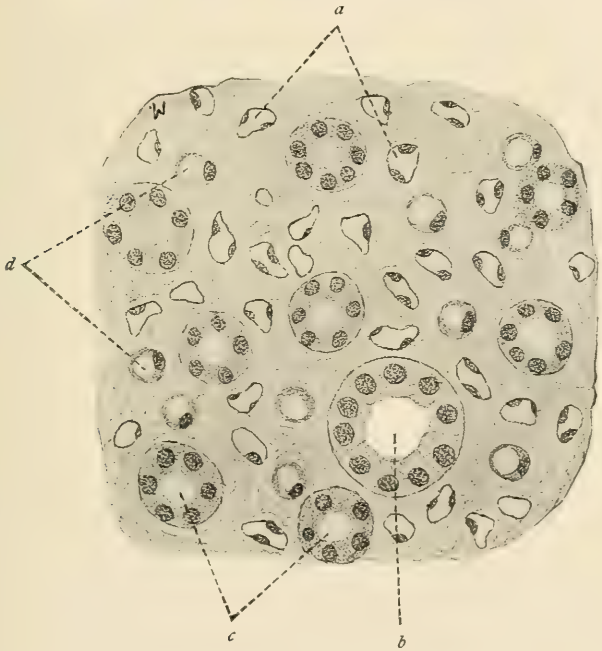


FIG. 169.—Cross Section Through Medulla of Human Kidney. × 465. (Technic 2, p. 173.) *a*, Capillaries; *b*, collecting tubule; *c*, ascending arms of Henle's loops; *d*, descending arms of Henle's loops.

cortex and medulla, form a series of arches, the *arteriæ arciformes* or *arcuate arteries*. From the arcuate arteries two sets of vessels arise, one supplying the cortex, the other the medulla (Figs. 163 and 170).

The *arteries to the cortex* spring from the outer convex sides of the arterial arches, and as the *interlobular arteries* pursue a quite straight course through the cortical pyramids toward the surface, about midway between adjacent medullary rays. From each interlobular artery are given off numerous short lateral branches, each one of which passes to a Malpighian body. Entering a Malpighian body as its afferent vessel, the artery breaks up into a number of small arterioles, which in turn give rise to the groups of capillaries which form the glomerulus. Each group of glomerular capillaries arising from a single arteriole is separated from its neighbors by a rather larger amount of connective tissue than that which separates the individual capillaries. This gives to the glomerulus its lobular appearance. From the smaller glomerular capillaries the blood passes into somewhat larger capillaries, which unite to form the efferent vessel of the glomerulus. As afferent and efferent vessels lie side by side, the glomerulus has the appearance of being suspended from this point. *The entire vascular system of the glomerulus is arterial.*

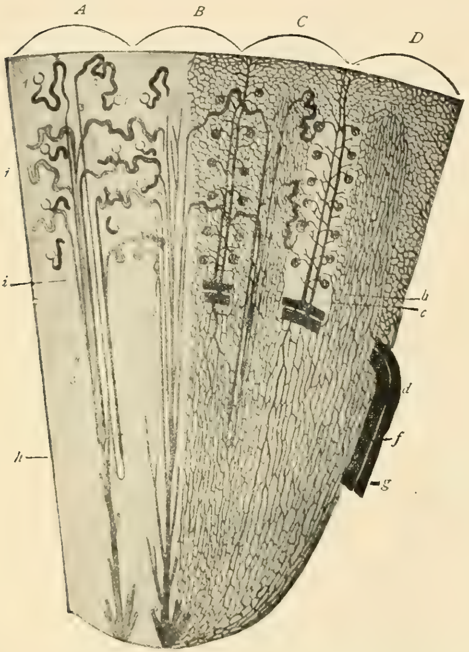


FIG. 170.—Diagram to Illustrate (left) the Course of the Uriniferous Tubule; (right) the Course of the Renal Vessels. (Szymonowicz.) *A*, *B*, *C*, *D* form the kidney *lobules*; *a*, afferent vessel; *e*, efferent vessel of glomerulus; 1, Bowman's capsule; 2, first convoluted tubule; 3, descending arm of Henle's loop; 4, ascending arm of Henle's loop; 5, second convoluted tubule; 6 and 7, collecting tubules; 8, duct of Bellini; *b*, interlobular artery; *c*, interlobular vein; *d*, renal arch (arcuate artery above and arcuate vein below); *f*, interlobar vein; *g*, interlobar artery; *h*, medulla; *i*, medullary ray; *j*, cortex.

After leaving the glomerulus, the efferent vessel breaks up into a *second system of capillaries*, which form a dense network among the tubules of the cortical pyramids and of the medullary rays. The mesh corresponds to the shape of the tubules, being irregular in the pyramids, long and narrow in the rays. In these capillaries the blood gradually *becomes venous* and passes into the *interlobular veins*. These accompany the interlobular arteries to the boundary between cortex and medulla, where they enter the *arcuate veins*, which accompany the arcuate arteries (Fig. 170).

The main *arteries to the medulla* arise from the inner concave sides of the arterial arches. They pass straight down among the tubules of the medulla and are known as arteriæ rectæ. Branching, they give rise to a long-meshed capillary network which surrounds the tubules. This capillary network is also supplied by (1) efferent vessels from the more deeply situated glomeruli (false arteriæ rectæ) and (2) by medullary branches from the interlobular arteries. The veins of the medulla arise from the capillary network and follow the arteries back to the junction of medulla and cortex, where they empty into the arcuate veins.

In addition to the distribution just described, some of the interlobular arteries extend to the surface of the kidney, where they enter the capsule and form a network of capillaries which anastomose with capillaries of the suprarenal, recurrent, and phrenic arteries. A further collateral circulation is established by branches of the above-named arteries penetrating the kidney and forming capillary networks within the cortex, even supplying some of the more superficial glomeruli. The most superficial of the small veins which enter the interlobular are arranged in radial groups, having the interlobular veins as their centres. These lie just beneath the capsule, and are known as the *stellate veins of Verheyn*. In addition to capillary anastomoses, direct communication between arteries and veins of both cortex and medulla, by means of trunks of considerable size, has been described.

The **lymph vessels** of the kidney are arranged in two systems, a superficial system which ramifies in the capsule, and a deep system which accompanies the arteries to the parenchyma of the organ. Little is known of the relation of the lymphatics to the kidney tubules.

Nerves.—These are derived from both cerebro-spinal and sympathetic systems. The medullated fibres appear to pass mainly to the walls of the blood-vessels which supply the kidney capsule. Plexuses of fine non-medullated fibres (sympathetic) accompany the arteries to the glomeruli. Delicate terminals have been described as passing from these plexuses, piercing the basement membrane and ending freely between the epithelial cells of the tubules.

The Kidney-Pelvis and Ureter.

The kidney-pelvis, with its subdivisions the calyces, and the ureter constitute the *main excretory duct* of the kidney. Their walls consist of three coats: an inner mucous, a middle muscular, and an outer fibrous.

The mucosa is lined by epithelium of the transitional type. There are from four to eight layers of cells, the cell outlines are usually well defined, and the surface cells instead of being distinctly squamous are only slightly flattened. Less commonly large flat plate-like cells, each containing several nuclei, are present. The cells rest upon a basement membrane, beneath which is a stroma of delicate fibro-elastic tissue rich in cells. Diffuse lymphatic tissue frequently occurs in the stroma, especially of the pelvis. Occasionally the lymphatic tissue takes the form of small nodules. Mucous glands in small numbers are found in the stroma of the pelvis and upper part of the ureter. There is no distinct submucosa, although the outer part of the stroma is sometimes referred to as such.

The muscularis consists of an inner longitudinal and an outer circular layer. In the lower part of the ureter a discontinuous outer longitudinal layer is added.

The fibrosa consists of loosely arranged connective tissue and contains many large blood-vessels. It is not sharply limited externally, but blends with the connective tissue of surrounding structures, and serves to attach the ureter to the latter.

The larger **blood-vessels** run in the fibrous coat. From these, branches pierce the muscular layer, give rise to a capillary network among the muscle cells, and then pass to the mucosa, in the stroma of which they break up into a rich network of capillaries. The veins follow the arteries.

The **lymphatics** follow the blood-vessels, being especially numerous in the stroma of the mucosa.

Nerves.—Plexuses of both medullated and non-medullated fibres occur in the walls of the ureter and pelvis. The non-medullated fibres pass mainly to the cells of the muscularis. Medullated fibres enter the mucosa where they lose their medullary sheaths. Terminals of these fibres have been traced to the lining epithelium.

The Urinary Bladder.

The walls of the bladder are similar in structure to those of the ureter.

The mucous membrane is thrown up into folds or is comparatively smooth, according to the degree of distention of the organ. The epithelium is of the same general type—transitional epithelium (see page 62)—as that of the ureter. The number of layers of cells and the shapes of the cells depend largely upon whether the bladder is full or empty. In the collapsed organ the superficial cells are cuboidal or even columnar, their under surfaces being marked by pit-like depressions caused by pressure of underlying cells. Beneath the superficial cells are several layers of polygonal cells, while upon the basement membrane is the usual single layer of small cuboidal cells. In the moderately distended bladder the superficial cells become flatter and the entire epithelium thinner (Fig. 171). In the distended organ there is still further flattening of the superficial cells and thinning of the entire epithelium. The stroma consists of fine loosely arranged connective tissue containing many lymphoid cells and sometimes small lymph nodules. It merges without distinct demarcation into the less cellular *submucosa* (Fig. 171, *c*).

The three **muscular layers** of the lower part of the ureter are continued on to the bladder, where the muscle bundles of the different layers interlace and anastomose, but can be still indistinctly differentiated into an inner longitudinal, a middle circular, and an outer longitudinal layer (Fig. 171, *d*, *e*, *f*).

The **fibrous layer** is similar to that of the ureter, and attaches the organ to the surrounding structures.

The blood- and lymph-vessels have a distribution similar to those of the ureter.

Nerves.—Sensory medullated fibres pierce the muscularis, branch repeatedly in the stroma, lose their medullary sheaths, and terminate among the cells of the lining epithelium. Sympathetic fibres form plexuses in the fibrous coat, where they are interspersed with numerous small groups of ganglion cells. Axones of these sympathetic neurones penetrate the muscularis. Here they form plexuses, from which are given off terminals to the individual muscle cells.

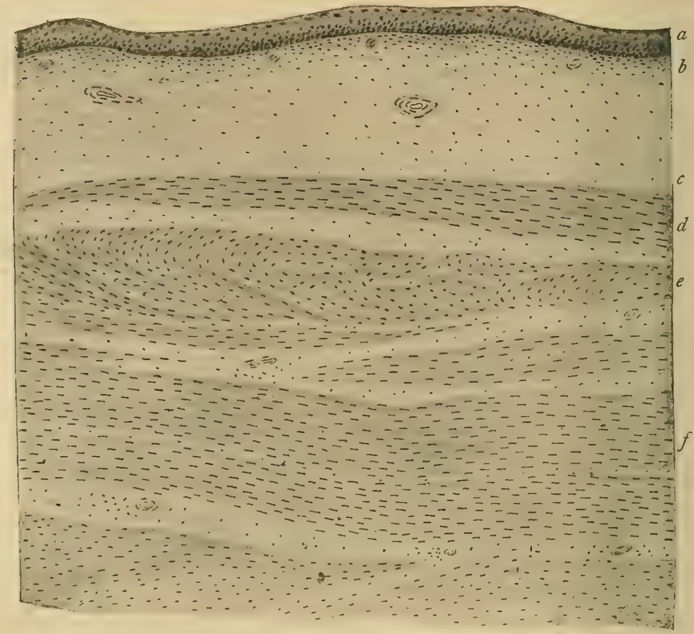


FIG. 171.—Vertical Section through Wall of moderately distended Human Bladder. × 60. (Technic 5, p. 273.) *a*, Epithelium, *b*, stroma, of mucous membrane; *c*, submucosa; *d*, inner muscle layer; *e*, middle muscle layer; *f*, outer muscle layer.

For development of urinary system see page 312.

The Adrenal.

The adrenal is a ductless gland situated on the upper and anterior surface of the kidney. It is surrounded by a *capsule* and consists of an outer zone or *cortex* and a central portion or *medulla*.

The CAPSULE (Fig. 172, *A*) is composed of fibrous connective tissue and smooth muscle. In the outer part of the capsule the connective tissue is loosely arranged and merges with the surrounding fatty areolar tissue. The inner layer of the capsule is more dense and forms a firm investment for the underlying glandular tissue. From the capsule trabeculæ extend into the organ forming its framework and outlining compartments, which contain the glandular epithelium. This connective tissue is reticular in character.

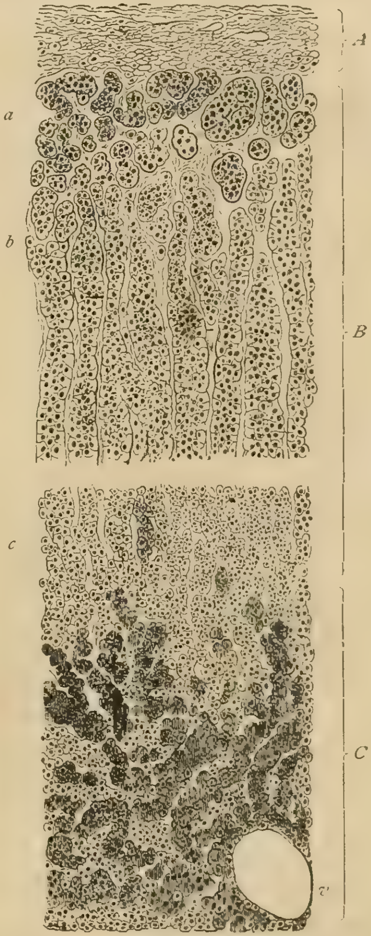


FIG. 172.—Vertical Section of Adrenal. (Merkel-Henle.) *A*, Capsule; *B*, cortex; *C*, medulla; *a*, glomerular zone; *b*, fascicular zone; *c*, reticular zone; *v*, vein in medulla.

The CORTEX (Fig. 172, *B*) is subdivided into three layers or zones: (*a*) A narrow, superficial layer, the *glomerular zone;* (*b*) a broad middle layer, the *fascicular zone;* and (*c*) a narrow deep layer, the *reticular zone.* The names of the layers are indicative of the shape of the connective-tissue-enclosed compartments and of the contained groups of gland cells. In the glomerular zone (Fig. 172, *a*) the high, irregularly columnar epithelium is arranged in spherical or oval groups. The protoplasm of the cells is granular, and their nuclei are rich in chromatin. In the fascicular zone (Fig. 172, *b*) polyhedral cells are arranged in long columns or fascicles. The cytoplasm is granular and usually contains some fat droplets. The nuclei are poor in chromatin. In the reticular zone (Fig. 172, *c*) similar though somewhat more darkly staining cells form a coarse reticulum of irregular anastomosing cords.

The MEDULLA (Fig. 172, *C*) consists of spherical and oval groups and cords of polygonal cells. After alcohol or formalin fixation these cells take a paler stain than those of the cortex. After fixation in solutions containing chromic acid or chrome salts the cells of the medulla assume a peculiar deep brown color, which cannot be removed by washing in water and which is quite characteristic of these cells.

Blood-vessels.—The arteries supplying the adrenal first form a poorly defined plexus in the capsule. From this are given off three sets of vessels—one to the capsule, one to the cortex, and one to the medulla. The first set breaks up into a network of capillaries, which supply the capsule. The vessels to the cortex break up into capillary networks, the shape of the mesh corresponding to the arrangement of the connective tissue in the different zones. The vessels to the medulla pass directly through the cortex without branching and form dense capillary networks among the groups of medullary cells. The relations of the capillaries to these gland cells are extremely intimate, especially in the reticular zone and medulla, where the cells in many cases immediately surround the capillaries in much the same manner as the glandular cells of a tubular gland surround their lumina. From the capillaries of both cortex and medulla small veins arise. These unite to form larger veins which empty into one or two main veins situated in the centre of the medulla.

Lymphatics.—These follow in general the course of the blood-vessels. The exact distribution of the adrenal lymph system has not been as yet satisfactorily determined.

Nerves.—The nerve supply of the adrenal is so rich and the nerve elements of the gland are so abundant as to have led to its classification by some among the organs of the nervous system. Both medullated and non-medullated fibres—but chiefly the latter—form plexuses in the capsule, where they are associated with groups of sympathetic ganglion cells. From the capsular plexuses fine fibres pass into the cortex, where they form networks around the groups of cortical cells. The nerve terminals of the cortex apparently do not penetrate the groups of cells. Bundles of nerve fibres, larger and more numerous than those to the cortex, pass through the cortex to the medulla. Here they form unusually dense plexuses of fibres, which not only surround the groups of cells, but penetrate the groups and surround the individual cells. Associated with the plexuses of the medulla, less commonly of the cortex, are numerous conspicuous groups of sympathetic ganglion cells.

DEVELOPMENT.—The cortex of the adrenal develops from mesoblast. As to the origin of the medulla two views are held. According to one, the medullary cells are also derived from mesoderm and represent a further differentiation of the cortical cells. According to others, the medulla has an entirely independent origin, being derived from ectoderm, as part of the peripheral sympathetic nervous system. Flint describes the adrenal of a 3.5 cm.-long pig embryo as consisting wholly of cortical substance, surrounded by a capsule, which is closely associated with a plexus of the sympathetic. Cells of the type of medullary cells first appear just beneath the capsule, whence they later migrate to the centre of the organ. This migration accounts for the frequency with which medullary cells are found in the cortex and cortical cells in the medulla.

TECHNIC.

(1) Fix the simple kidney of a rabbit or guinea-pig in formalin-Müller's fluid (technic 5, p. 6). Make sections through the entire organ including the papilla and pelvis, stain with hæmatoxylin-eosin (technic 1, p. 17), and mount in balsam. This section is for the study of the general topography of the kidney.

(2) Fix small pieces from the different parts of a human kidney in formalin-Müller's fluid or in Zenker's fluid. Thin sections should be made, some cutting the tubules longitudinally, others transversely, stained with hæmatoxylin-eosin and mounted in balsam.

(3) Blood-vessels.—For the purpose of demonstrating blood-vessels of the kidney the method of double injection is useful (page 24).

(4) Ureter.—Cut transversely into short segments, fix in formalin-Müller's fluid (technic 5, p. 6), and stain transverse sections with hæmatoxylin-eosin (technic 1, p. 16), or with hæmatoxylin-picro-acid-fuchsin (technic 3, p. 18). Mount in balsam.

(5) Bladder (technic 1, p. 203, or technic 2, p. 204). By the latter method any desired degree of distention may be obtained.

(6) Adrenal. Technic same as (2) above. Thin vertical sections should include both cortex and medulla.

General References for Further Study.

Kölliker: Handbuch der Gewebelehre, vol. iii.

Gegenbauer: Lehrbuch der Anatomie des Menschen, vol. ii.

Henle: Handbuch der Anatomie des Menschen, vol. ii.

Johnston: A Reconstruction of a Glomerulus of the Human Kidney. Johns Hopkins Hosp. Bul., vol. xi., 1900.

Müller: Ueber die Ausscheidung des Methylenblau durch die Nieren. Deutsches Archiv f. klin. Med., Bd. 63, 1899.

Flint: The Blood-vessels, Angiogenesis, Organogenesis, Reticulum and Histology of the Adrenal. Contributions to the Science of Medicine, Johns Hopkins Press, 1900.

Pfaundler: Zur Anatomie der Nebenniere. Anzeiger Akad. Wien. 29, 1892.

Nagel: Ueber die Entwickelung des Urogenitalsystem des Menschen. Arch. f. Mik. Anat., Bd. xxxiv.

CHAPTER IX.

THE REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM.

I. MALE ORGANS.

The Testis.

The testes are compound tubular glands. Each testis is enclosed in a dense connective-tissue capsule, the *tunica albuginea* (Fig. 173, *a*). Outside the latter is a closed serous sac, the *tunica vaginalis*, the visceral layer of which is attached to the tunica albuginea, while the parietal layer lines the inner surface of the scrotum. Posteriorly the serous sac is wanting, the testis really lying behind and outside of the tunica vaginalis. As the latter is derived from the peritoneum, being brought down with and invaginated by the testes in their descent to the scrotum, it is lined by mesothelial cells. To the inner side of the tunica albuginea is a layer of loose connective tissue rich in blood-vessels, the *tunica vasculosa*. Posteriorly the tunica albuginea is greatly thickened to form the *corpus Highmori*, or *mediastinum testis*, from which strong connective-tissue septa radiate (Figs. 173, *m* and 174, *b*). These septa pass completely through the organ and blend with the tunica albuginea at various points. In this way the interior of the testis is subdivided into a number of pyramidal chambers or *lobules*, with bases directed toward the periphery and apices at the mediastinum (Figs. 173 and 174).

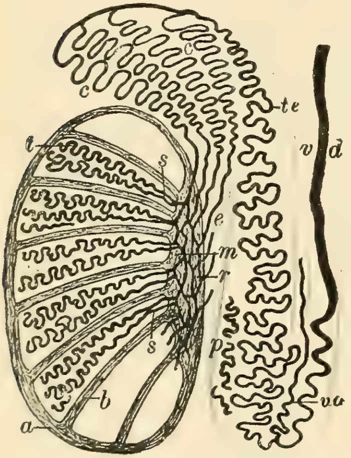


Fig. 173.—Diagram illustrating the Course and Relations of the Seminiferous Tubules and their Excretory Ducts. (Piersol.) *a*, Tunica albuginea; *b*, connective-tissue septum between lobules; *m*, mediastinum; *t*, convoluted portion of seminiferous tubule; *s*, straight tubule; *r*, rete testis; *e*, vasa efferentia; *c*, tubules of head of epididymis; *te*, vas epididymis; *vd*, vas deferens; *va*, vas aberrans; *p*, paradidymis.

Behind the testis and outside of its tunica albuginea is an elongated body—the *epididymis* (Figs. 173, *c* and 174, *c*), consisting of convoluted tubules continuous with those of the mediastinum. The epididymis is divided into three parts: an expanded upper extremity, the *head* or *globus major* (Figs. 173 and 174, *c*); a *middle piece*, the *body* (Fig. 174, *d*); and a slightly expanded *lower extremity*, the *tail* or *globus minor*. From the last named passes off the main excretory duct of the testis, the *vas deferens* (Fig. 173, *vd*). All of the tubules of the epididymis are continuous on the one hand with the tubules of the testicle, and on the other with the vas deferens. They thus constitute a portion of the complex system of excretory ducts of the testicle.

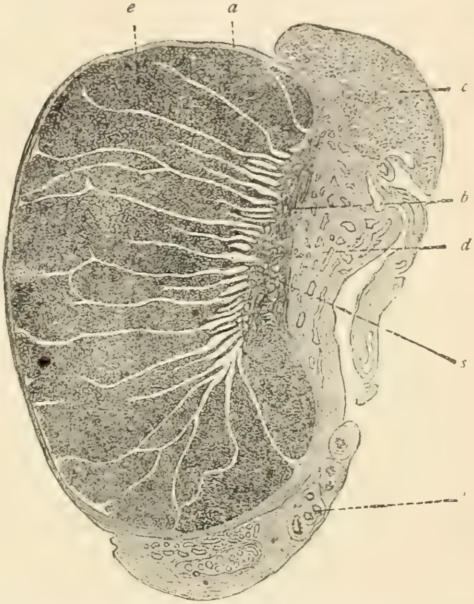


FIG. 174.—Longitudinal Section through Human Testis and Epididymis. × 2. (Böhm and von Davidoff.) The light strands are connective-tissue septa. *a*, Tunica albuginea; *b*, mediastinum and rete testis; *c*, head of epididymis; *d*, body of epididymis; *e*, lobule; *s*, straight tubules; *t*, vas epididymis.

The seminiferous tubule may be divided with reference to structure and location into three parts. (1) A much convoluted part, the *convoluted tubule*, which begins at the base and occupies the greater portion of a lobule of the testis. As they approach the apex of a lobule several of these convoluted tubules unite to form (2) the *straight tubule*. This passes through the apex of the lobule to the mediastinum, where it unites with other straight tubules to form (3) the irregular network of tubules of the mediastinum, the *rete testis* (Fig. 177, *c*).

1. THE CONVOLUTED TUBULE.—This, which may be considered the most important secreting portion of the lobule, since it is here that the spermatozoa are formed, has a diameter of from 150 to 250 μ. The tubules begin, some blindly, others by anastomoses with neighboring tubules, near the periphery of the lobule, and pursue a tortuous course toward its apex (Fig. 177, *a*).

The wall of the convoluted tubule (Fig. 175) consists of three layers: (*a*) An outer layer composed of several rows of flattened connective-tissue cells which closely invest the tubule; (*b*) a thin basement membrane ; and (*c*) a lining epithelium. The epithelium consists of two kinds of cells, the so-called *supporting* or *sustentacular cells* and the *glandular cells proper*, the *spermatogenic cells.*

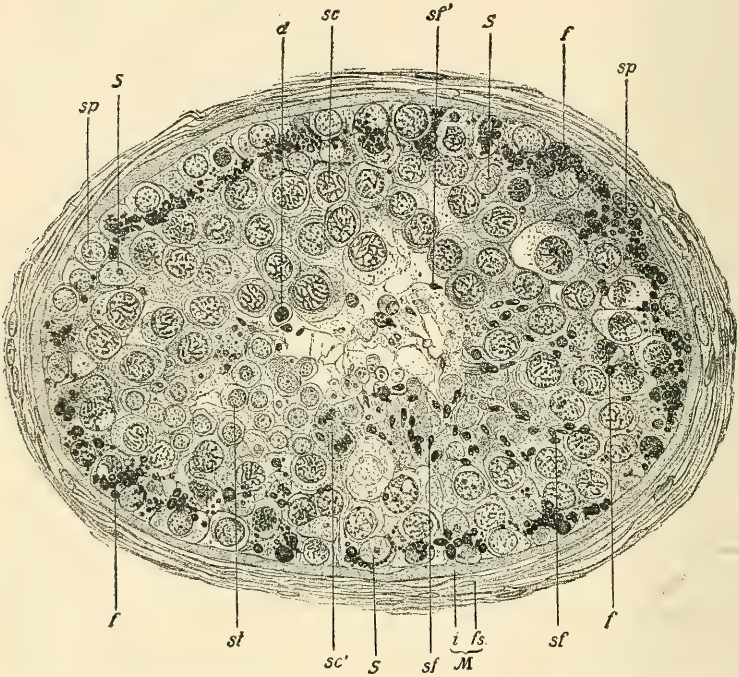


FIG. 175.—Cross Section of Convoluted Portion of Human Seminiferous Tubule. × 480. (Kölliker.) *M*, Basement membrane ; *i*, its inner homogeneous layer, *fs*, its outer fibrous layer ; *s*, nucleus of Sertoli cell ; *sp*, spermatogone ; *sc*, spermatocyte ; *sc'*, spermatocyte showing mitosis ; *sf*, nearly mature spermatozoon ; *sf'*, spermatozoon free in lumen of tubule ; *d*, degenerating nucleus in lumen : *f*, fat droplets stained by osmic acid.

The *sustentacular cells*, or *columns of Sertoli*, are irregular, high, epithelial structures, whose bases rest upon the basement membrane, and which extend through or nearly through the entire epithelium (Fig. 176, *s*). Their sides show marked irregularities and depressions, due to the pressure of surrounding spermatogenic cells. The cells of Sertoli were long considered as sustentacular in character. It has recently been suggested that these cells are derived from the spermatogenic cells, but that, instead of developing into spermatozoa, they undergo retrograde changes, their protoplasm mingling with the intercellular substance, their nuclei becoming lost and the cells finally disappearing. According to this theory the tuft-like arrangement of the spermatozoa about the ends of the Sertoli cells is due to pressure by surrounding spermatogenic cells (Figs. 176, *h* and 178, *l*).

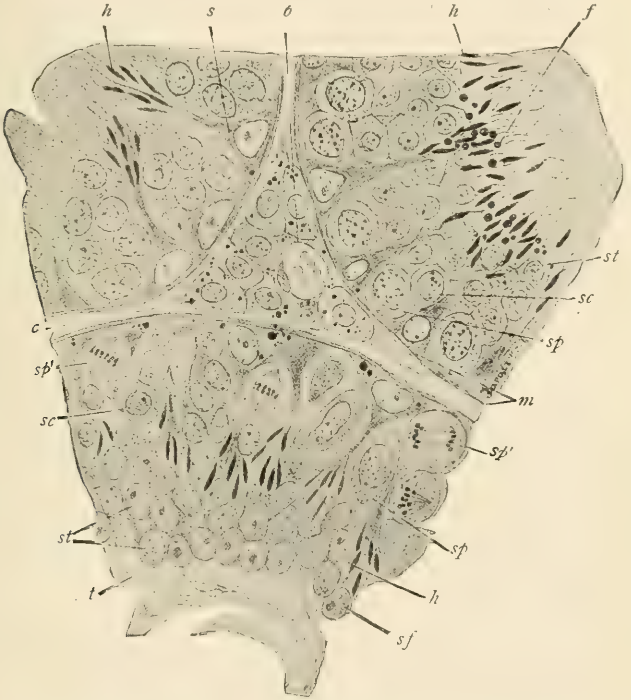


FIG. 176.—Parts of Transverse Section of three Seminiferous Tubules from Testis of White Mouse. × 600. (Szymonowicz.) *s*, Sertoli cell with nucleus; *sp*, spermatogone, resting state; *sp'*, spermatogone in mitosis; *sc*, spermatocyte; *st*, spermatid; *sf*, spermatid developing into spermatozoon; *h*, head of spermatozoon; *t*, tails of developing spermatozoa; *b*, blood-vessel; *c*, interstitial cell; *m*, basal membrane; *f*, fat droplets.

(Leydig)

The appearance which the spermatogenic cells present depends upon the functional condition of the tubule. In the resting state the epithelium consists of several layers of spherical cells containing nuclei which stain with varying degrees of intensity. In the active state several distinct layers of spermatogenic cells can be differentiated. These from without inward are as follows:

(1) *Spermatogones* (Figs. 175 and 176, *sp*).—These are small cuboidal cells which lie against the basement membrane. Their nuclei are

spherical and rich in chromatin. By mitotic division of the spermatogones are formed the cells of the second layer, the spermatocytes.

(2) *Spermatocytes* (Figs. 175 and 176, *sc*).—These are larger spherical cells with abundant cytoplasm and large vesicular nuclei showing various stages of mitosis. They form from two to four layers to the inner side of the spermatogones, and are sometimes differentiated into spermatocytes of the first order and spermatocytes of the second order. By mitotic division of the innermost spermatocytes are formed the spermatids.

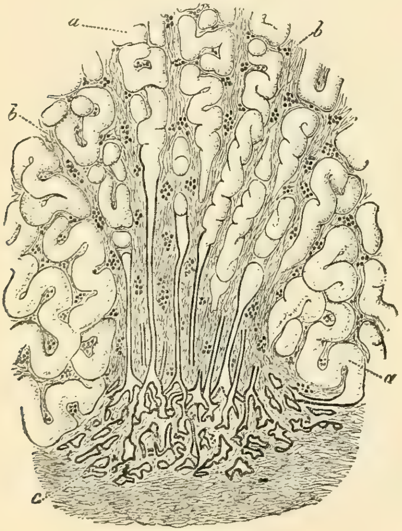


FIG. 177.

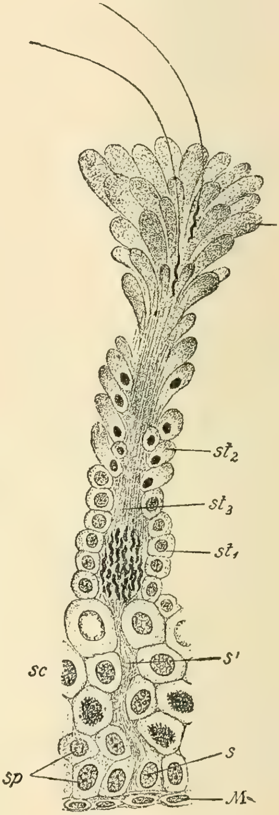


FIG. 178.

FIG. 177.—Passage of Convoluted Part of Seminiferous Tubules into Straight Tubules and of these into the Rete Testis. (Milhalkowicz.) *a*, Convoluted part of tubule; *b*, fibrous stroma continued from the mediastinum testis; *c*, rete testis.

FIG. 178.—Spermatoblast with some Adjacent Sperm Cells, from Testis of Sparrow. (From Kölliker, after Etzold.) *M*, Basement membrane; *s*, nucleus of Sertoli cell; *sp*, spermatogones; *sc*, spermatocyte; st_1 and st_2, spermatids lying along the surface of the Sertoli cell, *s'* and st_3; at st_3 are seen the nearly mature spermatozoa; *l*, tuft-like arrangement of bodies of spermatids around free end of Sertoli cell, with two mature spermatozoa.

(3) The *spermatids* (Figs. 175 and 176, *st*) are small round cells which line the lumen of the seminiferous tubule. They are the direct progenitors of the spermatozoa. (For details of spermatogenesis see page 285.)

In the actively secreting testicle *spermatozoa* are frequently found either free in the lumen of the tubule or with their heads among the superficial cells and their tails extending out into the lumen (Figs. 175, *sf*[1] and 178).

Separating and supporting the convoluted tubules is a small amount of interstitial connective tissue in which are the blood-vessels and nerves. Among the usual connective-tissue elements are found groups of rather large spherical cells with large nuclei—*interstitial cells*. They are believed to represent remains of the Wolffian body (Fig. 176, *c*).

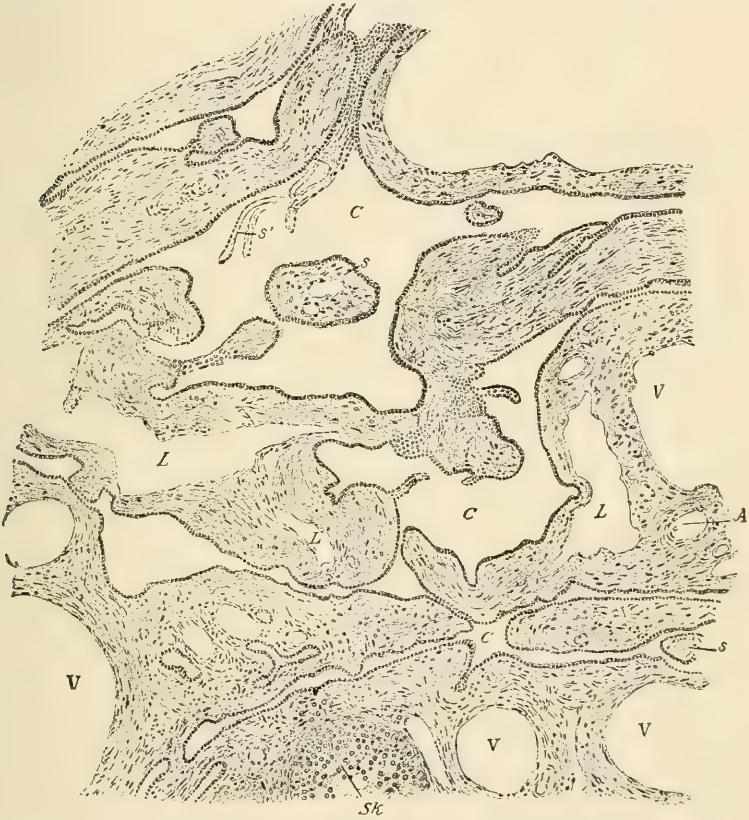


FIG. 179.—From Section through Human Mediastinum and Rete Testis. × 96. (Kölliker.) *A*, Artery ; *V*, vein ; *L*, lymph space ; *C*, canals of rete testis ; *s*, cords of tissue projecting into the lumina of the tubules and so cut transversely or obliquely ; *Sk*, section of convoluted portion of seminiferous tubule.

2. THE STRAIGHT TUBULE.—With the termination of the convoluted portion, the spermatogenic tissue of the gland ends, the

remainder of the tubule constituting a complex system of excretory ducts. The straight tubule is much narrower than the convoluted, having a diameter of from 20 to 40 μ. It is lined by a single layer of cuboidal cells resting upon a thin basement membrane. At the apex of the lobule the straight tubules become continuous with the tubules of the rete testis.

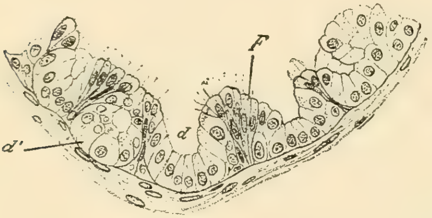


FIG. 180.—Part of a Cross Section through a Vas Efferens of the Human Epididymis. × 140. (Kölliker.) *F*, High columnar ciliated epithelium; *d*, lower non-ciliated epithelium, presenting appearance of a gland; *d'*, the same cut obliquely.

3. THE TUBULES OF THE RETE TESTIS.—These are irregular canals which vary greatly in shape and size. They are lined with a single layer of low cuboidal or flat epithelial cells (Fig. 179, *C*).

The Seminal Ducts.—While the already described straight tubules and the tubules of the rete testis must be regarded as part of the complex excretory duct system of the testis, there are certain structures which are wholly outside the testis proper, which serve to transmit the secretion of the testis, and are known as the seminal ducts. On leaving the testis these ducts form the epididymis, after which they converge to form the main excretory duct of the testis, the vas deferens.

THE EPIDIDYMIS.—From the tubules of the rete testis arise from eight to fifteen tubules, the *vasa efferentia*, or efferent ducts of the testis (Fig. 173, *e*). Each vas efferens pursues a tortuous course, is separated from its fellows by connective tissue, and forms one of the lobules of the head of the epididymis. The epithelium of the vasa efferentia consists of two kinds of cells, high columnar ciliated cells (Fig. 180, *F*), and, interspersed among these, low cuboidal non-ciliated cells (Fig. 180, *d*). Occasionally some of the high cells are free from cilia and some of the cuboidal cells may bear cilia. The cuboidal cells lie in groups between groups of the higher cells, often giving the appearance of crypt-like depressions. These have been referred to as intra-epithelial glands. They do not, however, invaginate the underlying tissues. The epithelium rests upon a basement membrane, beneath which are several layers of circularly disposed smooth muscle cells.

The vasa efferentia converge to form the *vas epididymis* (Fig. 181). Here the epithelium is of the stratified variety, there being two or three rows of cells. The surface cells are narrow, high, and ciliated, and their nuclei are placed at different levels (Fig. 182). The cilia are long and each cell has only a few cilia. The deeper cells are irregular in shape. The basement membrane and muscular layers are the same as in the vasa efferentia. As the vas deferens is approached the muscular coat becomes thickened, and is sometimes strengthened by the addition of scattered bundles of longitudinally disposed cells.

THE VAS DEFERENS.—The walls of the vas deferens consist of four coats—mucosa, submucosa, muscularis, and fibrosa (Fig. 183).

The *mucosa* is folded longitudinally, and is composed of a stroma and a lining epithelium. The epithelium is of the stratified columnar type with two or three rows of cells, being similar to that lining the vas epididymis. The extent to which the epithelium is ciliated varies greatly. In some cases the entire vas is ciliated, in others only the upper portion, in still others no cilia are present beyond the epididymis. The epithelium rests upon a basement membrane beneath which is a fibro-elastic cellular stroma. The stroma merges without distinct demarcation into the more vascular *submucosa*.

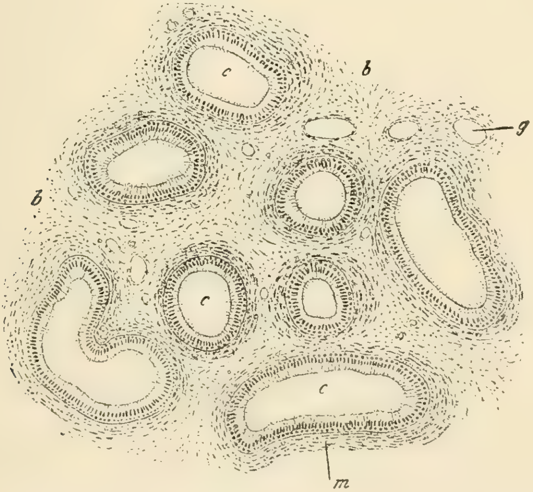


FIG. 181.—From Cross Section through Head of Epididymis. × 35. (Kölliker.) *b*, Interstitial connective tissue; *c*, sections through tubules of epididymis, showing two-layered columnar epithelium; *g*, blood-vessel.

The *muscularis* consists of two strongly developed layers of smooth muscle, an inner circular and an outer longitudinal (Fig. 183), which together constitute about seven-eighths of the wall of the vas. At the beginning of the vas deferens a third layer of muscle is added composed of longitudinal bundles, and situated between the inner circular layer and the submucosa.

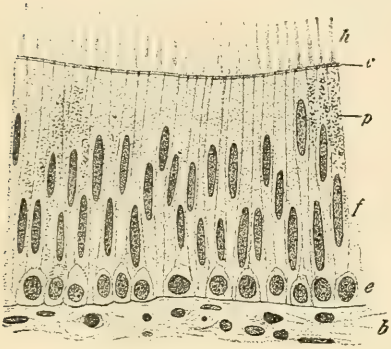


FIG. 182.—Vertical Section through Wall of Tubules of Epididymis. × 700. (Kölliker.) (Fig. 181 more highly magnified.) *b*, Connective-tissue and smooth muscle cells; *e*, basal layer of epithelial cells; *f*, high columnar epithelial cells; *p*, pigment granules in columnar cells; *c*, cuticula; *h*, cilia.

The *fibrosa* consists of fibrous tissue containing many elastic fibres.

Near its termination the vas dilates to form the *ampulla*, the walls of which present essentially the same structure as those of the vas. The lining epithelium is, however, frequently markedly pigmented and the mucosa contains branched tubular glands.

The Seminal Vesicles and Ejaculatory Ducts.—The *seminal vesicles.* The walls of the seminal vesicles are similar in structure to those of the ampulla. The epithelium is pseudo-stratified with two or three rows of nuclei and contains a yellow pigment. When the vesicles are distended the epithelium flattens out and the nuclei lie more in one plane, thus giving the appearance of an ordinary simple columnar epithelium. Beneath the epithelium is a thin stroma, outside of which is an inner circular and an outer longitudinal layer of smooth muscle, both layers being much less developed than in the vas. The seminal vesicles are to be regarded as accessory genital glands.

The *ejaculatory ducts* are lined with a single layer of columnar cells. The muscularis is the same as in the ampulla except that the inner circular layer is thinner. In the prostatic portion of the duct the muscularis is indistinct, merging with the muscle tissue of the gland. The ducts empty either directly into the urethra or into the urethra through the vesicula prostatica.

Rudimentary Structures Connected with the Development of the Genital System.—Connected with the testicle and its ducts are remains of certain fœtal structures. These are:

(1) The *paradidymis*, or *organ of Giraldes*, situated between the

vessels of the spermatic cord near the testis. It consists of several blind tubules lined with simple columnar ciliated epithelium.

(2) The *ductus aberrans Halleri*, found in the epididymis. It is lined with simple columnar ciliated epithelium and opens into the vas epididymis. Instead of a single ductus aberrans, several ducts may be present.

(3) The *appendix testis* (stalked hydatid or hydatid of Morgagni), in the upper part of the globus major. It consists of a vascular connective tissue surrounding a cavity lined with simple columnar ciliated epithelium.

(4) The *appendix epididymidis*, a vascular structure, not always present, lying near the appendix testis. It resembles the latter in structure.

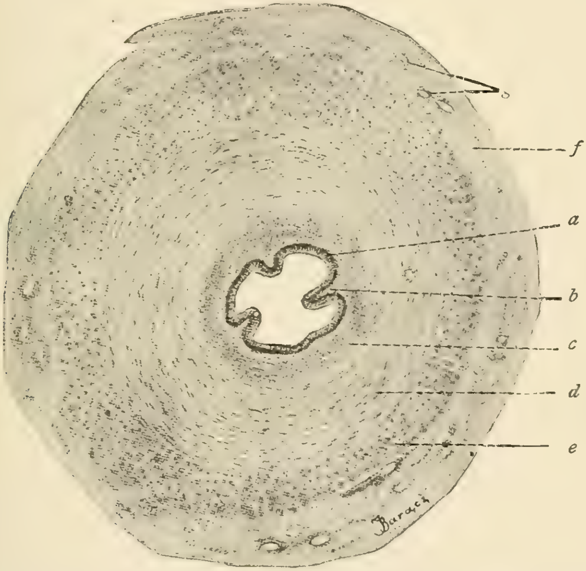


FIG. 183.—Cross Section of Human Vas Deferens. × 37. (Szymonowicz.) *a*, Epithelium; *b*, stroma; *c*, submucosa; *d*, inner circular muscle layer; *e*, outer longitudinal muscle layer; *f*, fibrous layer; *g*, blood-vessels.

The paradidymis and ductus aberrans Halleri probably represent remains of the embryonal mesonephros. The appendix testis and the appendix epididymidis are believed by some to be derived from the primitive kidney, by others from the embryonal duct of Müller.

Blood-vessels.—Branches of the spermatic artery ramify in the mediastinum and in the tunica vasculosa. These send branches into the septa of the testicle, which give rise to a capillary network among the convoluted tubules. From the capillaries arise veins which accompany the arteries.

Lymph capillaries begin as clefts in the tunica albuginea and in the connective tissue surrounding the seminiferous tubules. These connect with the more definite lymph vessels of the mediastinum and of the spermatic cord.

Nerves.—Non-medullated nerve fibres form plexuses around the blood-vessels. From these, fibres pass to plexuses among the seminiferous tubules. Their exact method of termination in connection with the epithelium has not been determined. In the epididymis are found small sympathetic ganglia. The walls of the vasa efferentia, vas epididymis, and vas deferens contain plexuses of non-medullated nerve fibres, which give off terminals to the smooth muscle cells and to the mucosa.

The Spermatozoa.—The spermatozoa are the specific secretion of the testicle. They are long, slender flagellate bodies, from 50 to 70 μ in length, and are suspended in the semen, which is a secretion of the accessory sexual glands. It has been estimated that the human spermatozoa average about sixty thousand per cubic millimetre of semen.

The human spermatozoon consists of (1) a head, (2) a middle piece or body, and (3) a tail or flagellum (Fig. 184).

The *head*, from 3 to 5 μ long and about half that in breadth, is oval in shape when seen on flat, pear-shaped when seen on edge. It consists of chromatin derived from the nucleus of the parent cell.

The *body* is cylindrical, about the same length as the head, and consists of a fibrillated central core, the *axial thread*, surrounded by a protoplasmic *capsule*. Just behind the head the axial thread presents a bulbous thickening, the *terminal nodule* or *end bulb*, which fits into a depression in the head. The terminal nodule probably represents the centrosome.

The *tail* consists of a *main segment*, from 40 to 60 μ in length, and a *terminal segment* having a length of from 5 to 10 μ. The main segment has a central fibrillated *axial thread* which is continuous with the axial thread of the body. This is enclosed in a thin membrane or *capsule* continuous with the capsule of the body. The terminal segment consists of the axial thread alone. The motility of the spermatozoon depends entirely upon the flagellate movements of the tail. In many of the lower animals the spermatozoon has a much more complicated structure.

Of the above-described parts of the spermatozoon only the head and tail can usually be differentiated, except by the use of special methods and very high-power objectives.

Development of the Spermatozoa.—As already noted in describing the testicle, the spermatozoa are developed from the epithelial cells of the seminiferous tubules. The most peripheral of the tubule cells, the *spermatogones* (Fig. 175, *sp* and Fig. 176, *sp*) are small round cells with nuclei rich in chromatin. By mitosis the spermatogone gives rise to two daughter cells, one of which remains at the periphery as a spermatogone, while the other takes up a more central position as a *spermatocyte* (Fig. 176, *sc* and Fig. 178, *sc*). The latter are rather large spherical cells, whose nuclei show very distinct chromatin networks. By mitotic division of the spermatocytes of the innermost row are formed the *spermatids* (Fig. 176, *st* and Fig. 178, *st*). These are small spherical cells, which line the lumen of the tubule and are the *direct progenitors of the spermatozoa.* In the transformation of spermatocyte into spermatid an extremely important change takes place in the nucleus. This consists in a *reduction of its chromosomes to one-half the number specific for the species* (page 46). The transformation of the spermatid into the spermatozoon differs somewhat in different animals and the details of the process must be regarded as not yet definitely determined. The nucleus of the spermatid first becomes oval in shape, and its chromosomes become condensed into a small homogeneous mass, which forms the head of the spermatozoon. During their transformation into the heads of the spermatozoa, the nuclei of the spermatids arrange themselves in tufts against the inner ends of the cells of Sertoli. This compound structure, consisting of a Sertoli cell and of a group of developing spermatozoa attached to its central end, is known as a spermatoblast (Fig. 178). The body or middle piece of the sperma-

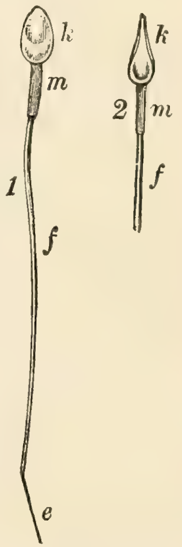


Fig. 184.—Human Spermatozoa. (After Retzius.) *1*, Head seen on flat; *2*, head seen on edge; *k*, head; *m*, body; *f*, tail; *e*, end piece.

tozoon is described by most investigators as derived from the centrosome, while the tail is a derivative of the cytoplasm.

TECHNIC.

(1) For the study of the general topography of the testis, remove the testis of a new-born child, make a deep incision through the tunica albuginea in order to allow the fixative to penetrate quickly, and fix in formalin-Müller's fluid (technic 5, p. 6). Antero-posterior longitudinal sections through the entire organ and including the epididymis should be stained with hæmatoxylin-picro-acid-fuchsin (technic 3, p. 18) or with hæmatoxylin-eosin (technic 1, p. 17) and mounted in balsam.

(2) The testis of a young adult is removed as soon after death as possible, is cut into thin transverse slices, which include the epididymis, and is fixed in formalin-Müller's or in Zenker's fluid (technic 9, p. 7). Select a slice which includes the head of the epididymis, cut away the anterior half or two-thirds of the testis proper in order to reduce the size of the block, and, after the usual hardening and embedding, cut thin sections through the remaining posterior portion of the testis, the mediastinum and epididymis. Stain with hæmatoxylin-eosin (technic 1, p. 17) and mount in balsam.

(3) For the study of spermatogenesis fix a mouse's testis in chrome-acetic-osmic mixture (technic 7, p. 7). Harden in alcohol and mount thin unstained sections in balsam or in glycerin.

(4) Spermatozoa.—Human spermatozoa may be examined fresh in warm normal saline solution or fixed in saturated aqueous solution of picric acid and mounted in glycerin. Mammalian spermatozoa may be obtained from the vagina after intercourse, or by incision into the head of the epididymis. Technic same as for human.

(5) A portion of the vas deferens is usually removed with the testis and may be subjected to technic (2) above. Transverse sections are stained with hæmatoxylin-eosin and mounted in balsam.

The Prostate Gland.

The prostate is described by some as a compound tubular, by others as a compound alveolar gland. It is perhaps best regarded as a collection of simple branched tubular glands with dilated terminal tubules. These number from forty to fifty, and their ducts converge to form about twenty main ducts, which open into the urethra. The gland is surrounded by a *capsule* of fibro-elastic tissue and smooth muscle cells, the muscle cells predominating. From the capsule broad *trabeculæ* of the same structure as the capsule pass into the gland. The amount of connective tissue is large. It is less in the prostate of the young than of the old. The hypertrophied prostate of age is due mainly to an increase in the connective-tissue elements. The tubules have wide lumina and are lined with simple cuboidal epithelium of the serous type, resting upon a delicate basement membrane (Fig. 185). Less commonly the epithelium is pseudo-stratified. The ducts are lined with simple columnar epithelium until near their terminations, where they are lined with transitional epithelium similar to that lining the urethra. Peculiar concentrically laminated bodies, *crescentic corpuscles*, or *corpora amylacea*, are frequently present in the terminal tubules (Fig. 185, *c*). They are more numerous after middle life.

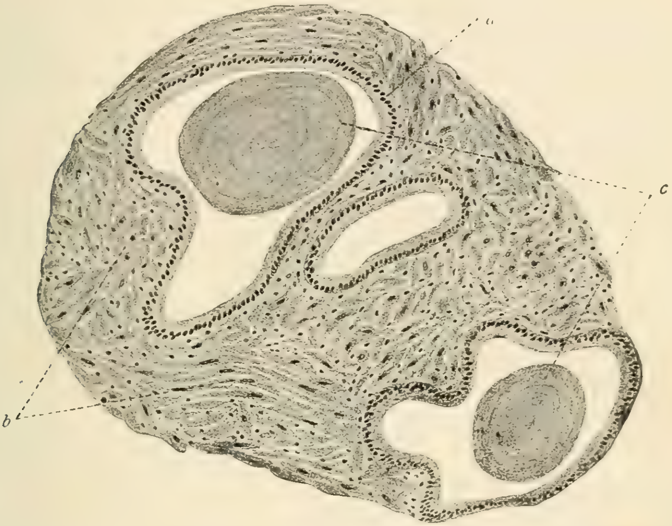


FIG. 185.—Section of Human Prostate. × 150. (Technic 1, p. 288.) *a*, Epithelium of tubule; *b*, interstitial connective tissue; *c*, corpora amylacea.

Through the prostate runs the prostatic portion of the urethra.

Within the prostate is found the *vesicula prostatica* (*utriculus prostaticus—uterus masculinus*). It represents the remains of a fœtal structure, the *Müllerian duct* (see page 314) and consists of a blind sac with folded mucous membrane lined with a two-rowed ciliated epithelium which dips down to form short tubular glands. The prostatic secretion is serous.

The **blood-vessels** of the prostate ramify in the capsule and trabeculæ. The small arteries give rise to a capillary network which surrounds the gland tubules. From these arise small veins, which accompany the arteries in the septa and unite to form venous plexuses in the capsule.

The **lymphatics** begin as blind clefts in the trabeculæ and follow the general course of the blood-vessels.

Nerves.—Small groups of sympathetic ganglion cells are found in the larger trabeculæ and beneath the capsule. Axones of these cells pass to the smooth muscle of the trabeculæ and of the walls of the blood-vessels. Their mode of termination is not known. Timofeew describes afferent medullated fibres ending within capsular structures of flat nucleated cells. Two kinds of fibres pass to each capsule: one a large medullated fibre which loses its sheath and gives rise within the capsule to several flat fibres with serrated edges, the other small medullated fibres which lose their sheaths and split up into small varicose fibrils which form a network around the terminals of the larger fibre.

Cowper's Glands.

The bulbo-urethral glands, or glands of Cowper, are small, branched, tubular glands. They are lined with mucous cells. The smaller ducts are lined with simple cuboidal epithelium. They unite to form two main excretory ducts which open into the urethra and are lined with stratified columnar epithelium consisting of two or three layers of cells.

TECHNIC.

(1) Fix small pieces of the prostate of a young man in formalin-Müller's fluid (technic 5, p. 6). Stain sections with hæmatoxylin-eosin (technic 1, p. 17) and mount in balsam.

(2) The prostate of an old man should be treated with the same technic and compared with the above.

(3) Cowper's glands. Same technic as prostate (1).

The Penis.

The penis consists largely of three long cylindrical bodies, the *corpus spongiosum* and the two *corpora cavernosa*. The latter lie side by side, dorsally, while the corpus spongiosum occupies a medial ventral position (Fig. 186). All three are enclosed in a common connective-tissue capsule which is loosely attached to the overlying skin. In addition each corpus has its own special capsule or *tunica albuginea*, about a millimetre in thickness, and composed of dense connective tissue containing many elastic fibres.

The *corpus spongiosum* and *corpora cavernosa* have essentially the same structure, being composed of so-called *erectile tissue* (Fig. 187). This consists of thick trabeculæ of intermingled fibro-elastic tissue and bundles of smooth muscle cells, which anastomose to form a coarse-meshed network, the spaces of which are lined with endothelium. The spaces are known as *cavernous sinuses*, and communicate with one another, and with the blood-vessels of the penis. In the flaccid condition of the organ these sinuses are empty and their sides are in apposition. In erection these sinuses become filled with venous blood.

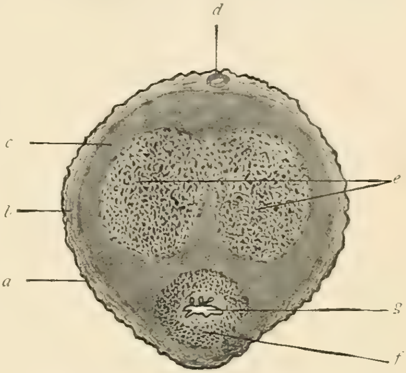


FIG. 186.—Transverse Section through Human Penis. *a*, Skin; *b*, subcutaneous tissue; *c*, fibrous tunic; *d*, dorsal vein; *e*, corpora cavernosa; *f*, corpus spongiosum; *g*, urethra.

The arteries have thick muscular walls and run in the septa. A few of them open directly into the venous sinuses. Most of them give rise to a superficial capillary network beneath the tunica albuginea. From this capillary plexus the blood passes into a plexus of broader venous channels in the periphery of the erectile tissue, and these in turn communicate with the cavernous sinuses. The usual direct anastomoses between arterial and venous capillaries also occur.

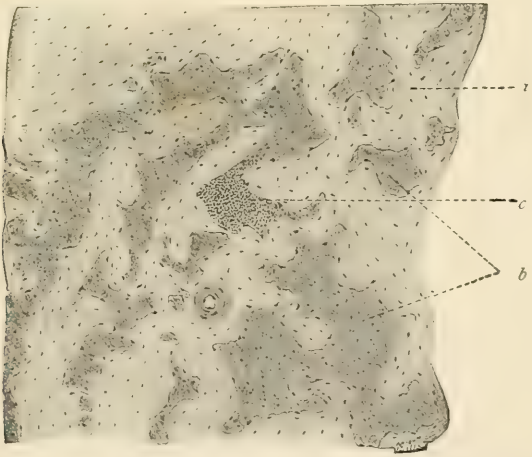


FIG. 187.—Erectile Tissue of Corpus Spongiosum of Human Penis. × 60. *a*, Trabeculæ of connective tissue and smooth muscle; *b*, cavernous sinuses; *c*, groups of leucocytes in sinus.

The blood may therefore pass either through the usual course—arteries, capillaries, veins—or, under certain conditions, may pass through the cavernous sinuses. This determines the flaccid or the erect condition of the organ. The veins arise partly from the capillaries and partly from the cavernous sinuses. They pass through the tunica albuginea and empty into the dorsal vein of the penis (Fig. 186). In the corpus spongiosum there is probably no direct opening of arteries into the sinuses. Both trabeculæ and sinuses are also smaller.

Of the lymphatics of the penis little definite is known.

The nerve endings, according to Dogiel, consist of: (*a*) free sensory endings, (*b*) deeply situated genital corpuscles, (*c*) Pacinian corpuscles and Krause's end-bulbs in the more superficial connective tissue, and (*d*) Meissner's corpuscles in the papillæ. (For details see pages 352, 353, and 354.)

The *glans penis* consists of erectile tissue similar in structure to that of the corpus cavernosum, except that the venous spaces are smaller and more regular. The mucous membrane is very closely attached to the fibrous sheath of the underlying erectile tissue. A few small sebaceous glands, unconnected with hairs—the glands of Tyson—are found in the mucous membrane of the base of the glans penis.

The *prepuce* is a fold of skin which overlies the glans penis. Its inner surface is lined with mucous membrane.

The Urethra.[1]

The MALE URETHRA is divided into three parts—*prostatic*, *membranous*, and *penile*. The wall of the urethra consists of three coats—mucous, submucous, and muscular. The structure of the wall differs in the different parts of the urethra.

The *mucous membrane* (Fig. 188) consists of epithelium and stroma. The epithelium of the prostatic part is stratified squamous (transitional), resembling that of the bladder. In the membranous part it is stratified columnar or pseudostratified. In the penile portion it is pseudostratified up to the fossa navicularis, where it changes to stratified squamous. The epithelium rests upon a basement membrane, beneath which is a thin stroma rich in elastic fibres and having papillæ which are especially prominent in the terminal dilated portion of the urethra, the *fossa navicularis*. The stroma merges without distinct demarcation into the submucosa.

---

[1] The female urethra, while not so distinctly divisible into sections, presents essentially the same structure as the male urethra. The epithelium begins at the bladder as stratified squamous of the transitional type, changes to a two-layered stratified or pseudostratified, and finally passes over into stratified squamous near the urethral opening. Glands of Littré are present, but are fewer than in the male.

The *submucosa* consists of connective tissue and, in the penile portion, of more or less longitudinally disposed smooth muscle. It contains a dense network of veins—cavernous veins—which give it the character of erectile tissue (Fig. 189).

The *muscular coat* is thickest in the prostatic and membranous portions. Here it consists of a thin inner longitudinal and a thicker outer circular layer. A definite muscular wall ceases at the beginning of the penile portion, although circularly disposed smooth muscle cells are found in the outer part of the submucosa of the penile urethra.

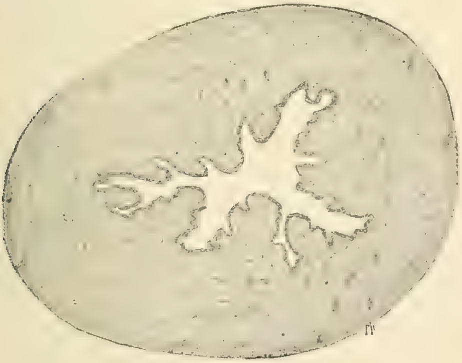


FIG. 188.

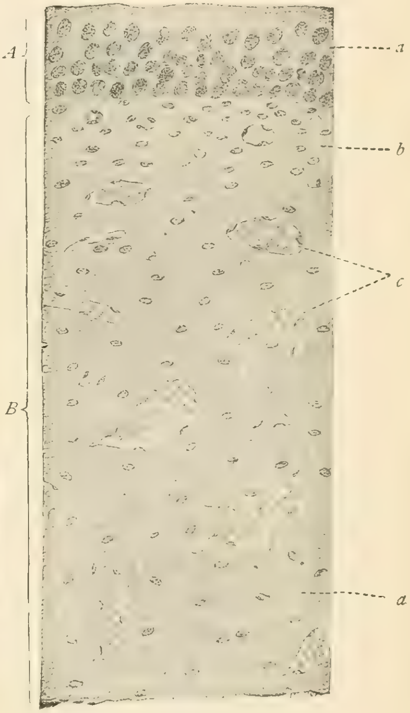


FIG. 189.

FIG. 188.—From Transverse Section of Urethra and Corpus Spongiosum, including Mucous Membrane and part of Submucosa. × 15. The dark spots represent the cavernous veins.

FIG. 189.—Vertical Section through Portion of Wall of Human Male Urethra. × 350. *A*, Mucous membrane; *B*, submucosa; *a*, epithelium; *b*, stroma; *c*, cavernous veins; *d*, connective tissue of submucosa.

Throughout the mucosa of the entire urethra, but most numerous in the penile portion, are simple branched tubular mucous glands, the glands of Littré. They are lined with columnar epithelium and the longer extend into the submucosa.

TECHNIC.

(1) For the study of the general topography of the penis, remove the skin from the organ and cut into transverse slices about 0.5 cm. in thickness. Fix in formalin-Müller's fluid (technic 5, p. 6), cut rather thick sections across the entire penis, stain with hæmatoxylin-picro-acid-fuchsin (technic 3, p. 18) or with hæmatoxylin-eosin (technic 1, p. 17) and mount in balsam.

(2) For the study of the structure of the penile portion of the urethra and of the erectile tissue of the corpus spongiosum. cut away the corpora cavernosa, leaving only the corpus spongiosum and contained urethra, and treat as above. Sections should be thin and stained with hæmatoxylin-eosin.

(3) The same technic is to be used for the membranous and prostatic portions of the urethra.

II. FEMALE ORGANS.

The Ovary.

The ovary is classed as one of the ductless glands. Its specific secretion is the ovum. The ovary has no duct system which is directly continuous with its structure. In place of this it is provided with what may be considered to be a highly specialized disconnected excretory duct—the *oviduct* or *Fallopian tube*—which serves for the transmission of its secretion to the uterus.

On one side the ovary is attached by a broad base, the *hilum*, to the broad ligament. Elsewhere the surface of the ovary is covered by a modified peritoneum. At the hilum the tissues of the broad ligament pass into the ovary and spread out there to form the *ovarian stroma*. This consists of fibrous connective tissue rich in elastic fibres and containing many smooth muscle cells. In the deeper central portion of the organ, stroma alone is found. Here it contains many large blood-vessels, and constitutes the *medulla* or *zona vasculosa* of the ovary (Fig. 190, *2*). From the medulla the stroma radiates toward the surface of the ovary and becomes interspersed with glandular elements forming the ovarian *cortex* (Fig. 190, *3*, *3'*), At the surface of the ovary, just beneath the peritoneum, the stroma forms a rather dense layer of fibrous tissue, the *tunica albuginea*. At the margin of the peritoneal surface of the ovary the connective tissue of the peritoneum becomes continuous with the stroma of the ovary, while the flat mesothelium of the general peritoneum is replaced by a single layer of cuboidal cells, which covers the surface of the ovary and is known from its function as the *germinal epithelium* (Fig. 190, *1*). The parenchyma or secreting portion of the ovary consists of peculiar glandular elements, the *Graafian follicles*.

The structure of the Graafian follicle can be best appreciated by studying its development. The follicles originate from the germinal epithelium during fœtal life. At this time the germinal epithelium is proliferating, and certain of its cells differentiate into larger spherical cells—*primitive ova.* The primitive ova pass down into the stroma accompanied by a considerable number of the undifferen-

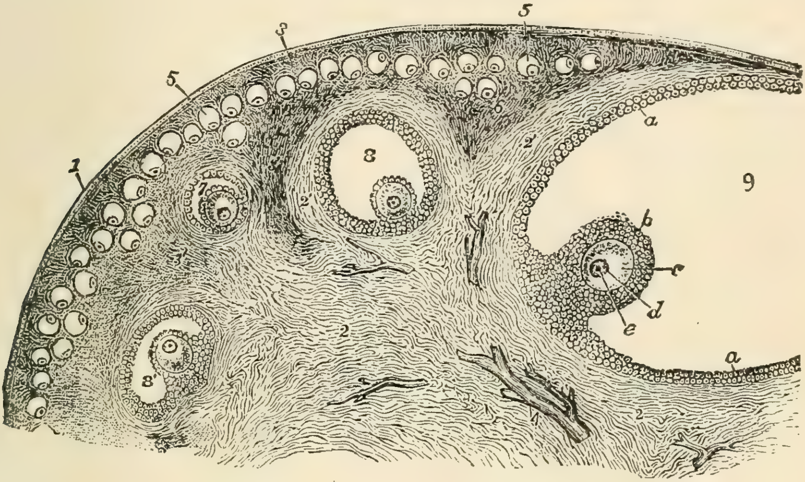


FIG. 190.—Semidiagrammatic Drawing of Part of Cortex and Medulla of Cat's Ovary. (From Schrön, in Quain's "Anatomy.") 1, Germinal epithelium, beneath which is 3, the tunica albuginea; 2, medulla, containing large blood-vessels, 4; 2, 2′, fibrous stroma, arranged around mature Graafian follicle as its theca folliculi; 3′, stroma of cortex; 5, small (primitive) Graafian follicles near surface; 6, same deeper in cortex; 7, later stage of Graafian follicle, beginning of cavity; 8 and 8′, still later stages in development of follicle; 9, mature follicle; *a*, stratum granulosum; *b*, germ hill; *c*, ovum; *d*, nucleus (germinal vesicle); *e*, nucleolus (germinal spot).

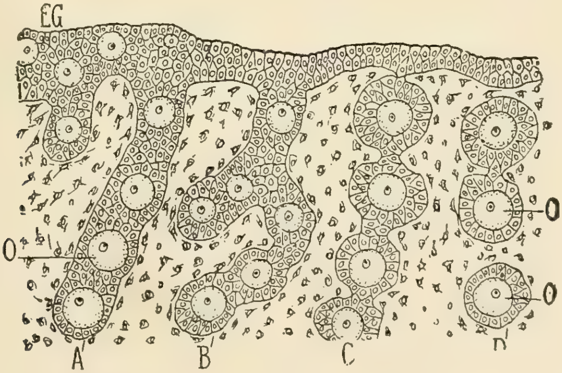


FIG. 191.—Semidiagrammatic Drawing to show Development of Ovum from Germinal Epithelium of Ovary. (Duval.)

tiated cells of the germinal epithelium. A cord-like mass of cells is thus formed, extending from the surface into the stroma. These are known as *Pflüger's egg cords* (Fig. 191, *A*, *B*, *C*). Each cord usually contains several ova. In some cases the differentiation of the ova cells does not occur upon the surface but in the cords after they have extended down from the surface. The connection of the cord with the surface epithelium is next broken so that each cord becomes completely surrounded by stroma. It is now known as an *egg nest*. During this process proliferation of the epithelial cells of the cords and nests has been going on, and each ovum surrounded by a layer of epithelial cells becomes separated from its neighbors (Fig. 191, *D*). This central ovum surrounded by a single layer of epithe-

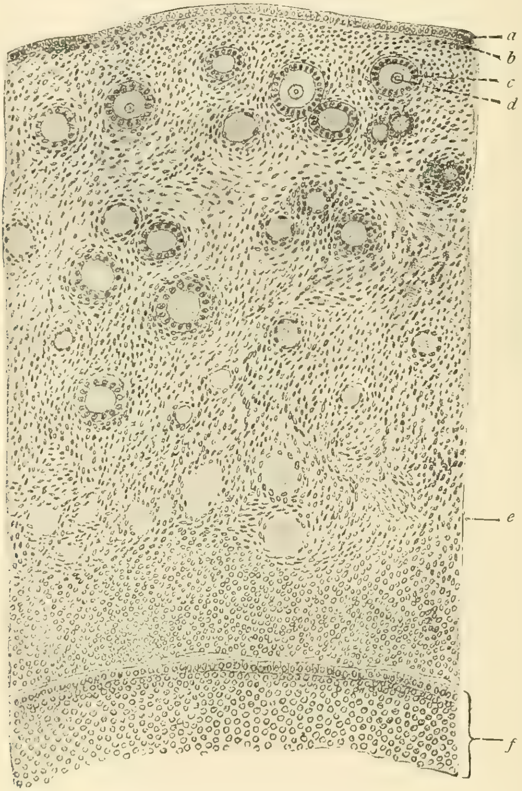


FIG. 192.—Vertical Section through Cortex of Ovary of Young Girl. × 190. (Böhm and von Davidoff.) *a*, Germinal epithelium; *b*, tunica albuginea; *c*, follicular epithelium; *d*, ovum; *e*, primitive Graafian follicles in ovarian cortex; *f*, granular layer of large Graafian follicle.

lial cells (follicular cells) is the *primitive Graafian follicle* (Fig. 191, *D*, Fig. 192, and Fig. 193, *a*). The follicle increases in size, mainly on account of proliferation of the follicular cells, which soon form several layers instead of a single layer, but also partly on account of growth of the ovum itself (Fig. 193). The latter now leaves the centre of the follicle and takes up an eccentric position. At the same time a cavity (or several small cavities which later unite) appears near the centre of the follicle (Fig. 193, *c* and Fig. 190, *7*). This is filled with fluid which seems to be in part a secretion of the follicular cells, in part a result of their disintegration. The cavity is known as the *follicular cavity* or *antrum*, the fluid as the *liquor folliculi*. Lining the follicular cavity are several rows of follicular cells with granular protoplasm—the *stratum granulosum*. With increase in the liquor folliculi the ovum becomes still further pressed to one side of the follicle, where, surrounded by an accumulation of follicular cells, it forms a distinct projection into the cavity (Fig. 194, and Fig. 190, *8* and *9*). This is known as the *germ hill* (*discus proligerus—cumulus oöphorus*). The cells of the germ hill nearest the ovum become

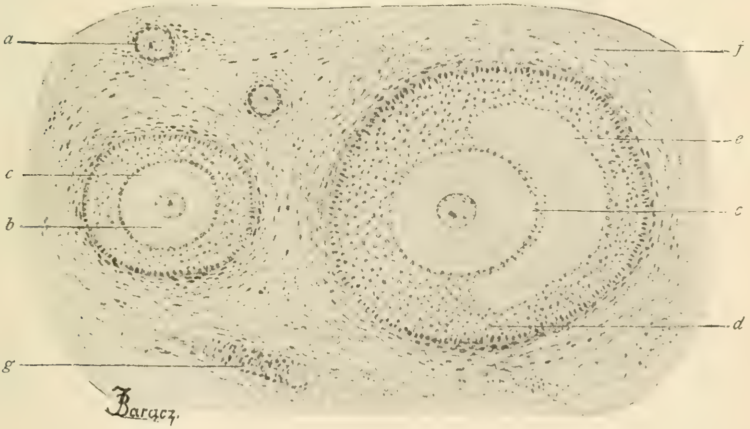


FIG. 193.—From Section through Cortex of Ape's Ovary. × 150. (Szymonowicz.) *a*, Primitive follicle; *b*, ovum, with nucleus and nucleolus; *c*, zona pellucida; *d*, follicular epithelium; *e*, follicular cavity; *f*, ovarian stroma; *g*, blood-vessel in stroma.

columnar and arranged in a regular single layer around the ovum—the *corona radiata* (Fig. 195). The ovarian stroma immediately surrounding the Graafian follicle becomes somewhat modified to form a sheath for the follicle—the *theca folliculi* (Fig. 194). This consists of two layers, an outer more dense fibrous layer, the *tunica fibrosa*, and an inner more cellular and vascular, the *tunica vasculosa.* Between the theca folliculi and the stratum granulosum is an apparently structureless basement membrane.

While these changes are taking place in the follicle, the ovum is also undergoing development. The ovum of the primitive follicle is a spherical cell, having a diameter of from 40 to 70 μ and the structure of a typical cell. The nucleus or germinal vesicle (so called on account of the part it takes in reproduction) is about half the diameter of the cell, and is spherical and centrally placed (Fig. 193). It is surrounded by a double-contoured nuclear membrane, and contains a distinct chromatic network and nucleolus or *germinal spot.* The cytoplasm is quite easily differentiated into a spongioplasm network and a homogeneous hyaloplasm. Such ova are present in all active ovaries, *i.e.,* during the childbearing period, but are especially numerous in the ovary of the infant and child (Fig. 192).

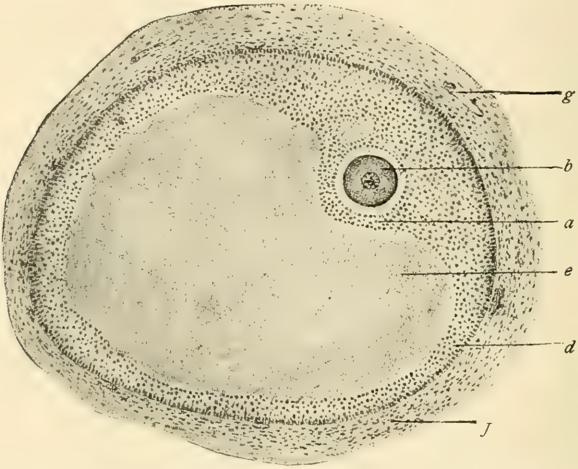


FIG. 194.—Section through Graafian Follicle of Ape's Ovary. × 90. (Szymonowicz.) Later stage of development than Fig. 193. *a*, Germ hill; *b*, ovum with clear zona pellucida, germinal vesicle, and germinal spot; *d*, follicular epithelium (membrana granulosa); *e*, follicular cavity; *f*, theca folliculi; *g*, blood-vessel.

With the development of the follicle the ovum increases in size and becomes surrounded by a clear membrane, the *zona pellucida,* believed by some to be a cuticular formation deposited by the egg cell, by others to be a product of the surrounding follicular cells. Minute canals extend into the zona pellucida from its outer surface. These contain processes of the cells of the corona radiata. A narrow cleft, the *perivitelline space*, has been described as separating the ovum from the zona pellucida. During the growth of the ovum its cytoplasm becomes coarsely granular from the development of yolk or deutoplasm granules. Immediately surrounding the nucleus, and just beneath the zona pellucida, the egg protoplasm is fairly free from yolk granules.

The further maturation of the ovum, which is necessary before the egg cell is in condition to be fertilized, consists in changes in the chromatic elements of the nucleus, which result in the extrusion of the polar bodies, and apparently have as their main object the reduction in number of chromosomes to one-half the number characteristic of the species. This process has been described (page 42). In many of the lower animals maturation of the ovum is completed outside the ovary. In man and the higher animals the entire process takes place within the ovary, the second polar body being extruded just before the escape of the ovum from its follicle.

The youngest of the Graafian follicles are found just under the tunica albuginea near the germinal epithelium, from which they originate (Fig. 190, *5*). As the follicle matures it passes deeper into the cortex. With complete maturity the follicle usually assumes macroscopic proportions—8 to 12 mm.—and often occupies the entire thickness of the cortex, its theca at one point touching the tunica albuginea. A thinning of the follicular wall nearest the surface of the ovary next takes place, while at the same time an increase in the liquor folliculi determines increased intrafollicular pressure. This results in rupture of the Graafian follicle and the discharge of its ovum, together with the liquor folliculi and some of the follicular cells.

An escape of blood into the follicle from the torn vessels of the theca always accompanies the discharge of the ovum. The follicle again becomes a closed cavity, while the contained blood clot becomes organized by the ingrowth of vessels from the theca, to form the *corpus hæmorrhagicum*, which represents the earliest stage in the development of the *corpus luteum.*

The *corpus luteum* (Fig. 196), which replaces the corpus hæmorrhagicum, consists of large yellow cells—*lutein cells*—and of connective tissue. The latter with its blood-vessels is derived from the inner layer of the theca. The origin of the lutein cells is not clear. They are described by some as derived from the connective-tissue cells of the theca; by others as the result of proliferation of the cells of the stratum granulosum. The cells have a yellow color from the presence of fatty (lutein) granules in their protoplasm, and it is to these granules that the characteristic yellow color of the corpus luteum is due. A definite cellular structure with a supporting connective-tissue framework thus replaces the corpus hæmorrhagicum, remains of which are usually present in the shape of orange-colored crystals of hæmatoidin. By degeneration and subsequent absorption of its tissues the corpus luteum becomes gradually reduced in size, loses its yellow color, and is then known as the *corpus albicans*. This also is mostly absorbed, being finally represented merely by a small area of fibrous tissue.

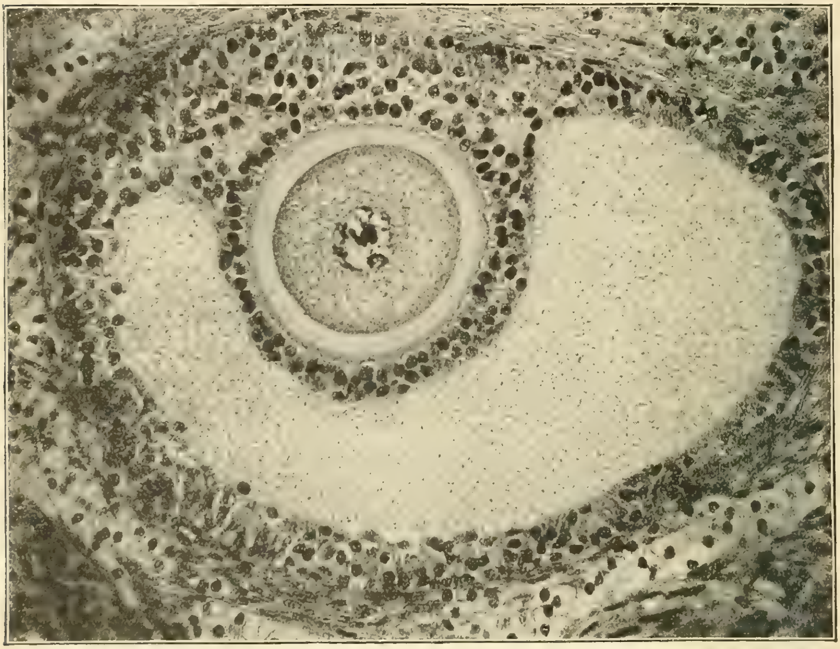


FIG. 195.—Graafian Follicle and Contained Ovum of Cat; directly reproduced from a photograph of a preparation by Dahlgren. × 235. (From "The Cell in Development and Inheritance," Prof. E. B. Wilson; The Macmillan Company, publishers.) The ovum is seen lying in the Graafian follicle within the germ hill, the cells of the latter immediately surrounding the ovum forming the corona radiata. The clear zone within the corona is the zona pellucida, within which are the egg protoplasm, nucleus, and nucleolus. Encircling the follicle is the connective tissue of the theca folliculi.

Corpora lutea are divided into *true corpora lutea* (corpora lutea vera or corpora lutea of pregnancy) and *false corpora lutea* (corpora lutea spuria). The former replace follicles whose ova have undergone fertilization, the latter, follicles whose ova have not been fertilized. The structure of both is similar, but the true corpus luteum is larger, and both it and its corpus albicans are slower in passing through their retrogressive changes, thus remaining much longer in the ovary.

While the function of the corpus luteum is not known, the recent experiments of Fraenkel seem to be confirmatory of the theory advanced by Born, that the corpus luteum is a gland having an internal secretion, which appears to have some influence upon the attachment of the fecundated ovum to the uterus and upon its nutrition during the first few weeks of its development. According to Fraenkel the corpus luteum is a periodically rejuvenated ovarian gland, which gives to the uterus a cyclic nutritional impulse, which prepares it for the implantation of the ovum or favors menstruation whenever the ovum is not fertilized.

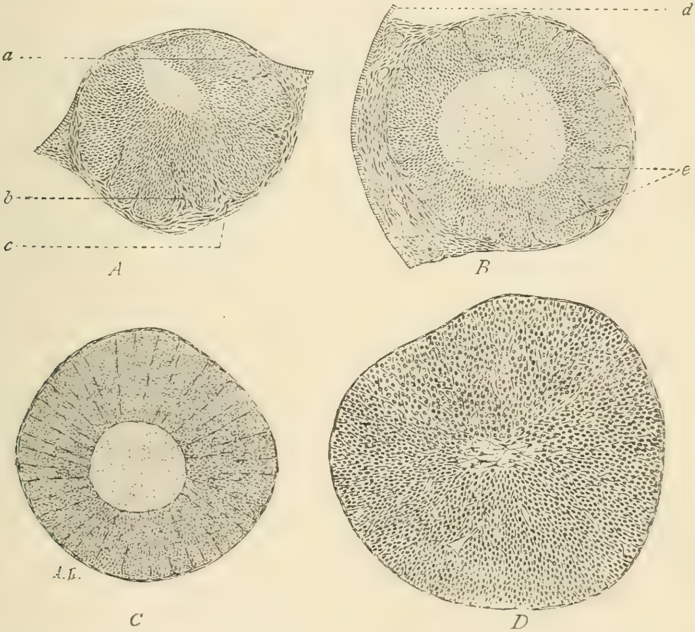


Fig. 196.—Formation of the Corpus Luteum according to Sobotta. Four successive stages in the mouse. *A*, Vascular bud of tunica intima extending into the proliferating follicular epithelium. *B*, Vascular buds passing toward the central cavity; between them the proliferating follicular cells, among which leucocytes have now appeared. *C*, Later stage; cells in distinct columns between strands of connective tissue. *D*, Central cavity replaced by connective tissue resembling mucous tissue, columns broken up by anastomosis of connective-tissue strands. *a*, Follicular epithelium; *b*, vascular bud; *c*, theca folliculi; *d*, germinal epthelium; *e*, leucocytes.

Of the large number of ova—estimated at seventy-two thousand—in the human ovaries only comparatively few, according to Henle about four hundred, reach maturity. The majority undergo, together with their follicles, retrogressive changes known as atresia of the follicle. The nucleus of the ovum, as well as the nuclei of the follicular cells, passes through a series of chromatolytic changes, or in some cases apparently simply atrophies. The cell bodies undergo fatty or albuminous degeneration and the cell becomes reduced to a homogeneous mass, which is finally absorbed, leaving in its place a connective-tissue scar, probably the remains of the theca folliculi.

Blood-vessels.—The arteries, branches of the ovarian and uterine, enter the ovary at the hilum and ramify in the medulla. From these are given off branches which pass to the cortex and end in a capillary network in the tunica albuginea. In the outer layer of the theca folliculi the capillaries form a wide-meshed network, which gives rise to a fine-meshed network of capillaries in the inner layer of the theca. From the capillaries veins arise which form a plexus in the medulla and leave the ovary at the hilum.

Lymphatics.—These begin as small lymph spaces in the cortex, which communicate with more definite lymph vessels in the medulla, the latter leaving the organ at the hilum.

Nerves.—Medullated and non-medullated fibres enter the ovary at the hilum and follow the course taken by the blood-vessels. Many of the fibres end in the vessel walls; others form plexuses around the follicle and end in the theca folliculi. Some describe fibres as passing through the theca and ending in the follicular epithelium. Others claim that nerve fibres do not enter the follicle proper. Groups of sympathetic ganglion cells occur in the medulla near the hilum.

As is the case with the testicle, certain rudimentary organs, the remains of fœtal structures, are found connected with the ovary.

The *paroöphoron* consists of a number of cords or tubules of epithelial cells, sometimes ciliated, sometimes non-ciliated. It is found in the medulla, or, more commonly, in the connective tissue of the hilum.

The *epoöphoron* is a similar structure found in the folds of the broad ligament. Its tubules open into a duct known as Gärtner's duct. In man this duct ends blindly. In some of the lower animals it opens into the vagina. Both paroöphoron and epoöphoron are remains of the embryonal mesonephros, the former of its posterior segment, the latter of its middle segment.

The Oviduct.

The oviduct or Fallopian tube is the excretory duct of the ovary, serving for the transmission of the discharged ovum from ovary to uterus. Although there is no sharp demarcation between them, it is convenient to divide the tube into three segments: (1) The isthmus, beginning at the uterus and extending about one-third the length of the tube; (2) the ampulla, about twice the diameter of the isthmus, and occupying somewhat more than the middle third; and (3) the fimbriated or ovarian extremity.

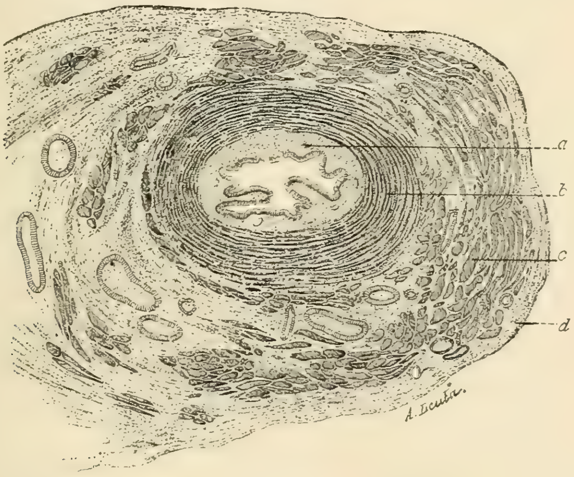


FIG. 197.—Cross Section of Oviduct near Uterine End. *a*, Mucous membrane; *b*, circular muscle coat; *c*, longitudinal muscle coat; *d*, connective tissue of serous coat. (Orthmann.)

The walls of the oviduct consist of three coats: (1) Mucous, (2) muscular, and (3) serous (Figs. 197 and 198).

The *mucous membrane* presents numerous longitudinal foldings. In the embryo four of these folds can usually be distinguished, and these are known as primary folds. In the adult many secondary folds have developed upon the primary, especially in the ampulla and fimbriated extremity where the folds are high and complicated (Fig. 198). The epithelium lining the tube is of the simple columnar ciliated type, and completely covers the foldings of the mucous membrane. The ciliary motion is toward the uterus. The stroma consists of a cellular connective tissue, quite compact in structure in the isthmus, where the folds are low, more loosely arranged in the high folds of the ampulla and fimbriated extremity.

The *muscular coat* consists of an inner circular and an outer longitudinal layer. The latter is a comparatively thin layer in the isthmus, consists of discontinuous groups of muscle cells in the ampulla, and in the fimbriated extremity is frequently absent.

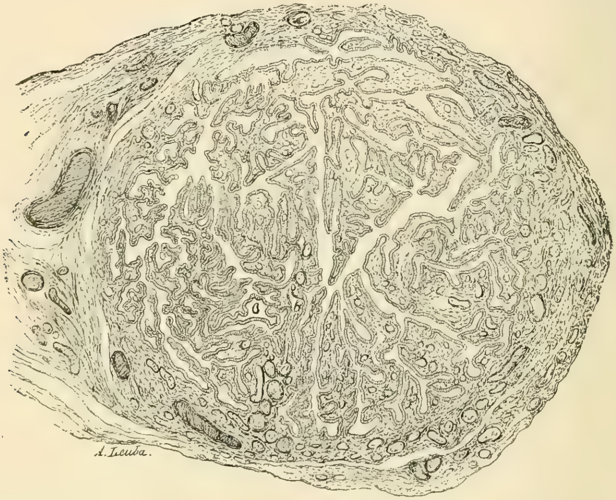


FIG. 198.—Cross Section of Oviduct near Fimbriated Extremity, showing complicated foldings of mucous membrane. (Orthmann.)

The *serous coat* has the usual structure of peritoneum.

The larger **blood-vessels** run in the stroma along the bases of the folds. They send off branches which give rise to a dense capillary network in the stroma.

Of the **lymphatics** of the tube little is known.

The **nerves** form a rich plexus in the stroma, from which branches pass to the blood-vessels and muscular tissue of the walls of the tube and internally as far as the epithelial lining.

TECHNIC.

(1) Child's Ovary.—Remove the ovary of a new-born child, being careful not to touch the surface epithelium, fix in Zenker's fluid (technic 9, p. 7), and harden in alcohol. Cut sections of the entire organ through the hilum. Stain with hæmatoxylin eosin (technic 1, p. 17) and mount in balsam.

(2) For the purpose of studying the Graafian follicle in the different stages of its development remove an ovary from an adult cat or dog and treat as above. Technic (1). These sections also as a rule are satisfactory for the study of the corpus luteum.

(3) The human adult ovary is little used for histological purposes on account of the few follicles it usually contains and its proneness to pathological changes. Its study is, however, so extremely important, especially with reference to the pathology of the ovary, that if possible a normal human ovary should be obtained from a young subject for purposes of comparison with the above. Technic same (1).

(4) For studying the egg tubes of Pflüger and their relation to the germ epithelium, ovaries of the human fœtus, and of very young cats, dogs, and rabbits are satisfactory. Technic (1).

(5) Sections of the fimbriated end of the oviduct are usually found in the sections of ovary. For the study of other parts of the tube, cut out thin pieces from different regions, fix in formalin-Müller's fluid, stain transverse sections with hæmatoxylin-eosin, and mount in balsam.

The Uterus.

The wall of the uterus consists of three coats which from without inward are serous, muscular, and mucous.

The *serous coat* is a reflection of the peritoneum, and has the usual structure of a serous membrane.

The *muscularis* consists of bundles of smooth muscle cells separated by connective tissue. The muscle has a general arrangement into three layers, an inner, a middle, and an outer, which are distinct in the cervix, but not well defined in the body and fundus.

The inner layer—*stratum submucosum*—is mainly longitudinal, although some obliquely running bundles are usually present.

The middle layer—called from the large venous channels which it contains, the *stratum vasculare*—is the thickest of the three layers forming the main bulk of the muscular wall. It consists mainly of circularly disposed muscle bundles.

The outer layer—*stratum supravasculare*—is thin and consists partly of circular bundles, partly of longitudinal. The latter predominate and form a fairly distinct layer just beneath the serosa.

The muscle cells of the uterus are long spindle-shaped elements, some having pointed, others blunt, branched, or frayed ends. In the virgin uterus they have a length of from 40 to 60 μ.

During pregnancy the muscular tissue of the uterus is greatly increased. This is due partly to increase in the number, partly to increase in the size of the muscle cells. At term the muscle cells frequently have a length of from 250 to 600 μ.

The *mucous membrane.* As the mucosa presents marked variation in structure, dependent upon the functional condition of the organ, it is necessary to describe:

1. The mucosa of the resting uterus.
2. The mucosa of the menstruating uterus.
3. The mucosa of the pregnant uterus.

1. The Mucosa of the Resting Uterus.

This is from 1 to 2 mm. thick, and consists of a stroma, glands, and a lining epithelium (Fig. 199). The stroma resembles embryonal connective tissue, consisting of fine fibrils and long, irregular branching cells which form a sort of network, the meshes of which are filled in with lymphoid cells and leucocytes. The epithelium is of the simple high columnar ciliated variety, the ciliary motion being toward the cervix. A basement membrane separates the epithelium from the underlying stroma. The glands are simple forked tubules lined by a single layer of columnar ciliated cells resting upon a basement membrane and continuous with the surface cells. The glands extend completely through the stroma. Near the surface they run a comparatively straight course. Deeper in the stroma their course is more tortuous, while the fundus is frequently turned at right angles to the rest of the tubule.

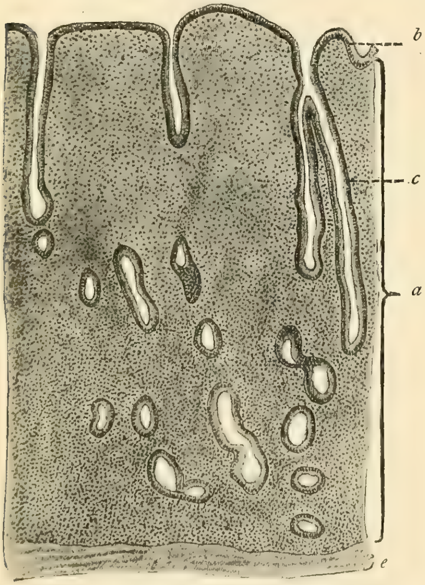


FIG. 199.—From Uterus of Young Woman. (From Böhm and von Davidoff; preparation by Dr. J. Amann.) × 34. *a*, Mucous membrane; *b*, surface epithelium; *c*, gland; *e*, muscle.

In the cervix the stroma is firmer and less cellular, and the mucous membrane is thicker and presents numerous folds—the *plicæ palmatæ.* The epithelium is higher than in the body of the organ. In addition to glands like those found in the body of the uterus, the cervical mucosa contains peculiar short, sac-like invaginations, lined with a continuation of the surface epithelium, which secrete a glairy mucus. Closure of the mouths of some of these sacs frequently occurs, leading to the formation of retention cysts, the so-called ovula Nabothi. At about the junction of middle and lower thirds of the cervical canal a change takes place in the epithelium. Here the simple columnar ciliated epithelium of the upper part of the cervix gradually passes over into a stratified squamous epithelium. Near the external os papillæ appear, the vaginal surface of the cervix being covered with a stratified squamous epithelium with underlying papillæ similar to and continuous with that of the vagina.

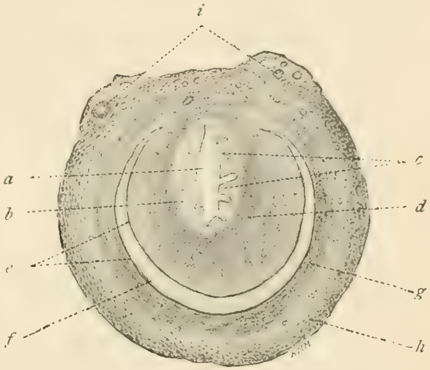


FIG. 200.—From Section of Dog's Cervix. × 4. (Technic 2, p. 314.) *a*, Cervical canal; *b*, mucosa; *c*, folds of mucosa (plicæ palmatæ); *d*, muscle layers of cervix; *e*, epithelium of vagina and vaginal surface of cervix; *f*, vaginal epithelium; *g*, vaginal mucosa; *h*, submucosa and muscularis of vagina; *i*, blood-vessels.

Near the external os the epithelium changes over into the stratified squamous epithelium with underlying papillæ, similar to that of the external surface of the cervix.

2. THE MUCOSA OF THE MENSTRUATING UTERUS.

This consists of the same structural elements as the mucosa of the resting uterus: stroma, glands, and lining epithelium. These, however, undergo certain changes which may be conveniently divided into three stages:

(*a*) The stage of preparation.
(*b*) The stage of menstruation proper.
(*c*) The stage of reparation.

(*a*) THE STAGE OF PREPARATION.—This begins several days before the actual flow of blood, and is marked by an intense hyperæmia determining a swelling and growth of the entire mucosa. The blood-vessels, especially the capillaries and veins, become greatly distended, thus contributing largely to the increase in thickness of the mucosa. There are also proliferation of the connective-tissue cells, an increase in the number of leucocytes, and a growth of the uterine glands. The surface at the same time becomes irregular, the glands opening into deep pits or depressions, and the glands themselves become more tortuous and their lumina more widely open. The mucous membrane has now reached a thickness of about 6 mm., and is known as the *decidua menstrualis* (Fig. 201).

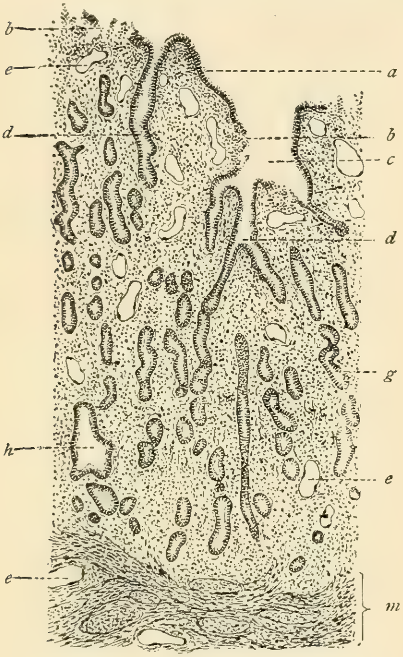


FIG. 201.—Section through Mucous Membrane of Virgin Uterus during First Day of Menstruation. × 30. (Schaper.) *a*, Surface of epithelium; *b*, disintegrating surface; *c*, pit-like depression in mucous membrane; *d*, excretory duct; *e*, blood-vessels; *g*, gland tubule; *h*, dilated gland tubule; *m*, muscularis.

(*b*) THE STAGE OF MENSTRUATION PROPER.—This is marked by the escape of blood from the engorged vessels and the appearance of the external phenomena of menstruation. The blood escapes partly by rupture of the vessel walls, partly by diapedesis. The hemorrhage is at first subepithelial, but the epithelium soon gives way and the blood escapes into the cavity of the uterus. Much difference of opinion exists as to the amount of epithelial destruction during menstruation, some claiming that the entire epithelium is destroyed with each menstrual period, others that the epithelium remains almost intact. Complete destruction of the epithelium is hardly compatible with the restoration of the epithelium which always follows menstruation. While there is undoubtedly destruction of most or all of the surface epithelium and of the glands to some considerable depth, the deeper portions of the glands always remain to take part in the succeeding regenerative phenomena.

(*c*) THE STAGE OF REPARATION.—After from three to five days the bleeding from the uterine mucosa ceases and the return to the resting condition begins. This is marked by disappearance of the congestion, by decrease in thickness of the mucosa and in the size of the glands, and by restoration of the surface epithelium.

3. The Mucosa of the Pregnant Uterus.

This is known as the *decidua graviditatis*, and presents changes in structure somewhat similar to those which occur during menstruation, but more extensive. It is divided into three parts:

(*a*) The decidua serotina or decidua basalis—that part of the mucosa to which the ovum is attached.

(*b*) The decidua reflexa or decidua capsularis—that part of the mucosa which surrounds the ovum.

(*c*) The decidua vera—which consists of all the remaining mucosa.

The development of the decidua vera resembles the changes which take place in the mucosa during menstruation. There is the same thickening of the mucosa, and this thickening is due to the same factors, *i.e.*, distention of the blood-vessels and proliferation of the tissue elements. These changes are, however, much more extensive than during menstruation. The superficial part of the stroma between the mouths of the glands becomes quite dense and firm, forming the *compact layer*. The deeper part of the stroma contains numerous cavities, which are the lumina of the now widely distended and tortuous glands. This is known as the *spongy layer*.

Within the stroma, especially of the compact layer, develop the so-called *decidual cells*. These are peculiar typical cells derived from connective tissue. They are of large size (30 to 100 μ), vary greatly in shape, and in the later months of pregnancy have a rather characteristic brown color, which they impart to the superficial layer of the decidua vera. They are mostly mononuclear, although polynuclear forms occur.

During the latter half of pregnancy there is a gradual thinning of the decidua vera, due apparently to pressure. The necks of the glands in the compact layer disappear, and the gland lumina in the spongy layer are changed into elongated spaces, which lie parallel to the muscular layer.

The decidua reflexa and decidua serotina have at first the same structure as the decidua vera. The decidua reflexa undergoes hyaline degeneration during the early part of pregnancy, and by the end of gestation has either completely disappeared (Minot) or has fused with the decidua vera (Leopold).

The decidua serotina undergoes changes connected with the development of the placenta.

The Placenta.[1]

The placenta consists of two parts, one of which is of maternal origin—*placenta uterina*—the other of fœtal origin—the *placenta fœtalis.* As it is in the placenta that the interchange takes place between the maternal and the fœtal blood, the relations between the maternal and fœtal parts of the placenta are extremely intimate. This relation consists essentially in the growing out from the fœtal placenta of finger-like projections—*villi*—which penetrate the maternal placenta, the latter being especially modified for their reception.

THE PLACENTA FŒTALIS.—This is a differentiated portion of the chorion. On the surface directed toward the fœtus the chorion after the third month is covered by a delicate fœtal membrane, the placental portion of the amnion. This consists of a surface epithelium, resting upon a layer of embryonal connective tissue which attaches it to the chorion. The chorion consists of (*a*) a compact layer—the *membrana chorii*—composed at first of embryonal, later of fibrous, connective tissue, and containing the main branches of the umbilical

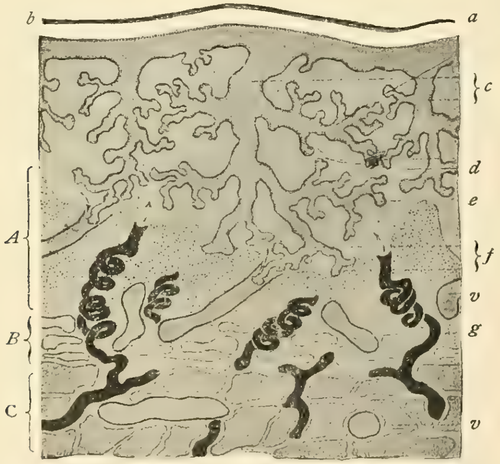


FIG. 202.—Diagram of Human Placenta at Close of Pregnancy. (Schaper.) *a*, Amnion; *b*, chorion; *c*, chorionic villi; *d*, intervillous spaces; *e*, floating villus; *f*, fastening villi; *g*, spiral artery; *v*, vein; *A*, compact layer, *B*, cavernous layer of decidua serotina; *C*, muscularis.

---

[1] For Figs. 202 and 203, also for many facts as to the structure of the placenta, the writer is indebted to the excellent chapter on the subject added by Prof. Alfred Schaper to the fifth edition of Stöhr's "Textbook of Histology."

vessels and (*b*) an inner villous layer, which gives rise to finger-like projections which extend down from the fœtal into the maternal placenta and serve to connect the two.

The *chorionic villi* first appear as short projections composed entirely of epithelium. Each of these primary villi branches dichotomously, giving rise to a number of secondary villi. As they develop, the central portion of the original solid epithelial structure is replaced by connective tissue. Septa of connective tissue from the maternal placenta pass down among the villi and separate them into groups or *cotyledons*. The main or primary villi run a quite straight course from the chorion into the maternal placental tissue, apparently serving to secure firm union between the two. They are thus known as roots of attachment or *fastening villi* (Fig. 202, *f*). The secondary villi are given off laterally from the primary villi, end freely in the spaces between the latter—intervillous spaces (Fig. 202, *d*)—and are known as *free* or *floating villi* (Fig. 202, *e*).

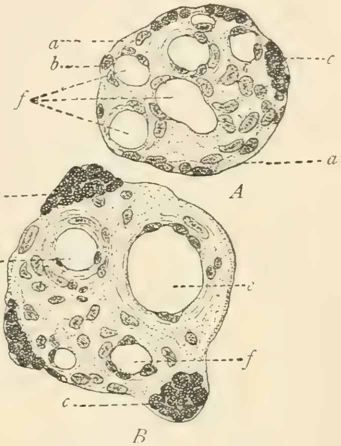


FIG. 203.—Cross Sections of Human Chorionic Villi at End of Pregnancy. × 250. (Schaper.) *A*, Small villus; *B*, larger villus. *a*, Protoplasmic coat (syncytium); *b*, epithelial nucleus; *c*, nuclear groups; *d*, small artery; *e*, small vein; *f*, capillaries

The chorionic villus thus consists of a central core of connective tissue covered by a layer of epithelium. The connective tissue is of the mucous type and serves for the transmission of numerous blood-vessels. In the villi of early pregnancy the epithelium consists of an inner layer of distinctly outlined cells and an outer layer of fused cell bodies—a *syncytium* (Fig. 203, *A*, *a*)—containing small scattered nuclei. The villi of the later months of pregnancy have no definite epithelial covering, but are surrounded by a delicate homogeneous membrane, probably the remains of the syncytium. At various points on the surface of the villus are groups of nuclei. These stain intensely, are surrounded by a homogeneous protoplasm, and form knob-like projections above the general surface of the villus. They are known as *cell patches*, or more properly as *nuclear groups* (Fig.

203, *c*), and represent remains of the nuclei of the epithelium of the younger villus. Between the nuclear groups the villus is covered only by a thin homogeneous membrane. Small villi usually resemble more closely in structure the younger villus, being frequently covered by a nucleated syncytium. Portions of the syncytium, especially of older villi, sometimes become changed into a peculiar hyaline substance containing numerous channels. This is known as *canalized fibrin*, and may form dense layers upon the surface of the chorion.

THE PLACENTA UTERINA.—This develops from the decidua serotina. The latter becomes much thinner than the rest of the decidua (decidua vera), but still shows a division into a deeper spongy portion containing gland tubules, and a superficial compact portion in which are large numbers of decidual cells. From the superficial portion connective-tissue septa—*placental septa*—grow into the fœtal placenta, as described above, separating its villi into cotyledons. Near the margins of the placenta these septa pass to the chorionic membrane and form beneath it a thin membrane, the *subchorionic placental decidua*. At the edge of the placenta, where decidua serotina passes over into the thicker decidua vera, there is a close attachment of the chorion to the former.

As the placenta serves as the place of interchange of materials between the maternal and the fœtal circulations, the arrangement of the placental blood-vessels is of especial importance. Arterial branches from vessels of the uterine muscularis enter the serotina. In the very tortuous course which these vessels take through the serotina (Fig. 202, *g*) their walls lose their muscular and connective-tissue elements and become reduced to epithelial tubes. These branch in the placental septa and finally open into the intervillous spaces along the edges of the cotyledons. The veins take origin from these spaces near the centres of the cotyledons. The maternal blood thus passes through the intervillous spaces from periphery to centre, and in its course comes into direct contact with the freely terminating chorionic villi. It is to be noted that the blood-vessel systems of the mother and of the fœtus are both closed systems, and that consequently there is no direct admixture of maternal and fœtal blood. Interchange of materials must therefore always take place through the capillary walls and through the walls of the chorionic villi.

Blood-vessels.—The arteries enter the uterus from the broad ligament and pass to the stratum vasculare of the muscularis, where they undergo extensive ramification. From the arteries of the stratum vasculare branches pass to the mucosa and give rise to capillary networks, which surround the glands and are especially dense just beneath the surface epithelium. From these capillaries the blood passes into a plexus of veins in the deeper portion of the mucosa, and these in turn empty into the venous plexuses of the stratum vasculare. Thence the veins accompany the arteries, leaving the uterus through the broad ligament.

Lymphatics.—These begin as minute spaces in the stroma and empty into the more definite lymph channels of the muscularis, which are especially well developed in the stratum vasculare. These in turn communicate with the larger lymph vessels in the subserous connective tissue.

Nerves.—Both medullated and non-medullated nerve fibres occur in the uterus. The latter are associated with minute sympathetic ganglia and supply the muscular tissue. The medullated fibres form plexuses in the mucosa, from which are given off fine fibres which terminate freely between the cells of the surface epithelium and of the uterine glands.

The Vagina.

The wall of the vagina consists of four coats, which from without inward are fibrous, muscular, submucous, and mucous.

The *fibrous coat* consists of dense connective tissue with many coarse elastic fibres. It serves to connect the vagina with the surrounding structures.

The *muscular coat* is indistinctly divided into an outer longitudinal and an inner circular layer. The latter is usually not well developed and may be absent.

The *submucosa* is a layer of loose connective tissue, especially rich in elastic fibres and blood-vessels. Numerous large venous channels give to the submucosa the character of erectile tissue.

The *mucous membrane* consists of a papillated connective-tissue stroma of mixed fibrous and elastic tissue. The stroma usually contains diffuse lymphoid tissue and more rarely solitary nodules. Covering the stroma is a stratified squamous epithelium, the surface cells of which are extremely thin. The surface of the mucosa is not smooth, but is folded transversely, forming the so-called *rugæ*. Most authorities agree that glands are wanting in the vagina, the mucus found there being derived from the glands of the cervix.

Blood-vessels.—The larger blood-vessels run in the submucosa, giving off branches which break up into capillary networks in the submucosa, muscularis, and stroma. The vascular networks have a general direction parallel to the surface. The capillaries empty into veins which form a plexus of broad venous channels in the muscularis.

The Lymphatics.—These follow in general the distribution of the blood-vessels.

Nerves.—Nerve fibres from both cerebro-spinal and sympathetic systems are found in the vagina. Medullated (sensory) fibres, the dendrites of spinal ganglion cells, form plexuses in the mucosa, from which are given off delicate non-medullated terminals to the epithelial cells. Non-medullated sympathetic fibres supply the muscularis and the muscle of the vessel walls. Along these nerves are small sympathetic ganglia.

In the *vestibule* the epithelium gradually takes on the structure of epidermis. Here are located small mucous glands—*glandulæ vestibulares minores*—especially numerous around the clitoris and opening of the urethra. Larger mucous glands—*glandulæ vestibulares majores*, or *glands* of *Bartholin*—analogous to Cowper's glands in the male, are also found in the walls of the vestibule.

The *clitoris* consists mainly of erectile tissue similar to that of the corpora cavernosa of the penis. It is covered with a thin epithelium with underlying papillæ, and is richly supplied with nerves having highly specialized terminations.

DEVELOPMENT OF THE URINARY AND REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEMS.

The urinary organs are peculiar in that three consecutive organs are concerned in their development, although only the last of these actually gives rise to functionating adult organs, the other two being represented in the adult only by rudimentary structures. These three organs, in the order of their appearance, are the pronephros, the mesonephros, and the metanephros. All of these bodies develop from the mesoderm, first appearing as symmetrically placed ridges, which project into the primitive body cavity as the Wolffian ridges.

The pronephritic or Wolffian ducts and the pronephros are the earliest of the urinary structures to appear. The former consist at first of solid, elongated groups of cells, situated in the Wolffian ridge. These later acquire lumina and become tubules.

The pronephros consists of two evaginations of the epithelium of the primitive body cavity into the tissues of the Wolffian ridges, near the anterior end of the Wolffian duct. Only one of these develops into tubules, and both disappear early in embryonic life. In the female the Wolffian duct degenerates; in the male it remains to form the vas deferens and tail of the epididymis.

When the human embryo has reached a length of from 3 to 4 mm., a number of cords of cells, the origin of which is still doubtful, appear in the Wolffian ridge. These acquire lumina, which at one end communicate with the Wolffian duct, while at the other glomeruli develop, which contain blood-vessels derived from the aorta. This development of tubules and glomeruli results in a large increase in the size of the Wolffian ridges, which are now known as the Wolffian bodies or mesonephros. The latter reach their greatest development between the sixth and eighth embryonic week, after which the tubules and glomeruli undergo retrogressive changes. In the male the anterior tubules remain to form the head of the epididymis, while the posterior tubules are represented only by the rudimentary paradidymis or organ of Giraldès. In the female the Wolffian body remains only as two rudimentary structures—the parovarium and the paroöphoron.

During the retrogressive changes in the mesonephros a new tubular structure appears as an outgrowth from the dorsum of the Wolffian duct. This tubule is known as the metanephros, and from it are developed the ureter and kidney. The end of the tubule at which the kidney is to develop next divides into a number of branches, which end in expansions, the primary renal vesicles. From the latter the uriniferous tubules develop. During the development of these tubules septa grow in from the capsule, which now surrounds the primitive kidney in such a manner as to separate the groups of tubules which develop from each primary vesicle. In this way the kidney becomes lobulated, the lobulation, however, disappearing after birth. The renal corpuscles or Malpighian bodies are formed, as already described (page 262), by invaginations of the developing tubules by branches of the renal artery.

At about the height of development of the Wolffian body there appears along the inner side of each Wolffian ridge a thickening of the mesodermic cells, which thus form a distinct projection, the genital ridge. This is the earliest trace of a sexual gland, and is at first identical in the two sexes. By differentiation of these mesodermic cells are formed, according to sex, the ovaries or testes.

Into the genital ridge there extends an invagination of the peritoneum to form the Müllerian duct. In the male this degenerates, its anterior part being represented in the adult by the stalked hydatid or hydatid of Morgagni, its posterior part by the uterus masculinus. In the female the Müllerian ducts unite below to form the uterus, while above they remain separate, forming the Fallopian tubes.

TECHNIC.

(1) A human uterus—if possible from a young adult—or, if this cannot be obtained, the uterus of a cat or dog, is cut transversely into slices about 1 cm. thick and fixed in Zenker's fluid (technic 9, p. 7) or in formalin-Müller's fluid (technic 5, p. 6). For topography these slices are cut in half through the middle of the uterine cavity and sections made through the entire half organ. These are stained with hæmatoxylin-picro-acid-fuchsin (technic 3, p. 18) and mounted in balsam. For details of the mucous membrane cut away most of the muscle from around the half slice, being careful not to touch the mucous surface; make thin sections, stain with hæmatoxylin-eosin (technic 1, p. 17), and mount in balsam.

(2) Sections of the cervix may be prepared in the same manner as the preceding.

(3) Placental tissue may be cut into small cubes and treated with the same technic (1).

(4) If a human or animal uterus with the placenta *in situ* is obtainable it should be cut into thin slices and fixed in formalin-Müller's fluid. The blocks of tissue should be so arranged that sections include the utero-placental junction. They may be stained with hæmatoxylin-eosin or with hæmatoxylin-picro-acid-fuchsin (see above).

(5) Treat pieces of the human vagina according to technic (1, p. 203).

General References for Further Study.

Kölliker: Handbuch der Gewebelehre des Menschen.

Nagel: Das menschliche Ei. Arch. mik. Anat., Bd. xxxi., 1888.

Ruckert: Zur Eireifung der Copepoden. Anat. Hefte, I. Abth., Bd. iv., 1894.

Sobotta: Ueber die Bildung des Corpus luteum bei der Maus. Arch. mik. Anat., Bd. xlvii., 1896.—Ueber die Bildung des Corpus luteum beim Kaninchen. Anat. Hefte, I. Abth., Bd. viii., 1897.

Hertwig: Lehrbuch der Entwickelungsgeschichte des Menschen und der Wirbelthiere. Jena, 1896.

Schaper: Chapter on the Placenta in Stohr's Text-book of Histology, 5th ed.

Ballowitz: Weitere Beobachtungen über den feineren Bau der Säugethier-Spermatozoen. Zeit. f. wiss. Zool., Bd. lii., 1891.

CHAPTER X.

THE SKIN AND ITS APPENDAGES.

The Skin.

THE skin or cutis consists of two parts: (1) The derma, corium, or true skin, and covering this, (2) the epidermis or cuticle. The derma is a connective-tissue derivative of the mesoderm, the epidermis an epithelial derivative of the ectoderm.

THE DERMA.—This is divided into two layers which blend without distinct demarcation. The deeper is known as the pars reticularis, the more superficial as the pars papillaris (Fig. 204).

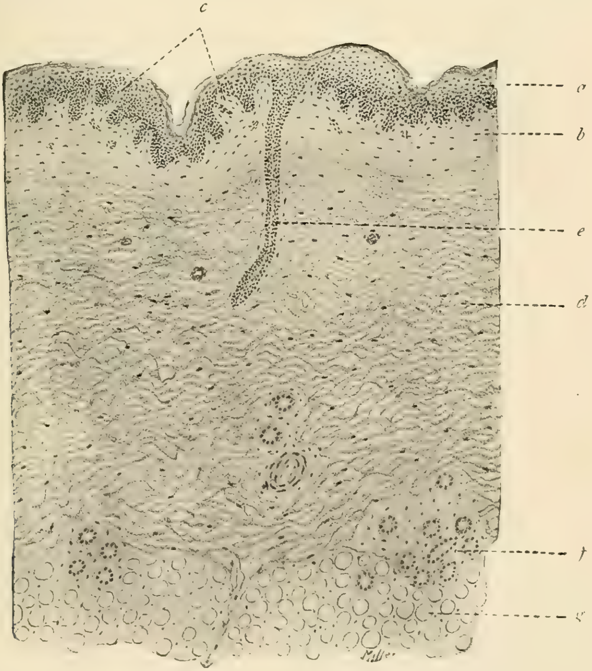


FIG. 204.—Vertical Section of Thin Skin, Human. × 60. (Technic 2, p. 320.) *a*, Epidermis; *b*, pars papillaris of derma; *c*, papillæ; *d*, pars recticularis of derma; *e*, duct of sweat gland; *f*, sweat gland; *g*, subcutaneous fat.

The *pars reticularis* is made up of rather coarse, loosely arranged white and elastic fibres with connective-tissue cells in varying numbers. The fibres run for the most part parallel to the surface of the skin.

The *pars papillaris* is similar in structure to the preceding, but both white and elastic fibres are finer and more closely arranged.

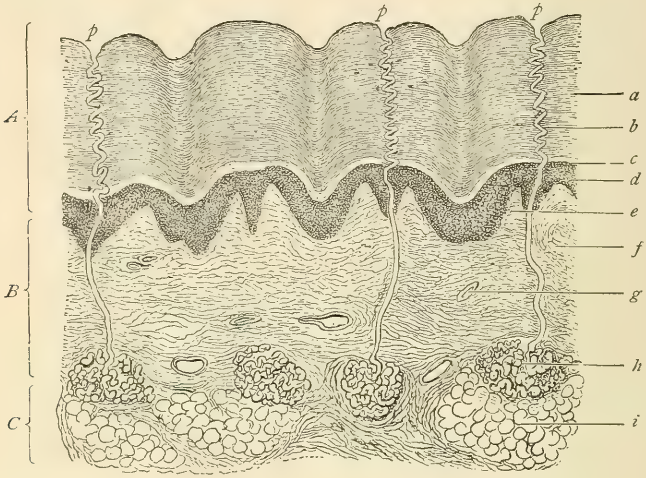


FIG. 205.—Thick Vertical Section through Skin of Finger Tip. (Merkel-Henle.) *A*, Epidermis; *B*, derma; *C*, subcutis. *a*, Stratum corneum; *b*, duct of sweat gland; *c*, stratum lucidum; *d*, stratum germinativum; *e*, papilla of derma; *f*, derma; *g*, blood-vessel; *h*, sweat gland; *i*, fat lobule; *p*, sweat pore.

Externally this layer is marked by minute folds which are visible to the naked eye, and can be seen intersecting one another and enclosing small irregular areas of skin. In the thick skin of the palms and soles these furrows are close together and parallel, while between them are long corresponding ridges. In addition to the furrows and ridges the entire surface of the corium is beset with minute papillæ. These vary in structure, some ending in a single point—*simple papillæ*—others in several points—*compound papillæ*; some containing blood-vessels—*vascular papillæ*; others containing special nerve terminations—*nerve papillæ* (Fig. 206).

Smooth muscle cells occur in the corium in connection with the sweat glands. In the skin of the scrotum—tunica dartos—and of the nipple, the smooth muscle cells are arranged in a network parallel to the surface. In the face and neck striated muscle fibres penetrate the corium.

Beneath the corium is the *subcutaneous tissue*. This consists of vertically disposed bands of connective tissue—the *retinaculæ cutis*—which serve to unite the corium to the underlying structures and enclose fat lobules. In some parts of the body this subcutaneous fat forms a thick layer—the *panniculus adiposus.*

THE EPIDERMIS.—This is composed of stratified squamous epithelium. In the comparatively thin skin of the general body surface the epidermis is divided into two sub-layers: (1) One lying just above the papillary layer of the derma, and known as the stratum germinativum (stratum mucosum—stratum Malpighii); (2) the other constituting the superficial layer of the skin—the horny layer or stratum corneum. In the thick skin of the palms and soles two additional layers are developed; (3) the stratum granulosum; and (4) the stratum lucidum (Fig. 205).

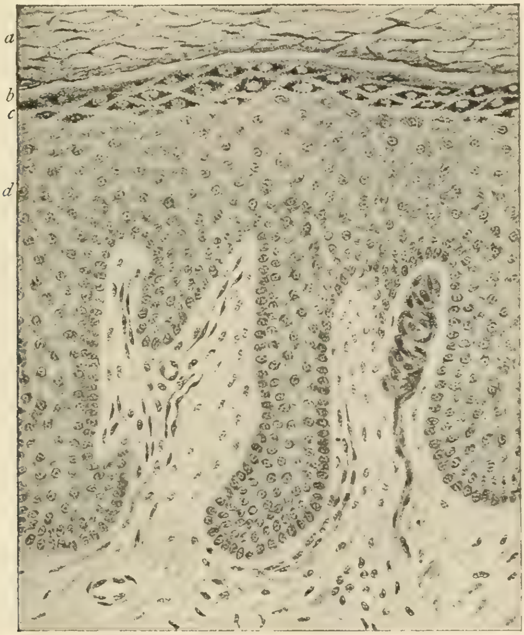


FIG. 206.—From Vertical Section through Skin of Human Finger Tip. × 200. (Schäfer.) *a*, Stratum corneum; *b*, stratum lucidum; *c*, stratum granulosum; *d*, stratum germinativum. To the left a *vascular papilla;* to the right a *nerve papilla* containing tactile corpuscle.

(1) The *stratum germinativum* consists of several layers of cells. The deepest cells are columnar and form a single layer (stratum cylindricum), which rests upon a basement membrane separating it

from the derma. The membrane and cells follow the elevations and depressions caused by the papillæ. The rest of the stratum germinativum consists of large polygonal cells. These cells have well-developed intercellular bridges, which appear as spines projecting from the surfaces of the cells. For this reason the cells are sometimes called "prickle" cells, and the layer, the "stratum spinosum." The spines cross minute spaces between the cells, which are believed to communicate with the lymph spaces of the derma (Fig. 207, *c*).

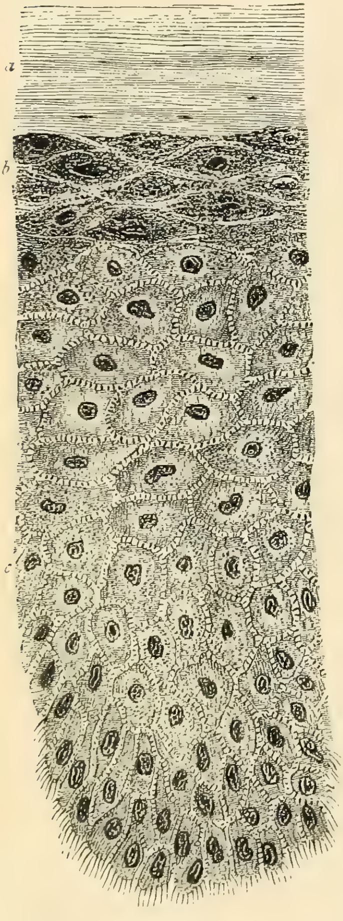


FIG. 207.—From Vertical Section through Thick Skin. (Merkel-Henle.) *a*, Stratum lucidum; *b*, stratum granulosum; *c*, stratum germinativum, showing intercellular bridges.

(2) The *stratum granulosum* is well developed only where the skin is thick. It consists of from one to three layers of flattened polygonal cells. The protoplasm of these cells contains deeply staining granules—keratohyaline granules—which probably represent a stage in the formation of the horny substance—keratin—of the corneum cells. The nuclei of these cells always show degenerative changes, and there is reason for believing that this karyolysis is closely associated with the formation of the keratohyaline granules (Fig. 207, *b*).

(3) The *stratum lucidum* is also best developed where the skin is thickest. It consists of two or three layers of flat clear cells, the outlines of which are frequently so indistinct that the layer appears homogeneous. The transparency of the cells is due to the presence of a substance known as *eleidin*, and derived from the keratohyaline granules of the stratum granulosum (Fig. 207, *a*).

(4) The *stratum corneum* varies greatly in thickness, reaching its greatest development in the skin of the palms and soles. The cells are flattened and horny, especially near their surfaces. Some appear

homogeneous, others have a lamellated appearance. They contain pareleidin, a derivative of the eleidin of the stratum lucidum. Nuclei are lost, but in many of the cells can be seen the spaces which the nuclei once occupied. Constant desquamation of these cells goes on, cells from the deeper layers taking their place. The cells of the stratum germinativum are usually in a state of active mitosis.

The color of the skin in the white races is due to pigmentation of the deeper layers of the epidermis. In certain parts of the body pigmentation of the connective-tissue cells of the derma also occurs. In the dark races all cells of the epidermis are pigmented, although there is less pigment in the surface cells than in the cells more deeply situated.

Two kinds of glands occur in the skin—sebaceous glands and sweat glands.

SEBACEOUS GLANDS.—These are usually associated with the hair follicles, and will be described in that connection. Sebaceous glands unconnected with hair occur along the margin of the lips, in the glans and prepuce of the penis, and in the labia minora.

SWEAT GLANDS (*glandulæ sudoriparæ*).—These are found throughout the entire skin with the exception of the margin of the lips, the inner surface of the prepuce, and the glans penis. They are simple coiled tubular glands. The coiled portion of the gland usually lies in the subcutis, although it may lie wholly or partly in the deeper portion of the pars reticularis. The excretory duct runs a quite straight course through the derma, and enters the epidermis in one of the depressions between the papillæ. In the epidermis the duct takes a spiral course to the surface, where it opens into a minute depression, just visible to the naked eye—the *sweat pore.* The coiled portion of the gland is lined with a simple cuboidal epithelium, having a granular protoplasm. In the smaller glands the epithelium rests directly upon the basement membrane. In the larger glands a longitudinal layer of smooth muscle cells separates the glandular epithelium from the basement membrane. The walls of the ducts consist of two or three layers of cuboidal epithelial cells, resting upon a delicate basement membrane, outside of which are longitudinally disposed connective-tissue fibres. On reaching the horny layer the epithelial wall of the duct ceases, the duct consisting of a mere channel through the epithelium.

TECHNIC.

(1) Fix the volar half of a finger-tip in formalin-Müller's fluid (technic 5, p. 6) or in absolute alcohol. Curling may be prevented by pinning to pieces of cork. Sections are cut transversely to the ridges, stained with hæmatoxylin-picro-acid-fuchsin (technic 3, p. 18), and mounted in balsam. Thick sections should be cut for the study of the coil glands with their ducts; thin sections for cellular details of the layers.

(2) Prepare in the same manner and for contrast with the preceding, sections of thin skin from almost any part of the body.

(3) Prepare a piece of negro skin in the same manner and note the position of the pigment.

The Nails.

The nails are modified epidermis. Each nail consists of: (*a*) a *body*, the attached uncovered portion of the nail; (*b*) a *free edge*, the anterior unattached extension of the body; (*c*) the *nail root*, the posterior part of the nail which lies under the skin (Fig. 208).

The nail lies upon a specially modified portion of the corium, the *nail bed*, which beneath the nail root and somewhat forward of the root is known as the *matrix*. The nail bed is bounded on either side by folds of skin, the *nail wall*, while between the nail wall and the nail bed is a furrow, the *nail groove* (Fig. 209).

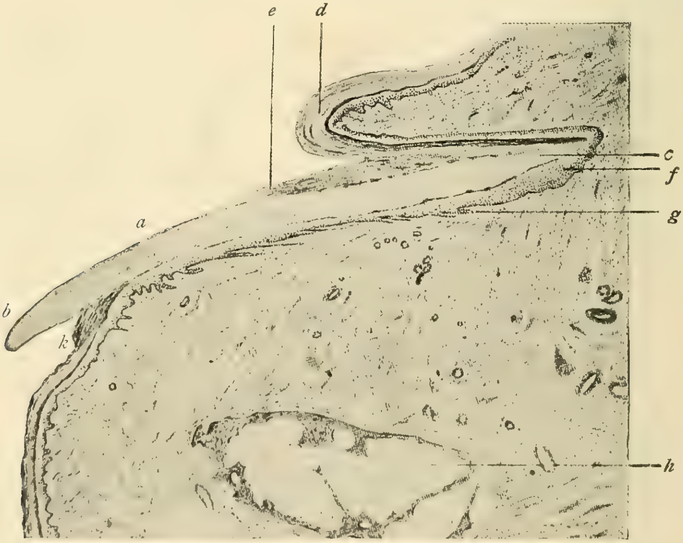


FIG. 208.—Longitudinal Section through Root of Human Nail and Nail Bed. × 10. (Schaper.) *a*, Body of nail; *b*, free edge; *c*, root of nail; *d*, epidermis; *e*, eponychium; *f*, stratum germinativum of matrix; *g*, folds in derma of nail bed; *h*, bone of finger; *k*, hyponychium.

The nail bed consists of corium. Its connective-tissue fibres are arranged partly horizontal to the long axis of the nail, partly in a vertical plane extending from the periosteum to the nail. Papillæ are not present, but in their place are minute longitudinal ridges, which begin at the matrix and, increasing in height as they pass forward, terminate abruptly at the end of the nail bed, beyond which are the usual papillæ of the derma.

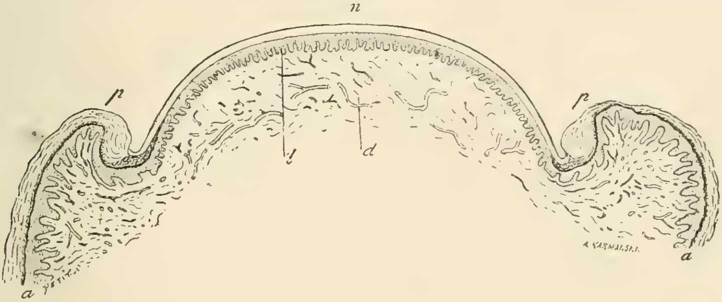


FIG. 209.—Transverse Section of Nail and Nail Bed. (Rannie.) *n*, Nail; *a*, epidermis; *p*, nail wall, to inner side of which is the nail groove; *l*, folds of derma; *d*, nail bed.

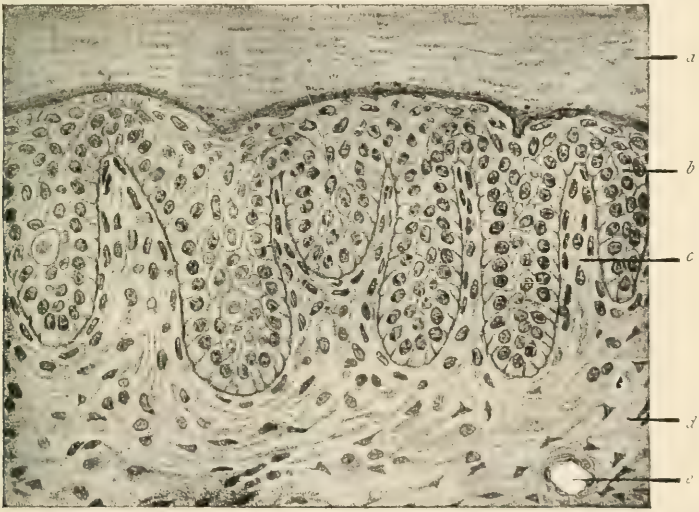


FIG. 210.—Vertical Transverse Section through Nail Body. × 280. (Szymonowicz.) *a*, Nail; *b*, stratum germinativum; *c*, ridge of nail bed; *d*, derma; *e*, blood-vessel.

The nail itself consists of two parts—an outer harder part or true nail, and an under softer part. The outer portion is hard and horny, is developed from the stratum lucidum, and consists of several layers of clear, flat, nucleated cells. These layers overlap in such a manner that each layer extends a little farther forward than the layer above. The under softer portion of the nail corresponds to the stratum germinativum of the skin and, like the latter, consists of polygonal "prickle" cells and a stratum cylindricum resting upon a basement membrane. In the matrix where the process of nail formation is going on, this layer is thicker than elsewhere and is white and opaque from the presence of keratohyalin. The convex anterior margin of this area can be seen with the naked eye and is known as the *lunula.*

At the junction of nail and skin, in the nail groove, the stratum corneum extends somewhat over the nail as its *eponychium.* A similar extension of the stratum corneum occurs on the under surface of the nail where the nail becomes free from the nail bed. This is known as the *hyponychium* (Fig. 208).

Growth of nail takes place by a transformation of the cells of the matrix into true nail cells. In this process the outer hard layer is pushed forward over the stratum germinativum, the latter remaining always in the same position.

TECHNIC.

(1) Remove two or more distal phalanges from the fingers of a new-born child and fix in absolute alcohol or in formalin-Müller's fluid (technic 5, p. 6). After fixing, the bone should be carefully removed. Both longitudinal and transverse sections are made, stained with hæmatoxylin-picro-acid-fuchsin (technic 3, p. 18), and mounted in balsam. In cutting the sections it is usually best so to place the block that the knife passes through volar surface first, through nail last.

(2) The cellular elements of nail do not show well in sections. For demonstrating the nail cells, boil a piece of nail in concentrated potash lye or warm it in strong sulphuric acid, scrape off cells from the softened surface, and mount in glycerin.

The Hair.

The hair, like the nail, is a development of the epidermis. The hair itself consists of a *shaft,* that portion of the hair which projects above the skin, and a *root,* that portion embedded within the skin. At its lower end the root presents a knob-like expansion, the *hair bulb,* in the under surface of which is a cup-like depression, which receives an extension of corium. This is known as the *papilla.* Enclosing the hair root is the *hair follicle.*

THE HAIR.—This is composed of epithelial cells arranged in three layers, which from within outward are medulla, cortex, and cuticle (Fig. 212).

(1) The *medulla* occupies the central axis of the hair. It is absent in small hairs, and in the large hairs does not extend throughout their entire length. It is from 16 to 20 μ in diameter, and consists of from two to four layers of polygonal or cuboidal cells with finely granular, usually pigmented protoplasm and rudimentary nuclei.

(2) The *cortex* makes up the main bulk of the hair and consists of several layers of long spindle-shaped cells, the protoplasm of which shows distinct longitudinal striations, while the nuclei appear atrophied. As these striations give the hair the appearance of being composed of fibrillæ, the term "cortical fibres" has been applied to them. In colored hair, pigment granules and pigment in solution are found in and between the cells of this layer. This pigment determines the color of the hair. In the root the cortical cells are less flattened than in the shaft.

(3) The *cuticle* has a thickness of about 1 μ, and consists of clear scale-like, non-nucleated epithelial cells. These overlap one another like shingles on a roof, giving to the surface of the hair a serrated appearance.

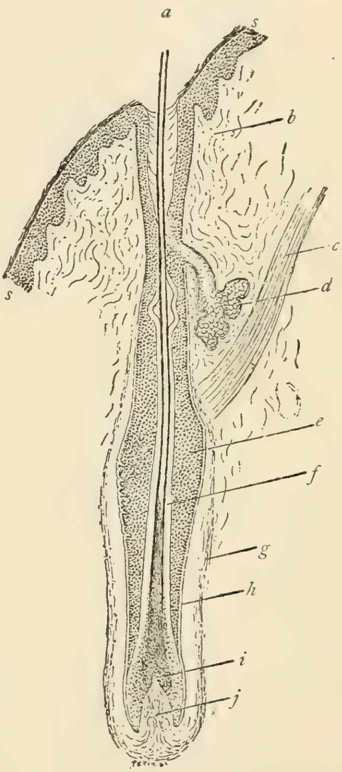


FIG. 211.—Longitudinal Section of Hair and Its Follicle from Vertical Section of Scalp. (Ranvier.) *a*, Shaft of hair; *b*, derma; *c*, arrector pili muscle; *d*, sebaceous gland; *e*, outer root sheath; *f*, inner root sheath; *g*, connective-tissue follicle; *h*, vitreous membrane; *i*, hair bulb; *j*, papilla; *s*, epidermis.

THE HAIR FOLLICLE.—This is also a modification of the skin. In the formation of the follicles of the finer (lanugo) hairs the epidermis alone is concerned. The follicles of the larger hairs contain both epidermal and dermal elements. The latter form the connective-tissue follicle, while the epidermis forms the root sheaths.

(1) The *root sheath* consists of two sub-layers—the *inner root sheath* and the *outer root sheath* (Figs. 213, 214, and 215).

(*a*) The inner root sheath consists of three layers, which from within outward are the cuticle of the root sheath, Huxley's layer, and Henle's layer.

The *cuticle* of the root sheath lies against the cuticle of the hair and is similar to the latter in structure. It consists of thin scale-like overlapping cells, nucleated in the deeper parts of the sheath, non-nucleated nearer the surface (Figs. 213, 214, and 215, *c*).

Huxley's layer lies immediately outside the cuticle of the root sheath, constituting the middle layer of the inner root sheath. It consists of about two rows of elongated cells with slightly granular protoplasm containing eleidin. In the deeper portion of the root these cells contain nuclei. Nearer the surface the nuclei are rudimentary or absent (Figs. 213, 214, and 215, *d*).

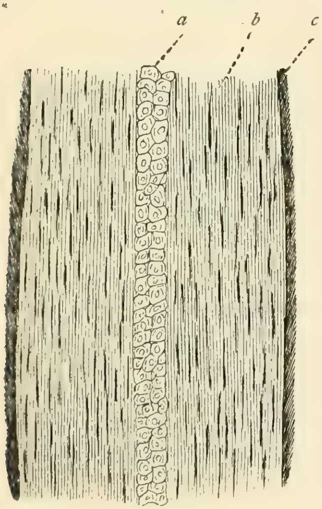


FIG. 212.—Longitudinal Section of Hair. × 350. (Kölliker.) *a*, Medulla; *b*, cortex; *c*, cuticle.

Henle's layer is a single row of clear flat cells. In the bulb these cells may contain nuclei; elsewhere they are non-nucleated (Fig. 215, *e*).

(*b*) The outer root sheath is derived from the stratum germinativum, to which it corresponds in structure. Next to the vitreous membrane is a single layer of columnar cells (stratum cylindricum). Inside of this are several layers of "prickle" cells (Figs. 213, 214, and 215, *f*).

(2) The *connective-tissue follicle* consists of three layers—an inner vitreous membrane, a middle vascular layer, and an outer fibrous layer.

(*a*) The vitreous or hyaline membrane is a thin homogeneous structure of the nature of an elastic membrane. It lies next to the outer root sheath and corresponds to the basement membrane of the derma (Figs. 213, 214, and 215, *g*).

(*b*) The middle or vascular layer is composed of fine connective-tissue fibres, the general arrangement of which is circular. Cellular elements are quite abundant, while elastic fibres are as a rule absent.

As its name would indicate, this layer is especially rich in blood-vessels (Figs. 213, 214, and 215, *i*).

(*c*) The outer or fibrous layer consists of rather coarse, loosely woven bundles of white fibres, which run mainly in a longitudinal direction. Among these are elastic fibres and a few connective-tissue cells.

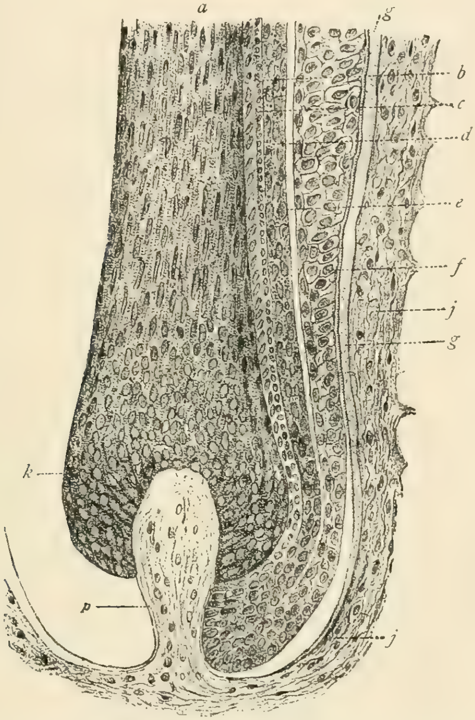


FIG. 213.—Longitudinal Section of Lower End of Root of Hair, including Papilla. (Kölliker.) *a*, Root of hair; *b*, cuticle of hair; *c*, cuticle of root sheath; *d*, Huxley's layer of inner root sheath; *e*, Henle's layer of inner root sheath; *f*, outer root sheath; *g*, vitreous membrane; *j*, connective-tissue follicle; *k*, bulb of hair; *p*, papilla.

In the deeper portion of the root, some little distance above the bulb, all the layers of the hair and its follicle can be distinctly seen. The differentiation of the layers becomes less marked as one passes in either direction. At about the level of the entrance of the ducts of the sebaceous glands (see p. 326) the inner root sheath disappears, and the outer root sheath passes over into the stratum germinativum of the skin, while between the outer root sheath (now stratum germinativum) and the hair are interposed the outer layers of the skin, stratum granulosum and stratum lucidum, when present, and stratum corneum. All of these are continuous with the same layers of the skin. In the region of the bulb the outer root sheath first becomes thinner, then disappears, while the layers of the inner root sheath retain their identity until the neck of the papilla is reached, at which point the different layers coalesce.

The *arrector pili muscle* (Fig. 211, *c*) is a narrow band or bands of smooth muscle connected with the hair follicle. It arises from the outer layer of the derma on the side toward which the hair slants, and is inserted into the wall of the follicle at the junction of its middle and lower thirds, the sebaceous gland being usually included between the muscle and the hair (see below). The contraction of the muscle thus tends to straighten the hair and to compress the gland.

The *sebaceous glands* are with few exceptions connected with the hair follicles. They are simple or branched alveolar glands. The size of the gland bears no relation to the size of the hair, the largest glands being frequently connected with the smallest hairs. The glands are spherical or oval in shape and each gland is enclosed by a connective-tissue capsule derived from the follicle or from the der-

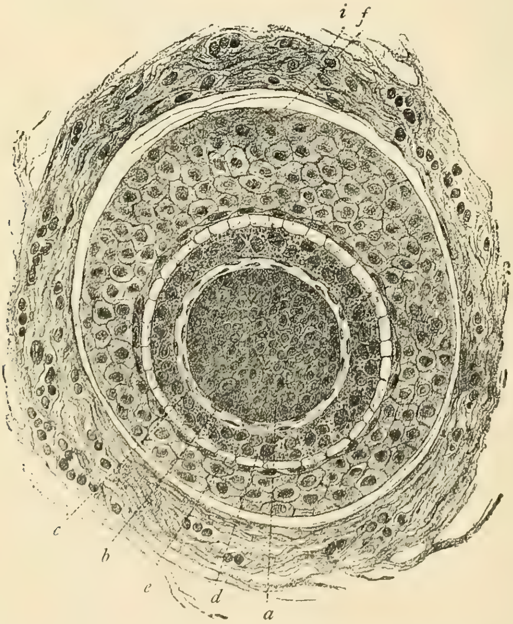


FIG. 214.—Transverse Section through Root of Hair and Hair Follicle. (Kölliker.) *a*, Hair; *b*, hair cuticle; *c*, cuticle of root sheath; *d*, Huxley's layer; *e*, Henle's layer; *f*, outer root sheath; *i*, connective-tissue follicle.

ma. Beneath the capsule is a basement membrane continuous with the vitreous membrane of the follicle. The wide excretory duct empties into the upper third of the follicle and is lined with stratified squamous epithelium continuous with the outer root sheath and stratum germinativum. The lower end of the duct opens into several simple or branched alveoli, at the mouths of which the epithelium becomes reduced to a single layer of cuboidal cells. In the alveoli themselves the cells are spheroidal or polyhedral, and usually fill the entire alveolus. These cells, like those lining the duct, are derivatives of the outer root sheath. The secretion of the gland—an oily substance called *sebum*—appears to be the direct product of disintegration of the alveolar cells, which can usually be seen in all stages of the process of transformation of the cell into the secretion of the gland. The most peripheral cells show the least secretory changes, containing a few small fat droplets. The central cells and those in the lumen of the duct show the most marked changes, their protoplasm being almost wholly converted into fat, their nuclei shrunken or disintegrated or lost. In the middle zone are cells showing intermediary stages in the process.

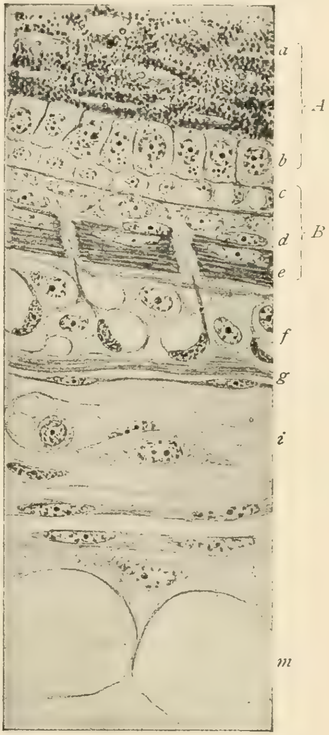


Fig. 215.—From Logitudinal Section through Hair and Hair Follicle. Enlarged to 800 diameters. (Schäfer.) *A*, Hair. *a*, Cortex of hair; *b*, cuticle of hair. *B*, Inner sheath. *c*, Cuticle of root sheath; *d*, Huxley's layer; *e*, Henle's layer; *f*, outer root sheath; *g*, vitreous membrane; *i*, connective-tissue follicle; *m*, fat cells.

Shedding of hair occurs in most mammalia at regularly recurring periods. In man there is a constant death and replacement of hair. In a hair about to be shed, the bulb becomes cornified and splits up into a number of fibres. The hair next becomes detached from the papilla and from the root sheath and is cast off, the empty root sheaths collapsing and forming a cord of cells between the papilla and lower end of the shedding hair. If the dead hair is to be replaced by a new one, there sooner or later occurs a proliferation of the cells of the outer root sheath in the region of the old papilla. From this "hair germ" the new hair is formed in a manner similar to embryonal hair formation, the new hair growing upward under or to one side of the dead hair, which it finally replaces.

As to the manner in which growth of hair takes place, two views are held. According to one of these, the hair, cuticle, and inner root sheath are replenished by proliferation of the epithelial cells surrounding the papilla. These parts thus grow from below toward the surface. The oldest cells of the outer root-sheath, on the other hand, lie against the vitreous membrane, so that growth of this sheath takes place from without inward. According to the second view, the various parts of the hair and its follicle are direct derivatives of the different layers of the skin, and their growth takes place by a continuous process of invagination. Thus the most peripheral cells of the outer root-sheath—stratum cylindricum—pass over the papilla and turn upward to form the medulla of the hair; the deeper cells—stratum spinosum—of the outer root-sheath become continuous with the cortex of the hair; the stratum lucidum, with the sheath of Henle, which turns up on the hair as its cuticle; Huxley's layer, with the cuticle of the inner root-sheath. According to this view growth of hair is accomplished by continuous growth downward from the surface, and turning up into the hair, of these layers.

TECHNIC.

Pin out small pieces of human scalp on cork and fix in absolute alcohol or in formalin-Müller's fluid (technic 5, p. 6). From one block cut sections perpendicular to the surface of the scalp and in the long axes of the hair and follicles. From a second block cut sections at right angles to the hair follicles, *i.e.*, not quite parallel to the surface of the scalp but a little obliquely. By this means not only are transverse sections secured, but if the block be sufficiently long the follicles are cut through at all levels. Sections are stained with hæmatoxylin-picro-acid-fuchsin (technic 3, p. 18) and mounted in balsam.

Blood-vessels of the skin. From the larger arteries in the subcutaneous tissue branches penetrate the pars reticularis of the derma, where they anastomose to form cutaneous networks. The latter give off branches, which pass to the papillary layer of the derma and there form a second series of networks, the subpapillary, just beneath the papillæ. From the cutaneous networks arise two sets of capillaries, one supplying the fat lobules, the other supplying the region of the sweat glands. From the subpapillary networks are given off small arteries which break up into capillary networks for the supply of the papillæ, sebaceous glands, and hair follicles. The return blood from these capillaries first enters a horizontal plexus of veins just under the papillæ. This communicates with a second plexus just beneath the first. Small veins from this second plexus pass alongside the arteries to the deeper part of the corium, where they form a third plexus with larger, more irregular meshes. Into this plexus pass most of the veins from the fat lobules and sweat glands, although one or two small veins from the sweat glands usually follow the duct and empty into the subpapillary plexus. The blood next passes into a fourth plexus in the subcutaneous tissue, from which arise veins of considerable size. These accompany the arteries.

Small arteries from the plexuses of the skin and subcutis pass to the hair follicle. The larger arterioles run longitudinally in the outer layer of the follicle. From these are given off branches which form a rich plexus of small arterioles and capillaries in the vascular layer of the follicle. Capillaries from this plexus also pass to the sebaceous glands, the arrectores pilorum muscles, and the papillæ.

The **lymphatics** of the skin. These begin as clefts in the papillæ, which open into a horizontal network of lymph capillaries in the pars papillaris. This communicates with a network of larger lymph capillaries with wider meshes in the subcutaneous tissue. The latter also receives lymph capillaries from plexuses which surround the sebaceous glands, the sweat glands, and the hair follicles.

The **nerves** of the skin. These are mainly sensory. Motor sympathetic axones supply the smooth muscle of the walls of the blood-vessels and of the arrectores pilorum. The medullated sensory nerves are dendrites of spinal ganglion cells. The larger trunks lie in the subcutis, giving off branches which pass to the corium, where they form a rich subpapillary plexus of both medullated and non-medullated fibres. From the subcutaneous nerve-trunks and from the subpapillary plexus are given off fibres which terminate in more or less elaborate special nerve endings (see page 348). Their location is as follows: (1) *In the subcutis:* Vater-Pacinian corpuscles, the corpuscles of Ruffini, and the Golgi-Mazzoni corpuscles of the finger-tip. The first two forms are most numerous in the palms and soles. (2) *In the derma:* Tactile corpuscles of Meissner and Wagner. These are found in the papillæ, especially of the finger-tip, palm, and sole. Krause's end bulbs—usually in the derma just beneath the papillæ, more rarely in the papillæ themselves. (3) *In the epithelium:* Free nerve endings and tactile corpuscles.

Branches of the cutaneous nerves supply the hair follicles. As a rule but one nerve passes to each follicle, entering it just below the entrance of the duct of the sebaceous gland. As it enters the follicle the nerve fibre loses its medullary sheath and divides into two branches, which further subdivide to form a ring-like plexus of fine fibres encircling the follicle. From this ring, small varicose fibrils run for a short distance up the follicle, terminating mainly in slight expansions on the vitreous membrane.

TECHNIC.

For the study of the blood-vessels of the skin inject (technic p. 21) the entire hand or foot of a new-born child. Examine rather thick sections either mounted unstained or stained only with eosin.

Development of the Skin, Nails, and Hair.

The epidermis is, as already noted, of ectodermic origin. It consists at first of a single layer of cuboidal cells. This soon differentiates into two layers—an outer, the future stratum corneum, and an inner, the future stratum germinativum. The stratum granulosum and stratum lucidum are special developments of the stratum germinativum. The corium is of mesoblastic origin. It is at first smooth, the papillæ being a secondary development.

The nail first appears as a thickening of the stratum lucidum. This spreads until the future nail bed is completely covered. During development the stratum corneum extends completely over the nail as its eponychium. During the ninth month (intra-uterine) the nail begins to grow forward free from its bed and the eponychium disappears, except as already noted.

The hair also develops from ectoderm. It first appears about the end of the third fœtal month as a small local thickening of the epidermis. This thickening is due mainly to proliferation of the cells of the stratum mucosum, and soon pushes its way down into the underlying corium, forming a long slender cord of cells—the hair germ. Differentiation of the surrounding connective tissue of the corium forms the follicle wall, while an invagination of this connective tissue into the lower end of the hair germ forms the papilla. The cells of the hair germ now differentiate into two layers: a central core the middle portion of which forms the hair, while the peripheral portion forms the inner root sheath; and an outer layer which becomes the outer root sheath. The sublayers are formed from these by subsequent differentiation. The hair when first formed lies wholly beneath the surface of the skin. As the hair reaches the surface its pointed extremity pierces the surface epithelium to become the hair shaft.

The sebaceous gland develops as an outgrowth from the outer root sheath. This is a flask-shaped and at first solid mass of cells, which later differentiate to form the ducts and alveoli of the gland.

The sweat glands first appear as solid ingrowths of the stratum germinativum into the underlying corium. The lower end of the ingrowth becomes thickened and convoluted to form the coiled portion of the gland, and somewhat later the central portion becomes channelled out to form the lumen. The muscle tissue of the sweat glands, which lies between the epithelium and the basement membrane, is the only muscle of the body derived from the ectoderm.

The Mammary Gland.

The mammary gland is a compound alveolar gland. It consists of from fifteen to twenty lobes, each of which is subdivided into lobules. The gland is surrounded by a layer of connective tissue containing more or less fat. From this periglandular connective tissue broad septa extend into the gland, separating the lobes (interlobar septa). From the latter finer connective-tissue bands pass in between the lobules (interlobular septa). From the interlobular septa strands of connective tissue extend into the lobule where they act as support for the glandular structures proper. An excretory duct passes to each lobe where it divides into a number of smaller ducts (lobular ducts), one of which runs to each lobule. Within the latter the lobular duct breaks up into a number of terminal ducts, which in turn open into groups of alveoli. The fifteen to twenty main excretory ducts pass through the nipple and open on its surface. At the base of the nipple each main duct presents a sac-like dilatation, the *ampulla*, which appears to act as a reservoir for the storage of the milk.

Until puberty the gland continues to develop alike in both sexes, but after about the twelfth year the male gland undergoes retrogressive changes, while the female gland continues its development.

The inactive mammary gland, by which is meant the female gland up to the advent of the first pregnancy and between periods of lactation, consists mainly of connective tissue and a few scattered groups of excretory ducts (Fig. 216). Around the ends of some of the ducts are small groups of collapsed alveoli. Both ducts and alveoli are lined with a low columnar, often rather flat epithelium.

The Active Mammary Gland.—Throughout pregnancy the gland undergoes extensive developmental changes and becomes functional at about the time of birth of the child. The microscopic appearance of the active gland differs greatly from that of the inactive (Fig. 217). There is a marked reduction in the connective tissue of the gland, its place being taken by newly developed ducts and alveoli. The alveoli are spheroidal, oval, or irregular in shape,

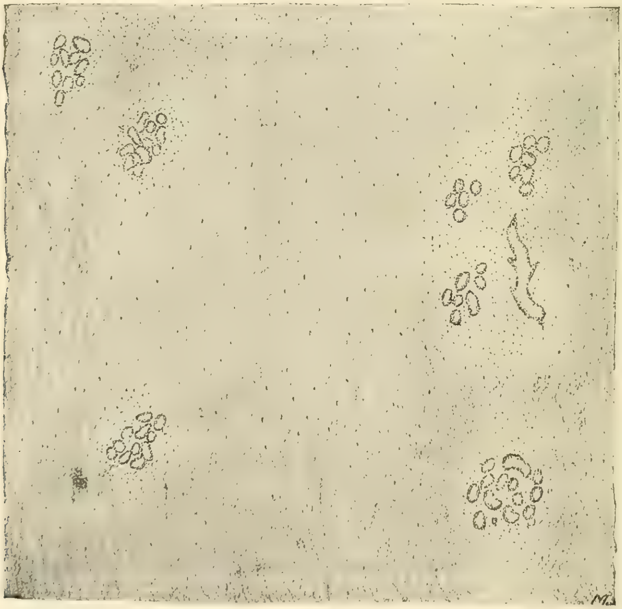


FIG. 216.—From Section of Human Inactive Mammary Gland. × 25. (Technic 1, p. 335.) Gland composed almost wholly of connective tissue; few scattered groups of tubules.

and vary considerably in size. The alveoli are lined by a single layer of low columnar or cuboidal epithelial cells which rest upon a homogeneous basement membrane. The appearance of the cells differs according to their secretory conditions. The resting cell is cuboidal and its protoplasm granular. With the onset of secretion the cell elongates, and a number of minute fat droplets appear. These unite to form one or two large globules of fat in the free end of the cell. The fat is next discharged into the lumen of the alveolus, and

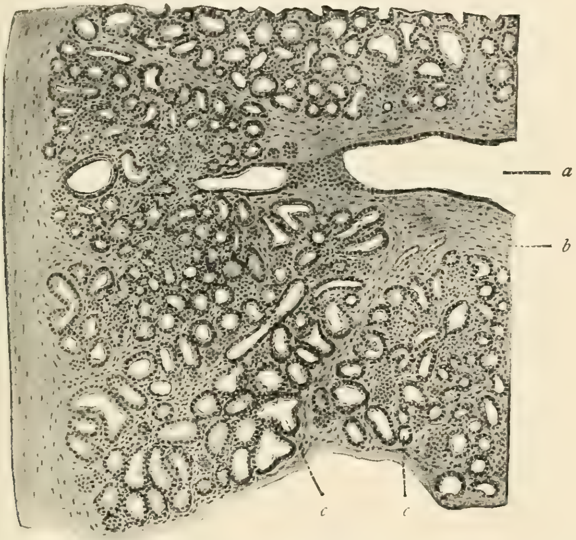


FIG. 217.—From Section of Human Mammary Gland during Lactation. × 50. (Stöhr.) *a*, Branch of excretory duct; *b*, interlobular connective tissue; *c*, alveoli.

regeneration of the cell takes place from the unchanged basal portion. As to the number of times a cell is able to go through this process of secretion and repair before it must be replaced by a new cell, nothing definite is known. Active secretion does not as a rule take place in all the alveoli of a lobule at the same time. Each lobule thus contains both active and inactive alveoli. The smallest ducts are lined with a low columnar or cuboidal epithelium. This increases in height with increase in the diameter of the duct until in the largest ducts the epithelium is of the high columnar type.

The secretion of the gland is milk. This consists microscopically of a clear fluid or plasma in which are suspended the milk globules. The latter are droplets of fat from 3 to 5 μ in diameter, each enclosed in a thin albuminous membrane which prevents the droplets from coalescing. Cells, probably leucocytes, containing fat droplets may also be present. In the secretion of the gland during the later months of pregnancy, and also for a few days following the birth of the child, a relatively large number of large fat-containing leucocytes —*colostrum corpuscles*—are found.

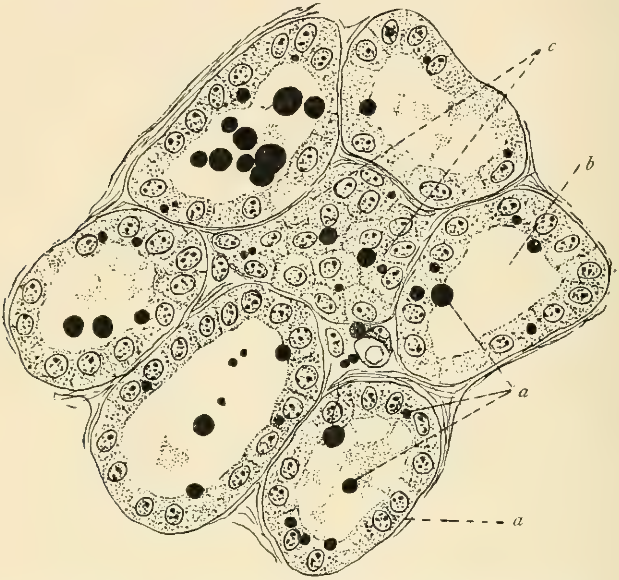


FIG. 218.—From Section of Mammary Gland of Guinea-pig during Lactation. × 500. (Osmic acid.) (Szymonowicz.) *a*, Basement membrane; *b*, lumen of alveolus; *c*, tangential section of alveolus; *d*, fat globules.

Blood-vessels.—These enter the gland, branch and ramify in the interlobar and interlobular connective tissue, and finally terminate in capillary networks among the alveoli and ducts. From the capillaries arise veins which accompany the arteries.

Lymphatics.—Lymph capillaries form networks among the alveoli and terminal ducts. The lymph capillaries empty into larger lymphatics in the connective tissue. These in turn communicate with several lymph vessels which convey the lymph to the axillary glands.

Nerves.—Both cerebro-spinal and sympathetic nerves supply the gland, the larger trunks following the interlobar and interlobular connective-tissue septa. The nerve terminals break up into plexuses which surround the alveoli just outside their basement membranes.

From these plexuses, delicate fibrils have been described passing through the basement membrane and ending between the secreting cells.

DEVELOPMENT.—The development of the mammary gland is quite similar to the development of the sebaceous glands. The gland first appears as a dipping down of solid cord-like masses of cells from the stratum mucosum. The alveoli remain rudimentary until the advent of pregnancy. After lactation the alveoli atrophy, being replaced by connective tissue, and the gland returns to the resting state. After the menopause a permanent atrophy of the gland begins, fat and connective tissue ultimately almost wholly replacing the glandular elements.

TECHNIC.

(1) Fix thin slices of an inactive mammary gland in formalin-Müller's fluid (technic 5, p. 6). Stain sections with hæmatoxylin-eosin (technic 1, p. 17), and mount in balsam.

(2) Prepare sections of an active mammary gland, as in preceding technic (1).

(3) Fix very thin small pieces of an active gland in one-per-cent aqueous solution of osmic acid. After twenty-four hours wash in water and harden in graded alcohols. Thin sections may be mounted unstained, or after slight eosin stain, in glycerin.

General References for Further Study.

Kölliker: Handbuch der Gewebelehre des Menschen.

Ranvier: Traité Technique d'Histologie.

Schäfer: Essentials of Histology.

Spalteholz: Die Vertheilung der Blutgefässe in der Haut. Arch. Anat. u. Phys., Anat. Abth., 1893.

McMurrick: Development of the Human Body.

CHAPTER XI.

THE NERVOUS SYSTEM.

THE nervous mechanism in man consists of two distinct though associated systems, the *cerebro-spinal nervous system* and the *sympathetic nervous system.* Each of these systems is composed of a central portion (which is its centre of nervous activity) and of a peripheral portion (which serves to place the centre in connection with the organs which it controls). In the cerebro-spinal system the central portion is known as the central nervous system and consists of the cerebro-spinal axis, or brain and spinal cord. The peripheral portion is formed by the cranial and spinal nerves. The central portion of the sympathetic system consists of a series of ganglia from which the sympathetic nerves take origin. These latter constitute its peripheral portion.

Histological Development.

The beginning differentiation of the nervous system appears very early in embryonic life. There is first the formation of a groove or furrow in the outer embryonic layer, or ectoderm. This is known as the *neural groove.* On either side of this groove is an elevation—the *neural fold.* By the dorsal union of these folds the neural groove is converted into the *neural tube.* The lumen of the neural tube corresponds to the central canal of the cord and the ventricles of the brain in the adult, and it is from the ectodermic cells which form the walls of this tube that the entire nervous system is developed. At that end of the neural tube which corresponds to the head of the embryo the greatest development takes place. Here are early formed the three primary cerebral vesicles. These are known respectively as the *forebrain* (anterior cerebral vesicle—prosencephalon), the *midbrain* (middle cerebral vesicle—mesencephalon), and the *hindbrain* (posterior cerebral vesicle—rhombencephalon). From the anterior cerebral vesicle are developed the cerebral hemispheres, the corpus striatum, the optic thalamus, and posteriorly as far as the anterior corpora quadrigemina. From the middle cerebral vesicle are developed the corpora quadrigemina and the cerebral peduncles. From the posterior cerebral vesicle are developed the cerebellum, pons, and medulla oblongata. From the remainder of the neural tube is formed the spinal cord.

The wall of the neural tube is at first composed of a single layer of epithelial cells. By proliferation of these cells the epithelium soon becomes many-layered, although some of the original epithelial cells still extend through the entire thickness of the wall.

Some of the cells which extend through the entire thickness of the wall of the neural tube (*spongioblasts of His*) increase in length as the wall increases in thickness. The inner ends of these cells form the lining of the tube, while the parts of the cells between the lumen and the nuclei tend to collapse, forming cord-like structures. The outer ends of the cells, on the other hand, become perforated and unite to form a thick network—the *marginal veil* of *His*. Of these cells, some retain this position in the adult and are known as *ependymal cells;* others move away from the central canal and become *neuroglia cells*. Other of the cells which form the wall of the neural tube also develop into various forms of glia cells.

Still other of the cells of the neural tube are destined to become neurones, and as such are known as *neuroblasts*. From the outer end of the neuroblast a process grows out—the future axone. Dendrites which at this stage are absent develop later in a similar manner, *i.e.*, by extensions of the cell protoplasm. The neuroblasts soon leave their original position near the central canal and pass outward along the spaces between the elongated ependymal cells. The directions which these neuroblasts take seem to be determined largely by the lines of least resistance offered by the network of the marginal veil. A large number of these cells pass ventrally, their axones piercing the marginal veil and leaving the cord as the ventral root fibres. Other neuroblasts pass laterally and dorsally. The axones of these neuroblasts seem to meet such opposition in the marginal veil that they do not pierce it, but are directed upward and downward within the cord. Later becoming medullated, these axones constitute many of the fibres of the white matter of the cord.

During the closure of the neural groove, groups of cells from the crest of each neural fold become separated from the rest of the developing nervous system. From these are formed the spinal ganglia. The ganglia of the sympathetic system are, according to His, formed of cells which pass out from the spinal ganglia to the positions occupied later by the sympathetic ganglia. According to others some of the cells of the sympathetic ganglia may be derived from cells which migrate from the neural tube along the ventral roots.

Membranes of The Brain and Cord.

The brain and cord are enclosed by two connective-tissue membranes, the dura mater and the pia mater.

The *dura mater* is the outer of the two membranes and consists of dense fibrous tissue. The *cerebral dura* serves both as an investing membrane for the brain and as periosteum for the inner surfaces of the cranial bones. It consists of two layers: (*a*) An inner layer of closely packed fibro-elastic tissue containing many connective-tissue cells, and lined on its brain surface with a single layer of flat cells; and (*b*) an outer layer, which forms the periosteum and is similar in structure to the inner layer, but much richer in blood-vessels and nerves. Between the two layers are large venous sinuses. The *spinal dura* corresponds to the inner layer of the cerebral dura, which it resembles in structure, the vertebræ having their own separate periosteum. The outer surface of the spinal dura is covered with a single layer of flat cells, and is separated from the periosteum by the epidural space, which contains anastomosing venous channels lying in an areolar tissue rich in fat.

The *pia mater* closely invests the brain and cord, extending into the sulci and sending prolongations into the ventricles. It consists of fibro-elastic tissue arranged in irregular lamellæ, forming a spongy tissue, the cavities of which contain more or less fluid. The outer lamellæ are the most compact, and are covered on the dural surface by a single layer of flat cells. It is this external layer of the pia which is frequently described as a separate membrane, the *arachnoid.* The inner lamellæ of the pia are more loosely arranged, are more cellular and more vascular. Especially conspicuous are large, irregular cells with delicate bodies and large distinct nulcei. They lie upon the connective-tissue bundles partially lining the spaces.

The *Pacchionian bodies* are peculiar outgrowths from the outer layer of the pia mater cerebralis, which are most numerous along the longitudinal fissure. They are composed of fibrous tissue, and frequently contain fat cells and calcareous deposits.

Blood-vessels.—The spinal dura and the inner layer of the cerebral dura are poor in blood-vessels. The outer layer of the cerebral dura, forming as it does the periosteum of the cranial bones, is rich in blood-vessels which pass into and supply the bones. The pia is very vascular, especially its inner layers, from which vessels pass into the brain and cord.

TECHNIC.

For the study of the structure of the membranes of the brain and spinal cord, fix pieces of the cord with its membranes, and of the surface of the brain with membranes attached, in formalin-Müller's fluid (technic 5, p. 6) and stain sections with hæmatoxylin-eosin (technic 1, p. 17).

THE GANGLIA.

Ganglia are collections of nerve cells which are connected with the peripheral nerves. Each ganglion is surrounded by a connective-tissue capsule which is continuous with the perineurium. From this capsule connective-tissue trabeculæ extend into the ganglion, forming a connective-tissue framework. Within the ganglion the nerve cells

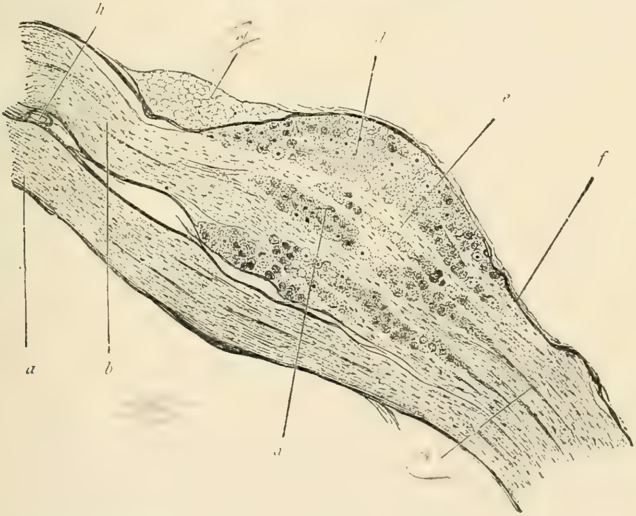


FIG. 219.—Longitudinal Section through a Spinal Ganglion. × 20. (Stöhr.) *a*, Ventral nerve root; *b*, dorsal nerve root; *c*, mixed spinal nerve; *d*, groups of ganglion cells; *e*, nerve fibres; *f*, perineurium; *g*, fat; *h*, blood-vessel.

are separated into irregular groups by strands of connective tissue and by bundles of nerve fibres. Ganglia are of two kinds: those of the cerebro-spinal system and those of the sympathetic system.

Cerebro-Spinal Ganglia (Fig. 219).—The spinal ganglia lie on the dorsal roots of the spinal nerves between their exit from the cord and their union with the ventral roots. The cerebral ganglia occupy an analogous position relative to the cranial nerves. The ganglion cells are large and spherical (Fig. 220). Each contains a centrally located nucleus and a distinct nucleolus, and is surrounded by a capsule of flat, concentrically arranged connective-tissue cells (Fig. 220, *s*). Stained by Nissl's method the cytoplasm is seen to contain rather small, finely granular chromophilic bodies, which show a tendency to concentric arrangement around the nucleus. Pigmentation is common. According to Dogiel (Fig. 221) there are two distinct types of ganglion cells: (1) Unipolar ganglion cells, the single process of which divides, one branch entering the cord as one of the fibres of a dorsal nerve root, the other becoming a fibre of a peripheral nerve. (2) Unipolar ganglion cells, the single process of which almost immediately splits up into many fine medullated fibres. These remain within the ganglion and end in dense feltworks around

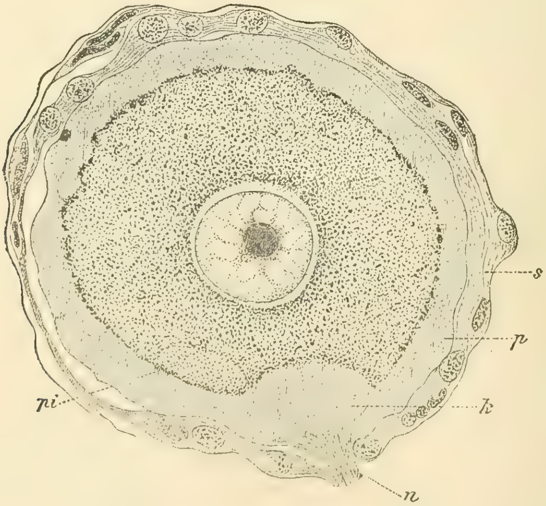


Fig. 220.—Large Spinal Ganglion Cell from Human Spinal Ganglion showing Connective-tissue Capsule. (From Barker, after von Lenhossék.) *s*, Capsule; *p*, peripheral zone of clear cytoplasm; *k*, axone hill; *n*, axone; *pi*, pigment.

other spinal ganglion cells. A few multipolar cells are also described as occurring in the spinal ganglia. In addition to the processes of these ganglion cells, most of which are medullated and which make up the main mass of fibres of the ganglia, there are also a few fine non-medullated fibres which come from cells in adjacent sympathetic ganglia and end in arborizations around the spinal ganglion cells. Dogiel believes that these end entirely around cells of the second type.

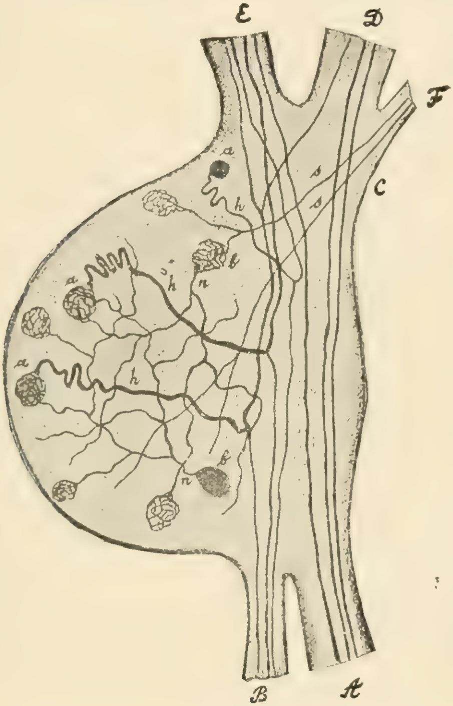


FIG. 221.—Scheme of Neurone Relations within a Spinal Ganglion, according to Dogiel. (Barker.) *A*, Ventral root; *B*, dorsal root; *C*, spinal nerve; *D*, ventral division, *E*, dorsal division of spinal nerve; *F*, communicating branch to sympathetic; *a*, spinal ganglion cell of first type, the main process of which (*h*) divides, one arm passing centrally as a fibre of the dorsal root, the other peripherally as an afferent fibre of the mixed spinal nerve; *b*, spinal ganglion cell of second type, the axone of which (*n*) ends in a pericellular network around the bodies of cells of the first type; *s*, sympathetic fibres ending in plexuses around the bodies of cells of the second type.

The relation of the spinal ganglion cell to the dorsal roots is described on page 355.

THE SYMPATHETIC GANGLIA.—The larger ganglia resemble the spinal ganglia in having a connective-tissue capsule and framework.

The cells are smaller and often densely pigmented. Each cell is surrounded by a capsule of flat connective-tissue cells, but the capsule is not so thick and distinct as that of the spinal ganglion cell. Most of the cells are multipolar. The fibres which traverse these ganglia are mainly of the non-medullated variety. Sympathetic ganglion cells are not confined, however, to definite ganglionic structures, but occur in ill-defined groups in certain of the viscera, *e.g.*, in the heart and in the intestinal plexuses of Meissner and Auerbach. Groups of two or three cells, or even single cells, are also found scattered along the sympathetic nerves. Such cells show great variation in shape, size, and internal structure.

TECHNIC.

(1) Fix spinal and sympathetic ganglia in formalin-Müller's fluid (technic 5, p. 6). Stain sections with hæmatoxylin-eosin (technic 1, p. 17), or with hæmatoxylin-picro-acid fuchsin (technic 3, p. 18).

(2) Fix spinal and sympathetic ganglia in absolute alcohol or in ten-per-cent formalin, and stain sections by Nissl's method (technic, p. 32).

(3) See also technic 1, p. 360.

THE PERIPHERAL NERVES.

The peripheral nerves are divided into spinal nerves and cranial nerves, the former taking origin from the cord, the latter from higher centres. Each spinal nerve consists of two parts—a motor or efferent part and a sensory or afferent part. Of the cranial nerves some are purely efferent, others purely afferent, while still others consist like the spinal nerves of both efferent and afferent fibres. The efferent fibres of the spinal nerves are axones of cell bodies situated in the anterior horns of the cord (see p. 357, and Figs. 227 and 236). They leave the cord as separate bundles, which join to form the motor or efferent root. The afferent fibres are peripheral processes of cell bodies situated in the spinal ganglia (p. 351 and Figs. 227, 236). These leave the ganglion and join with the fibres of the motor root to form the mixed spinal nerve (Fig. 227, *f*). The connection of the ganglion with the cord is by means of the axones of the spinal ganglion cells, which enter the cord as the posterior root (Fig. 236). Among the afferent fibres of the posterior root are also found a few efferent fibres (Fig. 227, *c*), processes of cells in the cord.

The peripheral nerve consists of nerve fibres supported by connective tissue (Fig. 222). Enclosing the entire nerve is a sheath of dense connective-tissue, the *epineurium.* This sends septa into the nerve which divide the fibres into a number of bundles or *fascicles.* Surrounding each fascicle the connective tissue forms a fairly distinct sheath, the *perifascicular sheath* or *perineurium.* From the latter, delicate strands of connective tissue pass into the fascicle, separating the individual nerve fibres. This constitutes the *intrafascicular connective tissue* or *endoneurium.* In the connective-tissue layers of the perineurium are lymph spaces lined with endothelium, which communicate with lymph channels within the fascicle. When nerves branch, the connective-tissue sheaths follow the branchings. When the nerve becomes reduced to a single fibre, the connective tissue still remaining constitutes the sheath of Henle (see Fig. 66, p. 112). For description of medullated and non-medullated nerve fibres see pages 111 and 112.

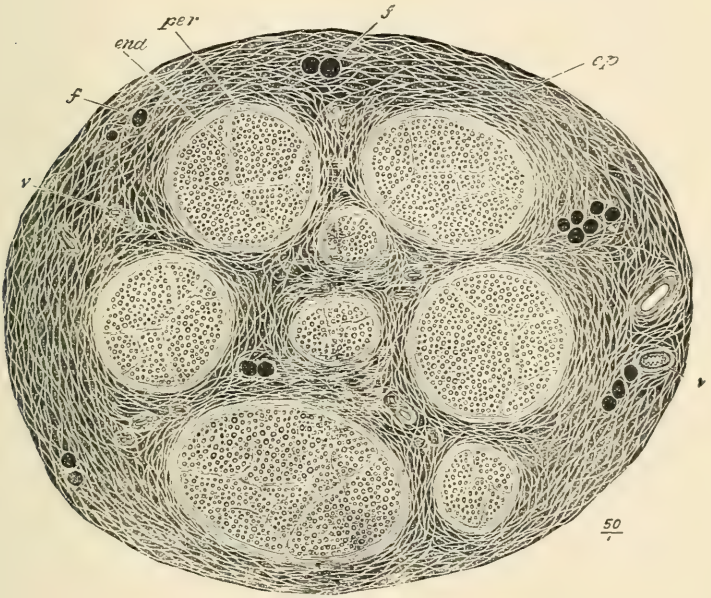


FIG. 222.—From Transverse Section of Human Nerve Trunk. (Osmic acid fixation.) (Quain.) *ep*, Nerve sheath or epineurium surrounding the entire nerve and containing blood-vessels (*v*) and small groups of fat cells (*f*); *per*, perifascicular sheath or perineurium surrounding each bundle or fascicle of nerve fibres; *end*, interior of fascicle showing supporting connective tissue, the endoneurium.

For sensory-nerve terminations see page 352; for motor-nerve terminations see page 357.

TECHNIC.

Fix a medium-sized nerve, such as the human radial or ulnar, by suspending it, with a weight attached to the lower end, in formalin-Müller's fluid (technic 5, p. 6). Stain transverse sections in hæmatoxylin-picro-acid fuchsin (technic 3, p. 18) and mount in balsam.

THE SPINAL CORD.

The spinal cord encased in its membranes lies loosely in the vertebral canal, extending from the upper border of the first cervical vertebra to the middle or lower border of the first lumbar vertebra. It is cylindrical in shape and continuous above with the medulla oblongata, while below it terminates in a slender cord, the *filum terminale.* At two levels, one in the cervical and one in the lumbar region, the diameter of the cord is considerably increased. These are known respectively as the *cervical* and *lumbar enlargements.* The spinal nerve roots leave the cord at regular intervals, thus indicating a division of the cord into segments, each segment extending above and below its nerve roots one-half the distance to the next adjacent roots. There are 31 segments corresponding to the 31 spinal nerves; 8 cervical, 12 dorsal, 5 lumbar, 5 sacral, and 1 coccygeal.

If the fresh cord be cut through, it is seen to consist of a central *gray matter* surrounded by a peripheral zone of *white matter.* The difference in color is due to the fact that the peripheral zone is composed almost entirely of medullated nerve fibres with their white myelin sheaths, while the gray matter is comparatively poor in medullated fibres, consisting mainly of nerve cell bodies and their dendritic processes. The greater vascularity of the gray matter also contributes to its color.

The internal structure of the cord can be best studied by means of transverse sections taken at different levels.

TECHNIC.

(1) Carefully remove the cord (human if possible; if not, that of a large dog) with its membranes, cut into two or three pieces if necessary, and lay on sheet cork. Slit the dura along one side of the cord, lay the folds back, and pin the dura to the cork. Care must be taken to leave the dura very loose, otherwise it will flatten the cord as it shrinks in hardening. With a sharp razor now cut the cord, but not the dura, into segments about 1 cm. thick. Fix for two weeks in Müller's fluid, wash in water to which a little formalin has been added, harden in

graded alcohols. Pieces of the cord may be cut out as wanted and embedded in celloidin. Sections should be cut about 15 μ in thickness.

(2) For the study of the general internal structure of the cord, stain a section through the lumbar enlargement of a cord prepared according to the preceding technic (1) in hæmatoxylin-picro-acid fuchsin (technic 3, p. 18) and another section through the same level in Weigert's hæmatoxylin (technic p. 27). Mount both in balsam.

PRACTICAL STUDY.

SECTION THROUGH THE LUMBAR ENLARGEMENT (Fig. 223).—The general features of the section can be best seen with the naked eye or with a low-power dissecting lens.

(1) In the picro-acid-fuchsin-stained section note the *shape* and *size* of the cord, and that it is surrounded by a thin membrane, the *pia mater spinalis;* the *anterior median fissure*, broad and shallow, into which the pia mater extends; the *posterior median septum* consisting of neuroglia, and over which the pia mater passes without entering.

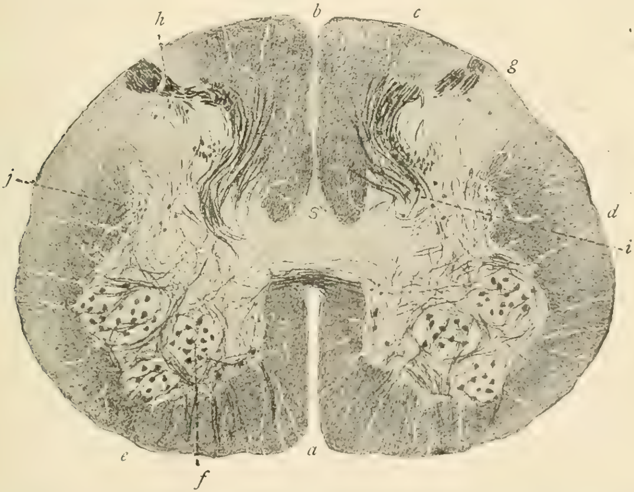


FIG. 223.—Cross Section of Human Spinal Cord through the Fifth Lumbar Segment. × 10. (Weigert stain.) (Marburg.) *a*, Anterior median fissure; *b*, posterior septum; *c*, posterior column; *d*, lateral column; *e*, anterior column; *f*, cell groups of anterior horn; *g*, posterior horn; *h*, posterior root fibres; *i*, Clarke's column and fibres entering it; *j*, reticular process. In the centre of the figure is seen the central canal surrounded by the central gelatinous substance. Ventral and dorsal to the latter, but not distinguishable from it, are the ventral and dorsal gray commissures. The dorsal white commissure is seen at *s*, while the thick bundle of fibres at the bottom of the anterior fissure is the ventral white commissure. In the broad head of the posterior horn is a large light area, the gelatinous substance of Rolando, between which and the surface of the cord is the zone of Lissauer. Note fibres passing from the posterior columns into the gray matter of the posterior horns, especially into the column of Clarke; the grouping of cells in the anterior horn, and the anterior root fibres passing to the surface.

The *gray matter* is seen in the central part of the section, stained red, and arranged somewhat in the form of the letter H. Posteriorly the gray matter extends almost to the surface of the cord as the *posterior horns* or *cornua*. The *anterior horns* are, on the other hand, short and broad, and do not approach the surface of the cord. Surrounding the gray matter is the *white matter* stained yellow. This is divided by the posterior horn into two parts, one lying between the horn and the posterior median septum, the *posterior column;* the other comprising the remainder of the white matter, the *antero-lateral column*. This latter is again partially divided by the anterior horn and anterior nerve roots into a *lateral column* and an *anterior column*. In the concavity between the anterior and posterior horns some processes of the gray matter extend out into the white matter where they interlace with the longitudinally running fibres of the latter to form the *reticular process*.

For the study of further details the low-power objective should be used.

GRAY MATTER.—In the cross portion of the H is seen the *central canal*, usually obliterated in the adult and represented only by a group of epithelial cells. This group of cells divides the gray matter connecting the two sides of the cord into a *ventral gray commissure* and a *dorsal gray commissure*. Immediately surrounding the epithelial cells is a light granular area composed mainly of neuroglia and known as the *central gelatinous substance*. Toward the surface of the cord the posterior horn expands into a broad *head* or *caput*, in which is an area similar in general appearance to that surrounding the central canal, the *gelatinous substance of Rolando*. The head is connected with the rest of the gray matter by a narrower *neck* or *cervix*. Note the interlacing of fibres in the reticular process; the well-defined groups of large nerve cells in the anterior horns; the fibres which pass out from the anterior horns to the surface of the cord, *anterior nerve roots* (Fig. 223).

WHITE MATTER.—Note the general appearance of the white matter and the disposition of the supporting strands of neuroglia tissue (stained red). The neuroglia is seen to form a fairly thick layer just beneath the pia mater from which trabeculæ pass in among the fibres, the broadest strand forming the posterior median septum. If the section has been cut through a *posterior nerve root*, a strong bundle of *posterior root fibres* can be seen entering the white matter of the cord to the inner side of the posterior horn. Just ventral to the anterior gray commissure is a bundle of transversely-running medullated fibres—the *anterior white commissure* (Fig. 223).

Such finer details of structure as are brought out by this stain should next be studied with the high-power objective.

In the gray matter note the large multipolar *ganglion cells* of the anterior horn with their coarsely granular protoplasm. In the white matter note the *transversely-cut medullated fibres* and their marked variation in size. The shrunken axones are stained red, the usually somewhat broken up medullary sheaths, yellow. *Neuroglia cells* are not well shown by this method, but can be seen, especially in the region of the processus reticularis, with their irregular-shaped cell bodies and darkly stained nuclei.

(2) In the Weigert-stained section the only element stained is the *medullary sheath* (Fig. 223); consequently the white matter, which contains a much larger proportion of medullated fibres than the gray matter, is stained more deeply than the latter. Note first the same general structure seen in the preceding section, the nerve fibres, however, being much more clearly shown. Note the central gelatinous substance and the gelatinous substance of Rolando, conspicuous from their lack of medullated fibres. Separating the gelatinous substance of Rolando from the surface of the cord is a narrow zone, more lightly stained on account of its very fine fibres, and known as the *zone of Lissauer.* Note the exact mode of entrance and distribution within the cord of the posterior root fibres; the passage of the ventral root fibres to the surface of the cord; the already mentioned anterior white commissure; the posterior white commissure, consisting of a few medullated fibres crossing just dorsal to the posterior gray commissure. Note especially the *plexus of fine fibres* throughout the gray matter and the general *interchange of fibres* between the gray matter and the white matter (Fig. 223).

While the general structure above described obtains throughout the cord, the size and shape of the cord, the size and shape of the gray matter, and the relative proportion of gray matter and white matter, vary in different parts of the cord, which must therefore be separately considered.

TECHNIC.

(1) From a cord prepared according to technic 1, p. 344, remove small segments from each of the following levels: (1) the twelfth dorsal, (2) the mid-dorsal,

and (3) the cervical enlargement. The segments are embedded in celloidin, sections cut 15 to 20 μ thick, stained by Weigert's method (page 27), and mounted in balsam. Medullated sheaths alone are stained by this method and appear dark blue or black.

PRACTICAL STUDY.

SECTION THROUGH THE TWELFTH DORSAL SEGMENT (Fig. 224).—Note that the cord is smaller than in the lumbar enlargement and somewhat flattened dorso-ventrally; that the amount of gray matter and white matter is diminished; that both anterior and posterior horns are more slender, the anterior horn containing comparatively few cells. At the inner side and base of the posterior horn may be seen a small group of cells belonging to *Clarke's column.* These cells form a continuous column from the third lumbar to the seventh cervical segments, but are most numerous in the upper lumbar and lower dorsal region. Isolated portions of the nucleus are found in the sacral and in the upper cervical cord. Medullated fibres can be seen passing into Clarke's column, where they interlace among the ganglion cells.

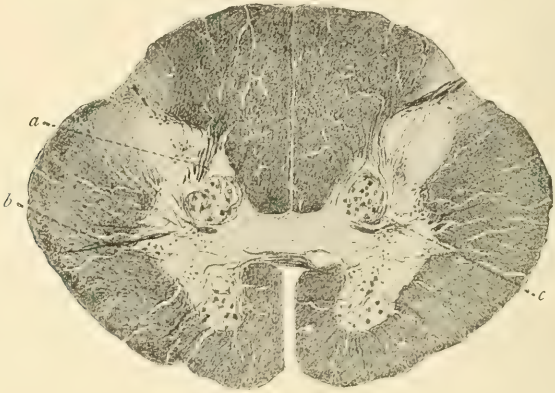


FIG. 224.—Cross Section of Human Spinal Cord through the Twelfth Dorsal Segment. × 10. (Weigert stain.) (Marburg.) *a*, Fibres of posterior column entering Clarke's column; *b*, fibres passing from Clarke's column cells to the direct cerebellar tract; *c*, Clarke's column.

SECTION THROUGH THE MID-DORSAL REGION (Fig. 225).—Compare with the lumbar sections. Note the change in shape and size; that the cord is more nearly round and smaller; that while the reduction in size affects both gray matter and white matter, it is the former that shows the greater decrease. The horns are even more slender than in the first lumbar section, and the anterior horn contains still fewer cells. Clarke's column is present, but not so large.

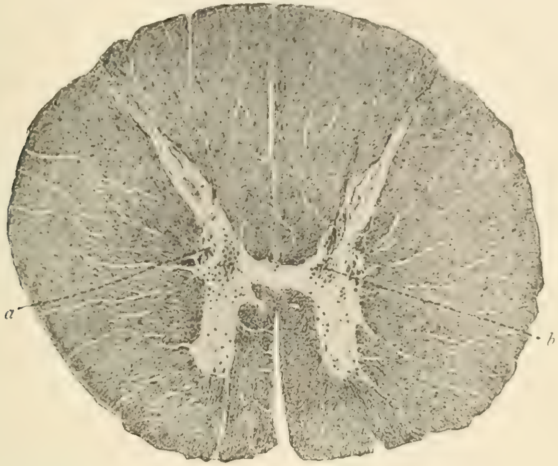


FIG. 225.—Cross Section of Human Spinal Cord through the Eighth Dorsal Segment. × 10. (Weigert stain.) (Marburg.) *a*, Reticular process; *b*, Clarke's column.

SECTION THROUGH THE CERVICAL ENLARGEMENT (Fig. 226).—Note the marked increase in size of the cord, which affects both gray

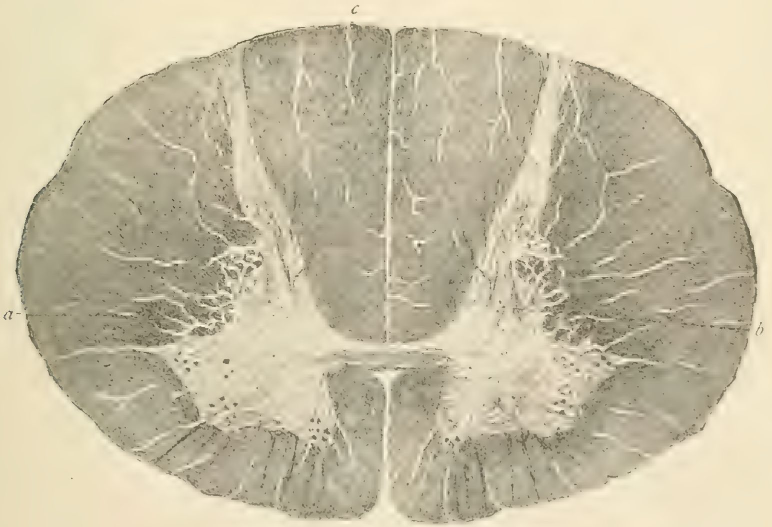


FIG. 226.—Cross Section of Human Spinal Cord through Fourth Cervical Segment. × 10. (Weigert stain.) (Marburg.) Note lateral extension of anterior horn to form the lateral horn. *a*, Reticular process; *b*, Clarke's column; *c*, septum between column of Goll and column of Burdach.

matter and white matter. Depending upon the exact level at which the section is taken, the cord may be nearly round or flattened dorso-ventrally. The posterior horns remain slender while the anterior are much broader and have lateral extensions known as the lateral horns. The *reticular process* is more prominent than in any of the previous sections. As in the lumbar cord, the cell groups of the anterior horn are numerous and well defined. A more or less definite septum divides the posterior column into an inner part, the *column of Goll*, and an outer part, the *column of Burdach*.

Origin of the Fibres which Make up the White Matter of the Cord.

It has already been observed that the white matter of the cord is composed mainly of medullated nerve fibres, most of which run in a longitudinal direction. From our study of the neurone it follows that each of these fibres must be the axone of some nerve cell. These cells, the axones of which form the white matter of the cord, are situated as follows:

A. Cells outside the spinal cord. (*Extrinsic cells.*)	(1) Cells outside the central nervous system (spinal ganglion cells).
	(2) Cells in other parts of the central nervous system (the brain).
B. Cells situated in the gray matter of the cord. (*Intrinsic cells.*)	(3) Root cells, such as those of the anterior horn, whose axones form the ventral root.
	(4) Column cells, whose axones enter into formation of the fibre columns of the cord.
	(5) Cells of Golgi, type II., the axones of which ramify in the gray matter. (These cells do not give rise to fibres of the white matter, but are conveniently mentioned here among the other cord cells.)

(1) THE SPINAL GANGLION CELL AND THE ORIGIN OF THE POSTERIOR COLUMNS.

The fibres of these columns consist mainly of *ascending* and *descending* branches of the fibres, which enter the cord as the *posterior nerve roots*. Following these fibres outward, they are seen to originate in the cells of the *spinal ganglia*. In very early embryonic life the group of cells which later becomes a spinal ganglion is represented by a few *ectodermic cells* which lie between the closing medullary plate and the external layer of the ectoderm. These cells become separated from the medullary plate by the mesoderm. At first round, these cells which have thus migrated from the central nervous system soon become spindle-shaped, and from each end of the spindle a process grows out: one, directed toward the surface of the body, joins the axones of the cells of the anterior horn to make up the mixed spinal nerve; the other, directed centrally, enters the cord as one of the fibres of the posterior root (Fig. 227). During its

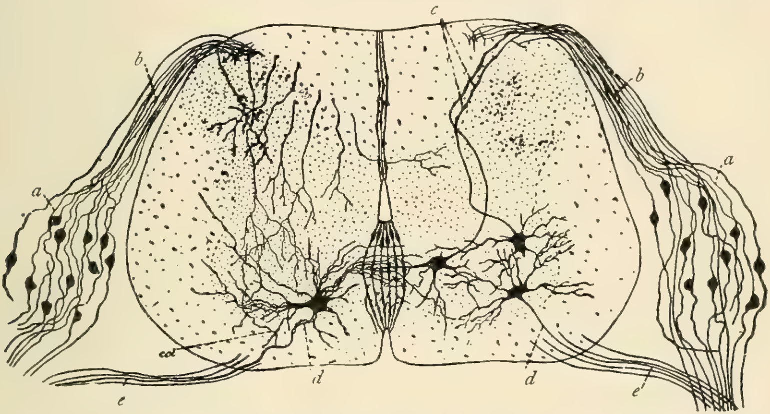


FIG. 227.—Transverse Section through Spinal Cord and Posterior Root Ganglia of an Embryo Chick. (Van Gehuchten.) *a*, Spinal ganglion, its bipolar cells sending their peripheral processes outward to become fibres of the mixed spinal nerve (*f*), their central processes into the dorsal columns of the cord as the dorsal root fibres (*b*); within the posterior columns these fibres can be seen bifurcating and sending collaterals into the gray matter of the posterior columns, one collateral passing to the gray matter of the opposite side. The few efferent fibres of the dorsal root (*c*) are disproportionately conspicuous. The large multipolar cells of the ventral horns are seen sending their axones (*d*) out of the cord as the ventral root fibres (*e*) which join the peripheral processes of the spinal ganglion cells to form the mixed spinal nerve (*f*); *col*, collateral from axone of ventral horn cell. Dendrites of the anterior horn cells are seen crossing the median line in the anterior commissure. About the centre of the cord is seen the central canal; dorsal and ventral to the latter some ependymal cells stretching from the canal to the periphery of the cord.

development the two processes of the bipolar cell approach each other and in the adult are connected with the cell body by a single process. The adult spinal ganglion cell is thus apparently a unipolar cell, its single process dividing and sending one arm toward the periphery, the other toward the spinal cord.

Entirely analogous to the spinal ganglia are the ganglia of the sensory cranial nerves, an exception to the unipolarity of the ganglion cell being found in the acoustic ganglia, where in man, and in mammals generally, the bipolar condition remains throughout life.

The PERIPHERAL ARMS OF THE SPINAL GANGLION CELLS make up the *sensory* or *afferent* portions of the spinal nerves. The modes of termination of these peripheral processes are extremely varied and complicated. These peripheral terminations are always free, in the sense that, while possibly sometimes penetrating cells, they probably never become directly continuous with their protoplasm.

In the skin, and in those mucous membranes which are covered with squamous epithelium, the nerve fibres lose their medullary sheaths in the subepithelial tissue, and, penetrating the epithelial layer, split up into minute fibrils which pass in between the cells and terminate there, often in little knob-like swellings (Fig. 228). In addition to such comparatively simple nerve endings, there are also found in the skin and mucous membranes, especially where sensation is most acute, much more elaborate terminations. These may be classified as (1) tactile cells, (2) tactile corpuscles, and (3) end bulbs.

A *simple tactile cell* is a single epithelial cell, the centrally directed end of which is in contact with a leaf-like expansion of the nerve terminal, the *tactile meniscus*. In the corpuscles of Grandry, found in the skin of birds, and in Merkel's corpuscles, which occur in mammalian skin, several epithelial cells are grouped together to receive the nerve terminations. These are known as *compound tac-*

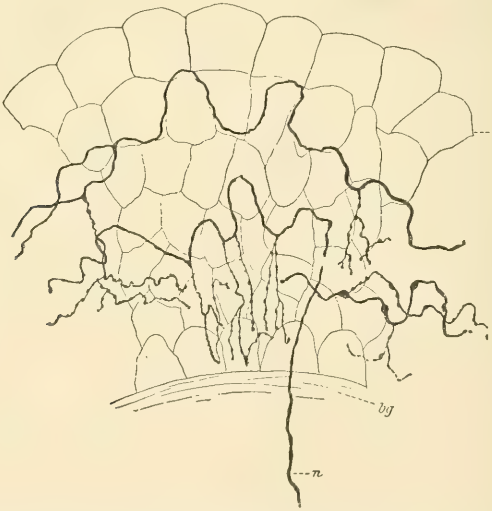


FIG. 228.—Free Endings of Afferent Nerve Fibres in Epithelium of Rabbit's Bladder. (Retzius.) *o*, Surface epithelium of bladder; *bg*, subepithelial connective tissue; *n*, nerve fibre entering epithelium where it breaks up into numerous terminals among the epithelial cells.

tile cells, the axis cylinder ending in a flat tactile disc or discs between the cells.

Of the *tactile corpuscles* (Fig. 229) those of Meissner, which occur in the skin of the fingers and toes, are the best examples. These corpuscles lie in the papillæ of the derma. They are oval bodies,

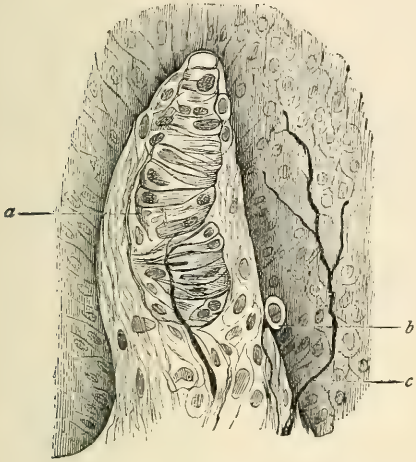


FIG. 229.

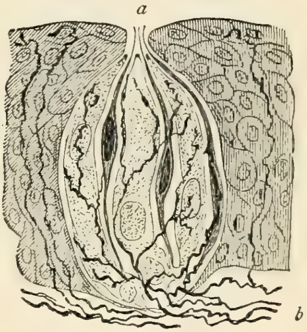


FIG. 230.

FIG. 229.—Tactile Corpuscle of Meissner, tactile cell and free nerve ending. (Merkel-Henle.) *a*, Corpuscle proper, outside of which is seen the connective-tissue capsule; *b*, fibre ending on tactile cell; *c*, fibre ending freely among epithelial cells.

FIG. 230.—Taste Bud from circumvallate papilla of tongue. (Merkel-Henle.) *a*, Taste pore; *b*, nerve fibres entering taste bud and ending upon neuro-epithelial cells. On either side fibres ending freely among epithelial cells. (See also page 452.)

surrounded by a connective-tissue capsule and composed of flattened cells. From one to four medullated nerve fibres are distributed to each corpuscle. As a fibre approaches a corpuscle, its neurilemma becomes continuous with the fibrous capsule, the medullary sheath disappears, and the fibrillæ pass in a spiral manner in and out among the epithelial cells.

Of the so-called *end bulbs*, the simplest, which are found in the mucous membrane of the mouth and conjunctiva, consist of a central core formed by the usually more or less expanded end of the axis cylinder, surrounded by a mass of finely granular, nucleated protoplasm—the inner bulb—the whole enclosed in a capsule of flattened connective-tissue cells. More complicated are the Pacinian bodies found in the subepithelial tissues of the skin and in many other organs of mammalia. The Pacinian bodies (Fig. 231) are laminated, elliptical structures which differ from the more simple end bulbs already described, mainly in the greater development of the capsule. The capsule is formed by a large number of concentric lamellæ, each lamella consisting of connective-tissue fibres lined by a single layer of flat connective-tissue cells. The lamellæ are separated from one another by a clear fluid or semi-fluid substance. As in the simpler end bulbs there is a cylindrical mass of protoplasm within the capsule known as the inner bulb. Extending lengthwise through the centre of the inner bulb, and often ending in a knob-like extremity, is the axis cylinder (Fig. 231).

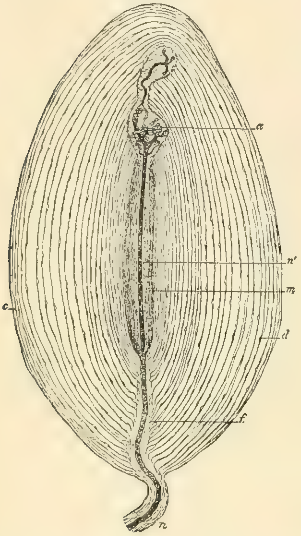


FIG. 231.—Pacinian Body from Mesentery of Cat. (Ranvier.) *c*, Lamina of capsule; *d*, epithelioid cells lying between lamina of capsule; *n*, nerve fibre, consisting of axis cylinder surrounded by Henle's sheath, leaving Pacinian body; *f*, perineural sheath; *m*, inner bulb; *n*, terminal fibre which breaks up at *a* into irregular bulbous terminal arborizations.

In voluntary muscle afferent nerves terminate in *Pacinian corpuscles*, in *end bulbs*, and in complicated end organs called *muscle spindles*, or neuromuscular bundles. The muscle spindle (Fig. 232) is an elongated, cylindrical structure within which are muscle fibres, connective tissue, blood-vessels, and medullated nerves. The whole is enclosed in a connective-tissue sheath which is pierced at various points by nerve fibres. A single spindle contains several muscle fibres and nerves. According to Ruffini, there are three modes of ultimate terminations of the nerve fibrils within the spindles: one in which the end fibrils form a series of rings which encircle the individual muscle fibre, he calls *annular terminations;* a second in which the nerve fibrils wrap around the muscle fibres in a spiral manner—*spiral terminations;* a third in which the terminations take the form of delicate expansions on the muscle fibre—*arborescent terminations.* At the junction of muscle and tendon are found the elaborate afferent terminal structures known as the *muscle-tendon organs of Golgi.*

In heart muscle (Fig. 233) and in smooth muscle (Fig. 234) the nerves of the sympathetic system end in *fine feltworks of fibres,* which are in relation with the muscle cells. Satisfactory differentiation between efferent terminals and afferent terminals in heart and in smooth muscle has not yet been made.

In organs whose parenchyma is made up of so-called glandular epithelium, the sympathetic nerves terminate mainly in *free endings* which lie in the cement substance between the cells, thus coming in contact with, though not penetrating, the epithelial cells.

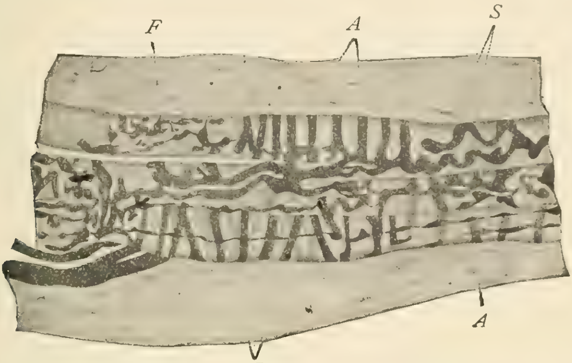


FIG. 232.—Middle Third of Muscle Spindle from Striated Voluntary Muscle Fibre of Cat. (From Barker, after Ruffini.) *A*, rings; *S*, spirals; *F*, dendritic branchings.

It is important to bear constantly in mind the fact that these nerve terminals, however complicated, are in no sense nerve centres like the ganglion cells, but merely more or less elaborate end arborizations for the purpose of receiving impulses.

Because of the fact that it transmits the impulse toward its cell of origin, as well as because of certain other facts, Van Gehuchten considers this peripheral arm of the spinal ganglion cell of the nature of a protoplasmic process.

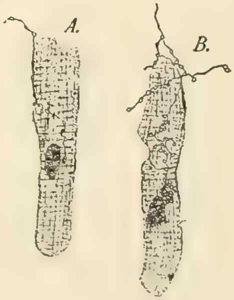


FIG. 233.—Nerve Endings on Heart Muscle Cells. (From Barker, after Huber and De Witt.)

THE CENTRALLY DIRECTED PROCESS OF THE SPINAL GANGLION CELL.—According to Van Gehuchten this represents the *true axone*. It enters the spinal cord as one of the fibres of the posterior root, the entire bundle of posterior root fibres of a single spinal nerve consisting of all the central axones of the corresponding spinal ganglion (Fig. 227). Having entered the cord, the axone divides in the posterior columns into an *ascending arm* and a *descending arm*, and these ascending and descending arms of the central processes of the cells of the spinal ganglia constitute the great majority of the fibres of the posterior columns. The descending arm is usually short, sends off branches known as *collaterals* into the gray matter of the cord, and itself terminates there at no great distance below its point of entrance into the cord. The ascending arm may behave in a similar manner, passing up the cord but a short distance, where, after sending collaterals into the gray matter, it also terminates in the gray matter of the cord (Fig. 237). Instead of being short it may be of considerable length, passing some distance up the cord before finally terminating in the gray matter. It may, as one of the long fibres of the posterior columns, continue into the medulla to end there in one of the posterior column nuclei.

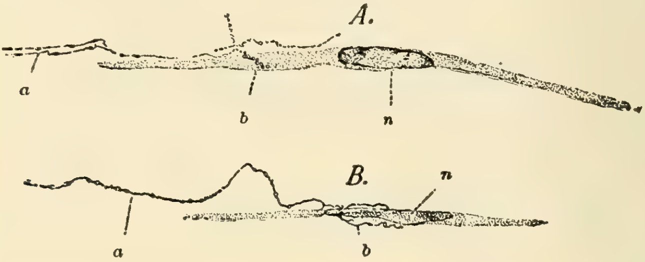


FIG. 234.—Nerve Endings on Smooth Muscle Cells. (From Barker, after Huber and De Witt.) *a*, Axis cylinder ; *b*, its termination ; *n*, nucleus of muscle cell.

(2) CELLS SITUATED IN OTHER PARTS OF THE CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM WHICH CONTRIBUTE AXONES TO THE WHITE COLUMNS OF THE CORD.

These cells are situated in the motor areas of the cortex, in the mid brain, cerebellum (?), pons, and medulla. The axones of these cells pass down the cord, forming the descending fibre tracts of the cord (p. 366).

(3) ROOT CELLS—MOTOR CELLS OF THE ANTERIOR HORN.

These are large *multipolar* cells found at all levels of the cord and having analogues in the motor nuclei of the cranial nerves. Their axones pass out of the ventral horn, across the ventro-lateral column, and leave the cord as the anterior, motor, or efferent roots of the spinal nerves (Fig. 227, *c*). The fibres of this root pass by the spinal ganglion without entering it, and beyond join the fibres from the ganglion to form the mixed spinal nerve. On their way to the muscles the motor axones may bifurcate several times, thus allowing one neurone to innervate more than one muscle fibre. In the perimysium the nerve fibres undergo further branching, after which the fibres lose their medullary sheaths and pass to the individual muscle fibres. Here each fibre breaks up into several club-like terminals which constitute the *motor end plate.* The location of the end plate, whether within or without the sarcolemma, has not been determined. As a rule each muscle fibre is supplied with a single end plate, though in large fibres there may be several.

These motor cells are most numerous in the cervical and lumbar enlargements. In cross sections of the cord, especially through the enlargements, a more or less definite grouping of these cells is evident (Figs. 223 and 226). These groups extend for varying distances up and down the cord, forming *nuclei,* each one of which corresponds to the innervation of a particular muscle or group of muscles. Two columns of nuclei are quite constant throughout the entire length of the cord. They are known, from the positions which they occupy, as the *medial column* and the *intermedio-lateral column,* and are related to the muscles of the trunk. At certain levels these columns may be divided into secondary columns. In the cervical and lumbar enlargements other groups of nerve cells appear which are concerned in the innervation of the muscles of the extremities. They are known respectively as the *cell column of the upper extremity* and the *cell column of the lower extremity.* The cell columns are best seen in the sections from different levels of the cord described on pages 345 to 349. The dendrites of these cells ramify in the gray matter, where they intermingle with the terminal ramifications and collaterals of sensory fibres and of fibres of the descending tracts of the cord.

These neurones whose bodies are situated in the anterior horn and whose axones are the motor fibres of the spinal nerves, together with the analogous neurones of the cranial nerves (see page 372), constitute the *peripheral motor or efferent neurone system.*

(4) COLUMN CELLS.

These are cells which lie in the gray matter of the cord and send their axones into the white matter where they form columns of nerve fibres. Some of the cells send their axones into the white matter of the same side of the cord. These are known as *tautomeric cells* (Fig. 235, *E*). Others send their axones as fibres of the anterior commissure to the white matter of the opposite side of the cord—*heteromeric cells.* In still others the axone divides, one branch going to the white matter of the same side, the other to the white matter of the opposite side—*hecateromeric cells* (Fig. 235, *A*, *B*, *C*).

The axones of many of these cells are short, constituting the short fibre tracts (fundamental columns—ground bundles) of the cord (see page 368; others are long, *e.g.*, Gowers' tract and the direct cerebellar tract, passing up through the cord and medulla to higher centres (see page 365). From these axones, terminals and collateral branches are constantly re-entering the gray matter to end in arborizations around the nerve cells (Fig. 237).

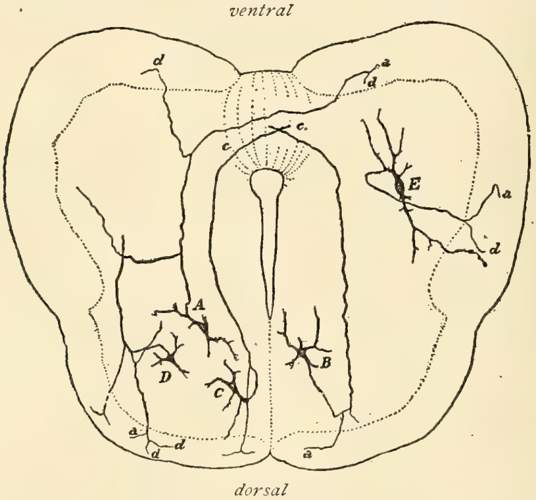
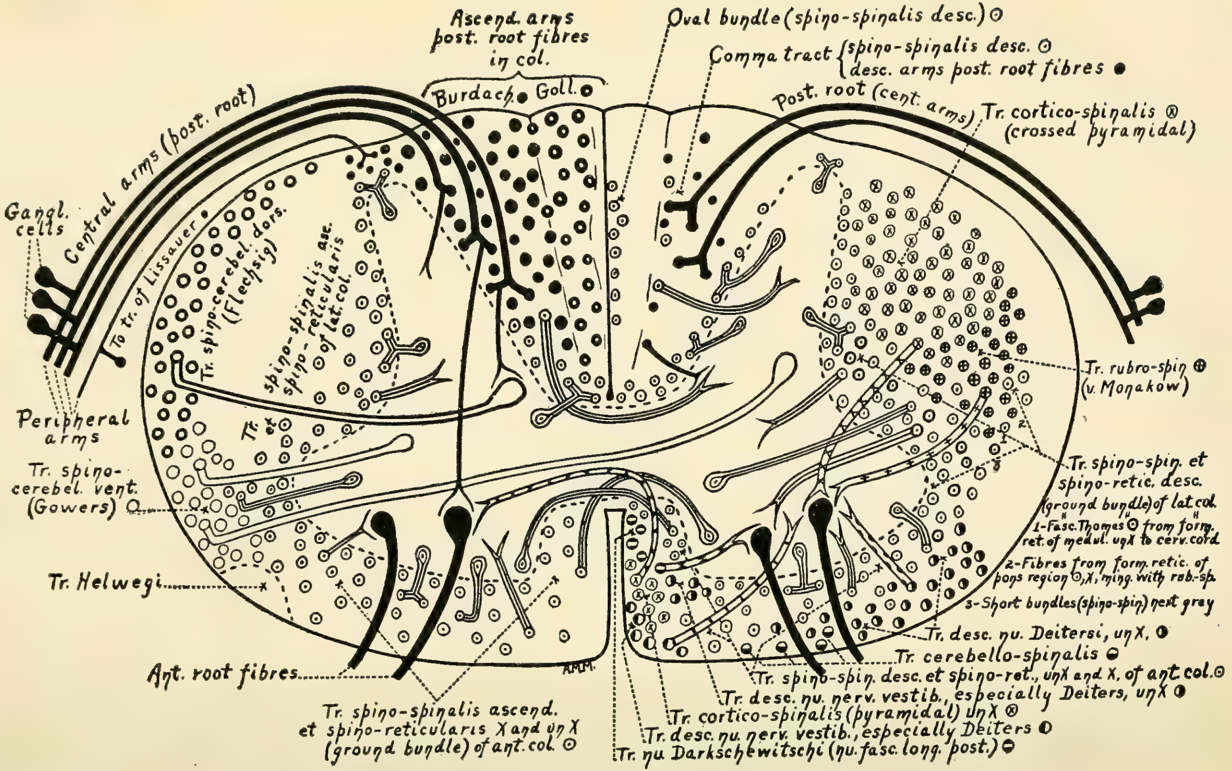


FIG. 235.—Cross Section through Spinal Cord of Embryo Chick of Eight Days' Incubation. (Kölliker, after Raymón y Cajal.) *A*, Hecateromeric cell with axone sending off side fibril to gray matter and then dividing, one branch passing to the white matter of the same side, *d*, the other through the ventral commissure to the white matter of the opposite side, *a* and *d*. *B* and *C*, Hecateromeric cells of the dorsal gray matter; the axones divided, one branch, *a*, passing to the dorsal white columns of the same side, the other, *c*, through the anterior commissure to the opposite side of the cord. *D*, Tautomeric cell, the axones branching, but all branches passing to the gray matter or white matter of the same side of the cord. *E*, Tautomeric cell of the ventral horn with axone dividing into two branches, *a* and *d*, in the white matter of the same side.

The ascending arms of the posterior root fibres and the ascending axones of the column cells constitute the ascending tracts of the cord (p. 364).



Ascend. arms post. root fibres in col.
Burdach ●
Goll. ⊙
Oval bundle (spino-spinalis desc.) ⊙
Comma tract {spino-spinalis desc. ⊙ / desc. arms post. root fibres ●
Post. root (cent. arms)
Tr. cortico-spinalis ⊗ (crossed pyramidal)
Gangl. cells
Central arms (post. root)
To tr. of Lissauer ●
Tr. spino-cerebel. dors. (Flechsig)
spino-spinalis asc. spino-reticularis of lat. col.
Tr. et
Peripheral arms
Tr. spino-cerebel. vent. (Gowers) ○
Tr. Helwegi
Ant. root fibres
Tr. spino-spinalis ascend. et spino-reticularis X and un X (ground bundle) of ant. col. ⊙
Tr. rubro-spin ⊕ (v. Monakow)
Tr. spino-spin. et spino-retic. desc. (ground bundle) of lat. col.
1-Fasc. Thomes ⊙ from form. ret. of medul. unX to cerv. cord
2-Fibres from form. retic. of pons region ⊙, X, ming. with rub.-sp.
3-Short bundles (spino-spin) next gray
Tr. desc. nu. Deitersi, unX. ◐
Tr. cerebello-spinalis ⊖
Tr. spino-spin. desc. et spino-ret., unX and X, of ant. col. ⊙
Tr. desc. nu. nerv. vestib., especially Deiters, unX ◐
Tr. cortico-spinalis (pyramidal) unX ⊗
Tr. desc. nu. nerv. vestib., especially Deiters ◐
Tr. nu. Darkschewitschi (nu. fasc. long. post.) ⊖
AMM.
1
2
3

FIG. 236.

EXPLANATION OF FIG. 236.

FIG. 236.—Diagram of the Tracts of the Cord (Cervical Region). Ascending tracts are shown on left side, and descending tracts on the right. It will be noticed that the tracts of the cord are roughly divisible into three concentric zones: (1) A zone occupying most of the posterior columns and the peripheral part of the lateral columns. This zone comprises the principal long ascending tracts, the continuations of those of the posterior columns being the direct path to the cortex cerebri, the continuations of those of the lateral columns being the indirect path to the cortex cerebri via the cerebellum. (2) The second zone lies immediately within the first in the lateral columns and also occupies the peripheral part of the anterior columns. It comprises the principal long descending tracts from various parts of the brain. The collaterals and terminals of the fibres of these tracts end directly around the motor cells of the anterior horn of the cord or, according to some, around other cells which in turn terminate around the motor cells through the intermediation of the third zone. (3) The third zone borders the gray matter in all the columns of the cord, and the collections of fibres are often termed the ground or fundamental bundles of the cord. They are also often spoken of as the short tracts of the cord, though they include many long fibres. The fibres of this zone either connect different parts of the cord (ascending and descending spino-spinal) or ascend and descend to and from the reticular formation of the medulla and pons (which also contain short paths of a similar character).

(5) Cells of Golgi Type II.

The axones of these cells do not leave the gray matter, but divide rapidly and terminate in the gray matter near their cells of origin, some crossing to terminate in the gray matter of the opposite side (Fig. 236).

TECHNIC.

(1) For the purpose of studying the spinal ganglion cell with its processes and their relations to the peripheral nerves and to the cord, the most satisfactory material is the embryo chick of six days' incubation, treated by the rapid silver method of Golgi (technic b, p. 29). Rather thick (75 μ) transverse and longitudinal sections are made and mounted in hard balsam without a cover-glass. Owing to the uncertainty of the Golgi reaction several attempts are frequently necessary before good sections are obtained.

(2) The root cells of the anterior horn with their axones passing out of the cord and joining the peripheral processes of the spinal ganglion cells, to form the spinal nerves, can usually be seen in the transverse sections of the six-day embryo chick cord prepared as above, technic (1).

(3) For studying the column cells of the cord, embryo chicks of from five to six days' incubation should be treated as in technic (1). Owing to the already mentioned uncertainty of the Golgi reaction, it is usually necessary to make a large number of sections, mounting only those which are satisfactorily impregnated. It is rare for a single section to show all types of cells. Some sections contain tautomeric cells, some contain heteromeric, while in very few will the hecateromeric type be found.

Sections containing fewest impregnated cells frequently show collaterals to best advantage. These are seen as a fringe of fine fibres crossing the boundary line between gray matter and white matter.

Practical Study.

Transverse Section of Six-day Chick Embryo (Technic 1).—Using a low-power objective, first locate the cord and determine the outlines of gray matter and white matter. Observe the spinal ganglia lying one on either side of the cord (Fig. 227, *a*). One of the ganglia will probably show one or more bipolar cells, sending one process toward the periphery, the other toward the spinal cord. Note that the peripheral process is joined, beyond the ganglion, by fibres which come from the ventral region of the cord (fibres of the anterior root). In some specimens the latter can be traced to their origin in the cells of the anterior horn (Fig. 227, *d*). The union of the peripheral processes of the spinal ganglion cells and the anterior horn fibres is seen to make up the mixed spinal nerve (Fig. 227, *f*). Observe the central processes of the spinal ganglion cells entering the dorsal column of the cord and bifurcating (Fig. 227, *b*). As these branches pass up and down the cord, only a short portion of each can be seen in a transverse section. Note the fibres (collaterals) passing from the white matter into the gray matter. Note in some of the sections, a little round mass just ventral and to the inner side of the spinal ganglion, in which nerve cells may be seen, and some fibres passing into or out of it. This represents the beginning of the sympathetic system with its chain of ganglia. Note the relation which this bears to the spinal cord and spinal ganglia.

Longitudinal Section of Six-day Chick Embryo (Technic 1, p. 360).—Using a low-power objective locate gray matter and white matter and identify plane of section relative to transverse section above described. Note in the white matter longitudinally-running fibres from which branches pass off into the gray matter (Fig. 237). Those of the posterior columns are the ascending and descending branches of the central processes of the spinal ganglion cells, and the branches passing into the gray matter are their collaterals and terminals. If the section happens to include the entering fibres of a posterior root, these can be seen branching in the posterior columns into ascending and descending arms (Fig. 237). The longitudinal fibres of the lateral and anterior columns are axones of column cells and of cells situated in higher centres (see pages 356 and 357). These also send collaterals and terminals into the gray matter.

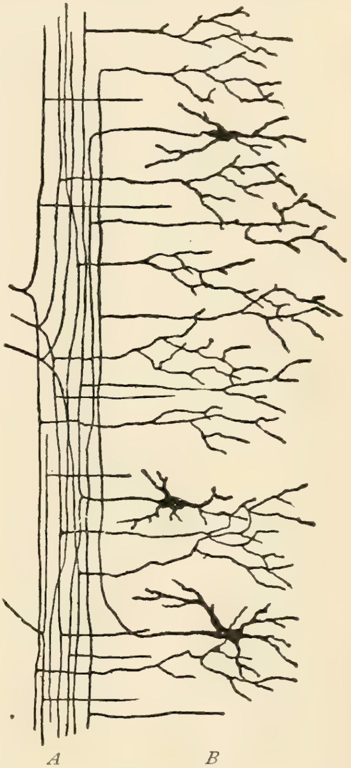


FIG. 237.—From Longitudinal Section of Spinal Cord of Embryo Chick. (Van Gehuchten.) *A*, White columns of cord; *B*, gray matter. The cells of the gray matter (column cells) are seen sending their axones into the white matter, where they bifurcate, their ascending and descending arms becoming fibres of the white columns. The dendrites of these cells are seen ramifying in the gray matter. To the left are seen fibres (posterior root fibres) entering the white matter and bifurcating, the ascending and descending arms becoming fibres of the white columns. From the latter are seen fibres (collaterals) passing into the gray matter and ending in arborizations.

Fibre Tracts of the Cord.

The fact that the cell bodies of neurones are located in the gray matter of the brain and spinal cord, in the ganglia, and in the peripheral end organs of certain of the nerves of special sense, has been already referred to. In the brain and cord there are more or less definite groupings of these neurones for physiological purposes, their cell bodies being grouped together to form *centres* or *nuclei;* their axones, following certain definite paths, known as *fibre tracts* or fasciculi. If the cell bodies and dendrites be included with the axones, the whole is known as a *neurone system;* while if several neurone systems are concerned in the transmission of a particular set of impulses, the whole is referred to as a *conduction path.* For example, that system of neurones whose cell bodies are situated in the anterior horns and whose axones constitute the motor part of the spinal nerves is known as the spino-peripheral neurone system. If we include with this that system of neurones the cell bodies of which are located in the motor cortex and the axones of which terminate around the anterior horn cells of the cord, the whole constitutes the motor cortico-spino-peripheral conduction path.

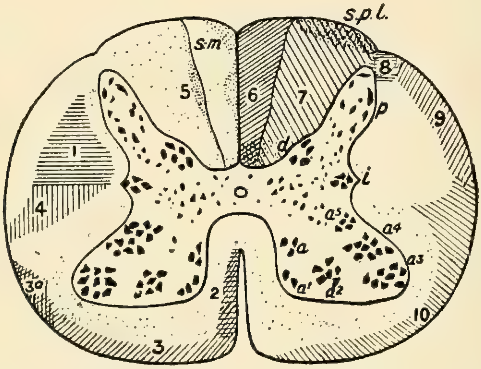


FIG. 238.—Diagram showing Fibre Tracts of the Cord, Ascending Tracts being shown on the Right Side, Descending Tracts on the Left Side. (Schäfer.) *1*, Crossed pyramidal tract; *2*, direct pyramidal tract; *3*, antero-lateral descending tract or tract of Loewenthal; *3a*, bundle of Helweg; *4*, rubro-spinal tract or von Monakow's bundle; *5*, comma tract; *6*, column of Goll; *7*, column of Burdach; *8*, column or zone of Lissauer; *sm*, septo-marginal tract; *s.p.l.*, dorsal root zone of Flechsig; *9*, direct cerebellar tract; *10*, tract of Gowers; a, a^1, a^2, a^3, a^4, a^5, groups of cells in the ventral horn; *i*, intermedio-lateral group of cells; *p*, cells of the posterior horn; *d*, column of Clarke.

A nucleus which contains the cell bodies of a system of neurones is known as the *nucleus of origin* of that system. Thus the already referred to groups of cells in the anterior horns are the nuclei of origin for the spino-peripheral neurone system. A nucleus in which terminate the axones of a system of neurones is known as the *terminal nucleus* of that system.[1] Thus the dorsal nucleus, or Clarke's column, serves as a terminal nucleus for some of the axones of the peripheral sensory neurone system (see page 365). In most cases a nucleus is the terminal nucleus for the axones of one neurone system and at the same time the nucleus of origin for the axones of another neurone system. Thus, in the case above cited the dorsal nucleus, while serving as the nucleus of termination for some of the fibres of the peripheral sensory neurone system, also serves as the nucleus of origin for a second neurone system the axones of which pass upward to higher centres.

The fibre tracts of the cord are not separated from one another by connective tissue, nor do the fibres of one tract necessarily differ in appearance from the fibres of other tracts, so that it is impossible morphologically to differentiate, or mechanically to trace the different fibre systems of the cord. Certain methods of investigation, however, have enabled us to determine most of these tracts and the paths which their fibres follow. Among the most important of these may be mentioned the method of *embryology* and the method of *pathology*. The embryological method is based upon the fact that the fibres of different systems acquire their medullary sheaths at different periods of embryonic development. Thus, by examining cords from embryos of different ages, it is possible to distinguish the different tracts by the extent of the myelinization of their fibres. The pathological method is based upon the fact that when an axone is cut off from its cell of origin it dies and is replaced by new connective tissue. Thus, if in any way a tract of fibres is interrupted, all of the axones of cells which are situated on the other side of the lesion atrophy and can be traced among the normal fibres. Advantage is taken of this latter method for the purpose of experimental research in animals.

---

[1] The words "terminal" and "terminate" as here used refer to the terminations of the axones as such, and do not necessarily indicate terminations of their component neurofibrils (see page 115).

ASCENDING FIBRE TRACTS OF THE CORD.

I. The Posterior Columns.—The origin of these tracts—central processes of the cells of the spinal ganglia—has been described (page 355). The distribution of the posterior root fibres within the cord was noted in connection with the study of the last dorsal, and lumbar enlargement sections (pages 345 and 348).

Just after entering the cord the most lateral of the posterior root fibres turn outward and, after bifurcating, ascend and descend as a tract of fine fibres which lies between the tip of the posterior horn and the surface of the cord, and is known as the *tract* or *terminal zone of Lissauer* (Fig. 238, *8*). The rest of the fibres also bifurcate and send their processes up and down in the lateral part of the posterior column. Each successive dorsal root sends its fibres into the cord to the outer side of those from the next root below. Thus the fibres of the lower roots as they ascend the cord are gradually pushed inward toward the median line until they finally occupy that part of the posterior column lying near the posterior septum. The separation of the posterior column by a connective-tissue septum into the column of Goll and the column of Burdach occurs only in the cervical cord (Figs. 226 and 238). Here the most median fibres of the column of Goll (Fig. 238, *6*) are the longest fibres of the posterior columns, having come from the lower spinal ganglia, while the column of Burdach (Fig. 238, *7*) consists of short and medium length fibres. The fibres of Goll's column end in the *nucleus funiculi gracilis* or *nucleus of the column of Goll* in the medulla (see p. 377, Fig. 243, *N.G*). The fibres of Burdach's column terminate in the medulla in the *nucleus funiculi cuneati* or *nucleus of the column of Burdach* (p. 377, Fig. 243, *N.B*). The nucleus gracilis and nucleus cuneatus —which will be seen in sections of the medulla (page 377)—thus serve as terminal nuclei for the axones of the columns of Goll and of Burdach.

Only a portion of the posterior root fibres pursue the long course above described. From the posterior columns axones and collaterals are constantly passing into the gray matter to end in aborizations among the cells (Fig. 237). The gray matter of the cord thus serves as an extended nucleus of termination for these fibres. After entering the gray matter the fibres are distributed: (*a*) To the dorsal and middle region of the gray matter; (*b*) to the nucleus dorsalis or column of Clarke; (*c*) to the gray matter of the ventral horns, where they end around the motor cells; (*d*) through the posterior commissure to the gray matter of the opposite side (Fig. 236).

The neurones above described whose cell bodies lie in the spinal (and cranial—see medulla) ganglia, whose peripheral processes with their end organs constitute the receptive apparatus, and whose central processes terminate in the gray matter of the cord and medulla, constitute the *peripheral sensory or afferent neurone-system.*

II. The Direct Cerebellar Tract (*Tractus Spino-cerebellaris Dorsalis—Tract of Flechsig*).—This tract lies along the dorso-lateral periphery of the cord, being bounded internally by the crossed pyramidal tract (Fig. 236, *4*, and Fig. 238, *9*). The fibres of the direct cerebellar tract are the axones of the cells of Clarke's column (p. 359, Fig. 236). These axones cross the intervening gray matter and white matter of the same side (tautomeric cells) (Fig. 236) and turn upward as the direct cerebellar tract. In the medulla they form part of the restiform body or inferior cerebellar peduncle and pass to the cerebellum. Here they enter the gray matter of the vermis of the same or opposite side, ending in ramifications among the nerve cells. Some fibres either end in, or send off collaterals to, the cerebellar nuclei. The tract first appears in the upper lumbar cord, and increases in size until the upper limit of Clarke's column has been reached (page 348).

As already noted above, some fibres of the posterior root (central processes of spinal ganglion cells), or their collaterals, end in the column of Clarke. The neurones whose cell bodies form Clarke's column, and whose axones constitute the direct cerebellar tract, are therefore a *second neurone system in the sensory conduction path.*

III. Gowers' Tract (*Tractus spino-cerebellaris centralis—Antero-lateral Ascending Tract*).—This tract lies along the periphery of the cord, extending from the anterior limit of the direct cerebellar to the exit of the ventral roots (Fig. 236, *3*, and Fig. 238, *10*). It is probably formed by axones whose cell bodies are scattered through the central gray matter without any distinct grouping (Fig. 236). Some fibres come from tautomeric, others from heteromeric cells. The tract first appears in the upper lumbar cord and naturally increases in size as it passes upward. The fibres of this tract also end in the vermis of the cerebellum, their terminations being anterior to those of the fibres of the direct cerebellar tract. They also reach their destination in the cerebellum by a different route, ascending considerably farther than the direct cerebellar fibres and then turning back along the outer side of the superior cerebellar peduncle to the vermis.

IV. Spino-tectal Tract.—This arises from cells in the gray matter of the cord, passes up mesially to Gowers' tract, and terminates in the tectum (roof of anterior corpus quadrigeminum).

Descending Fibre Tracts of the Cord.

I. The Pyramidal Tracts (*Tractus Cortico-spinalis*).—(1) *The Crossed Pyramidal Tract.*—This is a large tract of fibres lying in the dorsal part of the lateral column (Fig. 236, *5*; Fig. 238, *1*). It extends to the lowermost part of the cord. In the cervical and dorsal regions it is separated from the surface of the cord by the direct cerebellar tract. In the lumbar region the latter tract is no longer present and the crossed pyramidal comes to the surface.

(2) The *direct pyramidal tract, or tract of Türck*, occupies a small oval area adjacent to the anterior median fissure (Fig. 236, *1*; Fig. 238, *2*). It decreases in size as the lower levels of the cord are reached, to disappear entirely in the middle or lower dorsal region.

The pyramidal tracts vary greatly in size in different individuals and are apt to be asymmetrical, this being due to the lack of uniformity as to the number of fibres which cross over in the pyramidal decussation (see page 375).

These two tracts constitute the *main motor* or *efferent fibre-system of the cord.* The cell bodies of the neurones whose axones make up this system are situated in the cerebral cortex near the fissure of Rolando. Their axones converge and pass downward through the internal capsule, crura cerebri, pons, and medulla, sending off fibres to the motor nuclei of the cranial nerves. In the medulla the tracts come to the surface as the *anterior pyramids.* At the junction of medulla and cord occurs what is known as the *pyramidal decussation* (Fig. 241). Here most of the fibres of each tract cross to the opposite dorso-lateral region of the cord and continue downward as the *crossed pyramidal tract.* The minority of the fibres, instead of decussating, remain on the same side to pass down the cord along the anterior median fissure as the *direct pyramidal tract.* As these tracts descend they decrease in size from loss of fibres which continually leave them to terminate in the ventral horns. The fibres of the crossed tract terminate mainly in the horn of the same side, while most of the fibres of the direct tract cross through the anterior commissure to the opposite side of the cord. These tracts are thus mainly crossed tracts, as the great majority of their fibres cross to the opposite side of the cord. The tracts are apt to differ in size on the two sides of the cord, owing to the fact that the proportion of fibres which decussate is not constant. The axones terminate in arborizations around the motor cells of the ventral horns, thus constituting the *cortico-spinal motor neurone system.* It will be remembered that the neurones whose cell bodies are situated in the ventral horns constitute the *spino-peripheral motor neurone system.* The two systems taken together form the *cortico-spino-peripheral motor conduction path.*

II. The Antero-lateral Descending Tract. (*Anterior Marginal Bundle of Loewenthal.*)—This consists of descending axones of neurones whose cell bodies are situated in the cerebellum. In the cord these fibres lie along the ventral margin, overlapping the tract of Gowers (Fig. 238, *3*). Investigators are not in accord as to whether there are any fibres passing without interruption from cerebellum to cord, or whether they are all interrupted in Deiter's nucleus (Fig. 264).

III. Von Monakow's Tract. (*Rubro-spinal Tract.*)—This consists of axones of cells situated in the red nucleus of the opposite side. In the cord the tract lies in the lateral column just ventral to the crossed pyramidal tract (Fig. 238, *4*).

IV. Descending Tract from Deiter's Nucleus.—This consists of axones from cells of Deiter's nucleus of the same side in the medulla (p. 387). Its fibres intermingle in the cord with those of Loewenthal's tract (Fig. 238, p. 362). Some of its fibres have been traced to the sacral cord.

V. Quadrigemino-spinal Tract.—This consists of axones of cells situated at about the junction of thalamus and mid-brain. In the cord these fibres lie along the anterior median fissure, some of them extending down into the lumbar cord.

VI. Descending Tract from the Vestibular Nuclei of Both Sides.—These fibres occupy about the same position in the cord as the preceding, and both are continuations in the cord of the dorsal longitudinal fasciculus (p. 379).

VII. Helweg's tract is a small triangular bundle of fibres lying along the ventro-lateral margin of the cord, and is traceable upward as far as the olives (Fig. 238, *3 a*). The origin and destination of its fibres are not definitely known.

VIII. The Septo-marginal Tract. (*Oval Bundle of Flechsig.*)—This is a small bundle of fibres lying next the posterior septum (Fig. 238, *sm*). It is probably composed of descending axones of cells in the cord.

IX. The so-called "comma" tract of Schultze is a small comma-shaped bundle of descending fibres lying about the middle of the posterior column (Fig. 238, *5*). It is most prominent in the dorsal cord. Its fibres are believed by some to be descending branches of spinal ganglion cells, by others to be descending axones from cells situated in the gray matter of the cord (column cells).

X. Tractus Reticulo-spinalis.—This consists of axones of cells in the formatio reticularis of the medulla. In the cord these fibres are intermingled with those of the antero-lateral ground bundles (see below). This tract includes the fasciculus of Thomas, lying in the lateral column near the gray matter. The latter originates in the reticular formation of the medulla and ends in the cervical cord.

FUNDAMENTAL COLUMNS OR GROUND BUNDLES OF THE CORD.

The ascending and descending tracts above described are known as the long fibre tracts of the cord. If the area which these tracts occupy be subtracted from the total area of white matter it is seen that a considerable area still remains unaccounted for. This area is especially large in the antero-lateral region, and extends up along the lateral side of the posterior horn between the latter and the crossed pyramidal tract (Figs. 240 and 242). A small area in the posterior column just dorsal to the posterior commissure, and extending up a short distance along the medial aspect of the horn, should also be included. These areas are occupied by the fundamental columns or *short-fibre systems* of the cord. The fibres serve as longitudinal commissural fibres to bring the different segments of the cord into communication (Fig. 237). The shorter fibres lie nearest the gray matter and link together adjacent segments. The longer fibres lie farther from the gray matter and continue through several segments. The origin of these fibres as axones of cells of the gray matter, and the manner in which they re-enter the gray matter as terminals and collaterals have been considered (page 358).

From the neurones thus far studied and the tracts which their axones follow, we may determine the following general impulse pathways in the cord:

(1) *The Direct Reflex Path* (Fig. 239).—(*a*) The *peripheral sensory neurone;* its peripheral process and end organ, the spinal ganglion cell, its central process with collaterals terminating around motor cells of anterior horn; (*b*) the *peripheral motor neurone;* motor cell of anterior horn with axone passing to muscles, etc. This is a two-neurone reflex path, chiefly uncrossed, and in most cases involving only closely adjacent segments.

(2) *The Indirect Reflex Path* (Fig. 240).—(*a*) The *peripheral sensory neurone* as in the direct reflex, but terminating around column cells of the cord. (*b*) The *cord neurone* (column cells)—axones forming fundamental columns with collaterals and terminals to anterior horn cells of different levels. (*c*) The *peripheral motor neurone* as in the direct reflex. This is a three-neurone reflex path involving both sides of the cord and segments above and below the segment of entrance of the stimulus.

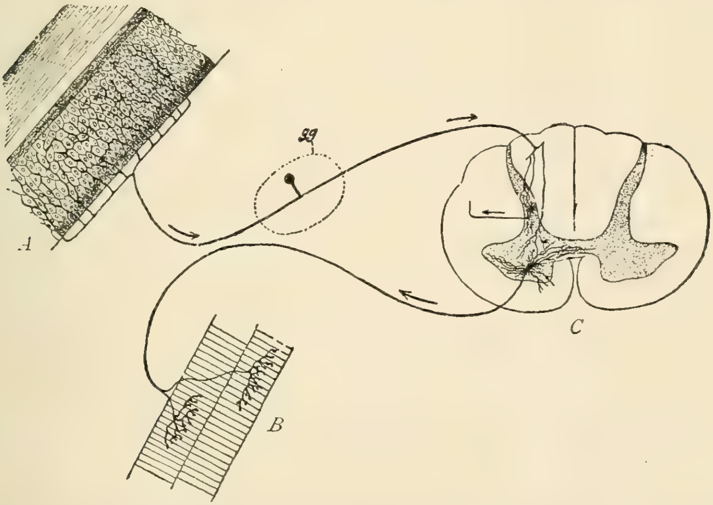


FIG. 239.—Diagram Illustrating Path followed by and Neurones involved in a Simple Direct Reflex. (Van Gehuchten.) *A*, Sensory surface; *B*, muscle; *C*, spinal cord. Arrows show direction of impulse, which starts at the sensory surface, passes along first the peripheral then the central arm of the spinal ganglion cell to the dorsal columns of the cord, thence by means of a collateral or terminal to the ventral horn, where it is transferred to a motor cell. The impulse then passes along the axone of the motor cell (motor fibre of spinal nerve) to the muscle. The two neurones involved in a simple reflex are thus seen to be the peripheral sensory neurone and the peripheral motor neurone.

(3) *Direct Ascending Paths to Higher Centres.*—The *peripheral sensory neurone* as in the direct reflex, but with central process passing as fibre of Goll or Burdach to the nucleus of one of these columns in medulla (Fig. 242).

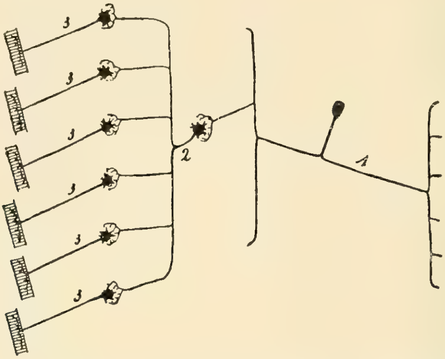


Fig. 240.—Diagram Illustrating Pathway of Compound Reflex (Van Gehuchten) Involving Three Neurones. *1*, Peripheral sensory neurone by means of which the impulse passes from the sensory surface to the gray matter of the cord, as in Fig. 239. In the gray matter, instead of passing directly to a motor cell as in the direct reflex, the impulse is transferred to a neurone, *2*, whose axone becomes a fibre to the ground bundles. From the latter terminals and collaterals enter the gray matter and end around cells of the ventral horn, whence the impulse is carried to the muscle as in the direct reflex, *3*. The essential difference between the simple and the compound reflex is thus seen to be the interposition of a third neurone and the fact that a number of motor cells situated at different levels are involved.

(4) *Indirect Ascending Paths to Higher Centres.*—(*a*) *Peripheral sensory neurone* as in direct reflex, but communicating in cord with column cells of direct cerebellar and of Gowers' tracts. (*b*) *Column cells* sending their axones to higher centres in the direct cerebellar and Gowers' tracts (Fig. 361).

(5) *Descending Paths from Higher Centres.*—(*a*) The *cortico-spinal motor neurone* whose cell bodies are situated in the motor cortex, and whose axones form the pyramidal tracts. These axones terminate around anterior horn cells, those of the crossed tract in the horn of the same side, those of the direct tract in the horn of the opposite side. (*b*) The *peripheral motor neurone*—anterior horn cell—its axone to muscle (Fig. 239).

In addition to the main descending paths are the other descending paths mentioned on page 367, by which an impulse may pass from higher centres to the cord.

TECHNIC.

(1) A human cord from a case in which death has occurred some time after fracture of the vertebræ with resulting crushing of the cord, furnishes valuable but of course rarely available material. If death occur within a few weeks after the injury, the method of Marchi[1] should be used; if after several weeks the method of Weigert (page 27). The picture in the cord is dependent upon the fact that axones cut off from their cells of origin degenerate and are finally replaced by connective tissue. After a complete transverse lesion of the cord, therefore, all ascending tracts are found degenerated above the lesion, all descending tracts below the lesion. The method of Marchi gives a positive picture of osmic-acid-stained degenerated myelin in the affected tracts. The method of Weigert gives a negative picture, the connective tissue which has replaced the degenerated tracts being unstained in contrast with the normal tracts, the myelin sheaths of whose fibres stain, as usual, dark blue or black.

(2) Human cords from cases which have lived some time after the destruction of the motor cortex, or after interruption of the motor tract in any part of its course, may also be used for studying the descending fibre tracts.

(3) The cord of an animal may be cut or crushed, the animal kept alive for from two weeks to several months, and the cord then treated as in technic 1. The most satisfactory animal material may be obtained from a large dog by cutting the cord half-way across, the danger of too early death from shock or complications being much less than after complete section.

(4) The cord of a human fœtus from the sixth month to term furnishes good material for the study of the anterior and posterior root fibres, the plexus of fine fibres in the gray matter, the groupings of the anterior horn cells, etc. The pyramidal tracts are at this age non-medullated and are consequently unstained in Weigert preparations. The Weigert-Pal method gives the best results (page 28).

(5) For the study of the course of the posterior root fibres within the cord, cut any desired number of posterior roots between the ganglia and the cord and treat material by the Marchi or the Weigert method, according to the time elapsed between the operation and the death of the animal.

THE MEDULLA OBLONGATA.

(Including the Pons Varolii.)

The medulla oblongata is the continuation upward of the spinal cord and extends from the lower limit of the pyramidal decussation below to the lower margin of the midbrain above.

Externally, the medulla shows the continuation upward of the anterior fissure and posterior septum of the cord. On either side of the anterior fissure is a prominence caused by the anterior pyramid, and to the outer side of the pyramid the bulging of the olivary body may be seen. The antero-lateral surface of the medulla is also marked by the exit of the fifth to the twelfth (inclusive) cranial nerves. The posterior surface shows two prominences on either side. The more median of these, known as the *clava*, is caused by the nucleus gracilis, or nucleus of the column of Goll; the other, lying just to the outer side of the clava, is due to the nucleus cuneatus or nucleus of the column of Burdach. The central canal of the cord continues into the medulla, where it gradually approaches the dorsal surface, and about the middle of the medulla opens into the cavity of the fourth ventricle.

---

[1] Marchi's solution consists of two parts Müller fluid and one part one-per-cent aqueous solution osmic acid. After hardening for from seven to ten days in Müller's fluid, thin slices of tissue are transferred to the Marchi solution, where they remain for about the same length of time. Sections are usually mounted, without further staining, in balsam.

The internal structure of the medulla considerably resembles that of the cord. This is especially true of the lower part of the medulla, the structures of which are directly continuous with those of the cord. The fibre tracts of the cord, however, assume in the medulla new directions, and in so doing break up the formation of the gray matter. This and the appearance of certain new masses of gray matter and of some new fibre bundles, many of them connected with the cranial nerves, are the main factors determining the difference in structure between cord and medulla.

Of the *ascending tracts*, the posterior columns end in the nuclei of Goll and Burdach, whence a second neurone system connects them with higher centres, the axones passing up as the fillet; the direct cerebellar tract passes into the restiform body, while the tract of Gowers follows the course described on p. 365.

Of the *descending tracts*, the direct and crossed pyramidal tracts are represented in the medulla by the anterior pyramids. Other descending tracts described on pp. 367 and 368 are also present in the medulla, passing to their nuclei of origin.

Of the *spinal gray matter*, there are continuations which form the nuclei of termination for sensory cranial nerves, the largest mass being the extended nucleus of the spinal fifth. The anterior horns of the cord are represented in the medulla by separate masses of gray matter, which are the nuclei of origin for motor cranial nerves. Of new masses of gray matter, the most important are the nuclei of the columns of Goll and of Burdach and the olivary nucleus, which is connected with the cerebellum via its inferior peduncle.

The *cranial nerves*, with the exception of the first (olfactory) and the second (optic), are analogous, both embryologically and anatomically, to the spinal nerves.

The neurones which constitute the sensory portions of the cranial nerves have their cell bodies situated in ganglia outside the central nervous system. These ganglia correspond to the posterior root ganglia of the spinal nerves. The outwardly directed processes of these cells pass to their peripheral terminations as do those of the spinal ganglion cells. The central axones of these neurones enter the medulla and form longitudinal tracts of fibres in a manner quite analogous to the formation of the posterior columns by the ascending branches of the central axones of the spinal ganglion cells. The longer branches of the sensory root fibres of the cranial nerves, however, do not ascend, as do those of the spinal nerves, but turn spinalward, forming descending roots. These fibres terminate in the gray matter of the medulla (terminal nuclei of the cranial nerves) in the same manner as do the spinal sensory root fibres in the gray matter of the cord and medulla. Thus the sensory root fibres of the fifth nerve form a distinct bundle known as the spinal root of the fifth; some of the fibres of the vestibular part of the eighth nerve form another distinct bundle, the descending root of the eighth; while the descending root fibres of the ninth and tenth form the solitary fasciculus. The fibres of each of these descending roots terminate in an accompanying nucleus. The axones of the cells of these terminal nuclei form secondary ascending tracts to higher centres, these tracts thus bearing the same relation to the cranial nerves that the fillet bears to the spinal.

The motor root fibres of the cranial nerves are the axones of neurones whose cell bodies are situated in the gray matter of the medulla and parts above (motor nuclei of the cranial nerves), just as the motor root fibres of the spinal nerves are the axones of neurones whose cell bodies are situated in the gray matter of the cord (anterior horns). These motor nuclei are distributed in two series, one situated near the median line, the other more laterally. In the former series are the motor nuclei of the third, fourth, sixth, and twelfth; in the latter are the motor nuclei of the fifth, seventh, ninth, and tenth. While these nuclei are the nuclei of origin of the motor divisions of the cranial nerves, they are also the nuclei of termination for descending axones of neurones of higher systems which serve to bring these peripheral motor neurones under the control of higher centres.

The internal structure of the medulla can be best studied by means of a series of transverse sections.

TECHNIC.

The technic of the medulla is the same as that of the cord (page 344). Transverse sections should be cut through the following typical levels, stained by Weigert's method (page 27), and mounted in balsam:

1. Through the pyramidal decussation.
2. Through the sensory decussation.
3. Through the lower part of the olivary nucleus.
4. Through the middle of the olivary nucleus.
5. Through the exit of the eighth cranial nerve.
6. Through the exits of the sixth and seventh cranial nerves.

1. Transverse Section of the Medulla through the Decussation of the Main Motor Tracts (Pyramidal Decussation) (Fig. 241).

Compare the section with the section of the cervical cord (page 349) and note the following structures studied in the cord sections:

1. The posterior column: (*a*) The column of Goll (funiculus gracilis) and (*b*) the column of Burdach (funiculus cuneatus) remain as in the cervical cord.

2 and 3. The lateral and anterior columns: (*a*) The pyramidal tracts are decussating. As we pass upward from the cord, this appears as a crossing of the fibres of the crossed pyramidal tract from their position in the lateral columns to the opposite anterior column where they join the direct pyramidal tract to form the anterior pyramid, (*b*) the direct cerebellar tract, (*c*) the tract of Gowers, (*d*) the spino-tectal tract, (*e*) von Monakow's bundle, (*f*) the descending tract from Deiter's nucleus, (*g*) the descending tract from the vestibular nuclei, (*h*) the quadrigemino-spinal tract, (*i*) Helweg's tract, (*j*) the reticulo-spinal tract, and (*k*) the tract of Loewenthal, occupy about the same relative positions as in the cervical cord (Fig. 238). (While the general locations of these tracts should be noted, they cannot of course be differentiated in the normal adult human medulla.)

4. The posterior horn. This is larger, especially the gelatinous substance of Rolando, and is almost entirely separated from the

rest of the gray matter, being connected with it by a very long, slender cervix or neck (Fig. 241).

5. The anterior horn is cut off from the rest of the gray matter by decussating pyramidal fibres.

6. The central canal and the central gelatinous substance are the same as in the cervical cord.

Note also the following new structures:

7. The reticular formation; beginning to show in this section, although not so well developed as higher up in the medulla. Its coarse basketwork appearance is due to a breaking-up of the lateral gray matter by longitudinal fibres. Some of these are continuations into the medulla of the lateral fundamental column fibres of the cord (tractus reticulo-spinalis and tractus spino-reticularis), others are the short association fibres of the medulla analogous to those of the ground bundles of the cord.

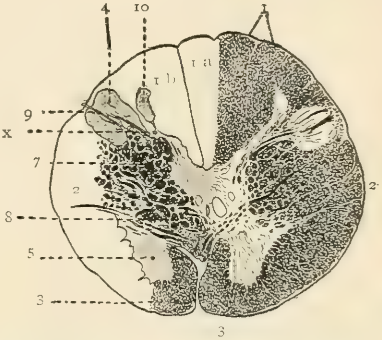


FIG. 241.—Transverse Section of the Medulla at the Level of the Pyramidal Decussation. (Dejerine.) *1*, Posterior column; *1a*, column of Goll; *1b*, column of Burdach; *2*, lateral column; *3*, anterior column; *4*, posterior horn; *5*, anterior horn; 7, reticular formation; *8*, decussation of the pyramids; *9*, dorsal root of first cervical nerve; *10*, gelatinous substance of Rolando; *x*, neck of posterior horn.

8. Decussation of the pyramids. This is the most important feature of the section. Bundles of fibres are seen crossing from the anterior pyramid of one side to the opposite dorso-lateral column, where they turn downward as the crossed pyramidal tract. These fibres, as already noted in the cord, are descending axones from motor cells situated in the cerebral cortex. In the pyramidal decussation most of these fibres cross to the opposite postero-lateral region to pass down the cord as the crossed pyramidal tract (p. 366, and Fig. 236, *5*; Fig. 238, *1*). A few remain in their original anterior position to continue down the cord as the direct pyramidal tract (p. 366, and Fig. 236, *1*; Fig. 238, *2*). The bundles of fibres do not cross in a transverse plane, but take a downward direction at the same time. For this reason transverse sections show these fibres cut rather obliquely. Because of the fact that the fibres cross in alternate bundles, the number of decussat-

ing fibres seen in any one section is greater on one side than on the other (Fig. 241).

9. The root fibres of the spinal accessory nerve. This is a motor nerve, its fibres being axones of cells of the anterior horn. They cross the lateral column and leave the medulla on its lateral surface.

10. The dorsal root of the first cervical nerve.

2. Transverse Section of the Medulla through the Decussation of the Fillet (Sensory Decussation) (Fig. 242).

Note the following already mentioned structures:

1. The posterior column. Both the column of Goll (*a*) and the column of Burdach (*b*) are diminished in size, owing the presence of two new masses of gray matter, the nuclei of the posterior columns (see 11, p. 377).

2 and 3. The lateral and anterior columns. The former is much depleted in size. This is due to the absence of the crossed pyramidal fibres, as this section is above the upper limit of the pyramidal decussation, and the descending motor fibres are now contained in the anterior pyramids (see 8, p. 375), while the anterior column is correspondingly increased in size, now containing all of the descending cerebro-spinal fibres. The fibres of the lateral ground bundles have become more intermingled with the adjoining gray matter, thus increasing the reticular formation. Part of the anterior ground bundle, together with the quadrigemino-spinal tract and the descending tract from the vestibular nuclei, lies dorsal to the pyramid and just lateral to the fillet, forming the *posterior longitudinal fasciculus* (see 21, p. 379). The remaining tracts mentioned on p. 374 occupy about the same positions as in the preceding level. Gowers'

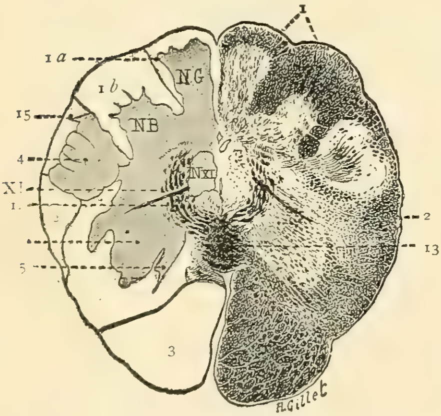


FIG. 242.—Transverse Section of the Medulla through the Lower Part of the Sensory Decussation. (Dejerine.) *1*, Posterior column; *1 a*, column of Goll; *1 b*, column of Burdach; *2*, lateral column; *3*, anterior column or pyramid; *4*, posterior horn; *5*, anterior horn; *7*, reticular formation; *NG*, nucleus gracilis or nucleus of the column of Goll; *NB*, nucleus cuneatus or nucleus of the column of Burdach; *12*, internal arcuate fibres; *13*, sensory decussation or decussation of fillet; *15*, spinal root of fifth nerve; *Nxi*, nucleus of origin of eleventh cranial nerve; *XI*, root fibres of eleventh cranial nerve.

tract, the direct cerebellar tract, von Monakow's bundle, and those fibres of the lateral ground bundles which have not entered the reticular formation are in about the same positions as in the previous section.

4. The posterior horn; larger than in the preceding section, is now the terminal nucleus of the descending (sensory) root fibres of the fifth nerve (see page 378).

5. The anterior horn. This is now less definite, owing to its being broken up by bundles of longitudinal fibres, and forms a part of the reticular formation.

6. The central canal and the central gelatinous substance; remain the same.

7. The reticular formation; now considerably more extensive.

8. The decussation of the pyramids. This has almost ceased, although a few fibres may still be seen passing from the anterior pyramid to the opposite dorso-lateral region, and a wedge-shaped mass of its fibres, decussating in the median line, may often be noticed in the lower levels of the sensory decussation.

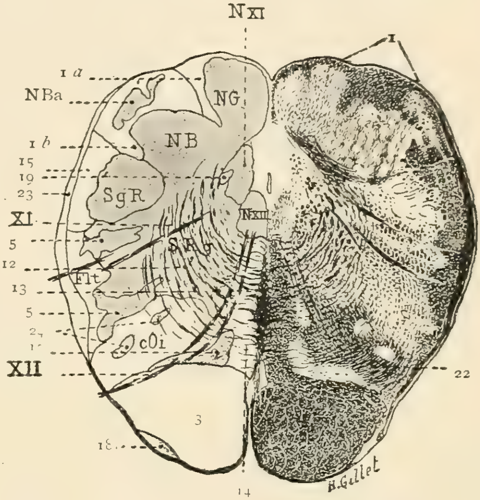


FIG. 243.—Transverse Section of the Medulla through the Upper Part of the Sensory Decussation. (Dejerine.) *1*, Posterior column; *1 a*, column of Goll; *1 b*, column of Burdach; *NG*, nucleus gracilis or nucleus of the column of Goll; *NB*, nucleus cuneatus or nucleus of the column of Burdach; *NBa*, external or accessory cuneate nucleus; *Flt*, lateral column; *3*, anterior column or pyramid; *SgR*, gelatinous substance of Rolando and remains of posterior horn; *5*, anterior horn; *SRg*, reticular formation; *12*, internal arcuate fibres; *13*, sensory decussation; *14*, fillet; *15*, spinal root of fifth nerve; *XI*, root fibres of eleventh cranial nerve; *Nxi*, nucleus of eleventh cranial nerve; *17*, accessory olivary nucleus; *cOi*, olivary fibres; *18*, arciform nucleus; *19*, solitary fasciculus; *Nxii*, nucleus of twelfth cranial nerve, *XII*, root fibre of twelfth cranial nerve; *22*, external arcuate fibres; *23*, restiform body; *24*, olivary nucleus.

9. Some fibres of spinal accessory nerve root may still be seen.

The following new structures are to be observed:

11. The nuclei of the posterior columns. These occupy the ventral part of the columns and are known respectively as *the nucleus of the column of Goll* or *the nucleus gracilis* (Fig. 242, *NG*), and *the nucleus of the column of Burdach* or *the nucleus cuneatus*

(Fig. 242, *NB*). In the higher sensory levels there is usually an accessory cuneate nucleus (Fig. 243, *NBa*).

These nuclei serve as nuclei of termination for the fibres of the posterior columns. With their termination in these nuclei we come to the ending of that system of fibres which we have traced from their origin in the cells of the spinal ganglia. In other words, we have completed the course of the spinal peripheral sensory neurone. As the fibres of the posterior columns are constantly terminating in these nuclei, there is, in passing from below upward, a constant increase in the size of the nuclei and a corresponding decrease in the size of the posterior columns, until, just below the olive, the whole of the column of Goll and most of the column of Burdach are occupied by their respective nuclei (Fig. 243, *NG* and *NB*). By means of neurones whose cell bodies are situated in these nuclei and whose axones cross to the opposite side and pass upward to terminate in the optic thalamus (see 12, 13, 14, below), the sensory conduction path is continued brainward.

12. Internal arcuate fibres, pass ventrally and inward from the nuclei of the posterior columns to a point just below the central canal, where they form the

13. Sensory decussation, or decussation of the fillet. These fibres are axones of neurones whose cell bodies are situated in the nuclei of the posterior columns. After decussating they turn brainward, forming a tract of fibres known as the

14. Fillet, or median lemniscus, which lies just dorsal to the anterior pyramid, and increases in size as we ascend through this level.

15. Spinal (descending) root of the fifth cranial nerve (trigeminus). This is a bundle of very fine fibres lying just external to the posterior horn, thus occupying the position of Lissauer's column in the cord. From this bundle, fibres can be seen entering the remains of the posterior horn, which, as stated above (page 377), is its terminal nucleus. The neurones of the latter constitute the *secondary sensory* (ascending) *tract* for the fifth nerve, as do those of the nuclei of Goll and Burdach for spinal sensory nerves.

16. The nucleus of origin of the medullary portion of the eleventh cranial (spinal accessory) nerve (*Nxi*) and its root fibres (*XI*) passing toward the surface.

The following new structures are to be seen only in the higher levels of the sensory decussation (Fig. 243).

17. The accessory olivary nucleus; an elongated L-shaped mass of gray matter lying just dorsal to the anterior pyramid.

18. The arciform nucleus; on the surface of the medulla ventral to the anterior pyramid.

19. The solitary fasciculus. This shows in some of the sections as a distinct round bundle of fibres just lateral to the central gray matter. It consists of the descending or sensory root fibres of the ninth (glosso-pharyngeal) and tenth (vagus) cranial nerves. The gray matter in its immediate vicinity is its terminal nucleus.

20 (*N.xii*). The nucleus of origin of the twelfth cranial nerve (hypoglossal). This is a group of nerve cells lying in the ventral part of the central gelatinous substance, near the median line. Root fibres of this nerve may be seen passing from the nucleus to the ventral surface of the cord (*XII*).

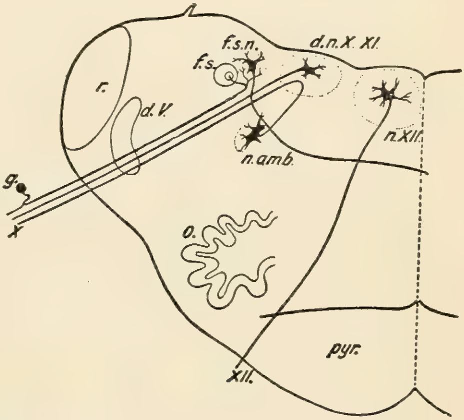


FIG. 244.—Diagram of Origin of Cranial Nerves X and XII. (Schäfer.) *pyr*, Pyramid; *o*, olivary nucleus; *r*, restiform body; *d.V*, spinal root of fifth nerve; *n.XII*, nucleus of hypoglossal; *XII*, hypoglossal nerve; *d.n.X. XI*, dorsal nucleus of vagus and spinal accessory; *n.amb*, nucleus ambiguus; *f.s*, solitary fasciculus (descending root of vagus and glosso-pharyngeal); *f.s.n*, nucleus of solitary fasciculus; *X*, motor fibre of vagus from nucleus ambiguus; *g*, ganglion cell of sensory root of vagus sending central arm into solitary fasciculus (*f.s*) and collateral to its nucleus (*f.s.n.*); *f.s.n*, cell of nucleus of solitary fasciculus sending axone as internal arcuate fibre to opposite side of cord (secondary vagus and glosso-pharyngeal tract).

21. The posterior longitudinal fasciculus; a bundle of fibres situated just dorsal to the fillet. It consists of the quadrigemino-spinal tract, the descending tract from the vestibular nuclei, and other descending fibres from cells in the reticular formation.

22. The external arcuate fibres. These are often present at this level running parallel to the lateral surface of the cord just under the pia mater. They are at this level, and higher, axones of neurones whose cell bodies are situated in the lateral nucleus and in the formatio-reticularis. These axones pass first as internal, then as external arcuate fibres, to the restiform body, thence to the cerebellum (p. 384, 23 and Fig. 264). It is probable that some of these fibres end among cells of the arciform nucleus.

23. The restiform body. This appears in the higher sensory decussation levels as a narrow band of fibres along the lateral margin of the medulla. (For details see page 384, 23.)

24. The olivary nucleus. This may sometimes be seen as one or two small masses of gray matter dorso-lateral to the accessory olive. (For details see page 381, 24.)

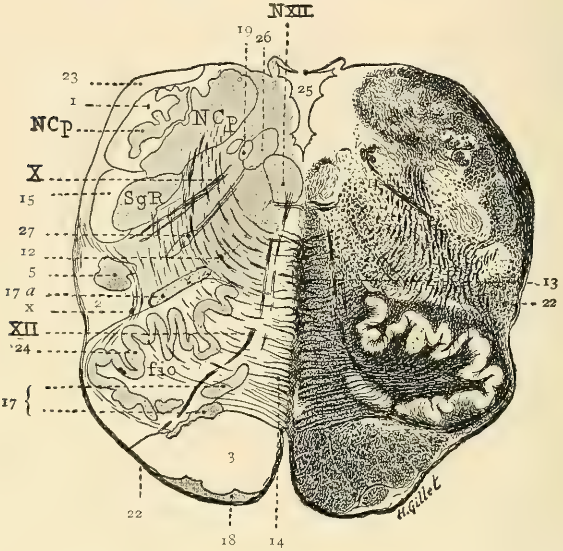


FIG. 245.—Transverse Section of the Medulla through the Lower Part of the Olivary Nucleus. (Dejerine.) *1*, Posterior column; *2*, lateral column; *3*, pyramid; *SgR*, gelatinous substance of Rolando and remains of posterior horn; *5*, remains of anterior horn; *NCp*, nucleus of the posterior column; *12*, internal arcuate fibres; *13*, sensory decussation; *14*, fillet; *15*, spinal root of fifth cranial nerve; *17*, accessory olivary nuclei; *17 a*, dorsal accessory olivary nucleus; *18*, arcuate nucleus; *19*, solitary fasciculus; *Nxii*, nucleus of twelfth cranial nerve; *XII*, root fibres of twelfth cranial nerve; posterior longitudinal fasciculus just ventral to *Nxii* but not distinguishable from the fillet; *22*, external arcuate fibres; *x*, cerebello-olivary fibres; *23*, restiform body; *24*, olivary nucleus; *25*, fourth ventricle; *26*, dorsal nucleus of ninth and tenth nerves; *27*, nucleus ambiguus; *fio*, olivary fibres.

3. Transverse Section of the Medulla through the Lower Part of the Olivary Nucleus (Fig. 245).

Note the following already mentioned structures:

1. The posterior column, which has almost disappeared, its fibres having passed into the posterior column nuclei.

2 and 3. The lateral and anterior columns. Gowers' tract, the

spino-tectal tract, von Monakow's bundle, the descending tract from Deiter's nucleus, Loewenthal's tract, and the anterior pyramids remain as in the preceding level. The direct cerebellar tract may have begun to pass dorsally to form part of the restiform body. Helweg's tract has disappeared.

4. The posterior horn; somewhat diminished in size.

5. The anterior horn. This is now largely lost in the reticular formation, part of the gray matter of which is its upward continuation.

6. The central canal; now opening into the fourth ventricle the gelatinous substance and the nuclei of the floor of the ventricle constituting the *central gray matter*.

7. The reticular formation; occupying a much larger area than in the preceding section (between *SgR* and median line).

11. The nuclei of the posterior column (*NCp*); diminished in size and not clearly defined.

12. The internal arcuate fibres; more numerous.

13. The sensory decussation or decussation of the fillet; now more extended dorso-ventrally, forming the median raphé.

14. The fillet or median lemniscus; larger, more of the decussating fibres having now joined it.

15. The spinal root of the fifth cranial nerve (trigeminus); larger, as fewer fibres have left it to terminate in the gray matter.

17. The accessory olivary nucleus; smaller than in the preceding section.

18. The arciform nucleus.

19. The solitary fasciculus (see p. 379, 19).

20. The nucleus of origin (*Nxii*) of the twelfth cranial nerve (hypoglossal) (see p. 379, 20) and the root fibres of the nerve (*XII*); passing along the lateral margin of the fillet and thence to the surface between the olivary nucleus and the anterior pyramid (Fig. 245).

21. The posterior longitudinal fasciculus; now more dorsal and not easily differentiated at this level from the fillet.

22. The external arcuate fibres; more numerous than in the preceding section. Some of the more dorsal of these fibres are fibres of the direct cerebellar tract passing to the restiform body.

23. The restiform body; larger. (For details see p. 384, 23.)

24. The olivary nucleus. This is now an irregularly convoluted lamina of gray matter, dorso-lateral to the anterior pyramid. Note

the fibres which pass as internal arcuate fibres from each olive through the median raphé to the opposite restiform body (Fig. 245, *x*) and thence to the cerebellum (cerebello-olivary fibres). These latter are ascending axones from cells in the olivary nucleus.

Note the following new structures:

17 *a*. Dorsal accessory olivary nucleus.

25. The fourth ventricle, or cavity of the medulla into which the central canal has now opened.

26. The dorsal nucleus of the ninth (glosso-pharyngeal) and tenth (vagus) cranial nerves; a group of cells lying just to the outer side of the nucleus of the twelfth nerve. The dorsal part of the nucleus belongs to the ninth, the ventral to the tenth nerve (Fig. 245).

27. The nucleus ambiguus, motor nucleus of the ninth and tenth cranial nerves; often difficult to distinguish, lies in the lateral part of the reticular formation. From the cells of this nucleus fibres pass dorsally to just below the sensory nuclei of their nerves, where they turn sharply ventro-laterally and join the sensory root fibres (Fig. 244).

28. The root fibres of the tenth cranial nerve (vagus) (Fig. 245, *X*).

4. Transverse Section of the Medulla through the Middle of the Olivary Nucleus (Ninth and Tenth Nerves) (Fig. 246).

The following structures present in the last section have now disappeared:

1. The posterior column.
5. The anterior horn.
6. The central canal.
11. The nuclei of the posterior column.
13. The sensory decussation.

Note the following structures seen in last section:

2. The lateral column. The direct cerebellar tract is now a part of the restiform body. Gowers' tract, the spino-tectal tract, von Monakow's bundle, and the descending tract from Deiter's nucleus occupy about the same positions as in the preceding section.

3. The anterior pyramid; remains the same.

4. The posterior horn; smaller and more vague.

7. The reticular formation (*SRg*); increased in extent, reaching its maximum in this and the next succeeding level.

12. The internal arcuate fibres; no longer derived mainly from the posterior column nuclei; being now largely decussating fibres from sensory cranial nerve nuclei and from other nuclei in the reticular formation. Many internal arcuate fibres also represent cerebello-olivary fibres connecting the restiform body with the opposite olive.

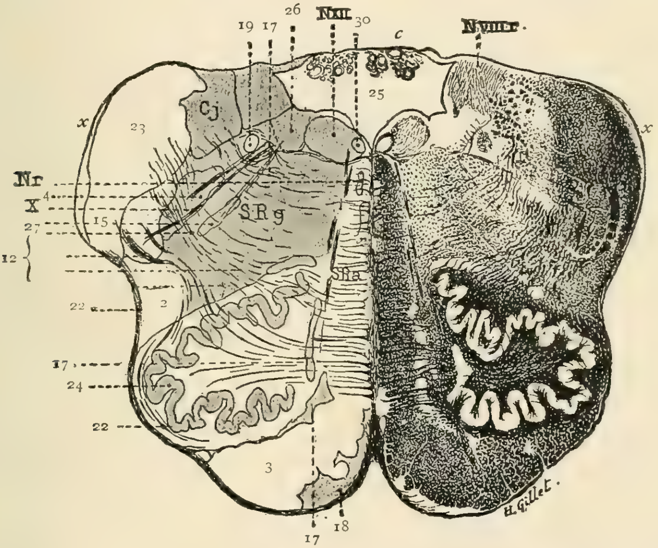


FIG. 246.—Transverse Section of the Medulla through the Middle of the Olivary Nucleus. (Dejerine.) *2*, Lateral column; *3*, pyramid; *4*, gelatinous substance of Rolando and remains of posterior horn; *SRg*, reticular formation; *12*, internal arcuate fibres; *SRa*, fillet; *15*, spinal root of fifth cranial nerve; *17*, accessory olivary nucleus; *18*, arciform nucleus; *19*, solitary fasciculus; *Nxii*, nucleus of origin of twelfth cranial nerve; from the nucleus fibres can be seen passing ventrally just to the mesial side of the olivary nucleus; posterior longitudinal fasciculus just ventral to *30* but not distinguishable from the fillet; *22*, external arcuate fibres; *23*, restiform body: *25*, fourth ventricle; *26*, dorsal nucleus of ninth and tenth cranial nerves; *27*, nucleus ambiguus; *X*, root fibres of tenth nerve; *Nviiir*, spinal root of vestibular division of eighth nerve; *30*, nucleus of funiculus teres; *Cj*, gray matter adjacent to the restiform body, sometimes called the *corpus juxta-restiforme; Nr*, nucleus of the reticular formation; *x*, nucleus of the restiform body; *c*, choroid plexus.

14. The fillet, or median lemniscus (*SRa*); now completely formed and much extended dorso-ventrally. This bundle of fibres constitutes the main continuation brainward of the spinal sensory conduction path. There are also found in the fillet axones from the nuclei of termination of certain of the sensory cranial nerves. The majority of its fibres terminate in the nuclei of the thalamus.

15. The spinal root of the fifth nerve; larger, for the same reason as in the last section.

17. The accessory olive; may be present or absent. There may be a dorsal accessory olive just above the inner end of the main olivary nucleus.

18. The arciform nucleus; usually present.

19. The solitary fasciculus; now larger and more distinct. In some sections, some of the sensory root fibres of the ninth or tenth nerves can be seen passing into the solitary fasciculus (see also p. 379, 19).

20. The nucleus of origin of the twelfth cranial nerve (hypoglossal) (*Nxii*); about the same size as in the preceding section. From it are seen passing out the root-fibres of the twelfth nerve (*XII*).

21. The posterior longitudinal fasciculus; dorsal to the fillet and not distinguishable from the latter at this level.

22. External arcuate fibres. These may be seen running parallel to the surface of the medulla just under the pia mater.

23. The restiform body; much larger than in the last section. Note along its lateral margin a narrow strip of gray matter, the nucleus of the restiform body (Fig. 246, *x*).

The restiform body or inferior cerebellar peduncle now contains fibres from the lateral nuclei and from the reticular formation of both the same and opposite sides (internal and external arcuate fibres) (p. 379, 22; p. 377, 11); fibres from the olivary nucleus of the opposite side (p. 381, 24); and fibres which represent the continuation upward of the direct cerebellar tract (see diagram, Fig. 264.)

24. The olivary nucleus; larger than in the preceding section. (For details see p. 381, 24.)

25. The fourth ventricle; more widely open. Note its roof now formed by the choroid plexus.

26. The dorsal nucleus of the ninth and tenth nerves; about the same size, but nearer the ventricle (see p. 382, 26).

27. The nucleus ambiguus; about the same as in the preceding section.

28. (*X*) Root fibres of the ninth and tenth cranial nerves.

Note the following structures not present in the preceding section:

29. The descending or spinal root of the vestibular portion of the

eighth cranial nerve (auditory) (*Nviiir*); in the lateral wall of the fourth ventricle. (For details see p. 387, Figs. 247 and 248.)

30. The nucleus of the funiculus teres.

5. Transverse Section of the Medulla through the Exit of the Eighth Nerve (Fig. 247).

The following structures present in the preceding section have now disappeared:

17. The accessory olives; although a small dorsal or internal accessory olive may be present.
19. The solitary fasciculus.
20. The nucleus of origin of the twelfth cranial nerve.
26. The dorsal nucleus of the ninth and tenth nerves.
27. The nucleus ambiguus.
28. The root fibres of the ninth and tenth nerves.
29. The spinal root of the vestibular portion of the eighth nerve.
30. The nucleus of the funiculus teres.

Note the following structures seen in the preceding section:

2. The remains of the lateral column (containing Gowers' tract, the spino-tectal tract, and von Monakow's bundle). The descending tract from Deiter's nucleus now occupies a more mesial position.
3. The anterior pyramid.
4. The remains of the posterior horn.
7. The reticular formation (*SR*).
12. The internal arcuate fibres.
14. The fillet.
15. The spinal root of the fifth nerve; increased in size.
18. The arciform nucleus (*Narc*).
21. The posterior longitudinal fasciculus.
22. The external arcuate fibres.
23. The restiform body; much larger, being now almost completely formed. If the roof of the fourth ventricle and part of the cerebellum be included in the section, the restiform body can be seen passing into the cerebellum as its inferior peduncle.
24. The olivary nucleus; much reduced in size.
25. The fourth ventricle with the choroid plexus in its roof.

The following new structures are to be noted:

31. (*VIII*) The root fibres of the eighth cranial nerve (audi-

tory) and its nuclei (see also Fig. 248). The auditory nerve is divided into two parts: the cochlear nerve and the vestibular nerve. The fibres of the cochlear root (*VIIIc*) enter at a lower level than those of the vestibular. Some of them enter a nucleus ventral to the restiform body (ventral cochlear nucleus) (*Nviii, c*); the remainder pass dorsalward to a nucleus external to the restiform body (dorsal cochlear nucleus, or nucleus of the acoustic tubercle) (seen only in lower sections of this level).

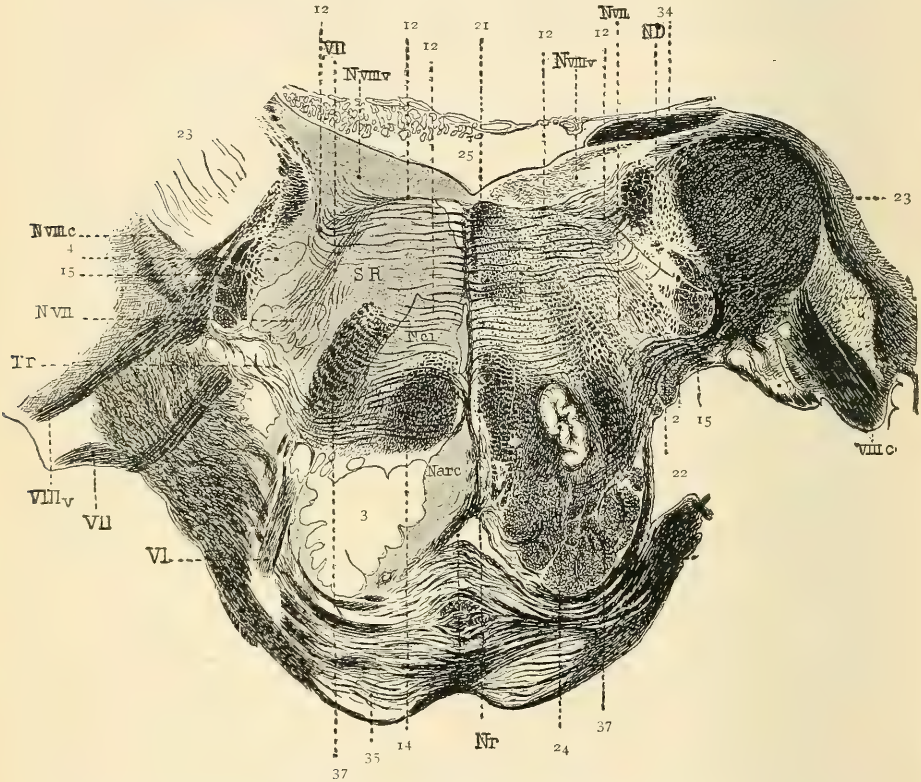


FIG. 247.—Transverse Section of the Medulla through the Upper Part of the Olivary Nucleus and Exit of the Eighth Cranial Nerve. (Dejerine.) *2*, Remains of lateral column; *3*, pyramid; *4*, remains of posterior horn serving as terminal nucleus for spinal root of fifth nerve; *SR*, reticular formation; *12*, internal arcuate fibres; *15*, spinal root of fifth nerve; *Narc*, arcuate nucleus; *21*, posterior longitudinal fasciculus; *22*, external arcuate fibres, mainly cerebello-olivary fibres; *23*, restiform body; *24*, olivary nucleus; *25*, fourth ventricle; *VIIIc*, cochlear root of the eighth cranial nerve; *VIIIv*, vestibular root of eighth cranial nerve; *Nviiic*, ventral cochlear nucleus; *ND*, Deiter's nucleus; *Nviiiv*, median or principal vestibular nucleus; *VII*, root fibres of seventh cranial nerve; *Nvii*, nucleus of origin of seventh cranial nerve; *VI*, root fibres of sixth cranial nerve; *34*, acoustic striæ; *35*, transverse pontile fibres; *37*, central tegmental tract; *Nci*, nucleus of the reticular formation; *Nr*, nucleus of the median raphé; *Tr*, trapezoid body.

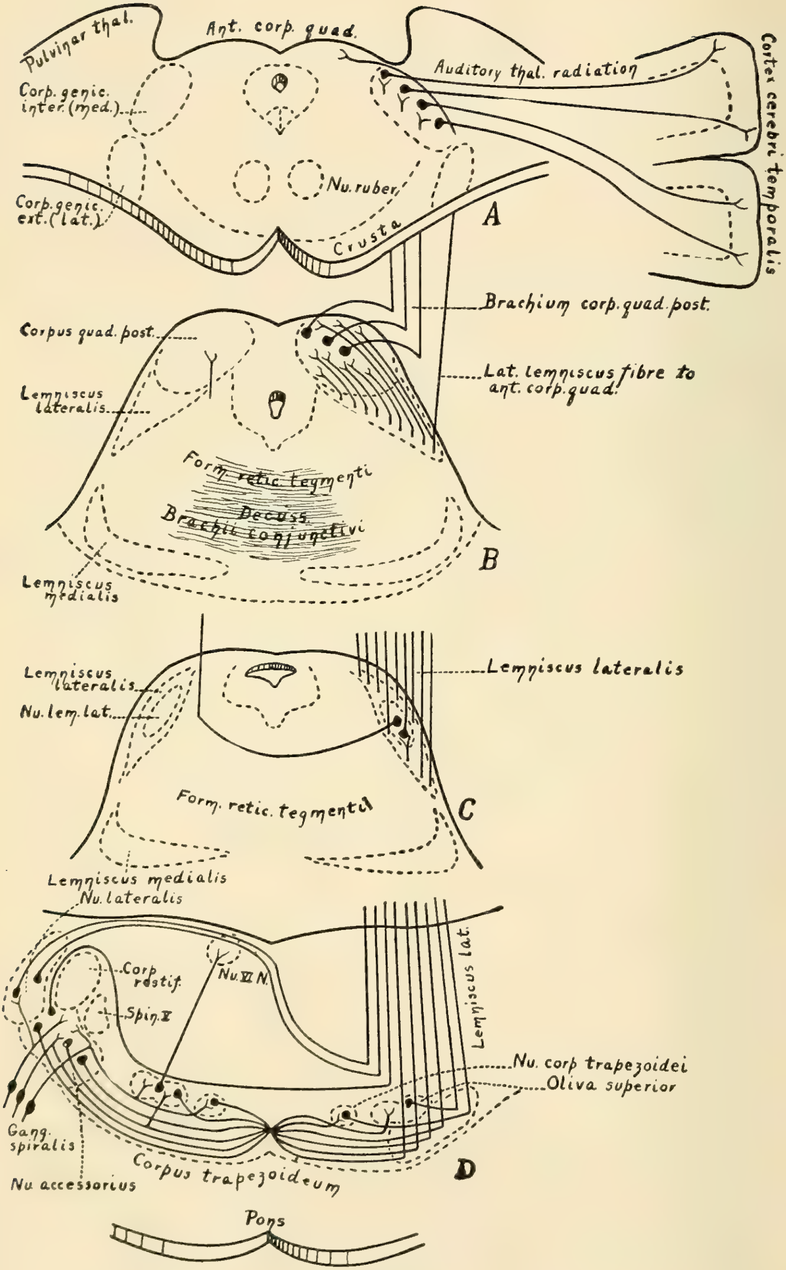

Pulvinar thal.
Ant. corp. quad.
Auditory thal. radiation
Cortex cerebri temporalis
Corp. genic. inter. (med.)
Nu. ruber
Corp. genic. ext. (lat.)
Crusta
A
Brachium corp. quad. post.
Corpus quad. post.
Lat. lemniscus fibre to ant. corp. quad.
Lemniscus lateralis
Form. retic. tegmenti
Decuss. Brachii conjunctivi
Lemniscus medialis
B
Lemniscus lateralis
Lemniscus lateralis
Nu. lem. lat.
Form. retic. tegmenti
C
Lemniscus medialis
Nu. lateralis
Corp. restif.
Nu. VI N.
Spin. V
Lemniscus lat.
Nu. corp trapezoidei
Oliva superior
Gang. spiralis
Nu accessorius
Corpus trapezoideum
D
Pons

FIG. 247 *a*.

EXPLANATION OF FIG. 247 *a*.

FIG. 247 *a*.—Diagram showing Connections of the Cochlear Portion of the Auditory (VIII) Nerve. *A*, Section at level of anterior corpora quadrigemina and red nucleus; *B*, through level of posterior corpora quadrigemina; *C*, through level of nucleus of lateral lemniscus (Nu. lem. lat.); *D*, through pons at level of VIII nerve. Spacing between the different levels is not proportionate. In *B* and *C* the crusta is omitted.

Neurone No. 1.—Cell bodies in spiral ganglion (gang. spiralis); peripheral processes end in organ of Corti; central processes terminate principally in ventral or accessory nucleus (Nu. accessorius) and lateral nucleus (Nu. lateralis) or tuberculum acusticum; some also terminate in superior olives, (Oliva superior) and nuclei of trapezoid body (Nu. corp. trapezoidei) of same and opposite sides.

Neurone No. 2 (or 3?).—Axones of cells in accessory nucleus, in superior olives, and in nuclei of trapezoid body constitute a ventral path in the lower border of the tegmentum, and form the lateral part of the lateral lemniscus (Lemniscus lateralis) or lateral fillet on the opposite side. Axones of cells in the lateral nucleus traverse the floor of the fourth ventricle as the striæ acusticæ, forming a dorsal pathway, decussate and then turn ventral to a point dorsal to the superior olive and join the lateral lemniscus as its mesial part. Some axones also of cells in the accessory and lateral nuclei pass dorsally, looping around the restiform body, and then proceed ventrally (bundle of Held) to join the opposite lemniscus. The lateral lemniscus passes upward to the posterior corpus quadrigeminum, some of the axones terminating *en route* in the nucleus of the lateral lemniscus. From cells in this nucleus some axones again join the lateral lemniscus, and a few decussate and then pass upward to the posterior corp. quad. The vast majority of axones of the lateral lemniscus terminate in the posterior corp. quad., but a few possibly pass on to terminate in the anterior corp. quad. (Lat. lemniscus fibre to ant. corp. quad.).

Neurone No. 3 (or 4?).—Axones of cells in the gray matter of the posterior corp. quad. form its brachium (Brachium corp. quad. post.) and ascend to terminate in the internal or medial geniculate body (Corp. genic. inter.).

Neurone No. 4 (or 5?).—Axones of cells in the internal geniculate body pass as a part of the thalamic radiation via the posterior part of the internal capsule to the cortex of the temporal lobe of the cerebrum.

The axones which constitute the ventral path (Neurones 1 and 2) form a bundle of fibres known as the trapezoid body (Corpus trapezoidium). The decussation of these is peculiar in that the dorsal axones of the bundle on one side become the ventral ones on the opposite side; this accounts for the convergence of the axones at the median raphé.

Axones of cells in the superior olive pass to the nucleus of VI nerve (reflex). There is probably also a descending path from the lateral nucleus to the spinal cord (not indicated).

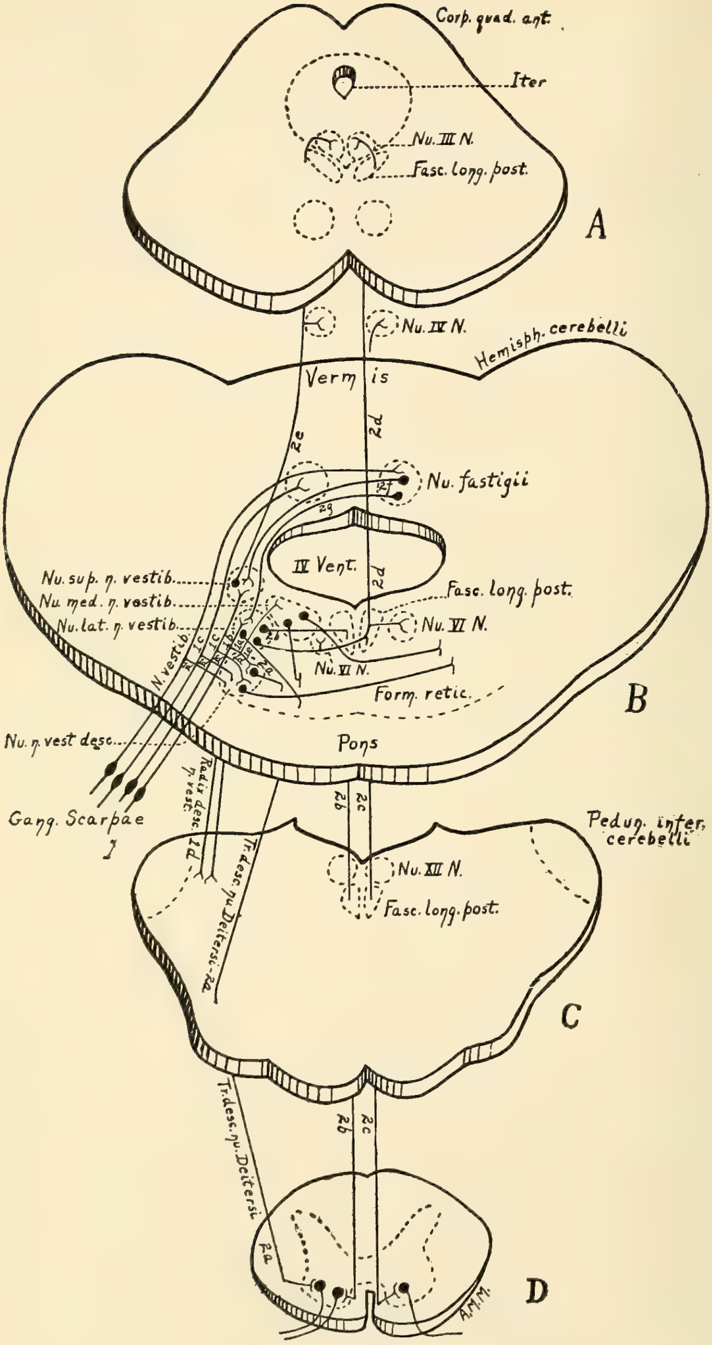

Corp. quad. ant.
Iter
Nu. III N.
Fasc. long. post.
A
Nu. IV N.
Hemisph. cerebelli
Verm is
2e
2d
Nu. fastigii
2f
2g
IV Vent.
2d
Nu. sup. n. vestib.
Nu. med. n. vestib.
Nu. lat. n. vestib.
Fasc. long. post.
Nu. VI N.
N. vestib.
1c
1c
1b
1a
1e
1d
2a
2b
Nu. VI N.
Form. retic.
B
Nu. n. vest desc.
Pons
Gang. Scarpae
1
Radix desc. n. vest.
1d
Tr. desc. nu. Deitersi. 2a
2b
2c
Pedun. infer. cerebelli
Nu. XII N.
Fasc. long. post.
C
2b
2c
Tr. desc. nu. Deitersi
2a
A.M.M.
D

FIG. 247 *b*.

EXPLANATION OF FIG. 247 *b*.

FIG. 247 *b*.—Principal Connections of the Vestibular Portion of the Auditory (VIII) Nerve. *A*, Section at level of oculomotor (III) nerve; *B*, section through pons and medulla; *C*, through inferior olives; *D*, through spinal cord.

Neurone No. 1.—Cell bodies in ganglion of Scarpa; peripheral processes end in semicircular canals; central processes bifurcate, and ascending arms go to Deiter's nucleus (Nu. lat. n. vestib.) (*1 a*), to von Bechterew's nucleus (Nu. sup. n. vestib.) (*1 b*), and to nuclei fastigii (and other portions?) of cerebellum (*1 c*); descending arms go to nucleus of descending root (Nu. n. vestib. desc.) (*1 d*) and (collaterals?) to principal or median nucleus (Nu. med. n. vestib.) (*1 e*).

Neurone No. 2.—Axones of some cells in Deiter's nucleus descend (*2 a*, Tr. desc. nu. Deitersi) uncrossed to antero-lateral column of the cord, axones of other cells enter the posterior longitudinal fasciculus (Fasc. long. post., *2 b*) of same side and descend to anterior column of the cord, others pass to the posterior longitudinal fasciculus of opposite side whence some (*2 c*) descend to anterior column of the cord, occupying a position near the anterior median fissure, while some (*2 d*) ascend in the posterior longitudinal fasciculus and terminate principally in the nuclei of VI, IV, and III nerves. Axones of cells in von Bechterew's nucleus ascend (*2 e*), joining lateral part of posterior longitudinal fasciculus of same side, and terminate in nuclei of IV and III nerves. Axones of cells in the nucleus of the descending root probably pass in part to lateral part of reticular formation of same and opposite sides, ascending and descending (to other motor nuclei?). Axones of cells in the median nucleus probably pass largely into the reticular formation, possibly also to the posterior longitudinal fasciculus (not indicated). Axones of cells in the nuclei fastigii of the cerebellum pass to von Bechterew's nucleus (*2 f*) and to Deiter's nucleus (*2 g*). The cerebellar associations intercalated between these (*2 f*, *2 g*) and the vestibular fibres to the cerebellum (*1 c*) are not known. [It is evident that impulses other than vestibular ones entering the cerebellum may also by *2 f* and *2 g* act indirectly upon the motor nuclei innervated by axones of the cells in Deiter's and von Bechterew's nuclei. Compare Fig. 264.]

The fibres of the vestibular root (*VIII, v*) enter above and mesial to those of the cochlear root, passing dorsally along the inner side of the restiform body to four nuclei, which cannot all be clearly seen in any one section; (*a*) Deiter's nucleus (lateral vestibular nucleus) (*ND*), situated at the end of the main bundle of root fibres, just internal to the restiform body; (*b*) von Bechterew's nucleus (superior vestibular nucleus) situated somewhat dorsal to Deiter's nucleus in the lateral wall of the fourth ventricle; (*c*) the median or principal nucleus of the vestibular division—a large triangular nucleus, occupying the greater part of the floor of the fourth ventricle (*Nviii, v*); and (*d*) the spinal vestibular nucleus which accompanies the descending fibres of the vestibular root (spinal eighth, see p. 384, 29).

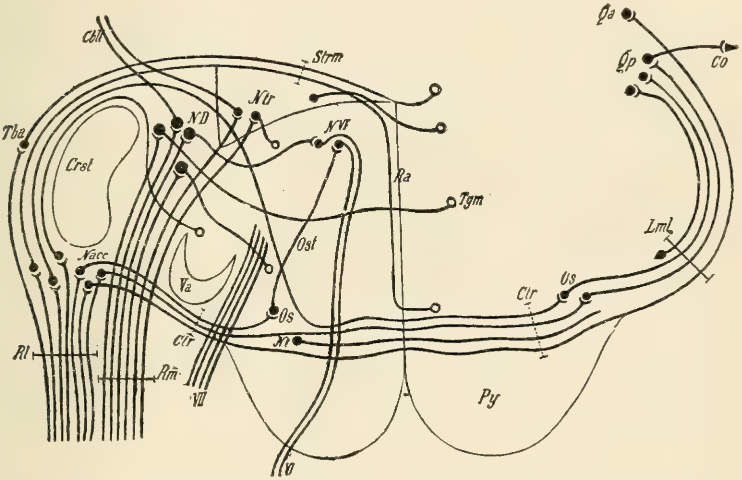


FIG. 248.—Diagram of Origin of Eighth Cranial Nerve and some of its more Important Central Connections. (Obersteiner.) *Cbll*, Cerebellum; *Crst*, restiform body; *Co*, cerebral cortex; *Py*, pyramid; *Ra*, median raphé; *Va*, spinal root of fifth nerve; *NVI*, nucleus of sixth nerve; *VI*, root fibres of sixth nerve; *VII*, root fibres of seventh nerve; *Rl*, cochlear root of eighth nerve (axones of cells in spinal ganglion or ganglion of Corti) passing to their terminations in the ventral cochlear nucleus, *Nacc*, and in the dorsal cochlear nucleus, *Tba*; *Rm*, vestibular root of eighth nerve (axones of cells in Scarpa's ganglion) passing to their terminations in Deiter's nucleus, *ND*, and in the median vestibular nucleus, *Ntr* (the nucleus of von Bechterew and the spinal vestibular nucleus are not seen at this level); *Strm*, striæ acusticæ; *Tgm*, tegmentum; *Os*, superior olivary nucleus; *Ost*, fibres from superior olivary nucleus to nucleus of sixth nerve; *Nt*, trapezoid nucleus; *Ctr*, trapezoid body; *Lml*, lateral lemniscus or lateral fillet; *Qa*, anterior corpus quadrigeminum; *Qp*, posterior corpus quadrigeminum.

The fibres of the cochlear nerve are axones of bipolar cells in the spiral ganglion, or ganglion of Corti (see p. 443, Fig. 283). The central processes of these cells enter the medulla as the above-described cochlear root, to terminate in arborizations among the cells of the cochlear nuclei. Most of the axones of the cells of these nuclei cross to the opposite side of the medulla, forming the *secondary cochlear tract* to higher centres, known as the lateral fillet (see p. 391, 36). Some of the cochlear fibres pass both ventral and dorsal nuclei to end in the superior olivary and trapezoid nuclei. Axones from the cells of these nuclei also join the lateral fillet.

The neurones of the vestibular nerve have their cell bodies situated in Scarpa's ganglion (vestibular ganglion). These cells are bipolar, their peripheral processes ending freely among the hair cells of the crista and macula acustica, their central processes forming the already mentioned vestibular root. The axones of the cells of the terminal nuclei of the vestibular root form *secondary vestibular tracts*, some axones going to the cerebellum and midbrain, others descending in the reticular formation, still others forming part of the posterior longitudinal fasciculus.

32. The root fibres of the seventh (facial) cranial nerve (Fig. 247, *VII*) and its nucleus of origin (*Nvii*). These can be seen in higher sections of this level. (For details see p. 390, 32.)

33. The root fibres of the sixth (abducens) cranial nerve (Fig. 247, *VI*) and its nucleus of origin. (For details see p. 390, 33).

34. The acoustic striæ; in the lateral part of the floor of the fourth ventricle. These are fibres of the secondary cochlear tract from the dorsal cochlear nucleus (see p. 385, 31).

35. Transverse fibres of the pons Varolii; crossing ventral to the pyramids (see p. 391, 35).

37. The central tegmental tract (see 37, p. 391).

6. Transverse Section through the Exits of the Root Fibres of the Sixth (Abducens) and Seventh (Facial) Cranial Nerves.

The following structures seen in the preceding level have now disappeared:

18. The arciform nucleus.

22. The external arcuate fibres; unless the superficial transverse pons fibres be classed as arcuate fibres.

23. The restiform body; now passed or passing into the cerebellum as its inferior peduncle.

24. The olivary nucleus.

31. The cochlear portion of the auditory nerve with its nuclei.

34. The acoustic striæ.

The following structures are still present:

2. The tract of Gowers, the spino-tectal tract, and von Monakow's bundle lie just ventro-lateral to the superior olivary nucleus. Deiter's tract has reached its nucleus of origin.

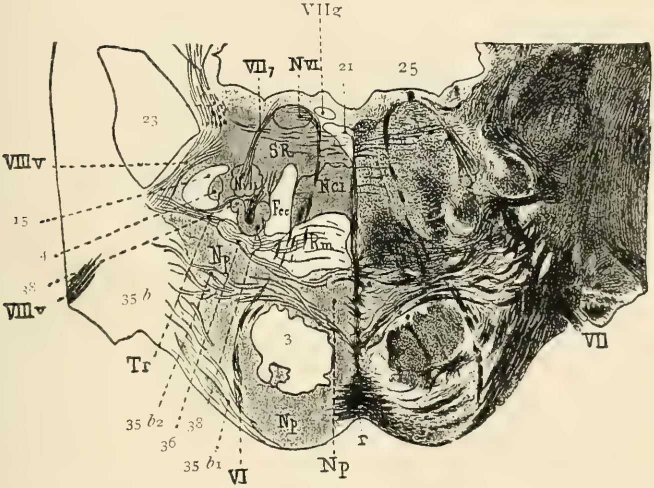


FIG. 249.—Transverse Section of the Medulla through the Exits of the Sixth and Seventh Cranial Nerves. (Dejerine). *3*, Pyramid; *4*, gelatinous substance of Rolando and remains of posterior horn; *SR*, reticular formation; *Rm*, fillet; *15*, spinal root of fifth nerve; *21*, posterior longitudinal fasciculus; *23*, restiform body or inferior cerebellar peduncle; *25*, fourth ventricle; *VIIIv*, vestibular root of eighth cranial nerve; *Nvii*, nucleus of origin of seventh cranial nerve; *VII7*, root fibres of seventh nerve passing from nucleus of origin to floor of fourth ventricle; *VIIg*, transversely cut bundle of root fibres of seventh nerve ascending in floor of fourth ventricle; *VII*, root fibres of seventh nerve leaving medulla; *Nvi*, nucleus of origin of sixth cranial nerve; *VI*, root fibres of sixth cranial nerve; *35 b1*, superficial transverse fibres of the pons; *35 b2*, deep transverse fibres of pons; *36*, lateral lemniscus; *Fcc*, central tegmental tract; *Nci*, nucleus of the reticular formation; *Np*, pontile nuclei; *Tr*, trapezoid body; *r*, median raphé; 37, peduncle of superior olivary nucleus; 38, superior olivary nucleus.

3. The pyramid; now occupying the middle of the pons.

4. The remains of the posterior horn.

7. The reticular formation (*SR*); in which are several groups of ganglion cells, the nuclei of the reticular formation (*Nci*).

12. The internal arcuate fibres; rather indefinite.

14. The fillet (*Rm*), now called the median lemniscua to distinguish it from the lateral lemniscus; much flattened dorso-ventrally lying between the reticular formation and the pons.

15. The spinal root of the fifth cranial nerve; usually broken up into several bundles.

21. The posterior longitudinal fasciculus; now a distinctly separate bundle lying next the median line near the floor of the fourth ventricle.

25. The fourth ventricle; the roof now being formed by the cerebellum.

31. The root fibres of the vestibular division of the eighth nerve.

32. The root fibres of the seventh (facial) cranial nerve and its nucleus of origin. The latter consists of a fairly well-defined group of large motor cells situated deep in the reticular formation (Fig. 249, *Nvii*).

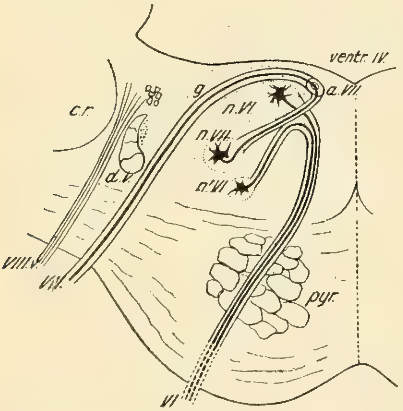


FIG. 250.—Diagram of Origin of Sixth and Seventh Cranial Nerves. (Schäfer.) *pyr*, Pyramid; *cr*, restiform body; *dV*, spinal root of fifth nerve; *Ventr.IV*, fourth ventricle; *VIII.v*, vestibular root of eighth nerve; *n.VI*, chief nucleus of sixth nerve; *n' VI*, accessory nucleus of sixth nerve; *VI*, sixth nerve; *n.VII*, nucleus of seventh nerve, from which the axones pass dorso-mesially to the floor of the ventricle, where they turn brainward, appearing as a bundle of transversely cut fibres, *a VII*, and ascend to the "genu," *g*, where they turn and pass ventro-laterally to the surface as the seventh nerve, *VII*.

The axones of the cells of this nucleus pass dorsally and mesially toward the floor of the fourth ventricle (*VII 7*). Here they turn and ascend in the floor of the fourth ventricle—appearing in the section as a bundle of transversely cut fibres (*VII g*)—to the genu or bend, where they turn ventro-laterally and pass to the surface (*VII*).

(Only portions of the course of the root fibres of this nerve can be seen in any one section.)

33. The root fibres of the sixth (abducens) cranial nerve and its nucleus of origin. The nucleus consists of a group of large motor cells lying in the floor of the fourth ventricle (*Nvi*), partially surrounded by the genu of the seventh nerve. From this nucleus, fibres may be seen (*VI*), passing ventrally through the reticular formation and pons of the surface.

35. The pons Varolii. This occupies the ventral part of the section. It consists of longitudinal fibres, transverse fibres, and gray matter (pontile nuclei).

(*a*) The pontile nuclei (*Np*) are masses of gray matter lying among the fibres of the pons. They are nuclei of origin of the transverse pontile fibres.

(*b*) The transverse pontile fibres, or middle peduncle of the cerebellum, connect the pontile nuclei with the opposite cerebellar hemisphere. They are divided by the longitudinal fibres into (*b*1), superficial transverse fibres and (*b*2) deep transverse fibres.

(*c*) The longitudinal fibres of the pons lie with the pyramidal tracts between the superficial and deep transverse fibres. They are mainly descending axones to the pontile nuclei from cells situated in the cerebral cortex.

37. The central tegmental tract (*Fcc*) lies in the reticular formation between the root fibres of the sixth and seventh nerves. It is probably a descending tract from higher centres to the olives.

The following new structures are to be noted:

36. The lateral lemniscus or lateral fillet lies to the outer side of the reticular formation. It contains a mass of gray matter known as the nucleus of the lateral lemniscus, in which some of the fibres of the acoustic pathway are interrupted. Its fibres are mainly a secondary cochlear tract, the axones of cells in the terminal nuclei of the cochlear nerve (see p. 385, 31). The fibres of the lateral lemniscus terminate mainly in the gray matter of the posterior corpora quadrigemina, possibly also in the anterior corpora quadrigemina, most of them in the corpora quadrigemina of the same side, a few in opposite side. From the posterior corpus quadrigeminum, fibres (brachium of posterior corpus quadrigeminum) pass to the internal or medial geniculate body of the same side, whence they pass as a part of the thalamic radiations to end in the cortex of the temporal lobe.

38. The superior olive is a mass of gray matter lying just lateral to the central tegmental tract. This nucleus, together with several other nuclei in its immediate vicinity (pre-olivary nucleus, semilunar nucleus, and trapezoid nucleus) are terminal nuclei for the secondary cochlear fibres of the trapezium (*Tr*). Some of the transverse fibres passing through the ventral part of the tegmentum are the decussating fibres of the secondary acoustic tract (see page 388) to the lateral fillet.

7. Transverse Section Through the Exit of the Root Fibres of the Fifth (Trigeminus) Cranial Nerve (Fig. 251).

The following structures seen in the last section have disappeared:

4. The posterior horn, which has been serving as the nucleus of termination for the descending root of the fifth nerve. In some of the lower sections of this level a small remnant of the posterior horn may be present.

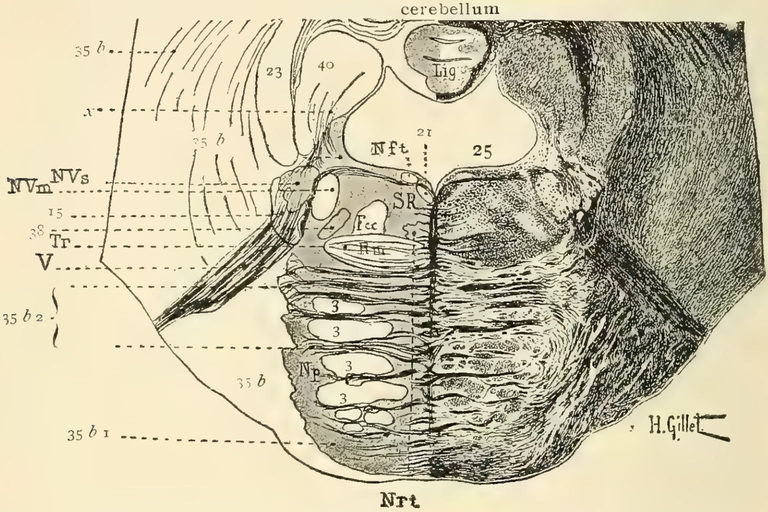


FIG. 251.—Transverse Section of the Medulla through the Exit of the Fifth Cranial Nerve. (Dejerine.) *3*, Pyramidal fibres and longitudinal pontile fibres; *SR*, reticular formation; *Rm*, fillet; *Tr*, trapezoid body; *15*, spinal root of fifth nerve; *21*, posterior longitudinal fasciculus; *25*, fourth ventricle; *35 b*, transverse pontile fibres; *35 b1*, superficial transverse pontile fibres; *35 b2*, deep transverse pontile fibres; *Fcc*, central tegmental tract; *Nrt*, nucleus of the reticular formation; *Np*, pontile nuclei; *38*, superior olivary nucleus; *V*, root fibres of fifth cranial nerve; *NVs*, sensory nucleus of fifth cranial nerve; *NVm*, motor nucleus of fifth cranial nerve; *Nft*, nucleus funiculi teretis; *23*, inferior cerebellar peduncle, the continuation of the restiform body; *40*, superior cerebellar peduncle; *35 b*, transverse pontile fibres forming middle cerebellar peduncle; *Lig*, middle lobe of cerebellum; *x*, fibres passing to superior cerebellar peduncle.

31. The root fibres of the vestibular division of the eighth cranial nerve.

32. The root fibres and nucleus of the seventh cranial nerve.

33. The root fibres and nucleus of the sixth cranial nerve.

The following structures seen in the preceding section are still present:

2. The tract of Gowers, the spino-tectal tract, and von Monakow's bundle; not distinguishable in the sections, but lying in the ventral part of the tegmentum just internal to the root of the fifth nerve.

3. The pyramid; now much broken up into bundles by the transverse fibres of the pons (35 *b*).

7. The reticular formation (*SR*); occupies a considerable portion of the tegmentum, its gray matter being known as the nucleus of the reticular formation (*Nrt*).

12. Internal arcuate fibres; crossing the median raphé.

14. The fillet (*Rm*); much flattened dorso-ventrally, and broken up into several bundles of fibres, which lie just ventral to the reticular formation and dorsal to the deepest of the transverse pontile fibres.

15. The spinal root of the fifth nerve (see p. 378, 15).

21. The posterior longitudinal fasciculus.

25. The fourth ventricle; somewhat narrower as it is approaching the iter.

35. The pons; much increased in extent. (For details see p. 391, 35.)

36. The lateral lemniscus. (For details see p. 391, 36.)

37. The central tegmental tract (*Fcc*); in about the same position.

38. The superior olive; smaller than in the last section.

Note the following new structures:

39. The root fibres of the fifth cranial nerve (trigeminus). As the fifth is a mixed nerve, some of these fibres are sensory, others motor.

(*a*) The fibres of the sensory root pass between the fibres of the pons to the floor of the fourth ventricle, where some of them terminate in the main sensory nucleus (*NVs*), while others turn spinalward as the descending spinal root (*15*), which with its nucleus (the remains of the posterior horn) has been noted in all sections of the medulla.

(*b*) The fibres of the motor root leave the medulla just internal to those of the sensory root. They are axones of cells situated in two nuclei—only one of which (*NVm*) can be seen in this section—lying in the lateral part of the reticular formation.

The cell bodies of the neurones whose axones make up the sensory root of the fifth nerve are situated in the Gasserian or semilunar ganglion. This ganglion is analogous to the posterior root ganglion of the spinal nerve. The cells are unipolar, the single process bifurcating as in the cells of the spinal ganglia. Their peripheral branches pass to the surface. Their central branches pierce the fibres of the pons and, reaching the floor of the fourth ventricle, bifurcate. The shorter ascending arms terminate in the main sensory nucleus of the fifth nerve. The long descending arms form the descending or spinal root of the fifth nerve. The fibres of this root send collaterals into, and terminate in, the gelatinous substance of the posterior horn, which thus constitutes an extended terminal nucleus for this root (Fig. 252).

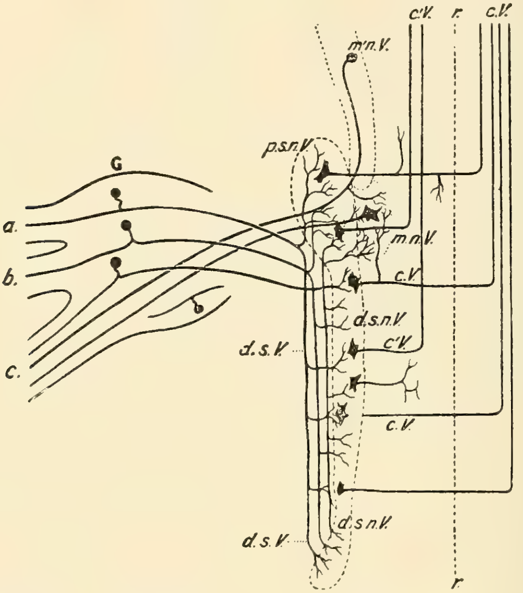


FIG. 252.—Diagram of Origin of Fifth Cranial Nerve. (Schäfer.) *G*, Gasserian ganglion; *a*, *b*, *c*, the three divisions of the nerve; *m.n.V*, principal motor nucleus; *p.s.n.V*, principal sensory nucleus; *d.s.n.V*, descending sensory or spinal nucleus; *d.s.V*, descending or spinal root; *c.V* and *c'.V*, secondary trigeminal tracts (axones of cells in sensory nuclei); *r*, median raphé.

The cell bodies of the neurones whose axones constitute the motor root of the fifth nerve are situated, as already noted, in two nuclei. One of these, the principal motor nucleus, has been described. The other nucleus consists of a long column of cells extending from this level upward to the region of the corpora quadrigemina. The axones from this nucleus form the descending motor or mesencephalic root of the fifth nerve (Fig. 253, *Vd*). The axones from these two nuclei join to form the motor root of the fifth nerve.

40. All three of the cerebellar peduncles can be seen in this section. The inferior peduncle (23) is the continuation into the cerebellum of the restiform body which has been noted in all of the sections above the pyramidal decussation. (For details see p. 384, 23.) The middle peduncle (35 *b*) has been described in connection with the transverse fibres of the pons (see p. 391, 35 *b*). The superior peduncles (40) form a large part of the lateral wall of the fourth ventricle. They are more conspicuous in the succeeding section. (For details see p. 397, 40.)

THE MIDBRAIN—MESENCEPHALON OR ISTHMUS.

Through the midbrain can be followed the further continuation upward of the main fibre tracts of the cord and medulla. Ventrally the midbrain shows a deep groove or sulcus, caused by the divergence of the crusta or continuation of the main motor tracts. The dorsal surface of the midbrain presents four rounded prominences, the two posterior and the two anterior corpora quadrigemina. Just dorsal to the crusta is a layer of gray matter which contains deeply pigmented nerve cells. This is known as the substantia nigra and separates the crusta from the rest of the midbrain, the parts dorsal to the substantia nigra being collectively known as the tegmentum. There are thus to be considered in studying the midbrain, the crusta, the tegmentum, and the intervening substantia nigra.

Transverse Section of the Midbrain through the Exit of the Fourth Cranial Nerve (Pathetic) (Fig. 253).

The following structures present in the preceding sections have disappeared:

12. The internal arcuate fibres; unless the decussating fibres of the superior peduncles of the cerebellum be regarded as such.

15. Spinal root of the fifth nerve; with its nucleus, the posterior horn.

25. The fourth ventricle; now become the iter, the roof of which is formed by the valve of Vieussens or anterior medullary vellum.

35. The pons.

38. The superior olivary and trapezoid nuclei.

39. The fifth nerve, with its roots and nuclei, excepting the small descending motor (mesencephalic) root (*Vd*), and its nucleus.

The following structures seen in the preceding section are still present:

In the crusta:

3. The pyramid (*VP*). The numerous bundles of pyramidal fibres seen in the last section among the transverse pontile fibres now form one large bundle, *the crusta*. The middle three-fifths of the latter are occupied by the pyramidal tracts proper (cerebrospinal), and by fibres to the motor nuclei of the cranial nerves; the mesial fifth, mainly by axones passing from cells in the frontal lobe to terminate in the pontile nuclei; the lateral fifth, by fibres which probably connect the temporal lobe with the pontile nuclei.

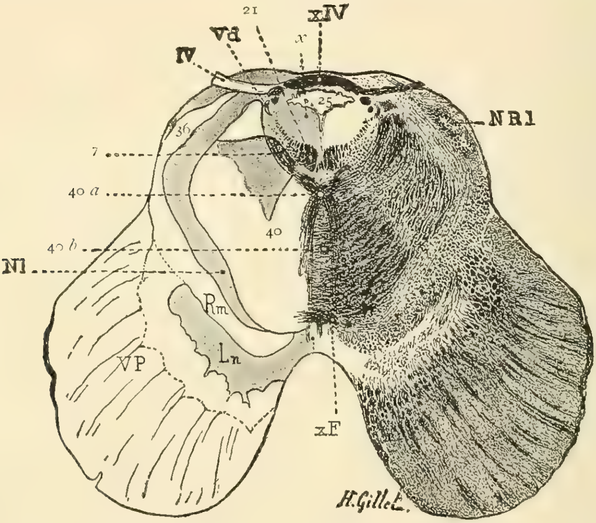


FIG. 253.—Transverse Section of the Midbrain through the Exit of the Fourth Cranial Nerve. (Dejerine.) *VP*, Pyramid; *7*, reticular formation; *Rm*, fillet; *21*, posterior longitudinal fasciculus; *25*, iter; *36*, lateral lemniscus; *NRl*, nucleus of lateral lemniscus; *Vd*, descending or mesencephalic root of fifth nerve; *40*, superior cerebellar peduncle; *40 a*, dorsal decussation of superior peduncles; *40 b*, ventral decussation of superior peduncles; *Nl*, lateral nucleus, a band of gray matter lying between the superior peduncles and the fillet; *Ln*, substantia nigra; *IV*, root fibres of fourth cranial nerve; *xIV*, decussation of root fibres of fourth cranial nerve; *x*, gray matter forming floor of iter; *xF*, tegmental decussation.

In the most dorsal part of the crusta are a small number of fibres which have been described as derived from the fillet and as probably passing either to the cortex or thalamus.

In the tegmentum:

2. Gowers' tract is now external to the superior cerebellar peduncle, passing back to the cerebellum (p. 365). Von Monakow's bundle lies mesial to the nucleus of the lateral lemniscus.

7. The reticular formation; much diminished in size, contains besides its association fibres, ascending axones from cells of the fifth nerve nuclei (secondary trigeminal tract), crossed decending tract from the tectum, and descending fibres from the superior peduncle.

14. The fillet; now a much flattened band of fibres just dorsal to the substantia nigra.

21. The posterior longitudinal fasciculus; just ventral to the gray matter of the floor of the iter.

36. The lateral lemniscus; occupying with its nucleus (*NRl*) the extreme dorso-lateral part of the tegmentum.

37. The central tegmental tract.

39 *b.* (*Vd*) The descending motor or mesencephalic root of the fifth nerve. (For details see p. 394.)

40. The superior cerebellar peduncles or brachia conjunctiva. These occupy the greater part of the tegmentum and can be seen decussating in the median line. They are composed mainly of axones from cells in the dentate nucleus and possibly in other cerebellar nuclei. Crossing to the opposite side in the decussation, these axones terminate mainly in the red nucleus and thalamus; also in the pons and medulla and possibly in the nucleus of the third nerve.

Of new structures, the only ones to which special attention is called are:

41. The fourth cranial nerve (pathetic). The root fibres of this nerve are seen decussating in the roof of the iter (*xIV*). Some transversely cut bundles of fourth root fibres can also be seen in the lateral wall of the iter.

The fibres of this nerve are axones of a group of cells which lie deep in the central gray matter. These axones pass first dorso-laterally to about the position of the mesencephalic root of the fifth nerve when they turn and run spinalward. At the level of the anterior medullary velum they turn dorso-mesially to form the above-mentioned decussation, after which they pass to the surface.

Transverse Section of the Midbrain through the Exit of the Third Cranial Nerve (Oculomotor) (Fig. 254).

The following structures seen in the preceding section have disappeared:

2. Gowers' tract.

39 *b*. The descending motor (mesencephalic) root of the fifth nerve.

41. The fourth cranial nerve.

The following structures are still present:

2. The spino-tectal tract lies just dorsal to the median lemniscus. Von Monakow's bundle is crossing to its nucleus of origin, the red nucleus of the opposite side.

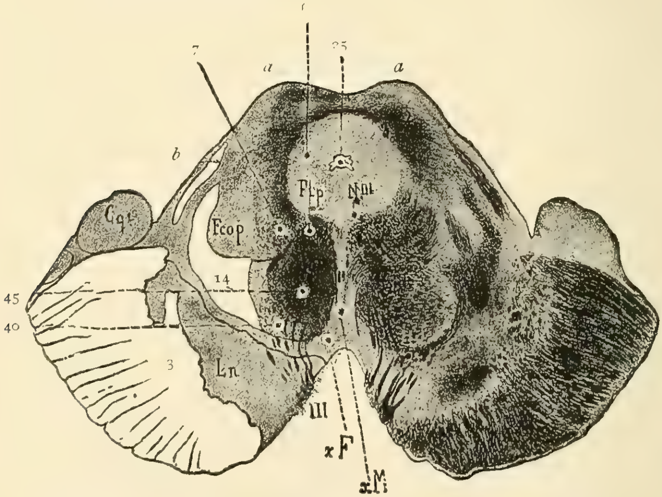


FIG. 254.—Transverse Section of the Midbrain through the Exit of the Third Cranial Nerve. (Dejerine.) *3*, Pyramid; *7*, reticular formation of tegmentum; *14*, fillet, *Flp*, posterior longitudinal fasciculus; *25*, iter; *36*, lateral lemniscus: not marked, but lying just dorsal to most dorsal fillet fibres, *14*; *40*, superior cerebellar peduncle; *Ln*, substantia nigra; *a*, *a*, anterior corpora quadrigemina; *b*, brachium of anterior corpus quadrigeminum; *Cgi*, internal geniculate body; *45*, red nucleus; *x*, central gray matter; *Fcop*, lateral gray matter of tegmentum (superior lateral nucleus of Flechsig); *xF*, ventral tegmental decussation or decussation of Forel; *xM*, dorsal tegmental decussation or decussation of Meynert; *NIII*, nucleus of origin of third cranial nerve; *III*, root fibres of third nerve.

3. The crusta; its fibres being arranged essentially as in the preceding section.

7. The reticular formation; less extensive.

14. The fillet; just dorsal to the substantia nigra.

21. The posterior longitudinal (*Flp*) fasciculus; not easily distinguished, but lying to the ventral and lateral side of the nucleus of the third nerve.

36. The lateral lemniscus; smaller from loss of fibres, which ended in the posterior corpus quadrigeminum. The remainder of its fibres pass upward to terminate in the anterior corpus quadrigeminum and in the lateral geniculate body.

40. The superior cerebellar peduncles; their decussation, now completed, lie one on either side of the median line.

42. The substantia nigra (*Ln*), between the crusta and tegmentum.

The following new structures are to be noted:

43. The anterior corpora quadrigemina (*a*, *a*). (For description see p. 400).

44. The geniculate bodies, only the medial of which (*Cgi*) can be seen in the section; two masses of gray matter, the medial lying dorsal, the lateral lying dorso-lateral, to the crusta. The lateral geniculate bodies are connected with the optic tracts (see Optic Nerve, p. 430).

45. The red nucleus; a large mass of gray matter lying between the substantia nigra and the posterior longitudinal fasciculus. The relation of this nucleus to the superior peduncles of the cerebellum was described in connection with the preceding section (p. 397, 40). From cells in this nucleus axones pass upward to higher centres and downward (von Monakow's bundle) to the spinal cord.

46. The root fibres and nucleus of origin of the third cranial nerve (oculomotor). The nucleus is a well-defined group of large motor cells lying in the deepest part of the central gray matter. From this nucleus bundles of fibres may be seen passing in a curved course through the reticular formation to reach the surface just to the inner side of the crusta (*III*).

At this level two decussations occur. The ventral (decussation of Forel) consists of the above-mentioned crossing fibres of von Monakow's bundle (2, p. 398); the dorsal (decussation of Meynert) consists largely of fibres from the tectum to the anterior corpus quadrigeminum, which, after crossing, descend to the medulla and possibly to the cord.

The Corpora Quadrigemina.—*The Posterior Corpora Quadrigemina.*—These consist mainly of gray matter and are connected with parts above and below by tracts of fibres. The fibres which ascend to terminate in the gray matter of the posterior corpus quadrigeminum come mainly from the lateral lemniscus (for fibres which this contains see p. 391, 36). From the cells of the gray matter of the posterior corpus quadrigeminum some axones ascend, joining the fibres of that part of the lateral lemniscus which passes by the posterior corpus quadrigeminum. These together form the inferior brachium quadrigeminum and pass to the anterior corpus quadrigeminum and to the medial corpus geniculatum.

The Anterior Corpora Quadrigemina.—These consist of both gray matter and white matter. The white matter is made up mainly of fibres of the optic tracts, axones of neurones whose cell bodies are located in the retinæ. The gray matter of the anterior corpora quadrigemina serves as the terminal nuclei for these axones. It probably serves also as a terminal nucleus for some axones of the lateral lemniscus—*i.e.*, for the secondary acoustic tract. The neurones whose cell bodies are situated in the anterior corpora quadrigemina send their axones mainly downward. Their destinations are not fully known. Some appear to cross through Meynert's decussation (Fig. 254) to the opposite side, where they continue spinalward, giving off collaterals and terminals to the nuclei of the third, fourth, and sixth cranial nerves. Other axones pass downward on the same side, and probably end in the pontile nuclei, thus bringing the corpora quadrigemina into connection with the opposite cerebellar hemisphere.

The Cerebral Peduncles (*crura cerebri*).—These are the direct continuation brainward of the crusta and tegmentum (see sections of midbrain), the former containing the main motor tract (p. 396, 3), the latter containing the main sensory tract. As the peduncles approach the basal ganglia, the substantia nigra disappears and the tegmentum lies just dorsal to the crusta. These bundles of fibres pass through the basal ganglia between the nucleus caudatus and the optic thalamus on the mesial side, and the nucleus lenticularis on the lateral side. Here they form the *internal capsule*, which is directly continuous above with the *corona radiata* through which the fibres enter the cortex cerebri. In a horizontal section through the basal ganglia, the internal capsule is seen to present a sharp *bend* or *genu* somewhat anterior to its mid-point. This bend divides the capsule into an anterior portion and a posterior portion. The anterior portion lies between the caudate nucleus internally and the lenticular nucleus externally. This part of the capsule consists mainly of fibres which connect the cortex cerebri and the optic thalamus. The posterior portion of the internal capsule lies between the lenticular nucleus on its outer side and the optic thalamus on its inner side. About the anterior two-thirds of this portion is occupied by the fibres of the pyramidal tract (including descending fibres to the motor cranial nerve nuclei).

THE CEREBELLUM.

General Histology of the Cerebellar Cortex.

The cerebellum consists of a central portion or *core* of white matter which extends outward into the cortex as a series of transversely disposed branching plates. These, covered by a layer of gray matter, form the *laminæ*, which can be seen on the surface, and which on transverse section present the characteristic leaf-like appearance known as the *arbor vitæ*.

Each leaflet is seen on section to consist of (1) a central core of *white matter* and (2) a covering of *gray matter* which consists of three layers: (*a*) an *internal* or *granular layer*, (*b*) an *external* or *molecular layer*, and between these (*c*) a layer composed of a single row of very large cells, the *layer of Purkinje cells*.

(1) The *white matter* consists of medullated nerve fibres which pass out in a radial manner into the layers of gray matter. These fibres, while apparently alike, may be subdivided into (*a*) fibres which are axones of cells situated in other parts of the nervous system—these axones are passing to their terminations in the cerebellar cortex; (*b*) fibres which are axones of cells situated in the cerebellum (mainly axones of cells of Purkinje)—these axones pass through the white matter of the cerebellum to terminate in some other part of the nervous system; (*c*) fibres which are axones of neurones entirely confined to the cerebellum.

(2) The *gray matter*, or *cortex cerebelli*, may be subdivided into: (*a*) an internal, granular or nuclear layer; (*b*) an outer molecular layer, and between the two, (*c*) the layer of Purkinje cells.

(*a*) The *internal*, *granular*, or *nuclear layer* appears under ordinary staining methods to be composed of a mass of small, closely packed cells, each consisting of a nucleus surrounded by a small amount of protoplasm (Fig. 255). Intermingled with these cells are medullated and non-medullated nerve fibres. Studied by the method of Golgi, the nerve-cell elements of this layer can be divided into (1) *small granule cells* and (2) *large granule cells.* The small granule cells (Fig. 257, *c*) are multipolar, their short dendritic processes ramifying in the granular layer; their axones, which are non-medullated, passing into the molecular layer. Here each axone bifurcates, the branches running parallel to the surface and to the lamina, and terminating freely. The large granule cells (Fig. 257, *d*) are also multipolar. Their dendrites, however, pass outward to ramify in the molecular layer, while their axones branch rapidly and form a dense network in the granular layer. The dense plexus of nerve fibres in the granular layer is formed by the processes of the cells above described, by axones and their collaterals of Purkinje cells, and by fibres which enter the layer from the central core of white matter. Reaching the boundary between the granular layer and the molecular

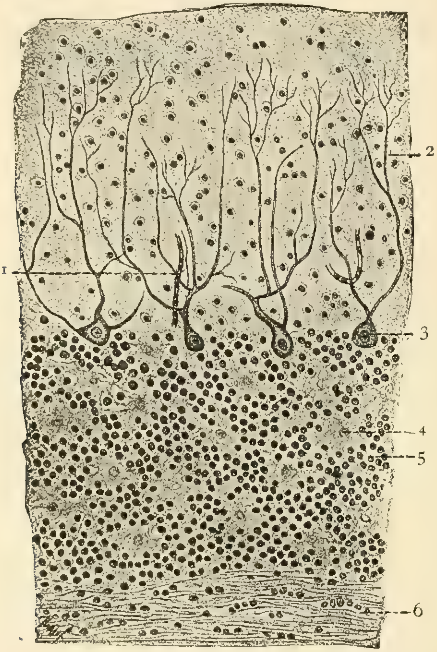


Fig. 255.—From Section through the Cerebellar Cortex, Stained with Hæmatoxylin-eosin. (Böhm and von Davidoff.) *1*, Blood-vessel; *2*, dendrite of Purkinje cell ramifying in molecular layer; *3*, body of Purkinje cell at junction of molecular and granular layers; *4* and *5*, cells of the granular layer; *6*, layer of nerve fibres (white matter).

layer, many of these fibres turn and pass horizontally and in a direction transverse to the long axis of the convolution. From these, branches pass vertically into the molecular layer.

(*b*) The *molecular layer* contains larger and smaller multipolar cells. Most of the dendrites of these cells pass toward the surface. The axones run horizontally in the transverse axis of the convolution (Fig. 257, *b*). A few collaterals pass upward. Most of the collaterals and terminals pass downward to end in basket-like arborizations around the bodies of the Purkinje cells. For this reason these cells of the molecular layer are often called "basket cells." There are also found in this layer cells the destination of whose axones is unknown. The fibres of this layer consist of processes of already described cerebellar cells, together with fibres which come from the white matter, lose their medullary sheaths, and end in terminal arborizations around the dendritic processes of the Purkinje cells.

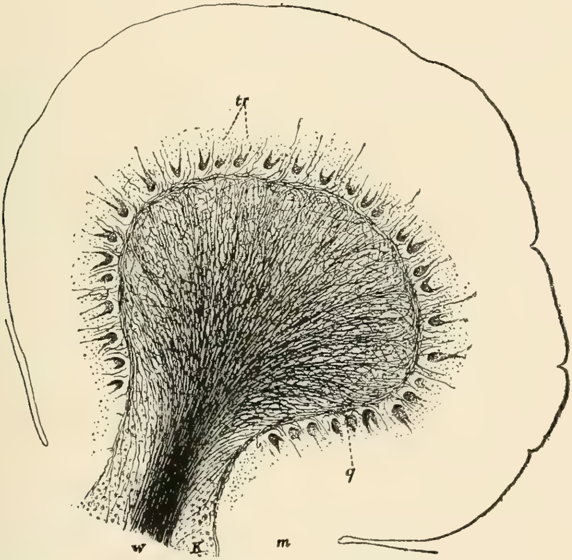


FIG. 256.—Cross Section of a Cerebellar Convolution Stained by Weigert's Method. (Kölliker.) *m*, Molecular layer; *K*, granular layer; *w*, white matter; *q*, fine fibres passing from white matter into the molecular layer; *tr*, dots represent longitudinal fibres of molecular layer among bodies of Purkinje cells.

(*c*) The *cells of Purkinje* (Fig. 257, *a*; Fig. 258, *n*; Fig. 259) lie in the molecular layer just at the margin of the granular layer. From the neck of the cell pass off two large dendritic processes which give rise to an enormous number of branches. These ramify in the molecular layer. This ramification is not equally extensive in all directions, but is much greater in the plane transverse to the long axis of the lamina (compare Figs. 258 and 259).

In addition to the already mentioned basket network formed by the terminals of "basket" cells around the bodies of the Purkinje cells, networks of fibres from the white matter terminating in the cerebellar cortex surround the larger dendritic processes. These are known as "climbing" fibres.

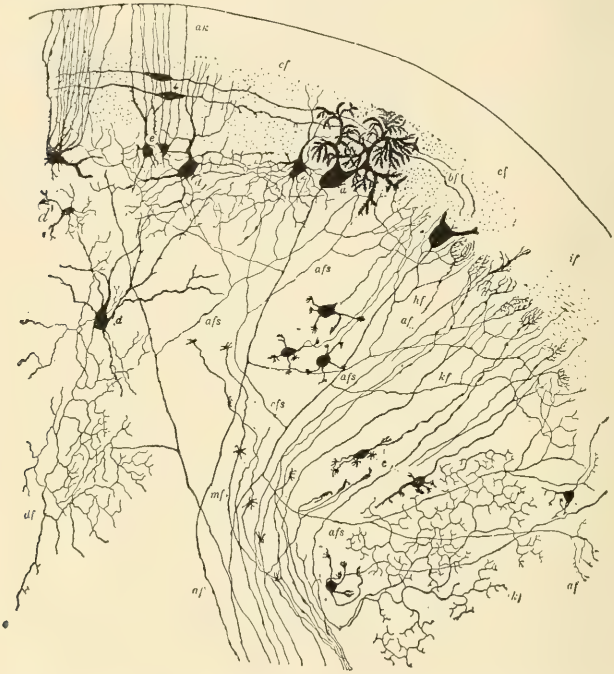


FIG. 257.—From a Transverse Sagittal Section of a Cerebellar Convolution of a Rabbit Seven Days Old. Golgi method. (Dejerine, after Retzius.) *ak*, Molecular layer; *a*, Purkinje cell; to right a Purkinje cell the dendrites of which are not included in section; *af*, axones of Purkinje cells, giving off collateral branches, *afs*; *b*, horizontal cells of molecular layer, their axones, *bf*, running in the transverse axis of the convolution (the collaterals which pass downward from these axones and form basket-works around the bodies of the Purkinje cells are not impregnated); *c*, cells of the granular layer the axones of which enter the molecular layer where they turn and run in the long axis of the convolution, thus appearing as dots in this section; *d*, large granule cell of granule layer, its dendrites passing toward the molecular layer, its axone, *df*, branching rapidly and terminating in the granule layer near its cell of origin; *d'*, another type of small granule cell; *hf*, nerve fibre terminating in pericellular network; *mf* and *kf*, nerve fibres terminating in the cerebellar cortex; *e*, neuroglia cells.

The axone of the Purkinje cell is given off from the side of the cell opposite to the main dendrite, and, becoming medullated, enters the white matter (Fig. 259, *n*).

Besides the gray matter of the cerebellar cortex, isolated masses of gray matter, the cerebellar nuclei are found in the white matter of the central core. The largest of these is the *dentate nucleus*, an irregular wavy lamina somewhat resembling the olive and situated at

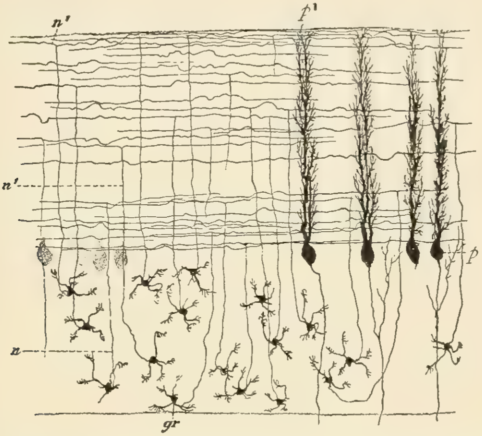


FIG. 258.—Diagram of Longitudinal Section of Cerebellar Cortex. Golgi method. (Kölliker.) *gr*, Cell of the granular layer; *n*, axone of granule cell; *n'*, the same in molecular layer where it branches and runs in long axis of convolution; *p*, Purkinje cell showing how much less extensively its dendrites (*p'*) branch in long axis of lamina. (Compare Fig. 259.)

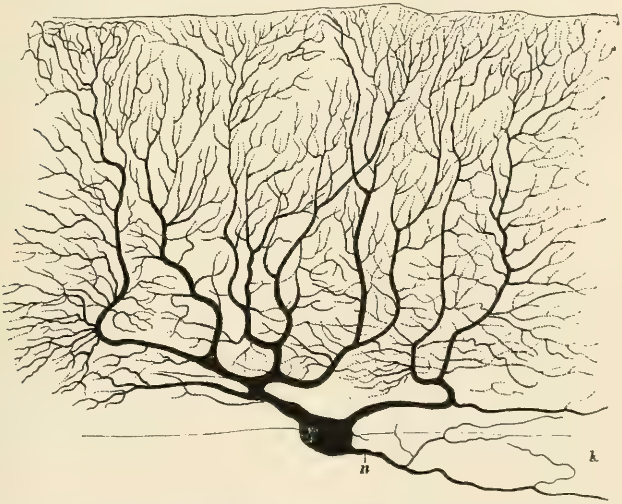


FIG. 259.—Purkinje Cell from Human Cerebellum (section transverse to long axis of lamina). Golgi method. (Kölliker.) Showing extent of dendritic branching in molecular layer. *n*, Axone; *k*, collateral.

about the middle of each cerebellar hemisphere. Other smaller nuclei occur in the white matter of the middle lobe.

The connections of the cerebellum with other nerve centres through its superior, middle, and inferior peduncles have been described in connection with the medulla (page 395, 40).

THE CEREBRUM.

General Histology of the Cerebral Cortex.

Each *cerebral convolution,* like the convolutions of the cerebellum, consists of a *central white core* covered over by a layer of *gray matter,* which latter constitutes the cortex cerebri.

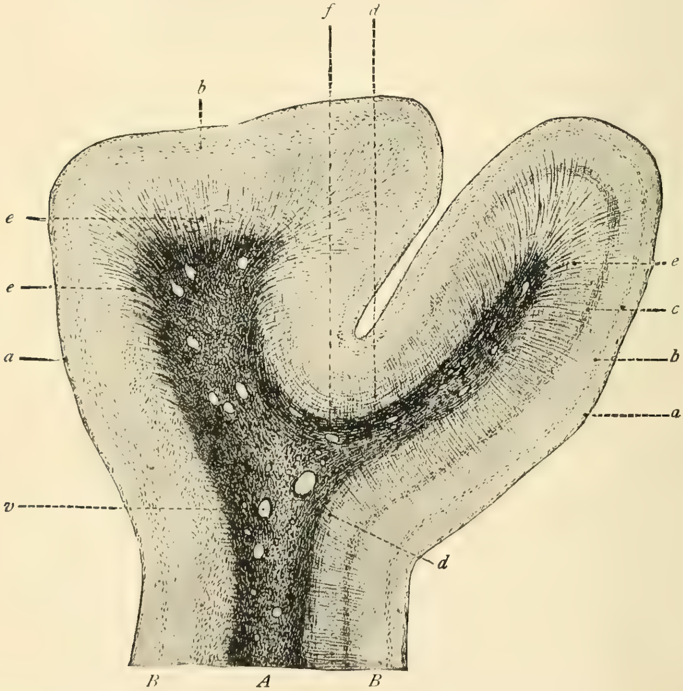


FIG. 260.—From Vertical Section of Human Cerebral Cortex. Weigert stain. × 10. Detail drawn under a magnification of sixty diameters. (Dejerine). *A*, Corona radiata or central core of white matter ; *B*, gray matter of cortex ; *a*, superficial tangential fibres ; *d*, deep tangential fibres ; *b* and *c*, intermediate bands of tangential fibres, *b* sometimes known as the outer line of Baillarger, *c*, as the inner line of Baillarger ; *e*, radiation fibres (association, commissural, and projection fibres); *f*, association fibres between the two adjacent convolutions.

The *cortex cerebri* may be divided into three fairly distinct layers: (*a*) an *outer, barren,* or *molecular layer,* or layer of few nerve cells, (*b*) a *middle layer*, or *layer of pyramidal cells*, and (*c*) an *inner layer*, or *layer of polymorphous cells.*

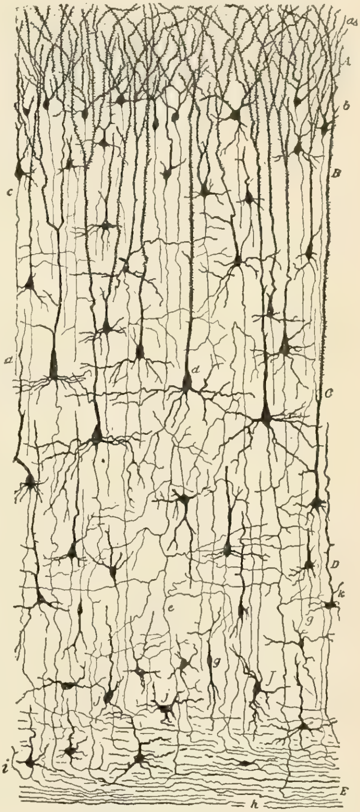


FIG. 261.—From Vertical Transverse Section of Cerebral Cortex of a Mouse. Golgi method. (Ramón y Cajal.) *A*, Barren or molecular layer; *B*, layer of small pyramidal cells; *C*, layer of large pyramidal cells; *D*, layer of polymorphous cells; *E*, white matter; *a*, dendritic ramifications of pyramidal cells showing gemmules; *b*, small superficial pyramidal cell; *c*, axone of small pyramidal cells; *d*, large pyramidal cells; *e*, axone of large pyramidal cells; *f*, so-called inverted pyramid with axone passing toward the surface; *g*, smaller cells with ascending axones; *h*, axones within white matter; *i*, polymorphous cell sending axone into white matter; *j*, cell of Golgi type II.

(*a*) *The Barren or Molecular Layer* (Fig. 261, *A*).—The nerve cells of this layer are known as the *cells of Cajal.* They are fusiform, triangular, or irregular in shape, and both their dendrites and axones ramify in this outer layer, the axones passing mainly in a direction parallel to the surface. This layer also contains the terminations of the apical dendrites of the pyramidal cells (Fig. 261, *a*), some medullated nerve fibres running parallel to the surface and known as the *superficial tangential fibres* (Fig. 260, *a*), and a rich plexus of neuroglia.

(*b*) *The Layer of Pyramidal Cells* (Fig. 261, *B* and *C*).—This is often described as two separate layers, an outer layer of *small pyramidal cells* (*B*) and a deeper layer of *large pyramidal cells* (*C*). It seems better to describe it as a single layer composed mainly of *small pyramidal cells*, in the deeper portion of which the larger pyramidal cells are found. Each pyramidal cell has passing off from its outwardly directed angle a large apical or main dendrite (Fig. 261, *d*). This dendrite sends off small lateral twigs and terminates in numerous branches in the molecular layer. Smaller dendritic processes pass off from the sides and base of the cell. The axone (Fig. 261, *e*) originates from the base of the cell and enters the white matter of the corona radiata. During its passage through the gray matter it sends off collateral branches. Some of these collateral branches are medullated and form some of the *deep tangential fibres* (Fig. 260, *d*). The large, medium size, and small cells are apparently identical in structure, differing from one another mainly in size. Among the deeper cells of this layer are found some very large pyramidal cells, called the *cells of Betz.* These cells are found only in the motor cortex, and it is believed that it is the axones of these cells which pass down through the internal capsule to the cord as the main cortico-spinal motor tract.

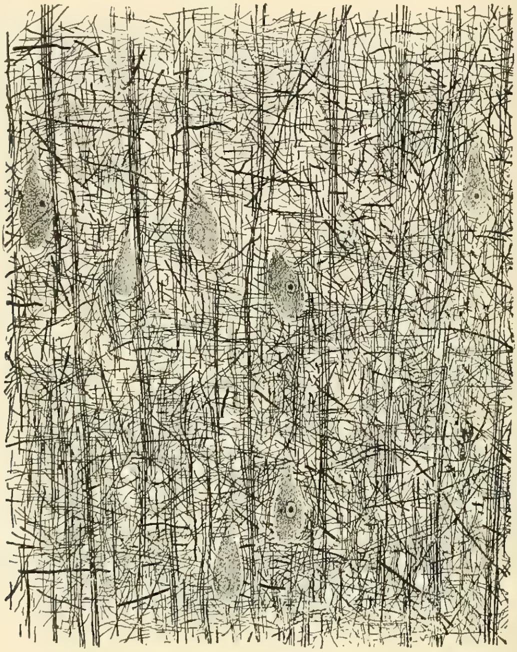


FIG. 262.—From Vertical Section of Human Cortex Cerebri. Weigert stain. (Kölliker.) Showing few small pyramidal cells and rich plexus of medullated nerve fibres. The bundles of fibres seen passing vertically are the bundles of radiation fibres passing to and from the white matter.

In this layer are also found cells—*cells of Martinotti*—(Fig. 261, *g*) the dendrites of which pass downward, while their axones pass upward to the molecular layer, where they turn and run parallel to the surface as the (medullated) superficial tangential fibres.

Cells of Golgi type II. are also found in this layer (Fig. 261, *j*). Their axones branch rapidly and end in the gray matter in the vicinity of their cells of origin.

The fibres of this layer consist of the axones and dendrites of cells above described (some axones being medullated) and of axones from cells in other regions which are passing to their terminations (many of the latter being medullated).

(*c*) The *cells of the third layer* (Fig. 261, *D*) are fusiform or irregular (polymorphous) in shape. They have no apical dendrites, their protoplasmic processes coming off irregularly and ramifying mainly in this layer. Their axones pass downward into the white matter.

The fibres of this layer consist of the axones and dendrites of the cells found in this layer, of the axones of the pyramidal cells (now mostly medullated), and of axones of cells in other parts of the nervous system which are passing to their terminations (most of these axones are medullated).

The *corona radiata* (Fig. 260, *A*), or central core of white matter, consists of medullated nerve fibres. These, upon reaching the margin of the gray matter, radiate into the latter as bundles of fibres, thus giving to the cortex a vertically striated appearance. The corona radiata consists of the following fibres, which, of course, cannot be differentiated in Weigert-stained sections.

(1) Descending axones of the large and small pyramidal cells and of the polygonal cells of the deep layer. These axones become medullated and pass (*a*) to other convolutions of the same hemisphere—*association fibres*; these may be adjacent convolutions in the same lobe or distant convolutions in the same or other lobes; (*b*) through the corpus callosum to convolutions of the opposite hemisphere—these are also fibres of association, but are conveniently called *commissural fibres*; (*c*) to the internal capsule as fibres of the descending tracts—*projection fibres.*

(2) Ascending axones of cells situated in other parts of the nervous system, which are passing to their terminal arborizations among the cells of the cortex cerebri. These fibres are: (*a*) Axones of cell bodies which are situated in other convolutions of the same hemisphere—*association fibres;* (*b*) axones of cell bodies which are situated in the convolutions of the opposite hemisphere—these pass through the corpus callosum—*commissural fibres*; (*c*) axones which have come through the internal capsule from cells situated in lower centres—*projection fibres*; these axones are passing to their terminal arborizations in the cortex.

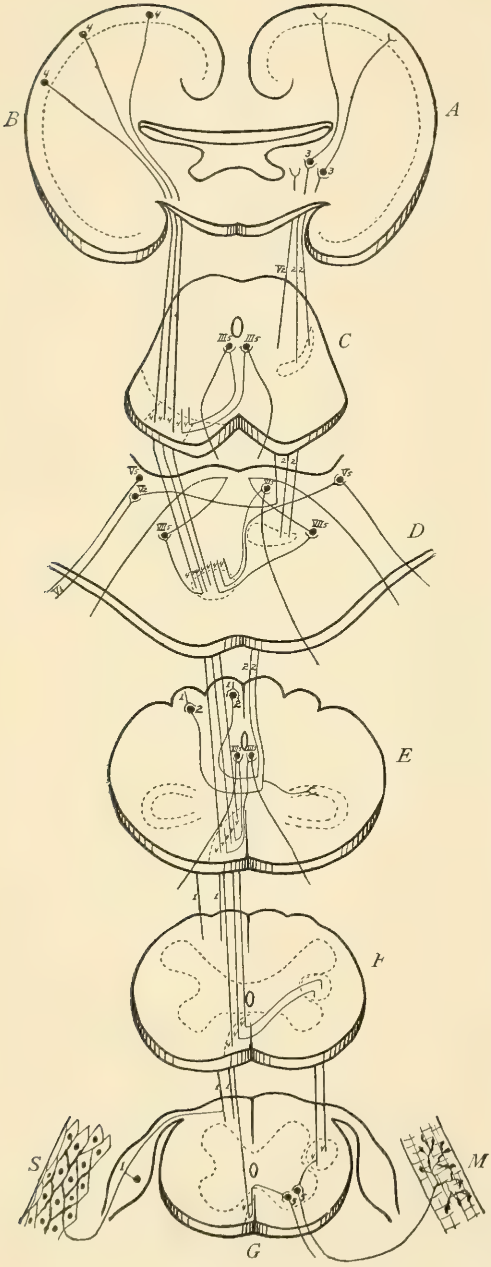


FIG. 263.

In addition to the fibres of the corona radiata, which form dense plexuses among the nerve cells, are bundles of fibres which traverse the gray matter at right angles to the fibres of the corona. These form more or less distinct white lines, as seen with the naked eye in the fresh cortex. The outermost of these in the molecular layer have been mentioned as the superficial tangential fibres. The deep tangential fibres form a second "white line" (known as the outer line of Baillarger) just outside of the layer of large pyramids. A third white line through the layer of large pyramids, the inner line of Baillarger, is present in the greater part of the cortex.

While the above-described arrangement of cells and fibres may be considered to be in general characteristic of the cerebral cortex, much variation exists in different regions.

TECHNIC.

(1) The general structure of the cerebellum is well brought out by staining sections of formalin-Müller's fluid-fixed material with hæmatoxylin-picro-acid-fuchsin (technic 3, p. 17), and mounting in balsam.

(2) The arrangement of the cell layers of both cerebellum and cerebrum, as well as certain details of internal structure of the cells, can be studied in sections of alcohol or formalin-fixed material stained by the method of Nissl (technic, p. 28).

(3) The distribution of the medullated nerve fibre of either the cerebellar or cerebral cortex is best demonstrated by fixing material in Müller's fluid (technic 4, p. 5) or in formalin-Müller's fluid, and staining rather thick sections by the Weigert or Weigert-Pal method (technic, pp. 25 and 26).

(4) The external morphology of the cerebellar and cerebral neurones and the relations of cell and fibre can be thoroughly understood only by means of sections stained by one of the Golgi methods (technic, pp. 27 and 28). Especially in the case of the cerebellum, sections should be made both at right angles, and longitudinal to the long axis of the convolution. Golgi preparations from embryonic material and from the brains of lower animals furnish instructive pictures.

FIG. 263.—Diagram showing the Most Important Direct Paths which an Impulse follows in passing from a Sensory Surface to the Cerebral Cortex and from the latter back to a Muscle; also some of the cranial-nerve connections with the cerebral cortex. *A*, Sensory cortex; *B*, motor cortex; *C*, level of third nerve nucleus; *D*, level of sixth and seventh nerve nuclei; *E*, level of sensory decussation; *F*, level of pyramidal decussation; *G*, spinal cord.

From Periphery to Cortex.

Neurone No. 1.—The Peripheral Sensory Neurone: *1*, *Spinal;* cell bodies in spinal ganglia; sensory end-organ, *S*, peripheral arm of spinal ganglion cell; central arm of spinal ganglion cell as fibre of dorsal root to column of Goll or of Burdach, thence to nucleus of one of these columns in the medulla. V_1, *Cranial* (example, fifth cranial nerve, trigeminus); cell bodies in Gasserian ganglion; sensory end organ; peripheral arm of Gasserian ganglion cell; central arm of Gasserian ganglion cell to medulla as sensory root of fifth nerve, thence to terminal nuclei in medulla.

Neurone No. 2.—*2*, *Spinal connection*—cell body in nucleus of Goll or of Burdach; axone passing as fibre of fillet to thalamus. *V2*, *cranial nerve connection* (trigeminal), cell body in one of trigeminal nuclei in medulla, axone as fibre of secondary trigeminal tract to thalamus.

Neurone No. 3.—*3*, Cell body in thalamus, axone passing through internal capsule to termination in cortex.

From Cortex to Periphery.

Neurone No. 4.—*4*, Cell body in motor cerebral cortex; axone through internal capsule and crusta to (*a*) motor nuclei of cranial nerves, (*b*) by means of pyramidal tracts to ventral horns of spinal cord.

Neurone No. 5.—*5*, *Spinal*, Cell body in ventral horn of cord; axone as motor fibre of ventral root through mixed spinal nerve to muscle.

Neurone No. 5.—*Cranial*—V_5, Cell body in motor nucleus of trigeminus; axone passing to muscle as motor fibre of fifth nerve.

III_5, Peripheral motor neurone of third nerve—oculomotor. VI_5, Peripheral motor neurone of sixth nerve—abducens. VII_5, Peripheral motor neurone of seventh nerve—facial. XII_5, Peripheral motor neurone of twelfth nerve—hypoglossal.

The Pituitary Body.

The pituitary body or *hypophysis cerebri* consists of two lobes which are totally different both in structure and in origin.

The Anterior Lobe.—This is the larger, and is glandular in character. It is of ectodermic origin, developing as a diverticulum from the primitive oral cavity. Its mode of development is that of a compound tubular gland, the single primary diverticulum undergoing repeated division to form the terminal tubules. The original diverticulum ultimately atrophies and disappears, leaving the gland entirely unconnected with the surface. The gland is enclosed in a connective-tissue capsule, from which trabeculæ pass into the organ forming its framework. The gland cells are arranged in slightly convoluted tubules and rest upon a basement membrane. Between the tubules is a vascular connective tissue. Some of the gland cells are small cuboidal cells with nuclei at their bases and a finely granular basophile protoplasm (*chief cells*). Others, somewhat less numerous than the preceding, are larger polygonal cells with centrally placed nuclei and protoplasm containing coarse acidophile (eosinophile) granules (*chromophile cells*). While presenting different appearances and usually described as two kinds of cells, it is probable that chromophile cells and chief cells represent merely different functional conditions of the same cell. Some alveoli in the posterior portion of the lobe frequently contain a colloid substance similar to that found in the thyroid.

As in all ductless glands, the blood supply is rich and the relations of capillaries to gland cells are extremely intimate, dense networks of capillaries surrounding the alveoli on all sides.

The Posterior Lobe.—This, like the anterior, is surrounded by a connective-tissue capsule which sends trabeculæ into its substance. In the human adult the lobe consists mainly of neuroglia with a few scattered cells, which probably represent rudimentary ganglion cells. In the human embryo and in many adult lower animals, the nervous elements are much more prominent and more definitely arranged. Thus Berkley describes the posterior lobe of the pituitary body of the dog as consisting of three distinct zones: (1) An outer zone of three or four layers of cells resembling ependymal cells. Connective-tissue septa from the capsule separate the cells into irregular groups. (2) A middle zone of glandular epithelium, some of the cells of which are arranged as rather indefinite alveoli which

NERVE.	L NUCLEI (SECONDARY EIR DISTRIBUTION.		TERTIARY TRACTS.
I. Olfactorius	tc., to limbic lobe.		
II. Opticus	is et spinalis, etc., to o-spinal nerves (reflex). ccipital cortex cerebri.		
III. Oculomotori	ccipital cortex cerebri.		
IV. Trochlearis			
V. Trigeminus.			
(*a*) sensory	x). al part formatio reticu-		Thalamic radiations to central cortex cerebri.
	iscus to thalamus		Thalamic radiations to central cortex cerebri
(*b*) motor			
VI. Abducens			
VII. Facialis.			
(*a*) motor			
(*b*) sensory			
VIII. Acusticus.			
(*a*) vestibularis	long. fasc to midbrain VI, IV, and III (reflex). st. long. fasc. to vent. or spinal nerves (reflex). ular formation to vent. tor spinal nerves (reflex) 1 to ventro-lateral cols. al nerves (reflex) (from ncephalic to midbrain VI, IV, and III (reflex) w's). spinalis (reflex).		
(*b*) cochlearis	ollate- . sup orming	Nucl. lemniscus lat. (reflex).	
	orming late-	Corp. quadrigeminum inferius (reflex).	
	ng and late-	Corp. geniculatum internum.	Thalamic radiations to temporal cortex cerebri.
IX. Glossopharyng			
(*a*) sensory			
(*b*) motor			
X. Pneumogastrici			
(*a*) sensory			
(*b*) motor			
XI. Accessorius.			
(*a*) medullary port			
(*b*) spinal portion.			
XII. Hypoglossus.			
Spinales.			
(*a*) motor			
(*b*) sensory	erves (reflex). laris dorsalis (see peri- bral pathway, Fig. 264). aris ventralis (see peri- bral pathway, Fig. 264). to thalamus.		Thalamic radiations to central cortex cerebri.

TABLE OF CRANIAL AND SPINAL NERVES.

Nerve.	Cells of Origin.	Distribution of Peripheral Axones.	Central Axones (Root-Fibres and Central Tracts).	Terminal Nuclei.	Axones of Terminal Nuclei (Secondary Tracts) and Their Distribution.	Tertiary Tracts.
I. Olfactorius	Olfactory epithelial cells		Fila olfactoria	Cells in bulbus olfactorius.	Tractus olfactorius, etc., to limbic lobe.	
II. Opticus	Ganglion cells of retina		Nervus and (crossed) tractus opticus.	Corpus quadrigeminum anterius.	Tractus tecto-bulbaris et spinalis, etc., to motor nuclei cerebro-spinal nerves (reflex).	
				Corpus geniculatum externum.	Optic radiations to occipital cortex cerebri.	
III. Oculomotorius	Nucleus nerve III in midbrain.	4 eye musc., levator palpebræ sup., and radix brevis gang. ciliaris.		Pulvinar thalami	Optic radiations to occipital cortex cerebri.	
IV. Trochlearis	Nucleus nerve IV in isthmus	Mus. obliquus superius.				
V. Trigeminus.						
(*a*) sensory	Ganglion Gasseri	Rami ophthal., max. and mandib. to skin of head and face, epithelium of mouth and nose, teeth, meninges.	Tractus spinalis V	Sensory nucleus V and nucleus tractus spinalis (substan. gelat. Rolando).	To motor nuclei (reflex).	
					Crossed tract in dorsal part formatio reticularis to thalamus.	Thalamic radiations to central cortex cerebri.
					Crossed tract via lemniscus to thalamus	Thalamic radiations to central cortex cerebri
(*b*) motor	Motor nucleus V, and mesencephalic nucleus.	Muscles of jaw, etc. (massetericus, temporalis, pterygoideus digastricus, tens. veli pal., tens. tympani, mylohyoideus).			To cerebellum?	
VI. Abducens	Nucleus VI in medulla	Musc. rectus lateralis.				
VII. Facialis.						
(*a*) motor	Nucleus VII in medulla	Muscles of face, etc.				
(*b*) sensory	Gang. geniculi	Ant. part of tongue	Fasc. solitarius	Nucleus fasciculi solitarii.		
VIII. Acusticus.						
(*a*) vestibularis	Gang. of Scarpa	Ampullæ semicirc. canals, utriculus, sacculus.	Tractus vestib. spinalis	Nucl. tract. vestib. spinalis. Nucleus medialis ("principal") Nucleus lateralis (Deiter's). Nucleus superior (von Bechterew's).	Crossed asc. in post. long. fasc to midbrain and nucl. nerves VI, IV, and III (reflex). Crossed desc. in post. long. fasc. to vent. col. cord and motor spinal nerves (reflex). Uncrossed in reticular formation to vent. col. cord. and motor spinal nerves (reflex)	
					Uncrossed vest.-spinal to ventro-lateral cols. cord and motor spinal nerves (reflex) (from Deiter's).	
					Uncrossed vest.-mesencephalic to midbrain and nuclei nerves VI, IV, and III (reflex) (from von Bechterew's).	
				Nucleus fastigii cerebelli	Cerebello-bulbaris et spinalis (reflex).	
(*b*) cochlearis	Gang. spiralis	Organ of Corti		Nucl. accessorius Nucl. oliv. sup. (reflex).	Corpus trapezoid. (collaterals to nucl. oliv. sup. [reflex]), crossing, forming lemniscus lateralis. Nucl. lemniscus lat. (reflex).	
				Nucl. corporis trapezoidei	Corpus trapezoid., forming opposite lemniscus lateralis. Corp. quadrigeminum inferius (reflex).	
				Tuberculum acusticum.	Striæ acusticæ crossing and forming lemniscus lateralis. Corp. geniculatum internum.	Thalamic radiations to temporal cortex cerebri.
IX. Glossopharyngeus.						
(*a*) sensory	Gang. jugulare sup. and gang. petrosum.	Post. part of tongue (taste), muc. memb. of pharynx, etc.	Fasc. solitarius	Nucleus fasc. solitarii.		
(*b*) motor	Motor nucleus—ant. continuation nucl. ambig.	Muscles of pharynx.				
X. Pneumogastricus.						
(*a*) sensory	Gang. jugulare and gang. plexiform. or nodosum.	Mucous membranes pharynx, œsophagus, lungs, heart, and other viscera.	Fasc. solitarius	Nucl. fasciculi solitarii.		
(*b*) motor	(*a*) nucl. dorsalis (alæ cinereæ) in medulla.	Muscles of larynx.				
	(*b*) nucl. ventralis (ambiguus) in medulla.	Smooth muscles of viscera.				
XI. Accessorius.						
(*a*) medullary portion.	=X a.					
(*b*) spinal portion	Anterior horn cells, 1st to 5th or 7th cerv. segments.	Musc. sternocleidomastoideus and trapezius.				
XII. Hypoglossus	Nucl. XII in medulla	Muscles of tongue.				
Spinales.						
(*a*) motor	Anterior horn cells of cord	Muscles.				
(*b*) sensory	Gang. spinales	Periphery of body	Posterior root collaterals	Motor spinal nuclei (reflex).		
			Posterior root collaterals	Tautomeric and heteromeric cells of cord.	Motor nuclei spinal nerves (reflex).	
			Posterior root collaterals	Column of Clarke.	Tractus spino-cerebellaris dorsalis (see periphero-cerebello-cerebral pathway, Fig. 264).	
			Posterior root collaterals	Tautomeric and heteromeric cells of cord.	Tractus spino-cerebellaris ventralis (see periphero-cerebello-cerebral pathway, Fig. 264).	
			Posterior root, posterior columns of cord.	Nucl. columns Goll and Burdach.	Lemniscus principalis to thalamus.	Thalamic radiations to central cortex cerebri.

Precentral cortex cerebri

FIG. 264.—Diagram showing some of the More Important Cerebellar Connections. Paths which an impulse might follow in passing from periphery to cerebral cortex via the

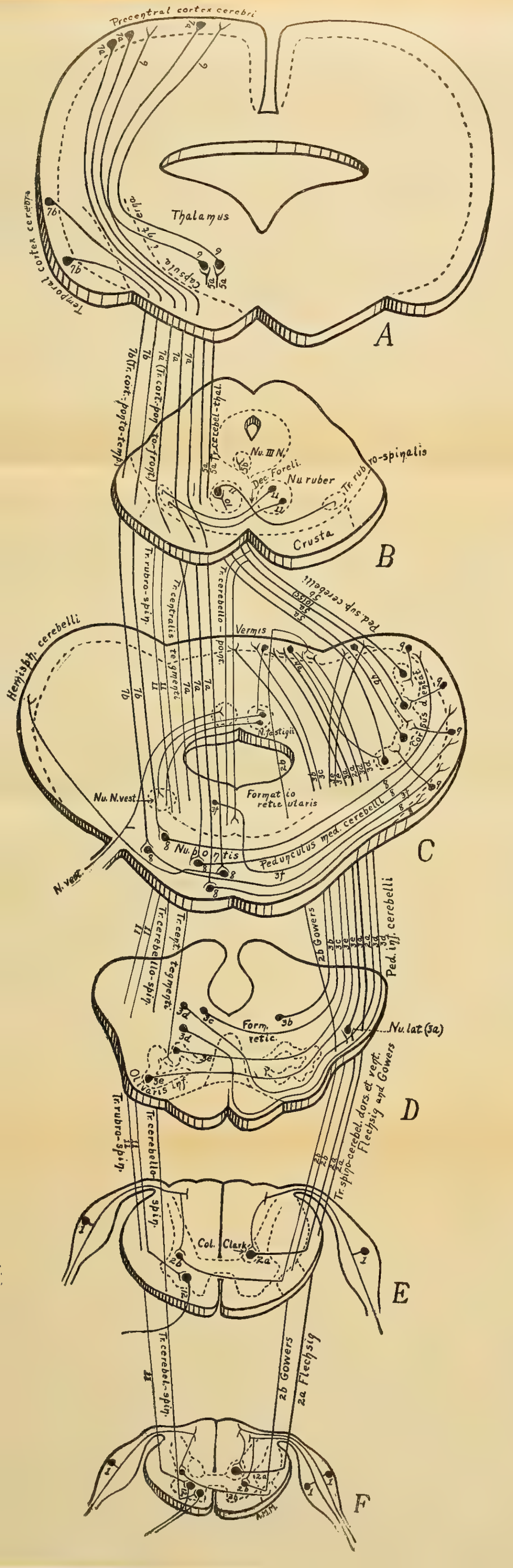

Precentral cortex cerebri
Temporal cortex cerebri
Thalamus
Capsula
Capsula interna
A
7a
7b
9
5a
7a (Tr. cort.-ponto-front.)
7b (Tr. cort.-ponto-temp.)
5a Tr. cerebel.-thal.
Nu. III N.
Dec. Foreli.
Nu ruber
Tr. rubro-spinalis
Crusta
B
10
11
Tr. rubro-spin.
Tr. centralis tegmenti
Tr. cerebello-pont.
Ped. sup. cerebelli
Hemisph. cerebelli
Vermis
N. fastigii
Corpus dentat.
Format io reticularis
Nu. N. vest.
N. vest.
Nu. pontis
Pedunculus med. cerebelli
C
8
3f
Tr. cerebello-spin.
Tr. cent. tegmenti
2b Gowers
Ped. inf. cerebelli
Form. retic.
Nu. lat. (3a)
Olivaris inf.
3b
3c
3d
3e
D
Tr. rubro-spin.
Tr. cerebello-spin.
Tr. spino-cerebel. dors. et vent. Flechsig and Gowers
Col. Clarke
2a
2b
12
E
Tr. cerebel.-spin.
2b Gowers
2a Flechsig
F
1

FIG. 264. Diagram showing some of the More Important Cerebellar Connections. Paths which an impulse might follow in passing from periphery to cerebral cortex via the cerebellum, and from cortex to periphery via the cerebellum (*e. g.*, see diagram 264 *a Asn-A-X-Z-X-A-Amn*, *Bsn-B-X-Z-X-B-Bmn*, etc.). Cortical associations are omitted in this diagram.

A, Cerebrum and thalamus; *B*, level of nucleus of third nerve and of red nucleus; *C*, level of pontile nuclei and cerebellum; *D*, level of olivary nucleus; *E*, cervical cord; *F*, dorso-lumbar cord.

From Periphery to Cerebellum (*Spinal Nerves*).

Neurone No 1. Peripheral sensory spinal neurone spinal ganglion cells; peripheral processes ending in sensory end organs; central processes or collaterals ending: (*a*) in the column of Clarke; (*b*) around other column cells of the cord.

Neurone No 2—2 a, Clarke's column cells, direct or dorsal spinal-cerebellar tract (Flechsig). Some of these axones pass directly via inferior peduncle to vermis of cerebellum, others end in the lateral nucleus around cells whose axones (*3 a*) pass via inferior peduncle to vermis of cerebellum; *2 b*, tautomeric and heteromeric cells of cord, ventral spino-cerebellar tract (Gowers). Some of these axones end in the lateral nucleus around cells whose axones (*3 a*) pass via inferior peduncle to vermis of cerebellum; others pass up through the medulla and reach the vermis through the superior peduncle.

From Periphery to Cerebellum (*Cranial Nerves*).

Neurone No. 1.- Peripheral sensory cranial neurone- cranial ganglion cells; peripheral processes ending in sensory end organs; central processes or collaterals ending in their nuclei of termination (not indicated).

Neurone No. 2.—Axones (not indicated) from nuclei of termination to lateral nucleus or reticular formation.

Neurone No. 3.—3 a, Tautomeric (and heteromeric?—not indicated) cells of lateral nucleus via inferior peduncle to vermis of cerebellum; *3 b*, tautomeric cells of reticular formation via inferior peduncle to vermis; *3 c*, heteromeric cells of reticular formation, dorsal, via inferior peduncle to vermis; *3 d*, heteromeric cells of reticular formation, ventral, via inferior peduncle to vermis; *3 e*, heteromeric cells of olive via inferior peduncle to hemisphere (probably) of cerebellum; *3 f*, cells in reticular formation (dorsal to pons) via middle peduncle to hemisphere of cerebellum. The vestibular nerve sends root fibres directly to nucleus fastigii of cerebellum. (According to some authorities the ventral reticulo-cerebellar fibres (*3 d*) of the inferior peduncle, and the reticulo-cerebellar fibres (*3 f*) of the pons via the middle peduncle, are really cerebello-reticular fibres originating in the cerebellum and terminating in the reticular formation.)

From Cerebellum to Cerebral Cortex.

Neurone No. 4 (*or 3*).—Cells of the cerebellar cortex, their axones passing to the lateral or dentate nucleus of the cerebellum (*4 a* from vermis, and *4 b* from hemisphere).

Neurone No. 5.—Cells of the dentate nucleus, their axones (*5 a*) passing via the superior peduncle to thalamus.

Neurone No. 6.—Cells of thalamus, their axones passing to the cerebral cortex.

From Cerebral Cortex to Cerebellum.

Neurone No. 7.—7 a, Cells of frontal cerebral cortex, their axones passing via internal capsule through the inner and middle parts of the crusta to the pontile nuclei (Tractus cortico-ponto-frontalis). *7 b*, Cells in temporal cerebral cortex, their axones passing via the internal capsule and lateral part of crusta to pontile nuclei (Tractus cortico-ponto-temporalis).

Neurone No. 8.—Cells of pontile nuclei, their axones passing via the middle peduncle (transverse pontile fibres) to opposite cerebellar hemisphere.

Neurone No. 9.—Cells in the cerebellar hemisphere, their axones passing to the dentate nucleus.

From Cerebellum to Periphery.

Neurone No. 10.—Cells in dentate nucleus, their axones passing via the superior peduncle to opposite red nucleus.

Neurone No. 11.—Cells in the red nucleus, their axones passing via the rubro-spinal (von Monakow's) tract to anterior horn of cord.

Neurone No. 12. Motor cells of anterior horn, their axones passing via spinal nerve to muscle.

Another pathway from the median nuclei (n. fastigii) to the medulla (vestibular nuclei) and thence to the cord—also possibly directly from cerebellum to cord (cerebello-spinal tract)—is given under "Cerebellar Reflexes" (see below). It is doubtful whether this pathway is involved in the cerebro-cerebello-spino-peripheral pathway.

Cerebellar Reflex Paths.

From periphery to cerebellum and return without involving the cerebrum (*e.g.*, see diagram 264 *a*, *Asn-A-X-A-Amn*, *Asn-A-X-B-Bmn*, *Asn-A-X-C-Cmn*, *Bsn-B-X-A-Amn*, etc.). In these reflexes the paths to the cerebellum are the same as in the preceding periphero-cerebello-cerebral pathway.

From the cerebellum there are two (perhaps more) reflex paths:

I. Via the superior peduncle: (*a*) to nucleus of third nerve (*5 b*); (*b*) by descending arms of superior peduncle fibres to reticular formation dorsal to pons (ultimately to motor cranial nerve nuclei?); (*c*) to red nucleus (*5 c*) and thence by rubro-spinal tract to cord.

II. Via the inferior peduncle: (*a*) from the medial nucleus (n. fastigii) of cerebellum to cord (cerebello-spinal tract); (*b*) from medial nucleus to medulla, especially to von Bechterew's and Deiter's nuclei, and thence ascending to the mid-brain, largely to nuclei of Nerves VI, IV, and III, and descending to the cord. (See vestibular nerve in Table of Cranial Nerves.)

may contain colloid. (3) An inner layer of nerve cells and neuroglia cells. These react to the Golgi stain, the nerve cells having axones and dendrites. Most of the axones appeared to pass in the direction of the infundibulum, but could not be traced into the latter. The posterior lobe is of ectodermic origin, developing as a diverticulum from the floor of the third ventricle. The remains of the diverticulum constitute the infundibulum.

The Pineal Body.

The pineal body originates as a fold of the wall of the primary brain vescicle. It lies at first upon the dorsal surface of the brain, and in some lower animals continues to occupy this position. Its ventral position in the higher animals and in man is due to the great development of the cerebral hemispheres. The pineal body is apparently of the nature of a rudimentary sense organ, being sometimes referred to as the *median* or *pineal eye.* In man it is surrounded by a firm connective-tissue capsule, which is a continuation of the pia mater. This sends trabeculæ into the organ, which anastomose and divide it into many small chambers. The latter contain tubules or alveoli lined with cuboidal epithelium. This may be simple or stratified, and frequently almost completely fills the tubules. Within the tubules are often found calcareous deposits known as "brain sand."

TECHNIC.

The general structure of the pituitary body and of the pineal body can be studied by fixing material in formalin-Müller's fluid (technic 5, p. 5) and staining sections with hæmatoxylin-eosin (technic 1, p. 16).

General References for Further Study.

Barker: The Nervous System and its Constituent Neurones, New York, 1899.

Dejerine: Anatomie des centres nerveux, Paris, 1895.

Van Gehuchten: Anatomie du système nerveux de l'homme. Louvaine, 1900.

Golgi: Untersuchungen über den feineren Bau des centralen und peripherischen Nervensystems, Jena, 1894.

Kölliker: Handbuch der Gewebelehre des Menschen, Leipsic, 1896.

Ramón y Cajal: Beiträge zum Studieren der Medulla Oblongata. Leipsic, 1896.—Les nouvelles idées sur la structure du système nerveux chez l'homme et chez les vertébrés, Paris, 1894.

Von Lenhossék: Der feinere Bau des Nervensystems im Lichte neuester Forschungen, Berlin, 1895.

Obersteiner: Anleitung beim Studieren des Baues der nervösen Centralorgane, Leipsic, 1896.

Marburg: Atlas des menschlichen Centralnervensystems, Leipzig und Wien, 1904.

CHAPTER XII.

THE ORGANS OF SPECIAL SENSE.

The Organ of Vision.

The eyeball and optic nerve constitute the organ of vision. To be described in connection with them are the eyelid and the lacrymal apparatus.

The Eyeball or Bulbus Oculi.—This is almost spherical, although slightly flattened antero-posteriorly. It consists of a wall enclosing a cavity filled with fluid.

The wall of the eyeball consists of three coats: (*a*) An external fibrous coat—the *sclera* and *cornea;* (*b*) a middle vascular—the *chorioid;* and (*c*) an internal nervous—the *retina* (Fig. 265).

The Sclera (Figs. 265 and 266).—This consists of dense fibrous tissue with some elastic fibres. The fibres run both meridionally and equatorially, the tendons of the straight muscles of the eyeball being continuous with the meridional fibres, those of the oblique muscles with the equatorial fibres. The few cells of the sclera lie in distinct, very irregular cell spaces, and frequently contain pigment granules. Pigmented cells in considerable numbers are regularly present near the corneal junction, at the entrance of the optic nerve, and on the inner surface of the sclera. Where the optic nerve pierces the sclera, the continuity of the latter is broken by the entering nerve fibres, forming the *lamina cribrosa* (Fig. 274). The pigmented layer of the sclera next the chorioid is known as the *lamina fusca,* and is lined internally by a single layer of flat non-pigmented endothelium. Anteriorly a loose connective tissue attaches the sclera to the scleral conjunctiva.

The Cornea (Figs. 267 and 270).—This is the anterior continuation of the sclera so modified as readily to allow the light to pass through it. It is about 1 mm. thick and consists of five layers, which from before backward are as follows (Fig. 267):

(1) Anterior epithelium.

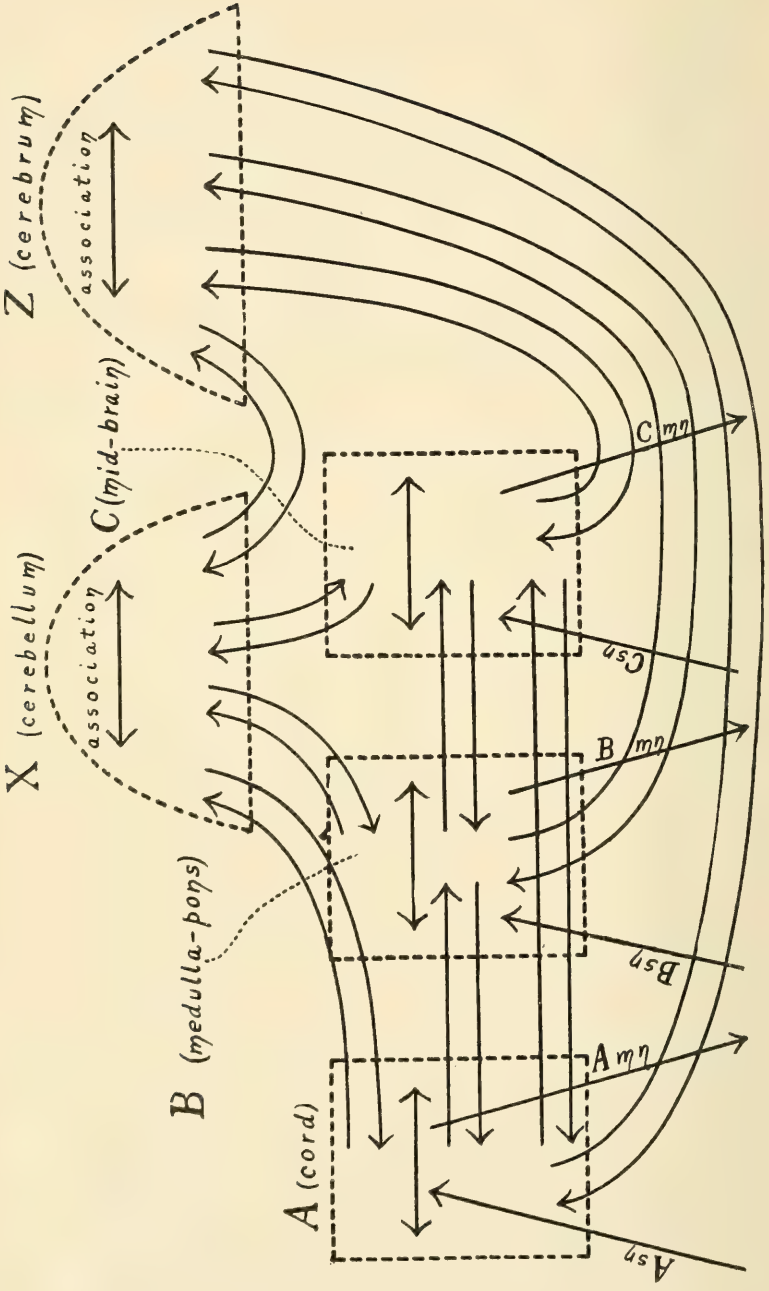

A (cord)
B (medulla-pons)
C (mid-brain)
X (cerebellum)
Z (cerebrum)
association
association
Asn
Amn
Bsn
Bmn
Csn
Cmn

FIG. 264 *a*.

EXPLANATION OF FIG. 264 *a*.

FIG. 264 *a*.—Diagram Showing Various Possible Connections between Various Parts of the Nervous System. *Asn*, Sensory spinal nerve; *Amn*, motor spinal nerve; *Bsn*, sensory cranial nerve to pons-medulla; *Bmn*, motor cranial nerve from pons-medulla; *Csn*, sensory cranial nerve to mid-brain; *Cmn*, motor cranial nerve from mid-brain. These connections fall in two general categories: (*a*) Those involving only the cord, brain stem (viz.: medulla, pons, mid-brain, thalamus and corpora striata, last two not indicated), and cerebellum, and (*b*) those involving also the cortex cerebri. The former category consists of reflexes which may be classified as spinal, spino-medullary (or bulbar), bulbo-spinal, spino-mesencephalic, spino-cerebellar, spino-cerebello-bulbar, etc. The latter class consists of pathways from all parts of the cord, brain stem, and cerebellum to the cortex cerebri and return pathways from the cortex cerebri to the cerebellum, brain stem, and cord (see especially Figs. 263 and 264).

(2) Anterior elastic membrane or membrane of Bowman.
(3) Substantia propria corneæ.
(4) Posterior elastic membrane or membrane of Descemet.
(5) Posterior endothelium or endothelium of Descemet.

(1) The *anterior epithelium* (Fig. 267, *1*) is of the stratified squamous type and consists of from four to eight layers of cells. The deepest cells are columnar and rest upon the anterior elastic membrane. The middle cells are polygonal and are connected by short intercellular bridges. The surface cells are flat. Along the margin of the cornea the epithelium is continuous with that of the conjunctiva (Fig. 270).

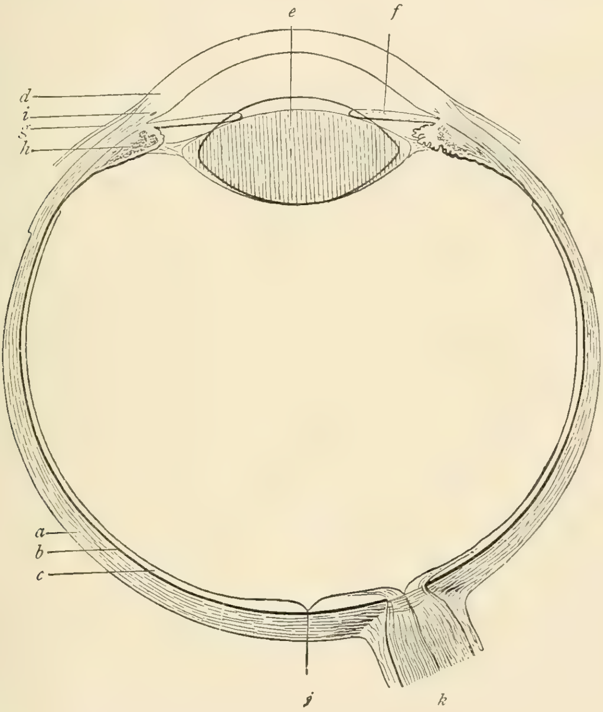


FIG. 265.—Diagram of Eyeball showing Coats. (Merkel-Henle.) *a*, Sclera ; *b*, chorioid ; *c*, retina ; *d*, cornea ; *e*, lens ; *f*, iris ; *g*, conjunctiva ; *h*, ciliary body ; *i*, sclero-corneal junction and canal of Schlemm ; *j*, fovea centralis ; *k*, optic nerve.

(2) The *anterior elastic membrane* (Fig. 267, *2*) is a highly developed basement membrane, its anterior surface being pitted to receive the bases of the deepest epithelial cells. It is apparently homogeneous, and while called an elastic membrane, does not con-

form chemically to either fibrous or elastic tissue. By means of special technic, a fibrillar structure has been demonstrated.

(3) The *substantia propria* (Fig. 267, *3*) constitutes the main bulk of the cornea. It consists of connective tissue the fibrils of which are doubly refracting and are cemented together to form bundles and lamellæ. In the human cornea the lamellæ are about sixty in number. The lamellæ are parallel to one another and to the surface of the cornea, but the fibres of adjacent lamellæ cross one another at an angle of about twelve degrees. The lamellæ are united by cement substance. Fibres running obliquely through the lamellæ from posterior to anterior elastic membranes hold the lamellæ firmly together. They are known as *perforating* or *arcuate fibres.*

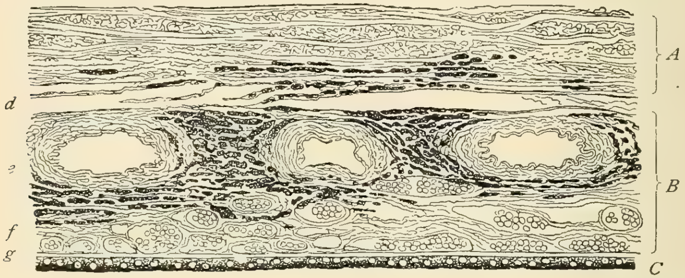


FIG. 266.—Vertical Section through Sclera, Chorioid, and Pigment Layer of Retina. (Merkel-Henle.) *A*, Sclera ; *B*, chorioid ; *C*, pigment layer of retina ; *d*, lamina suprachorioidea ; *e*, Haller's layer of straight vessels ; *f*, choriocapillaris ; *g*, vitreous membrane.

Between the lamellæ are irregular flat cell spaces which communicate with one another and with the lymph spaces at the margin of the cornea by means of canaliculi. Seen in sections vertical to the surface of the cornea, these spaces appear fusiform. In the spaces are the connective-tissue cells of the cornea or *corneal corpuscles.* These are flat cells corresponding in shape to the spaces and sending out processes into the canaliculi (Figs. 268 and 269).

(4) The *posterior elastic membrane* or *membrane of Descemet* (Fig. 267, *4*) resembles the anterior, but is much thinner. Like the anterior, it does not give the chemical reaction of elastic tissue.

(5) The *posterior endothelium* or *endothelium of Descemet* (Fig. 267, *5*) consists of a single layer of flat hexagonal cells, the nuclei of which frequently project slightly above the surface.

The cornea contains no blood-vessels.

THE CHORIOID.—This is made up of four layers which from without inward are as follows (Fig. 266):

(1) The lamina suprachorioidea.
(2) The layer of straight vessels—Haller's layer.
(3) The capillary layer—choriocapillaris.
(4) The vitreous membrane—lamina citrea—membrane of Bruch.

(1) The *lamina suprachorioidea* (Fig. 266, *d*) is intimately connected with the lamina fusca of the sclera and consists of loosely arranged bundles of fibrous and elastic tissue among which are scattered pigmented and non-pigmented connective-tissue cells. Numerous lymph spaces are found between the bundles of connective tissue and between the lamina suprachorioidea and lamina fusca. The latter are known as the *perichorioidal lymph spaces* (Fig. 270).

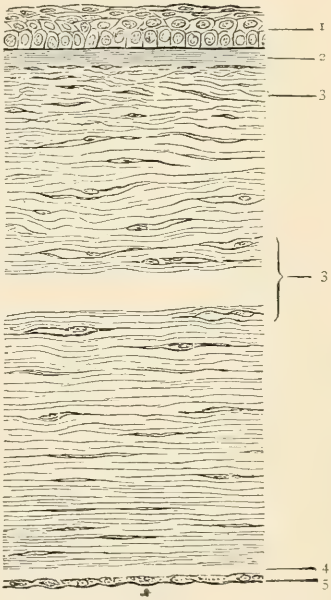


FIG. 267.—Vertical Section of Cornea. (Merkel-Henle.) *1*, Anterior epithelium; *2*, anterior elastic membrane; *3*, substantia propria corneæ; *4*, posterior elastic membrane; *5*, posterior endothelium.

(2) The *layer of straight vessels* (Fig. 266, *e*) consists of fibro-elastic tissue containing numerous pigmented and non-pigmented cells, supporting the large blood-vessels of the layer. The latter can be seen with the naked eye, and, running parallel straight courses, give to the layer a striated appearance. The arteries lie to the inner side. The veins which are larger than the arteries converge toward four points—*venæ vorticosæ*—one in each quadrant of the eyeball.

A narrow boundary zone, rich in elastic fibres and free from pigment, limits this layer internally. It is much more highly developed in some of the lower animals than in man. Formed of connective-tissue bundles in ruminants and horses, it is known as the *tapetum fibrosum*, while in the carnivora its structure—several layers of flat cells—gives it the name of the *tapetum cellulosum*.

(3) The *choriocapillaris* (Fig. 266, *f*) consists of connective tissue supporting a dense network of capillaries, which is most dense

in the region of the macula lutea. This layer is usually described as free from pigment, although it not infrequently contains some pigmented cells.

(4) The *vitreous membrane* (Fig. 266, *g*) is a clear, apparently structureless membrane about two microns thick. Its outer surface is grooved by the capillaries of the choriocapillaris, while its inner surface is pitted by the retinal epithelium.

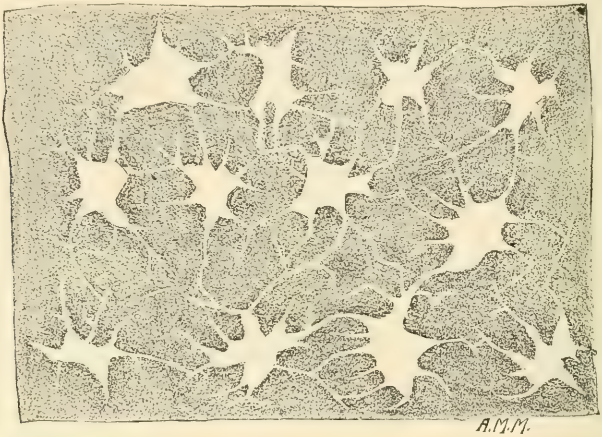


FIG. 268.—Section of Human Cornea cut Tangential to Surface—× 350 (technic 9, p. 75)—showing corneal cell spaces (lacunæ) and anastomosing canaliculi.

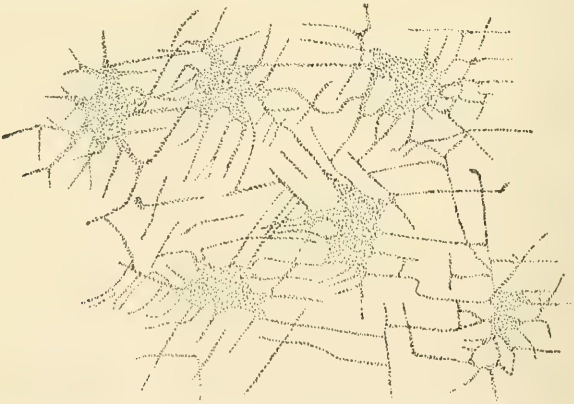


FIG. 269.—Section of Human Cornea cut Tangential to Surface—× 350 (technic 8, p. 75)—showing corneal cells and their anastomosing processes.

THE CILIARY BODY.—This is the anterior extension of the chorioid and consists of the ciliary processes and the ciliary muscle (Fig.

270). It extends from the *ora serrata* (a wavy edge which marks the anterior limit of the nervous elements of the retina—see Retina) to the margin of the iris (see below).

The *ciliary processes* (Fig. 270), from seventy to eighty in number, are meridionally-running folds of the chorioid from which are given off numerous irregular secondary folds. The processes begin low at the ora serrata, gradually increase in height to about 1 mm., and end abruptly at the margin of the iris. The ciliary processes consist of connective tissue containing many pigmented cells and supporting numerous blood-vessels. Invaginations lined with clear columnar epithelium have been described as ciliary glands. The ciliary folds are covered by the *vitreous membrane*, and internal to the latter is a continuation forward of non-nervous elements of the retina—*pars ciliaris retinæ* (Fig. 270). This consists of two layers of columnar epithelial cells, the outer layer being pigmented, the inner non-pigmented.

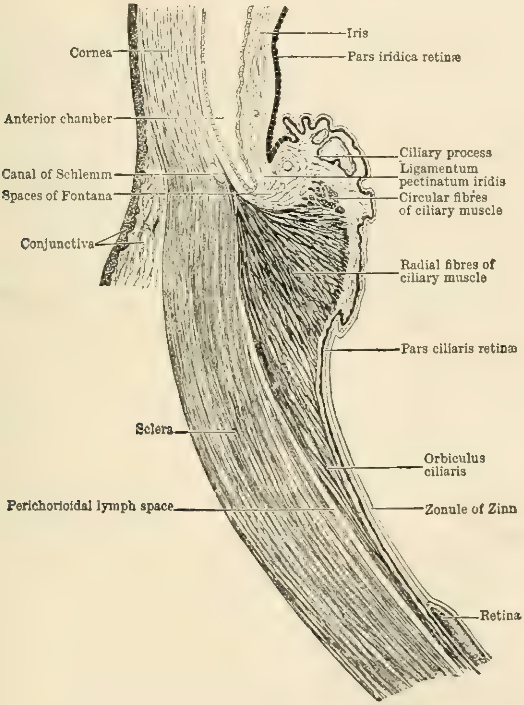

Cornea
Anterior chamber
Canal of Schlemm
Spaces of Fontana
Conjunctiva
Sclera
Perichorioidal lymph space
Iris
Pars iridica retinæ
Ciliary process
Ligamentum pectinatum iridis
Circular fibres of ciliary muscle
Radial fibres of ciliary muscle
Pars ciliaris retinæ
Orbiculus ciliaris
Zonule of Zinn
Retina

FIG. 270.—Vertical Section through Human Sclero-corneal Junction. (Cunningham.)

The *ciliary muscle* (Fig. 270) is a band of smooth muscle which encircles the iris. It lies in the outer anterior part of the ciliary body, and on cross section has a generally triangular shape. It is divisible into three groups of muscle cells: (*a*) An inner circular group near the base of the iris—circular muscle of Müller; (*b*) an outer meridional group lying next to the sclera and known as the tensor chorioideæ, and (*c*) a middle radial group. The meridional and radial groups both take origin in the posterior elastic lamina of the cornea, the former passing backward along the margin of the sclera to its insertion in the ciliary body near the ora serrata, the latter radiating fan-like to a broad insertion in the ciliary body and processes.

The ciliary body is closely attached to the sclero-corneal junction by the *ligamentum pectinatum* (Fig. 270), a continuation of the posterior elastic lamina of the cornea. Within the ligament are spaces (*spaces of Fontana*) lined with endothelium. These are apparently lymph spaces, and communicate with each other, with similar spaces around the canal of Schlemm, and with the anterior chamber. The *canal of Schlemm* (Fig. 270) is a venous canal which encircles the cornea, lying in the sclera close to the corneal margin. Instead of a single canal there may be several canals.

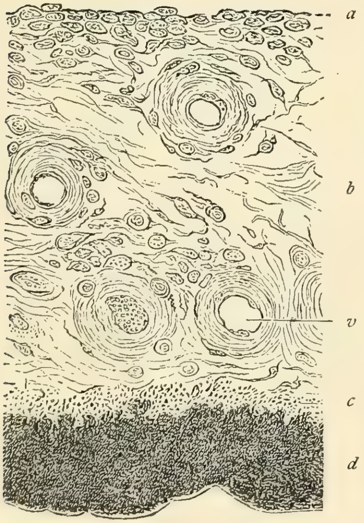


FIG. 271.—Vertical Section through Iris. (Merkel-Henle.) *a*, Anterior endothelium; *b*, stroma or substantia propria; *c*, vitreous membrane; *d*, pigment layer; *v*, blood-vessel.

THE IRIS (Fig. 271).—This represents a further continuation forward of the chorioid. Its base is attached to the ciliary body and ligamentum pectinatum. From this point it extends forward as a diaphragm in front of the lens, its centre being perforated to form the pupillary opening. It is deeply pigmented, and to its pigment the color of the eye is due. Four layers may be distinguished, which from before backward are as follows

(1) The anterior endothelium.

(2) The stroma.
(3) The vitreous membrane.
(4) The pigmented epithelium.

(1) The *anterior endothelium* is a single layer of pigmented cells continuous with the posterior endothelium of the cornea (Fig. 271, *a*).

(2) The *stroma* is divisible into two layers: an anterior reticular layer, containing many cells, some of which are pigmented, and a vascular layer, the vessels of which are peculiar in that their walls contain almost no muscle, but have thick connective-tissue sheaths. In the posterior part of the stroma are bundles of smooth muscle. Those nearest the pupillary margin encircle the pupil forming its sphincter muscle, while external are scattered radiating bundles forming the dilator muscle.

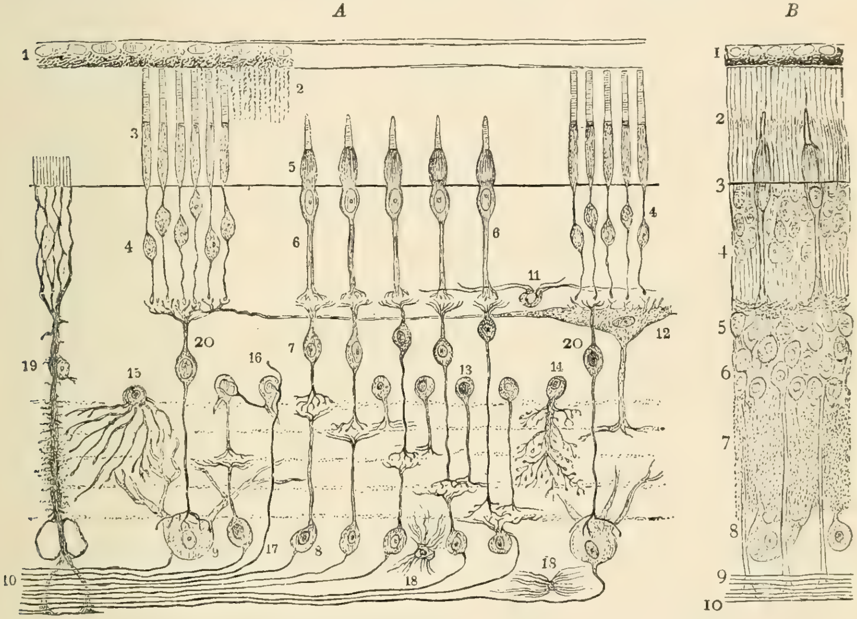


FIG. 272.—*A*, Scheme of retina as shown by the Golgi method. *B*, Vertical section of retina to show layers as demonstrated by the hæmatoxylin-eosin stain. (Merkel-Henle.) *B*.—*1*, Layer of pigmented epithelium; *2*, layer of rods and cones; *3*, outer limiting layer; *4*, outer nuclear layer; *5*, outer molecular layer, *6*, inner nuclear layer; 7, inner molecular layer; *8*, layer of nerve cells; *9*, layer of nerve fibres; *10*, inner limiting layer. *A*.—*1*, Pigment layer; *2*, processes of pigmented epithelial cells extending down between rods and cones; *3*, rods; *4*, red-cell nuclei and rod fibres; *5*, cones; *6*, cone fibres; 7, bipolar cells of inner nuclear layer; *8*, ganglion cells of nerve-cell layer; *9*, larger ganglion cells of nerve-cell layer; *10*, fibres of optic nerve forming layer of nerve fibres; *11* and *12*, types of horizontal cells; *13*, *14*, *15*, and *16*, types of cells the bodies of which lie in the inner nuclear layer; *17*, efferent optic-nerve fibre ending around cell of inner nuclear layer; *18*, neuroglia cells; *19*, Müller's fibre; *20*, rod-bipolar cell of inner nuclear layer.

(3) The *vitreous membrane* is continuous with, and has the same structure as the membrane of Bruch.

(4) The *pigmented epithelium* (Fig. 271, *d*) consists of several layers of cells and is continuous with the pars ciliaris retinæ. Except in albinos, both layers are pigmented.

THE RETINA.—The retina is the nervous tunic of the eye. It lines the entire eyeball, ending only at the pupillary margin of the iris. Its nervous elements, however, extend only to the *ora serrata*, which marks the outer limit of the ciliary body (Fig. 270). The nervous part of the retina is known as the *pars optica retinæ*, the non-nervous extension over the ciliary processes as the *pars ciliaris retinæ*, its further continuation over the iris as the *pars iridica retinæ*. Modifications of the optic portion of the retina are found in the region of the macula lutea and of the optic nerve entrance.

The Pars Optica Retinæ.—This is the only part of the retina directly concerned in the reception of impulses, and may be regarded as the extremely complex sensory end-organ of the optic nerve. It is divisible into ten layers, which from without inward are as follows (Fig. 272):

(1) Layer of pigmented epithelium.	
(2) Layer of rods and cones.	Layer of neuro-epithelium.
(3) Outer limiting membrane.	
(4) Outer nuclear layer.	
(5) Outer molecular layer.	Ganglionic layer.
(6) Inner nuclear layer.	
(7) Inner molecular layer.	
(8) Layer of nerve cells.	
(9) Layer of nerve fibres.	
(10) Inner limiting membrane.	

The *layer of pigmented epithelium* (Fig. 272, *B*, *1*) consists of a single layer of regular hexagonal cells (Fig. 20, p. 59). The nuclei lie in the outer part of the cell, while from the inner side thread-like projections extend down between the rods and cones of the layer next internal. The pigment has the form of rod-shaped granules. Its distribution seems to depend upon the amount of light being admitted to the retina. When little or no light is being admitted, the pigment is found in the body of the cell, the processes being wholly or almost free from pigment; when the retina is exposed to a bright light, some of the pigment granules pass down into the processes so that the pigment becomes more evenly distributed throughout the cell.

The *layer of rods and cones* and the *outer nuclear layer* (Fig. 272, *B*, *2*, *4*) are best considered as subdivisions of a single layer, the neuro-epithelial layer. This consists essentially of two forms of neuro-epithelial elements, *rod visual cells* and *cone visual cells.* These, with supporting connective tissue, constitute the layer of rods and cones and the outer nuclear layer, the separation into sublayers being due to the sharp demarcation between the nucleated and non-nucleated parts of the cells and the separation of the two parts by the perforated *outer limiting membrane.*

The *rod visual cell* (Fig. 272, *A*, *4*) consists of rod, rod-fibre, and nucleus. The rod (Fig. 272, *A*, *3*) is a cylinder from 30 to 40 μ in length and about 2 μ in diameter. It is divisible into an outer clear portion, which contains the so-called "visual purple" and an inner granular portion. At the outer end of the latter is a fibrillated ellipsoidal body, much more distinct in some of the lower animals, the *ellipsoid of Krause.* At its inner end the rod tapers down to a fine fibre, the *rod fibre*, which passes through a perforation in the outer limiting membrane into the outer nuclear layer, where it expands and contains the nucleus of the rod visual cell. These nuclei are situated at various levels in the fibre and constitute the most conspicuous element of the *outer nuclear layer* (Fig. 272, *B*, *4*).

The *cone visual cell* (Fig. 272, *A*, *5*, *6*) consists of cone, cone-fibre, and nucleus. The cone (Fig. 272, *A*, *5*) is shorter and broader than the rod, and like the latter is divisible into two parts. The outer part is short, clear, and tapering, the inner part broad and granular, and like the rod contains a fibrillated ellipsoid body. The cone fibre (Fig. 272, *A*, *6*) is much broader than the rod fibre, passes completely through the outer nuclear layer and ends in an expansion at the margin of the outer molecular layer. The nucleus of the cone cell usually lies just beneath the outer limiting membrane.

The remaining layers of the retina must be considered in relation on the one hand to the neuro-epithelium, on the other to the optic nerve. The *inner nuclear layer* (Fig. 272, *B*, *6*) and the *layer of nerve cells* (Fig. 272, *B*, *8*) are composed largely of nerve-cell bodies, while the *two molecular layers* (Fig. 272, *B*, *5*, *7*) are formed mainly of the ramifications of the processes of these cells. In the inner nuclear layer are two kinds of nerve elements, *rod bipolar cells* and *cone bipolar cells.* The bodies of these cells with their large nuclei form the bulk of this layer. From the rod bipolars (Fig. 272, *A*, *20*) processes (*dendrites*) pass outward to ramify in the outer molecular layer around the terminations of the rod fibres. From the cone bipolars (Fig. 272, *A*, *7*) similar processes (*dendrites*) extend into the outer molecular layer where they ramify around the termination of the cone cells. Two other forms of nerve cells occur in the inner nuclear layer. One is known as the *horizontal cell* (Fig. 272, *A*, *12*). Its processes ramify almost wholly in the outer molecular layer. The other lies along the inner margin of the inner nuclear layer and sends its dendrites into the inner molecular layer (Fig. 272, *A*, *13*, *14*, *15*, and *16*). Many of these latter cells appear to have no axone and are consequently known as *amacrine cells.*

The outer molecular layer is thus seen to be formed mainly of terminations of the rod and cone visual cells, of the dendrites of the rod and cone bipolars, and of the processes of the horizontal cells.

From the cone bipolar a process (*axone*) extends inward to ramify in the inner molecular layer, while from the rod bipolar a process (*axone*) passes inward through the inner molecular layer to terminate around the cells of the nerve-cell layer.

The *layer of nerve cells* (Fig. 272, *B*, *8*) consists for the most part of large ganglion cells whose dendrites ramify in the inner molecular layer, and whose axones pass into the layer of nerve fibres and thence into the optic nerve. Some small ganglion cells are also found in this layer, especially in the region of the macula lutea (see page 427).

The inner molecular layer is thus seen to be composed mainly of the processes (*axones*) of the rod and cone bipolars and of the dendrites of the ganglion cells of the nerve-cell layer.

The *layer of nerve fibres* (Fig. 272, *B*, *9*) consists mainly of the axones of the just-described ganglion cells, although a few centrifugal axones of brain cells (Fig. 272, *A*, *17*) are probably intermingled.

The *outer and inner limiting layers or membranes* (Fig. 272, *B*, *3*, *10*) are parts of the sustentacular apparatus of the retina, being connected with the *cells* or *fibres of Müller* (Fig. 272, *A*, *19* and Fig. 273). The latter form the most conspicuous elements of the supportive tissue of the retina. They are like the nerve elements proper, of ectodermic origin and are elongated cells which extend through all the retinal layers, excepting the layer of rods and cones and the pigment layer. The inner ends of the cells, which are conical and fibrillated, unite to form the inner limiting membrane (Fig. 273, *10*). Through the inner molecular layer the cell takes the form of a narrow stalk with numerous fringe-like side fibrils (Fig. 273, *7*). This widens in the inner nuclear layer, where cup-like depressions in the sides of the Müller's cell are caused by the pressure of the surrounding nerve cells (Fig. 273, *b*). This wide portion of the cell in the inner nuclear layer contains the nucleus (Fig. 273, *a*). In the outer molecular layer the cell again becomes narrow (Fig. 273, *5*) and in the outer nuclear layer broadens out into a sponge-like reticulum (Fig. 273, *4*), which supports the rod and cone bipolars. At the inner margin of the layer of rods and cones the protoplasm of the Müller's cells spreads out and unites to form the so-called outer limiting membrane (Fig. 273, *3*), from which delicate fibrils (*fibre baskets*) pass outward between the rods and cones. In addition to the Müller's cells, which are neuroglia elements, spider cells also occur in the retina (Fig. 272, *A*, *18*).

The retina of the *macula lutea* presents certain peculiarities. Its name is derived from the yellow pigment which is distributed diffusely through the inner layers, extending as far out as the outer molecular layer. The ganglion-cell layer and the inner nuclear layer are thicker than in other parts of the retina. In the layer of rods and cones there is a gradual reduction in the number of rods, while the number of cones is correspondingly increased.

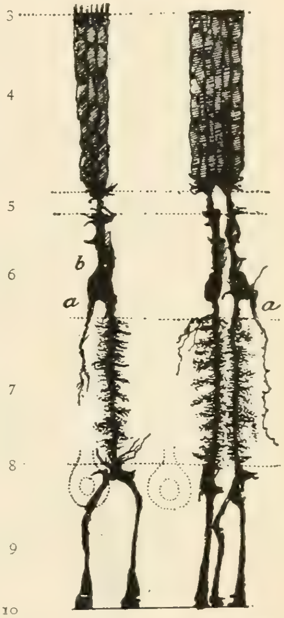


FIG. 273.—Two Müller's Fibres from Retina of Ox showing Relation to Layers of Retina. (Ramón y Cajal.) *3*, Outer limiting layer; *4*, outer nuclear layer; *5*, outer molecular layer; *6*, inner nuclear layer; *7*, inner molecular layer; *8*, layer of nerve cells; *9*, layer of nerve fibres; *10*, inner limiting layer; *a*, nucleus; *b*, cup-like depression caused by pressure from surrounding cells.

In the centre of the macula is a depression, the *fovea centralis*. As the retina approaches this area it becomes greatly thinned, little remaining but the layer of cone cells and the somewhat thickened layer of pigmented epithelium.

At the ora serrata the nervous elements of the retina cease. The non-nervous retinal extension over the ciliary body (*pars ciliaris retinæ*) and over the iris (*pars iridica retinæ*) have been described in connection with the ciliary body and iris.

The Optic Nerve.—The optic nerve (Fig. 274, *d*) is enclosed by two connective-tissue sheaths, both of which are extensions of the brain membranes. The outer dural sheath (Fig. 274, *a*) is continuous with the dura mater of the brain posteriorly, while anteriorly it blends with the sclera. The inner pial sheath (Fig. 274, *b*) is an extension of the pia mater and is separated from the outer sheath by the subdural space (Fig. 274, *c*). The pial sheath is divisible into two sub-layers: an outer fibrous layer (the so-called *arachnoid*), and an inner vascular layer. These two layers are separated by a narrow space, the *subarachnoid space*. The optic nerve fibres, in passing through the sclera and chorioid, separate the connective-tissue bundles so that they form a lattice-work, the already mentioned *lamina cribrosa* (Fig. 274, *h*). The optic nerve fibres are medullated, but have no neurilemma. As they pass through the lamina cribrosa the medullary sheaths are lost, the fibres reaching the retina as naked axones.

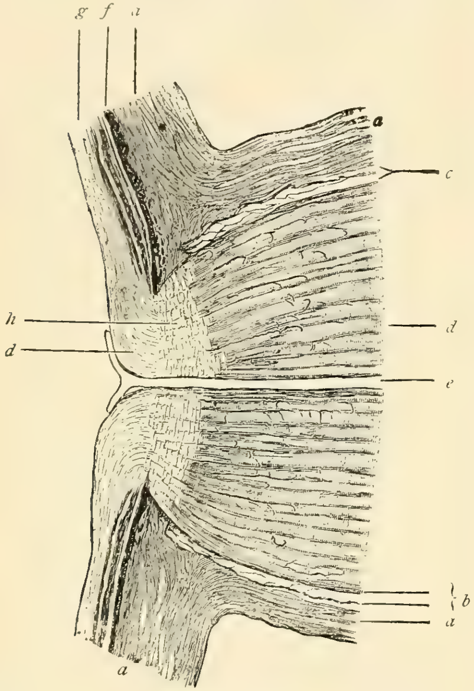


FIG. 274.—Section through Entrance of Optic Nerve into Eyeball. (Merkel-Henle.) *a*, Dural sheath; *b*, pial sheath, inner and outer layers; *c*, space between inner and outer layers of pia mater; *d*, optic nerve; *e*, central artery of retina; *a′*, sclera; *f*, chorioid; *g*, retina; *h*, lamina cribrosa.

RELATIONS OF OPTIC NERVE TO RETINA AND BRAIN.

The rod and cone visual cells are the neuro-epithelial beginnings of the visual tract (Fig. 272, *A*, *3*, *4*, *5*, and *6*). By their expanded bases in the outer molecular layer, the rod and cone cells communicate with the neurone system No. I. of the optic tract. This comprises (*a*) rod neurones, (*b*) cone neurones, (*c*) horizontal neurones.

NEURONE SYSTEM NO. I.—(*a*) *Rod neurones.* The cell bodies of these neurones (Fig. 272, *A*, *20*) lie in the inner nuclear layer. Their dendrites enter the outer molecular layer where they form networks around the expanded bases of the rod cells. Their axones pass through the inner molecular layer and end in arborizations around the bodies and dendrites of cells of the nerve-cell layer (neurone system No. II.). (*b*) *Cone neurones* (Fig. 272, *A*, *7*). These have their cell bodies in the inner nuclear layer. Their dendrites pass to the outer molecular layer where they form networks around the expanded bases of the cone cells. Their axones pass only into the inner molecular layer where they end in arborizations around the dendrites of neurones whose cell bodies are in the layer of nerve cells (neurone system No. II.). (*c*) *Horizontal neurones* (Fig. 272, *A*, *11* and *12*. These serve as association neurones between the visual cells and may be divided into *rod association neurones* and *cone association neurones.* The cone association neurones are the smaller and more superficial, and both dendrites and axones end in the outer molecular layer around the terminal expansions of the cone visual cells (Fig. 272, *A*, *11*). The rod association neurones are larger, more deeply seated, and behave in a similar manner toward the rod visual cells (Fig. 272, *A*, *12*). Some of these cells send processes to the inner molecular layer.

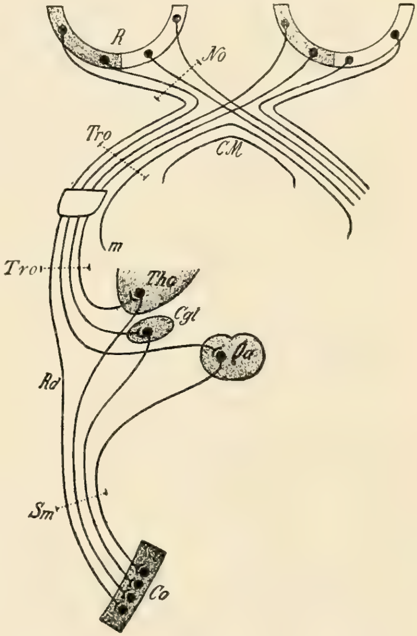


FIG. 275.—Diagram showing Main Relations of Optic Tract. (Testut.) *R*, Retina; *No*, optic nerve; *CM*, optic decussation or chiasma; *Tro*, optic tract; *Tho*, thalamus; *Cgl*, lateral geniculate body; *Qa*, anterior corpus quadrigeminum; *Rd*, fibre of optic tract passing directly to cortex; *Sm*, third neurone system of optic tract (excepting *Rd*) connecting thalamus, lateral geniculate body, and anterior corpus quadrigeminum with the cortex, *Co*.

Neurone System No. II.—This has been already partly described in connection with the axone terminations of neurone system No. I. The cell bodies of the second neurone system (Fig. 272, *A*, *8*, *9*) are in the layer of nerve cells and are, as above noted, associated either directly or by means of their dendrites with the axones of the first neurone system. Their axones pass into the layer of nerve fibres and ultimately become fibres of the optic nerve (Fig. 272, *A*, *10*).

The optic nerves (Fig. 275, *No*) unite at the base of the brain to form the *optic decussation* or *chiasma* (Fig. 275, *CM*). Here the axones from the mesial part of the retina cross to the optic tract of the opposite side, while those of the lateral part of the retina remain in the optic tract of the same side. The axones of the optic tract (Fig. 275, *Tro*) terminate in the thalamus, in the lateral geniculate body, and in the anterior corpus quadrigeminum (Fig. 275).

Neurone System No. III.—The neurones of this system have their cell bodies in the thalamus, lateral geniculate body, and anterior corpus quadrigeminum (Fig. 275). The axones of the two former terminate in the cortical visual centers in the occipital lobe (Fig. 275, *Co*). The axones of the latter form descending reflex paths (see Anterior Corpora Quadrigemina, p. 400).

The Lens.—The lens is composed of lens fibres which are laid down in layers (Fig. 276, *a*). The lens fibre is a long hexagonal, flattened prism with serrated edges. Most of the lens fibres are nucleated, the nucleus lying at about the centre of the fibre near the axis of the lens. The most central of the lens fibres are usually non-nucleated. The fibres extend meridionally from before backward through the entire thickness of the lens. They are united by a small amount of cement substance. The lens is surrounded by the lens capsule (Fig. 276, *b*), a clear homogeneous membrane which is about 12 μ thick over the anterior surface of the lens, about half as thick over the posterior surface. Between the capsule and the anterior and lateral surfaces of the lens is a single layer of cuboidal epithelial cells (Fig. 276, *c*), the lens epithelium. Attached to the capsule of the lens anteriorly and posteriorly are membrane-like structures which constitute the *suspensory ligament* of the lens. These pass outward and unite to form a delicate membrane, the *zonula ciliaris* or *zonule of Zinn* (Fig. 270). This bridges over the

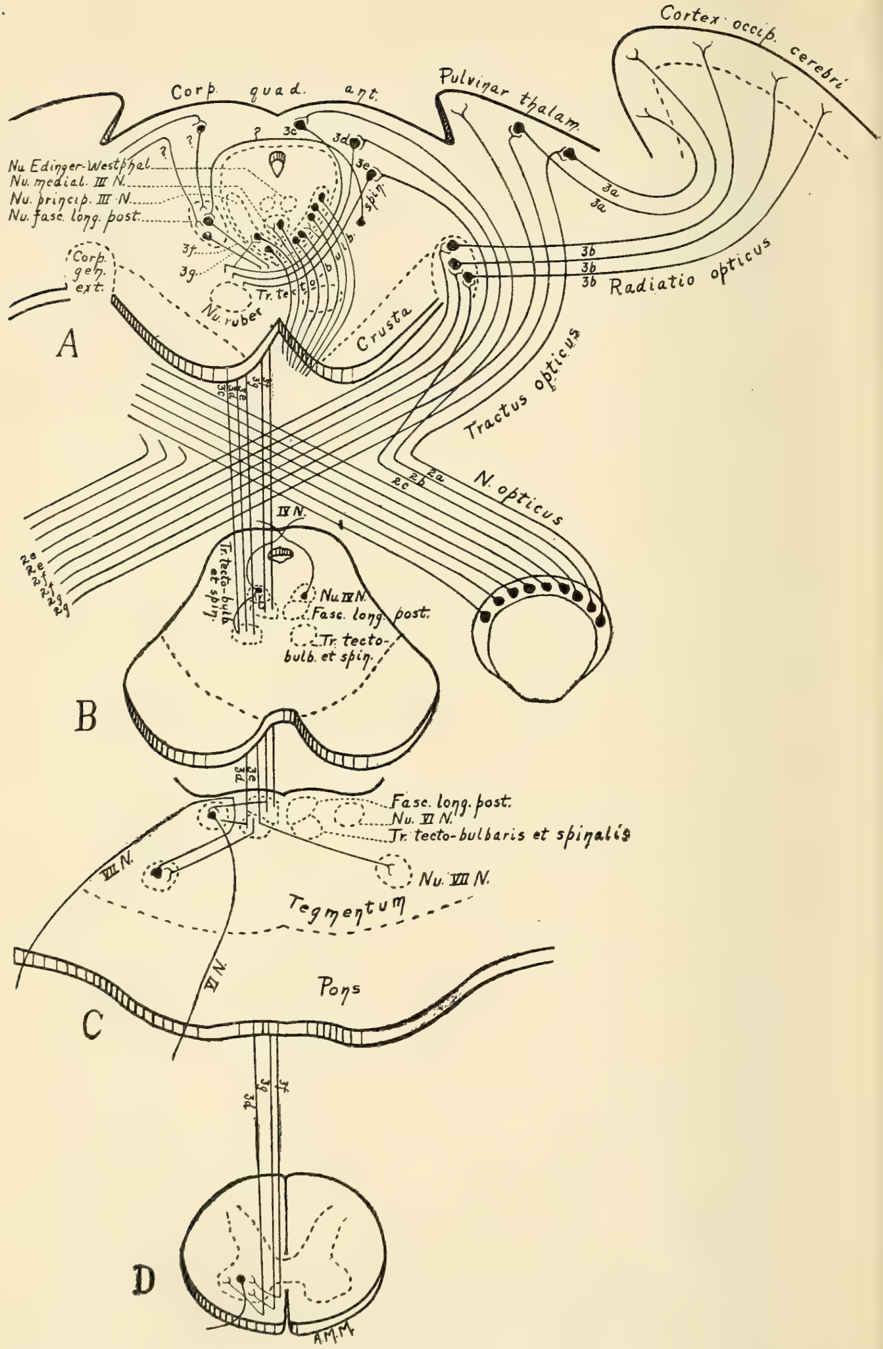

Cortex occip. cerebri
Pulvinar thalam.
Corp. quad. ant.
Nu. Edinger-Westphal
Nu. medial. III N.
Nu. princip. III N.
Nu. fasc. long. post.
?
?
?
3c
3d
3e
spin.
3f
3g
Corp. gen. ext.
Tr. tecto-bulb.
Nu. ruber
Crusta
A
3a
3a
3b
3b
3b
Radiatio opticus
Tractus opticus
3c
3d
3e
3g
3f
2a
2b
2c
N. opticus
2e
2e
2f
2f
2g
2g
IV N.
Tr. tecto-bulb. et spin.
Nu. IV N.
Fasc. long. post.
Tr. tecto-bulb. et spin.
B
3d
3e
Fasc. long. post.
Nu. VI N.
Tr. tecto-bulbaris et spinalis
VII N.
Nu. VII N.
Tegmentum
VI N.
Pons
C
3d
3g
3f
D
A.M.M.

FIG. 275 *a*.

EXPLANATION OF FIG. 275 *a*.

FIG. 275 *a*.—Diagram of the Optic (II) Nerve and some of its Principal Connections. *A*, Level of II and III nerves; *B*, level of IV nerve; *C*, level of VI and VII nerves; *D*, spinal cord. The rods and cones (sensory cells) and the bipolar cells (=Neurone No. 1) of the retina are not indicated.

Neurone No. 2.—*2 a*, Axones of ganglion cells in temporal part of retina pass to pulvinar of thalamus of same side; *2 b*, axones of ganglion cells in retina pass to anterior corpus quadrigeminum of same side; *2 c*, axones of ganglion cells in retina pass to external geniculate body (Corp. gen. ext.) of same side; *2 e*, axones of ganglion cells in nasal side of retina cross in optic chiasma and pass to external geniculate body of opposite side; *2 f*, axones of ganglion cells in nasal side of retina cross in optic chiasma and pass to anterior corpus quadrigeminum of opposite side; *2 g*, axones of ganglion cells in nasal side of retina cross in optic chiasma and pass to pulvinar of thalamus of opposite side.

Neurone No. 3.—*3 a*, Axones of cells in pulvinar to cortex of occipital lobe of cerebrum (this connection is disputed); *3 b*, axones of cells in external geniculate body to cortex of occipital lobe of cerebrum; *3 a* and *3 b* constitute the primary optic radiation; *3 c*, *3 d* and *3 e*, axones of cells in middle layer of tectum (roof) of anterior corpus quadrigeminum decussate ventral to posterior longitudinal fasciculus (dorsal tegmental decussation or decussation of Meynert) and form the tractus tecto-bulbaris et spinalis (Tr. tecto-bulb. et spin.) to bulb (medulla) and anterior column of cord, innervating by collaterals and terminals, directly or indirectly, chiefly the nuclei of III, IV, VI, and VII cranial nerves and motor nuclei of spinal nerves. *3 f* and *3 g* (possibly another neurone intercalated between these and optic terminals), axones of cells in nucleus of posterior longitudinal fasciculus (Nu. fasc. long. post.) (Nucleus of Darkschewitsch) form part of posterior longitudinal fasciculus and descend on same side to anterior column of cord next to anterior median fissure, innervating nuclei of III, IV, and VI cranial nerves and motor nuclei of spinal nerves.

Neurone No. 4.—Axones of cells in above-mentioned motor nuclei. Axones from cells in median nucleus of III nerve (Nu. med. III N.), and possibly in Edinger-Westphal nucleus, probably innervate the intrinsic muscles of eyeball (ciliary and pupillary reflex path).

It is evident from the diagram that the cerebral pathway of the optic nerve is via the external geniculate body (and pulvinar of thalamus), and the reflex pathway is via the anterior colliculus (anterior corpus quadrigeminum).

inequalities of the ciliary processes and, continuing as the hyaloid membrane, forms a lining for the vitreous cavity of the eye. The triangular space between the two layers of the suspensory ligament and the lens is known as the *canal of Petit.*

The *vitreous body* is a semifluid substance containing fibres which run in all directions and a small number of connective-tissue cells and leucocytes. Traversing the vitreous in an antero-posterior direction is the so-called *hyaloid* or *Cloquet's canal,* the remains of the embryonic hyaloid artery (page 432).

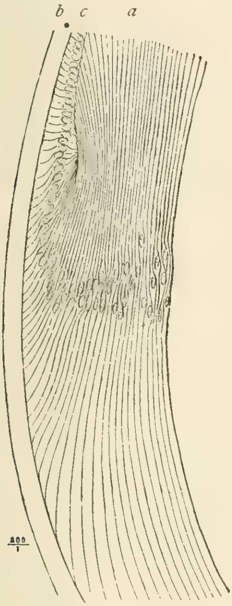


FIG. 276.

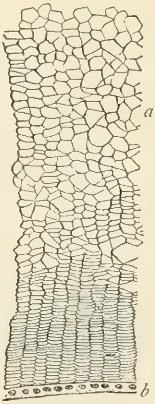


FIG. 277.

FIG. 276.—From Longitudinal Section through Margin of Crystalline Lens, showing longitudinal sections of lens fibres and transition from epithelium of capsule into lens fibres. (Merkel-Henle.) *a*, Lens fibres; *b*, capsule; *c*, epithelium.

FIG. 277.—From Cross Section of Crystalline Lens, showing transverse sections of lens fibres and surface epithelium. (Merkel-Henle.) *a*, Lens fibres; *b*, epithelium.

Blood-vessels.—The blood-vessels of the eyeball are divisible into two groups, one group being branches of the central artery of the retina, the other being branches of the ciliary artery.

The central artery of the retina enters the eyeball through the centre of the optic nerve. Within the eyeball it divides into two branches, a superior and an inferior. These pass anteriorly in the nerve-fibre layer, giving off branches, which in turn give rise to capillaries which supply the retina, passing outward as far as the neuroepithelial layer and anteriorly as far as the ora serrata. The smaller branches of the retinal arteries do not anastomose. In the embryo a third vessel exists, the hyaloid artery. This is a branch of the central retinal artery and traverses the vitreous to the posterior surface of the lens, supplying these structures. The hyaloid canal, or canal of Cloquet, of the adult vitreous, represents the remains of the degenerate hyaloid artery (page 431). The veins of the retina accompany the arteries.

The ciliary arteries are divisible into long ciliary arteries, short ciliary arteries, and anterior ciliary arteries. The long ciliary arteries are two in number and pass one on each side between the choroid and sclera to the ciliary body, where each divides into two branches, which diverge and run along the ciliary margin of the iris. Here the anastomosis of the two long ciliary arteries forms the *greater arterial circle* of the iris. This gives rise to small branches which pass inward supplying the surrounding tissues and unite near the margin of the pupil to form the *lesser arterial circle* of the iris. The branches of the short ciliary arteries pierce the sclera near the optic nerve entrance, supply the posterior part of the sclera, and terminate in the choriocapillaris of the chorioid. The anterior ciliary arteries enter the sclera near the corneal margin and communicate with the choriocapillaris and with the greater arterial circle of the iris. The anterior ciliary arteries also supply the ciliary and recti muscles and partly supply the sclera and conjunctiva. Small veins accompany the ciliary arteries; the larger veins of this area are peculiar, however, in that they do not accompany the arteries, but as venæ vorticosæ converge toward four centres, one in each quadrant of the eyeball. At the sclero-corneal junction is a venous channel, the canal of Schlemm, which completely encircles the cornea (Fig. 270).

Lymphatics.—The eyeball has no distinct lymph-vessel system. The lymph, however, follows certain definite directions which have been designated by Schwalbe "lymph paths." He divides them into anterior lymph paths and posterior lymph paths. The anterior lymph paths comprise (*a*) the anterior chamber which communicates by means of a narrow cleft between iris and lens with the posterior chamber; (*b*) the posterior chamber; (*c*) the lymph canaliculi of the sclera and cornea and the canal of Petit. The posterior lymph paths include (*a*) the hyaloid canal (see above); (*b*) the subdural and intrapial spaces, including the capsule of Tenon; (*c*) the perichorioidal space, and (*d*) the perivascular and pericellular lymph spaces of the retina.

Nerves.—The nerves which supply the eyeball pass through the sclera with the optic nerve and around the eyeball in the suprachorioid layer. From these nerves, branches are given off as follows:

(1) To the chorioid, where they are intermingled with ganglion cells.

(2) To the ciliary body, where they are mingled with ganglion cells to form the *ciliary plexus*. The latter gives off branches to the ciliary body itself, to the iris, and to the cornea. Those to the cornea first form a plexus in the sclera—the plexus annularis—which encircles the cornea. From this, branches pierce the substantia propria of the cornea, where they form four corneal plexuses, one in the posterior part of the substantia propria, a second just beneath the anterior elastic membrane, a third sub-epithelial, and a fourth intra-epithelial. The fibres of the last named are extremely delicate and terminate freely between the epithelial cells. Krause describes end-bulbs as occurring in the substantia propria near the margin of the sclera, while according to Dogiel some of the fibres are connected with end-plates.

THE LACRYMAL APPARATUS.

The lacrymal apparatus of each eye consists of the gland, its excretory ducts, the lacrymal canal, the lacrymal sac, and the nasal duct.

The *lacrymal gland* is a compound tubular gland consisting of two main lobes. Its structure corresponds in general to that of a serous gland. The excretory ducts are lined with a two-layered columnar epithelium which becomes simple columnar in the smaller ducts. The alveoli are lined with irregularly cuboidal serous cells, which rest upon a basement membrane beneath which is a richly elastic interstitial tissue.

The *lacrymal canals* have a stratified squamous epithelial lining. This rests upon a basement membrane beneath which is the stroma containing many elastic fibres. External to the connective tissue are some longitudinal muscle fibres.

The *lacrymal sac* is lined with a two-layered stratified or pseudo-stratified columnar epithelium resting upon a basement membrane. The stroma contains much diffuse lymphatic tissue.

The *nasal duct* has walls similar in structure to those of the lacrymal sac. In the case of both sac and duct the walls abut against periosteum, a dense vascular plexus being interposed.

The blood-vessels, lymphatics, and nerves of the lacrymal gland have a distribution similar to those of other serous glands.

THE EYELID.

The eyelid consists of an outer skin layer, an inner conjunctival layer, and a middle connective tissue layer.

The epidermis is thin and the papillæ of the derma are low. Small sebaceous glands, sweat glands, and fine hairs are present.

The *conjunctiva* (Fig. 278, *d*) is a mucous membrane consisting of a lining epithelium and a stroma. The epithelium is stratified columnar consisting of two or three layers of cells. Among these cells are cells resembling goblet cells. Although not always upon the surface, they are believed to be mucous cells, probably analogous to the so-called Leydig's cells found in the larvæ of amphibians and fishes. Diffuse lymphoid tissue is regularly present in the stroma, while lymph nodules are of rare occurrence. Small glands, similar to the lacrymal glands in structure, are usually present (Fig. 278, *k*).

At the margin of the eyelid where skin joins mucous membrane are several rows of large hairs, the eyelashes (Fig. 278, *h*). Connected with their follicles are the usual sebaceous glands (Fig. 278, *g*) and the *glands of Mall*, the latter probably representing modified sweat glands.

The middle layer contains the tarsus (Fig. 278, *e*) and the muscular structure of the eyelid (Fig. 278, *b*). The tarsus is a plate of dense fibrous tissue which lies just beneath the conjunctiva and extends about two-thirds the height of the lid. It contains the tarsal or *Meibomian glands* (Fig. 278, *e*). These are from thirty to forty in number, each consisting of a long duct which opens externally on the margin of the lid behind the lashes (Fig. 278, *f*), and internally into a number of branched tubules. The duct is lined with stratified squamous epithelium. The tubules resemble those of the sebaceous glands. Between the tarsus and the skin are the muscular structures of the eyelid in which both smooth and striated muscle are found.

Blood-vessels.—Two main arteries pass to the eyelid, one at each angle and unite to form an arch, the tarsal arch, along the margin of the lid. A second arch, the external tarsal arch, is formed along the upper margin of the tarsus. From these arches are given off capillary networks which supply the structures of the lid.

Lymphatics.—These form two anastomosing plexuses, one anterior, the other posterior to the tarsus.

Nerves.—The nerves form plexuses in the substance of the lid. From these, terminal fibrils pass to the various structures of the lid. Many of the fibres end freely in fine networks around the tarsal glands, upon the blood-vessels, and in the epithelium of the conjunctiva. Other fibres terminate in end-bulbs which are especially numerous at the margin of the lid.

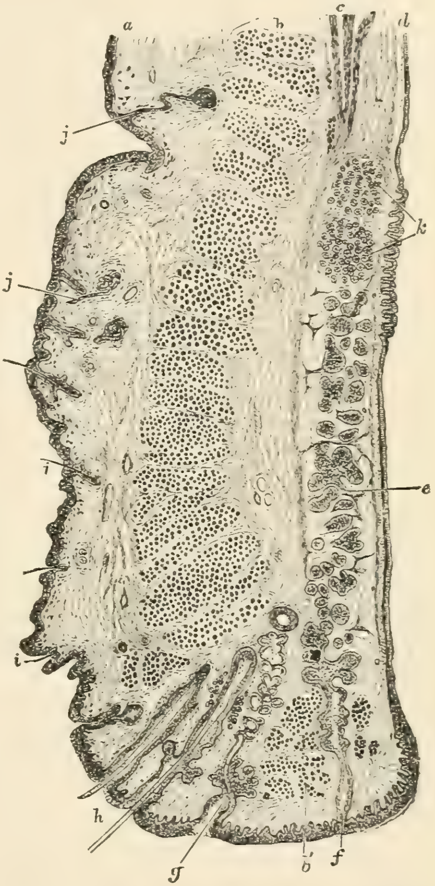


FIG. 278.—Vertical Section through Upper Eyelid. (Waldeyer.) *a*, Skin; *b*, orbicularis muscle; *b'*, ciliary bundle of muscle; *c*, involuntary muscle of eyelid; *d*, conjunctiva; *e*, tarsus containing Meibomian glands; *f*, duct of Meibomian gland; *g*, sebaceous gland with duct lying near eyelashes; *h*, eyelashes; *i*, small hairs in outer skin; *j*, sweat glands; *k*, posterior tarsal glands.

DEVELOPMENT OF THE EYE.

The eyes begin their development very early in embryonic life. As *optic depressions* they are visible even before the closure of the medullary groove. As a result of the closure of this groove, the optic depressions are transformed into the *optic vesicles.* The connection between vesicle and brain now becomes narrowed so that the two are connected only by the thin *optic stalk.* The surface of the optic vesicle becomes firmly adherent to the epidermis and as a result of proliferation of ectodermic cells at this point is pushed inward (invaginated), forming the *optic cup.* The invagination of the optic vesicle extends also to the stalk, the sulcus in the latter being known as the *chorioid fissure*. The latter serves for the introduction of mesenchyme and the development of the hyaloid retinal artery. Three distinct parts may now be distinguished in the developing eye, which at this stage is known as the *secondary optic vesicle:* (*a*) The proliferating epidermis which is to form the lens; (*b*) the more superficial of the invaginated layers which is to become the retina; and (*c*) the surrounding mesodermic tissue from which the outer coats of the eye are to develop.

TECHNIC.

(1) For the study of the general structures of the eyeball the eye of some large animal, such as an ox, is most suitable. Fix the eye for about a week in ten-per-cent formalin. Then wash in water and bisect the eye in such a manner that the knife passes through the optic-nerve entrance and the centre of the cornea. The half eye should now be placed in a dish of water and the structures shown in Fig. 265 identified with the naked eye or dissecting lens. On removing the vitreous and retina, the pigmented epithelium of the latter usually remains attached to the chorioid from which it may be scraped and examined in water or mounted in glycerin. In removing the lens note the lens capsule and the suspensory ligament. The lens may be picked to pieces with the forceps, and a small piece, after further teasing with needles, examined in water or mounted in glycerin or eosin-glycerin. The retinal surface of the chorioid shows the iridescent membrane of Bruch. By placing a piece of the chorioid, membrane-of-Bruch-side down, over the tip of the finger and gently scraping with a knife in the direction of the larger vessels, the latter may be distinctly seen. By now staining the piece lightly with hæmatoxylin and strongly with eosin, clearing in oil of origanum and mounting in balsam, the choriocapillaris and the layer of straight vessels become distinctly visible with the low-power lens. In removing the chorioid note the close attachment of the latter to the sclera, this being due to the intimate association of the fibres of the lamina suprachoroidea and of the lamina fusca. If the brown shreds attached to the inner side of the sclera be examined, the pigmented connective-tissue cells of the sclera can be seen.

(2) For the study of the finer structure of the coats of the eye, a human eye if it is possible to obtain one, if not, an eye from one of the lower animals, should be fixed in formalin-Müller's fluid (technic 5, p. 6) and hardened in alcohol. (A few drops of strong formalin injected by means of a hypodermic needle directly into the vitreous often improves the fixation.) The eye should next be divided into quadrants by first carrying the knife through the middle of the cornea and of the optic-nerve entrance and then dividing each half into an anterior and a posterior half. Block in celloidin, cut the following sections, and stain with hæmatoxylineosin (technic 1, p. 17).

(*a*) Section through the sclero-corneal junction, including the ora serrata, ciliary body, iris, and lens. Before attempting to cut this section almost all of the lens should be picked out of the block, leaving only a thin anterior and lateral rim attached to the capsule and suspensory ligament. The block should then be so clamped to the microtome that the lens is the last part of the block to be cut. The above precautions are necessary on account of the density of the lens, making it difficult to cut.

(*b*) Section through the postero-lateral portion of the eyeball to show structure of sclera, chorioid, and retina. This section should be as thin as possible and perpendicular to the surface.

(*c*) Section through the entrance of the optic nerve. Hæmatoxylin-picro-acid-fuchsin also makes a good stain for this section. It is instructive in cutting the eye to cut a small segment from the optic nerve and to block it with the optic-nerve entrance material in such a manner that it is cut transversely. In this way both longitudinal and transverse sections of the optic nerve appear in the same section.

(*d*) For the study of the neurone relations of the retina material must be treated by one of the Golgi methods (page 29).

(4) The connective-tissue cells and cell spaces of the cornea may be demonstrated by means of technics 8 and 9, page 75.

(5) The different parts of the lacrymal apparatus may be studied by fixing material in formalin-Müller's fluid and staining sections in hæmatoxylin-eosin.

(6) The Eyelid. An upper eyelid, human if possible, should be carefully pinned out on cork, skin side down, and fixed in formalin-Müller's fluid. Vertical sections should be stained with hæmatoxylin-eosin or with hæmatoxylin-picro-acid-fuchsin.

The Organ of Hearing.

The organ of hearing comprises the external ear, the middle ear, and the internal ear.

The External Ear.

The external ear consists of the pinna or auricle, the external auditory canal, and the outer surface of the tympanic membrane.

The *pinna* consists of a framework of elastic cartilage embedded in connective tissue and covered by skin. The latter is thin and contains hairs, sebaceous glands, and sweat glands.

The *external auditory canal* consists of an outer cartilaginous portion and an inner bony portion. Both are lined with skin continuous with that of the surface of the pinna. In the cartilaginous portion of the canal the skin is thick and the papillæ are small. Hair, sebaceous glands, and large coiled glands (*ceruminous glands*) are present. The last named resemble the glands of Mall (page 434) and are probably modified sweat glands. Their cells contain numerous fat droplets and pigment granules. They have long narrow ducts lined with a two-layered epithelium. In children these ducts open into the hair follicles; in the adult they open on the surface near the hair follicles. The secretion of these glands plus desquamated epithelium constitutes the *ear wax*. In the bony portion of the canal the skin is thin, free from glands and hair, and firmly adherent to the periosteum.

The *tympanic membrane* (ear drum) separates the external ear from the middle ear. It consists of three layers: a middle layer or substantia propria, an outer layer continuous with the skin of the external ear, and an inner layer continuous with the mucous membrane of the middle ear.

The substantia propria consists of closely woven connective-tissue fibres, the outer fibres having a radial direction from the head of the malleus, the inner fibres having a concentric arrangement and being best developed near the periphery.

The outer layer of the tympanic membrane is skin, consisting of epidermis and of a thin non-papillated corium, excepting over the manubrium of the malleus, where the skin is thicker and papillated.

The inner layer is mucous membrane and consists of a stroma of fibro-elastic tissue covered with a single layer of low epithelial cells.

Blood-vessels.—Blood is supplied to the tympanic membrane by two sets of vessels, an external set derived from the vessels of the external auditory meatus and an internal set from the vessels of the middle ear. These give rise to capillary networks in the skin and mucous membrane respectively and anastomose by means of perforating branches at the periphery of the membrane. From the capillaries the blood passes into two sets of small veins, one extending around the periphery of the membrane, the other following the handle of the malleus.

Lymphatics.—These follow in general the course of the blood-vessels. They are most numerous in the outer layer.

Nerves.—The larger nerves run in the substantia propria. From these, branches pass to the skin and mucous membrane, beneath the surfaces of which they form plexuses of fine fibres.

THE MIDDLE EAR.

The middle ear or *tympanum* is a small chamber separated from the external ear by the tympanic membrane and communicating with the pharynx by means of the Eustachian tube. Its walls are formed by the surrounding bony structures covered by periosteum. It is lined with mucous membrane and contains the ear ossicles and their ligamentous and muscular attachments. The epithelium is of the simple low cuboidal type. In places it may be ciliated and not infrequently assumes a pseudostratified character with two layers of nuclei. Beneath the epithelium is a thin stroma which contains some diffuse lymphoid tissue and blends with the dense underlying periosteum. Small tubular glands are usually present, especially near the opening of the Eustachian tube.

The *fenestra rotunda* is covered by the secondary tympanic membrane. This consists of a central lamina of connective tissue covered on its tympanic side by part of the mucous membrane of that chamber, on the opposite side by a single layer of endothelium.

The *ossicles* are composed of bone tissue arranged in the usual systems of lamellæ. The *stapes* alone contains a marrow cavity. Over their articular surfaces the ossicles are covered by hyaline cartilage.

The Eustachian Tube.—This is a partly bony, partly cartilaginous canal lined with mucous membrane. The epithelium of the latter is of the stratified columnar ciliated variety consisting of two layers of cells. In the bony portion of the tube the stroma is small in amount and intimately connected with the periosteum. In the cartilaginous portion the stroma is thicker and contains, especially near the pharyngeal opening, lymphoid tissue and simple tubular mucous glands.

THE INTERNAL EAR.

The internal ear consists of a complex series of connected bony walled chambers and passages containing a similar-shaped series of membranous sacs and tubules. These are known respectively as the *osseous labyrinth* and the *membranous labyrinth*. Between the two is a lymph space, which contains the so-called *perilymph*, while within the membranous labyrinth is a similar fluid, the *endolymph*.

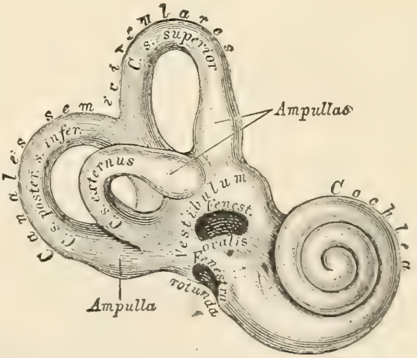


FIG. 279.—The Bony Labyrinth. × 3. (Heitzmann.)

The bony labyrinth consists of a central chamber, the *vestibule*, from which are given off the three *semicircular canals* and the *cochlea*. The vestibule is separated from the middle ear by a plate of bone in which are two openings, the *fenestra ovalis* and the *fenestra rotunda.* Just after leaving the vestibule each canal presents a dilatation, the *ampulla.* As each canal has a return opening into the vestibule and as the anterior and posterior canals have a common return opening (the *canalis communis*), there are five openings from the vestibule into the semicircular canals (Fig. 279). The bony labyrinth is lined with periosteum, covered by a single layer of endothelial cells.

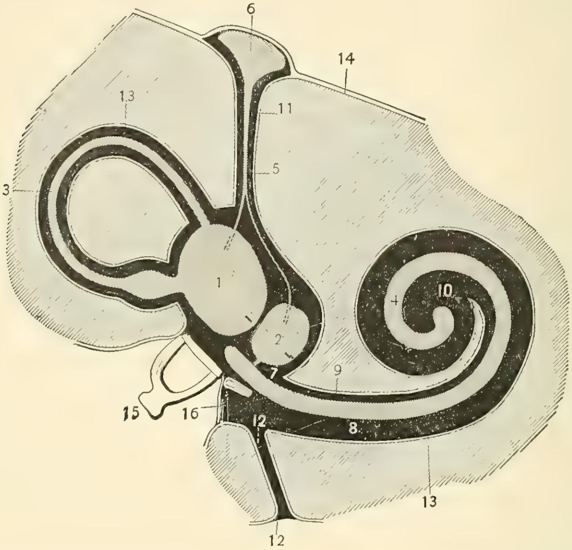


FIG. 280.—Diagram of the Perilymphatic and Endolymphatic Spaces of the Inner Ear. (Testut.) Endolymphatic spaces in gray; perilymphatic spaces in black. *1*, Utricle; *2*, saccule; *3*, semicircular canals; *4*, cochlear canal; *5*, endolymphatic duct; *6*, subdural endolymphatic sac; *7*, canalis reuniens; *8*, scala tympani; *9*, scala vestibuli; *10*, their union at the helicotrema; *11*, aqueduct of the vestibule; *12*, aqueduct of the cochlea; *13*, periosteum: *14*, dura mater; *15*, stapes in fenestra ovalis; *16*, fenestra rotunda and secondary tympanic membrane.

The Vestibule and the Semicircular Canals.—In the vestibule the membranous labyrinth is subdivided into two chambers, the *saccule* and the *utricle*, which are connected by the *utriculo-saccular duct.* From the latter is given off the *endolymphatic duct* which communicates through the aqueduct of the vestibule, with a subdural lymph space, the *endolymphatic sac.* The saccule opens by means of the *ductus reuniens* into the cochlea, while the utricle opens into the ampullæ of the semicircular canals. The saccule and utricle only partly fill the vestibule, the remaining space, crossed by fibrous bands and lined with endothelium, constituting the perilymphatic space.

Saccule and Utricle.—The walls of the saccule and of the utricle consist of fine fibro-elastic tissue supporting a thin basement membrane, upon which rests a single layer of low epithelial cells. In the wall of each chamber is an area of special nerve distribution, the *macula acustica.* Here the epithelium changes to high columnar and consists of two kinds of cells, sustentacular and neuro-epithelial. The *sustentacular cells* are long, irregular, nucleated cylinders, narrow in the middle, widened at each end, the outer end being frequently split and resting upon the basement membrane. The *neuro-epithelial cells* or "hair cells" are short cylinders which extend only about half-way through the epithelium. The basal end of the cell is the larger and contains the oval nucleus. The surface of the cell is provided with a cuticular margin from which project several long hair-like processes, the *auditory hairs.* Small crystals of calcium carbonate are found on the surfaces of the hair cells. These are known as *otoliths* and are embedded in a soft substance, the *otolithic membrane.* The hair cells are the neuro-epithelial end-organs of the vestibular division of the auditory nerve and are, therefore, closely associated with the nerve fibres. The latter on piercing the basement membrane lose their medullary sheaths and split up into several small branches, which form a horizontal plexus between the basement membrane and the bases of the hair cells. From this plexus are given off fibrils which end freely between the hair cells.

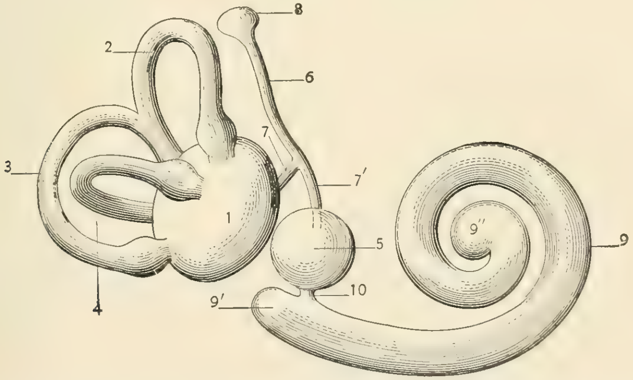


FIG. 281.—Diagram of the Right Membranous Labyrinth. (Testut.) *1*, Utricle; *2*, superior semicircular canal; *3*, posterior semicircular canal; *4*, external semicircular canal; *5*, saccule; *6*, endolymphatic duct; *7* and *7′*, canals connecting utricle and saccule respectively with the endolymphatic duct; *8*, endolymphatic sac; *9*, cochlear duct; *9′*, its vestibular cul-de-sac; *9″*, its terminal cul-de-sac; *10*, canalis reuniens.

Semicircular Canals.—The walls of the semicircular canals are similar in structure to the walls of the saccule and utricle; they also bear a similar relation to the walls of the bony canal. Along the concavity of each canal the epithelium is somewhat higher, forming the *raphé*. In each ampulla is a *crista acustica*, the structure of which is similar to that of the maculæ of the saccule and utricle. With the adjoining high columnar cells, this forms the so-called *semilunar fold*. As in the case of the maculæ the hair cells have otoliths upon their surfaces, the otolithic membrane here forming a sort of dome over the hair cells known as the *cupula*.

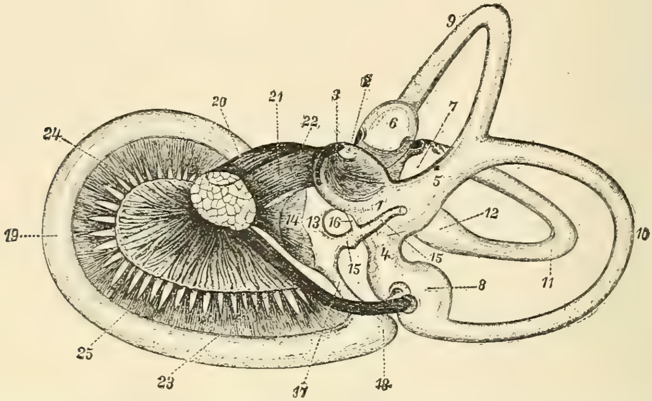


Fig. 282.—The Membranous Labyrinth from the Right Internal Ear of a Human Embryo at the Fifth Month; seen from the Medial Side. (After Retzius, from Barker.) *1–5*, Utricle; *2*, utricular recess; *3*, macula acustica of utricle; *4*, posterior sinus; *5*, superior sinus; *6*, *7*, *8*, superior, lateral, and posterior ampullæ; *9*, *10*, *11*, superior, posterior, and lateral semicircular canals; *12*, widened mouth of lateral semicircular canal opening into the utricle; *13*, saccule; *14*, macula acustica of the saccule; *15*, endolymphatic duct; *16*, utriculo-saccular duct; *17*, ductus reuniens; *18*, vestibular cul-de-sac of cochlear duct; *19*, cochlear duct; *20*, facial nerve; *21–24*, auditory nerve; *21*, its vestibular branch; *22*, saccular branch; *23*, branch to inferior ampulla; *24*, cochlear branch; *25*, distribution of cochlear branch within the bony spiral lamina.

The Cochlea.—The bony cochlea consists of a conical axis, the *modiolus*, around which winds a spiral bony canal. This canal in man makes about two and one-half turns, ending at the rounded tip of the cochlea or *cupola*. Projecting from the modiolus partly across the bony canal of the cochlea is a plate of bone, the *bony spiral lamina* (Fig. 283, *x*). This follows the spiral turns of the cochlea, ending at the cupola in a hook-shaped process, the *hamulus*. Along the outer side of the canal, opposite the bony spiral lamina, is a projection of thickened periosteum, the *spiral ligament* (Fig. 283, *h*). A connective-tissue membrane, the *membranous spiral lamina* (Fig.

283, *s*), crosses the space intervening between the spiral ligament and the bony spiral lamina, thus completely dividing the bony canal of the cochlea into two parts, an upper, *scala vestibuli* (Fig. 283, *l*) and a lower, *scala tympani* (Fig. 283, *k*). These are perilymphatic spaces, the scala vestibuli communicating with the perilymph space of the vestibule, the scala tympani communicating with the perivascular lymph spaces of the veins of the cochlear duct. The scala vestibuli and the scala tympani communicate with each other in the cupola by means of a minute canal, the *helicotrema*.

THE COCHLEAR DUCT (*Membranous Cochlea or Scala Media*).—This is a narrow, membranous tube lying near the middle of the bony cochlear canal and following its spiral turns from the vestibule, where it is connected with the saccule through the canalis reuniens,

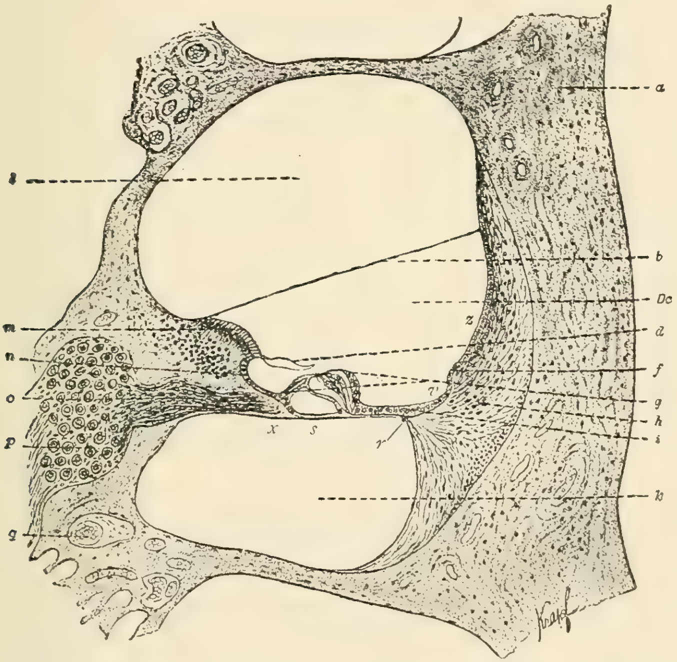


FIG. 283.—Section through a Single Turn of the Cochlea of a Guinea-pig. (Böhm and von Davidoff.) *a*, Bone of cochlea; *l*, scala vestibuli; *Dc*, scala media or cochlear duct; *k*, scala tympani; *b*, membrane of Reissner; *d*, membrana tectoria or membrane of Corti; *f*, spiral prominence; *g*, organ of Corti; *h*, spiral ligament; *i*, basilar membrane (outer portion—zona pectinata—covered by cells of Claudius); *z*, stria vascularis; *v*, external spiral sulcus; *r*, crista basilaris; *s*, membranous spiral lamina; *x*, bony spiral lamina; *m*, spiral limbus; *n*, internal spiral sulcus; *o*, medullated peripheral processes (dendrites) of cells of spiral ganglion passing to the organ of Corti; *p*, spiral ganglion; *q*, blood-vessel.

to its blind ending in the cupola. It is triangular in shape on transverse section, thus allowing a division of its walls into upper, outer, and lower (Fig. 283, *Dc*).

The upper or vestibular wall is formed by the thin *membrane of Reissner* (Fig. 283, *b*) which separates the cochlear duct from the scala vestibuli. The membrane consists of a thin central lamina of connective tissue covered on its vestibular side by the vestibular endothelium, on its cochlear side by the epithelium of the cochlea.

The outer wall of the cochlear duct is formed by the spiral ligament, which is a thickening of the periosteum. The outer part of the spiral ligament consists of dense fibrous tissue, its projecting part of more loosely arranged tissue. From it, two folds project slightly into the duct. One, the *crista basilaris* (Fig. 283, *r*), serves for the attachment of the membranous spiral lamina; the other, the *spiral prominence* (Fig. 283, *f*), contains several small veins. Between the two projections is a depression, the *external spiral sulcus* (Fig. 283, *v*). That part of the spiral ligament between the spiral prominence and the attachment of Reissner's membrane is known as the *stria vascularis* (Fig. 283, *z*). It is lined with granular cuboidal epithelial cells, which, owing to the absence of a basement membrane, are not sharply separated from the underlying connective tissue. For this reason the capillaries extend somewhat between the epithelial cells, giving the unusual appearance of a vascular epithelium.

The lower or tympanic wall of the cochlear duct has an extremely complex structure. Its base is formed by the already mentioned bony and membranous division wall between the scala media and the scala tympani (bony spiral lamina and membranous spiral lamina).

The bony spiral lamina has been described (page 442).

The membranous spiral lamina consists of a substantia propria or basilar membrane, its tympanic covering, and its cochlear covering.

The *basilar membrane* (Fig. 283) is a connective-tissue membrane composed of fine straight fibres which extend from the bony spiral lamina to the spiral ligament. Among the fibres are a few connective-tissue cells. On either side of the fibre layer is a thin, apparently structureless membrane.

The *tympanic covering* of the basilar membrane consists of a thin layer of connective tissue—an extension of the periosteum of the spiral lamina—covered over by a single layer of flat endothelial cells.

The *cochlear covering* of the basilar membrane is epithelial. Owing to the marked difference in the character of the epithelium, the basilar membrane is divided into an outer portion, the *zona pectinata* (Fig. 283, *i*) and an inner portion, the *zona tecta* (Fig. 283, *s*). The epithelium of the former is of the ordinary columnar type; that of the latter is the highly differentiated neuro-epithelium of Corti's organ.

The Organ of Corti.—The spiral organ or the organ of Corti (Fig. 283, *g*, and Fig. 284) is a neuro-epithelial structure running the entire length of the cochlear canal with the exception of a short distance at either end. It rests upon the membranous portion of the spiral lamina, and consists of a complex arrangement of four different kinds of epithelial cells. These are known as: (1) pillar cells, (2) hair cells, (3) Deiter's cells, and (4) Hensen's cells (Fig. 284).

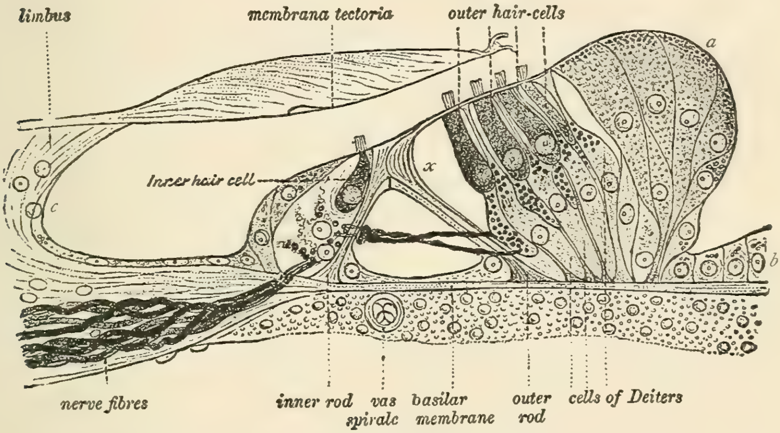


FIG. 284.—Semidiagrammatic Representation of the Organ of Corti and Adjacent Structures. (Merkel-Henle.) *a*, Cells of Hensen; *b*, cells of Claudius; *c*, internal spiral sulcus; *x*, Nuel's space. The nerve fibres (dendrites of cells of the spinal ganglion) are seen passing to Corti's organ through openings (foramina nervosa) in the bony spiral lamina. The black dots represent longitudinally-running branches, one bundle lying to the inner side of the inner pillar, a second just to the outer side of the inner pillar within Corti's tunnel, the third beneath the outer hair cells.

(1) The *pillar cells* are divided into *outer pillar cells* and *inner pillar cells*. They are sustentacular in character. Each cell consists of a broad curved protoplasmic base which contains the nucleus, and of a long-drawn-out shaft or pillar which probably represents a highly specialized cuticular formation. The end of the pillar away from the base is known as the *head*. The head of the outer pillar

presents a convexity on its inner side, which fits into a corresponding concavity on the head of the inner pillar, the heads of opposite pillars thus "articulating" with each other. From their articulation the pillars diverge, so that their bases which rest upon the basilar membrane are widely separated. There are thus formed by the pillars a series of arches known as *Corti's arches*, enclosing a triangular canal, *Corti's tunnel.* This canal is filled with a gelatinous substance and crossed by delicate nerve fibrils. As the outer pillar cells are the larger, they are fewer in number, the estimated number in the human cochlea being about forty-five hundred of the outer cells and about six thousand of the inner cells.

(2) The *hair cells* or *auditory cells* lie on either side of the arches of Corti, and are thus divided into inner hair cells and outer hair cells. Both inner and outer hair cells are short, cylindrical elements which do not extend to the basilar membrane. Each cell ends below in a point, while from its free surface are given off a number of fine stiff hairs.

The inner hair cells lie in a single layer against the inner side of the inner pillar cells, one hair cell resting upon about every two pillars.

The outer hair cells lie in three or four layers to the outer side of the outer pillar cells, being separated from one another by sustentacular cells, the cells of Deiter, so that no two hair cells come in contact.

(3) *Deiter's Cells* (Fig. 284).—These like the pillar cells are sustentacular. Their bases rest upon the basilar membrane, where they form a continuous layer. Toward the surface they become separated from one another by the hair cells. The long slender portions of the Deiter's cells, which pass in between the hair cells, are known as *phalangeal processes.* Between the innermost of the outer hair cells and the outer pillar is a space known as *Nuel's space* (Fig. 284, *x*).

(4) *Hensen's Cells* (Fig. 284, *a*).—These are sustentacular cells, which form about eight rows to the outer side of the outermost Deiter's cells. These cells form the outer crest of Corti's organ and consequently have a somewhat radial disposition, their free surfaces being broad, their basal ends narrow. They decrease in height from within outward, and at the end of Corti's organ become continuous with the cells of Claudius (Fig. 284, *b*), the name given to the coch-

lear epithelium covering the basal membrane to the outer side of Corti's organ.

The phalangeal processes of the Deiter's cells are cemented together and to the superficial parts of the outer pillars in such a manner as to form a sort of cuticular membrane, the *lamina reticularis,* through which the heads of the outer hair cells project. This membrane also extends out as a cuticula over the cells of Hensen and of Claudius.

The Membrana Tectoria.—This is a peculiar membranous structure attached to a projection of the bony spiral lamina known as the *spiral limbus* (Fig. 284), the concavity beneath its attachment being the *internal spiral sulcus* (Fig. 284, *c*). The membrane is non-nucleated and shows fine radial striations. It bridges over the internal spiral sulcus and ends in a thin margin, which rests upon Corti's organ just at the outer limit of the outer hair cells.

Blood-vessels.—The arteries consist of two small branches of the auditory—one to the bony labyrinth, the other to the membranous labyrinth. The latter divides into two branches—a vestibular and a cochlear. The vestibular artery accompanies the branches of the auditory nerve to the utricle, saccule, and semicircular canals. It supplies these parts, giving rise to a capillary network, which is coarse meshed except in the cristæ and maculæ, where the meshes are fine. The cochlear artery also starts out in company with the auditory nerve, but accompanies it only to the first turn of the cochlea. Here it enters the modiolus where it gives off several much coiled branches, the glomerular arteries of the cochlea. Branches from these pierce the vestibular part of the osseous spiral lamina and supply the various structures of the cochlear duct. The veins accompany the arteries, but reach the axis of the modiolus through foramina in the tympanic part of the bony spiral lamina.

Lymphatics.—The scala media contains endolymph and is in communication with the subdural lymph spaces by means of the endolymphatic duct, the endolymphatic sac, and minute lymph channels connecting the latter with the subdural spaces. The perilymph spaces—scala tympani and scala vestibuli—are connected with the pial lymph spaces by means of the perilymphatic duct. Lymph spaces also surround the vessels and nerves. These empty into the pial lymphatics.

Nerves.—The vestibular branch of the auditory nerve divides into branches which supply the saccule, utricle, and semicircular canals, where they end in the maculæ and cristæ as described on page 437. The ganglion of the vestibular branch is situated in the internal auditory meatus. The cochlear branch of the auditory nerve enters the axis of the modiolus, where it divides into a number of branches which pass up through its central axis. From these, numerous fibres radiate to the bony spiral laminæ, in the bases of which they enter the spiral ganglia (Fig. 283, *p*).

The cells of the spiral ganglia are peculiar, in that while of the same general type as the spinal ganglion cell they maintain their embryonic bipolar condition (see page 351) throughout life. Their axones follow the already described course through the modiolus and thence through the internal auditory meatus to their terminal nuclei in the medulla (see page 387). Their dendrites become medullated like the dendrites of the spinal ganglion cells and pass outward in bundles in the bony spiral laminæ (Fig. 283, *o*, and Fig. 284). From these are given off branches which enter the tympanic portion of the lamina, where they lose their medullary sheaths and pass through the foramina nervosa (minute canals in the tympanic part of the spiral lamina) to their terminations in the organ of Corti. In the latter the fibres run in three bundles parallel to Corti's tunnel. One bundle lies just inside the inner pillar beneath the inner row of hair cells (Fig. 284). A second bundle runs in the tunnel to the outer side of the inner pillar (Fig. 284). The third bundle crosses the tunnel (tunnel-fibres) and turns at right angles to run between the cells of Deiter beneath the outer hair cells (Fig. 284). From all of these bundles of fibres are given off delicate terminals which end on the hair cells.

Development of the Ear.

The essential auditory part of the organ of hearing, the membranous labyrinth, is of ectodermic origin. This first appears as a thickening followed by an invagination of the surface ectoderm in the region of the posterior cerebral vesicle. This is known as the *auditory pit*. By closure of the lips of this pit and growth of the surrounding mesodermic tissue is formed the *otic vesicle* or *otocyst*, which is completely separated from the surface ectoderm. Diverticula soon appear passing off from the otic vesicle. These are three in number and correspond respectively to the future endolymphatic duct, the cochlear duct and the membranous semicircular canals. Within the saccule, utricle, and ampullæ special differentiations of the lining epithelium give rise to the maculæ and cristæ acusticæ. Of the cochlear duct the upper and lateral walls become thinned to form Reissner's membrane and the epithelium of the outer wall, while the lower wall becomes the basilar membrane, its epithelium undergoing an elaborate specialization to form the organ of Corti.

Of the cochlea, only the membranous cochlear duct develops from the otic vesicle; the scala vestibuli, scala tympani, and bony cochlea developing from the surrounding mesoderm. The mesodermic connective tissue at first completely fills in the space between the cochlear duct and the bony canal. Absorption of this tissue takes place, resulting in formation of the scala tympani and scala vestibuli.

During the differentiation of the above parts a constriction appears in the body of the primitive otic vesicle. This results in the incomplete septum which divides the utricle from the saccule.

The middle ear is formed from the upper segment of the pharyngeal groove, the lower segment giving rise to the Eustachian tube.

The external ear is developed from the ectoderm of the first branchial cleft and adjacent branchial arches. The tympanic membrane is formed from the mesoderm of the first branchial arch, its outer covering being of ectodermic, its inner of entodermic origin.

TECHNIC.

(1) For the study of the general structure of the pinna and walls of the external auditory meatus, material may be fixed in formalin-Müller's fluid (technic 5, p. 6) and sections stained with hæmatoxylin-eosin (technic 1, p. 17). In sections of the wall of the cartilaginous meatus the ceruminous glands may be studied, material from children and from new-born infants furnishing the best demonstrations of these glands.

(2) For the study of the inner ear the guinea-pig is most satisfactory on account of the ease with which the parts may be removed. Remove the cochlea of a guinea-pig with as much as possible of the vestibule and semicircular canals and fix in Flemming's fluid (technic 7, p. 7). A small opening should be made in the first turn of the cochlea in order to allow the fixative to enter the canal. After forty-eight hours the cochlea is removed from the fixative and hardened in graded alcohols (page 8). The bone is next decalcified, either by one of the methods mentioned on page 9 or in saturated alcoholic solution of picric acid. If one of the aqueous decalcifying fluids is used, care must be taken to carry the material through graded alcohols. Embed in celloidin or paraffin, cut sections through the long axis of the modiolus, through the utricle and saccule, and through the semicircular canals. Stain with hæmatoxylin-eosin and mount in balsam.

(3) The neurone relations of the cristæ, maculæ, and cochlear duct can be demonstrated only by means of the Golgi method. The ear of a new-born mouse or guinea-pig furnishes good material. The cochlea together with some of the base of the skull should be removed and treated by the Golgi rapid method (page 29). Sections should be thick and must of course be cut through undecalcified bone. Good results are difficult to obtain.

The Organ of Smell.

The olfactory organ consists of the olfactory portion of the nasal mucosa. In this connection it is, however, convenient to describe briefly the *olfactory bulb* and the *olfactory tract*.

The Olfactory Mucosa.—This has been described (page 241). The peculiar olfactory cells there described are not neuro-epithelium but are analogs of the spinal ganglion cell, being the only example in man of the peripherally placed ganglion cell found in certain lower animals. Each cell sends to the surface a short dendrite which ends in several short, stiff, hair-like processes. From its opposite end each cell gives off a longer centrally directed process (axone), which as a fibre of one of the olfactory nerves passes through the cribriform

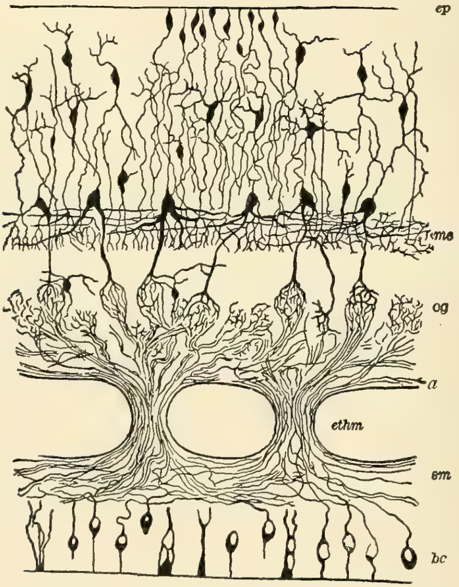


FIG. 285.—Diagram of Structure of Olfactory Mucosa and Olfactory Bulb. (Ramón y Cajal.) *bc*, Bipolar cells of olfactory mucosa; *sm*, submucosa; *ethm*, cribriform plate of ethmoid; *a*, layer of olfactory fibres; *og*, olfactory glomeruli; *me*, mitral cells; *ep*, epithelium of olfactory ventricle.

plate of the ethmoid (Fig. 285, *ethm*) to its terminal nucleus in the olfactory bulb (Fig. 285).

The Olfactory Bulb.—This is a somewhat rudimentary structure analogous to the much more prominent olfactory brain lobe of some of the lower animals. It consists of both gray matter and white matter arranged in six fairly distinct layers. These from below upward are as follows: (*a*) The layer of olfactory fibres; (*b*) the layer of glomeruli; (*c*) the molecular layer; (*d*) the layer of mitral cells; (*e*) the granule layer; (*f*) the layer of longitudinal fibre bundles. Through the centre of the last-named layer runs a band of neuroglia which represents the obliterated lumen of the embryonal lobe. The relations of these layers to the olfactory neurone system are as follows:

The layer of olfactory fibres (Fig. 285, *a*) consists of a dense plexiform arrangement of the axones of the above-described olfactory cells. From this layer the axones pass into the layer of olfactory glomeruli where their terminal ramifications mingle with the dendritic terminals of cells lying in the more dorsal layers, to form distinctly outlined spheroidal or oval nerve-fibre nests, the *olfactory glomeruli* (Fig. 285, *og*). The latter mark the ending of neurone system No. I. of the olfactory conduction path.

The molecular layer contains both small nerve cells and large nerve cells. These send their dendrites into the olfactory glomeruli. The smaller cells belong to Golgi Type II. (see page 110) and appear to be association neurones between adjacent glomeruli. The axones of the larger cells, the so-called brush cells, become fibres of the *olfactory tract.*

Of the mitral cells (Fig. 285, *mc*), the main dendrites end in the olfactory glomeruli, while their axones, like those of the brush cells, become fibres of the *olfactory tract.*

In addition to the fibres which pass through it (axones of mitral and of brush cells), the granular layer contains numerous nerve cells. Many of these are small and apparently have no axones (amacrine cells). Their longer dendrites pass toward the periphery, their shorter dendrites toward the olfactory tract. Larger multipolar cells, whose axones end in the molecular layer, also occur in the granular layer.

The layer of longitudinal fibre bundles consists mainly of the centrally directed axones of the mitral and brush cells. These fibres run in distinct bundles separated by neuroglia. Leaving the bulb they form the olfactory tract by means of which they pass to their cerebral terminations.

The brush cells and mitral cells with their processes thus constitute neurone system No. II. of the olfactory conduction path.

TECHNIC.

(1) Carefully remove the olfactory portion of the nasal mucosa (if human material is not available, material from a rabbit is quite satisfactory). This may be recognized by its distinctly brown color. Fix in Flemming's fluid (technic 7, p. 6), or in Zenker's (technic 9, p. 7). Stain thin vertical sections with hæmatoxylin-eosin (technic 1, p. 17) and mount in balsam.

(2) For the study of the nerve relations of the olfactory cells material should be treated by the rapid Golgi method (page 27).

The Organ of Taste.

The organ of taste consists of the so-called taste buds of the lingual mucosæ. These have been mentioned in connection with the papillæ of the tongue (page 186) and under sensory end-organs (page 353).

The taste buds are found in the side walls of the circumvallate papillæ (page 185). of some few of the fungiform papillæ, in the mucosa of the posterior surface of the epiglottis, and especially in folds (foliate papillæ) which occur along the postero-lateral margin of the tongue.

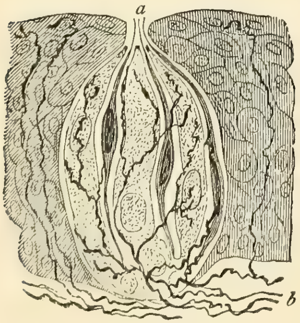


FIG. 286.—Taste-bud from Side Wall of Circumvallate Papilla. (Merkel-Henle.) *a*, Taste-pore; *b*, nerve fibres, some of which enter the taste-bud—intrageminal fibres, while others end freely in the surrounding epithelium—intergeminal fibres.

The taste bud (Fig. 286) is an ovoid epithelial structure embedded in the epithelium and connected with the surface by means of a minute canal, the gustatory canal (Fig. 286, *a*), the outer and inner ends of which are known respectively as the outer and inner taste pores.

Each taste bud consists of two kinds of cells, neuro-epithelial cells or gustatory cells and sustentacular cells (Fig. 286). The gustatory cells are long, delicate, spindle-shaped cells which occupy the centre of the taste bud, each ending externally in a cilium-like process, which usually projects through the inner pore. The inner end of the cell tapers down to a fine process, which may be single or branched. The sustentacular cells are long, slender cells which form a shell several cells thick around the gustatory cells. Sensory terminals of the glosso-pharyngeal nerves (Fig. 286, *b*) end within the taste buds in a network of varicose fibres—*intrageminal fibres.* Other sensory terminals of the same nerve end freely in the epithelium between the taste buds. These are finer and smoother than the intrageminal fibres and are known as *intergeminal fibres* (Fig. 286).

TECHNIC.

(1) The general structure of the taste buds is shown in the sections of tongue (technic, p. 186).

(2) For the study of the nerve terminals the method of Golgi should be used (page 29).

General References for Further Study.

Schwalbe: Lehrbuch der Anatomie der Sinnesorgane, 1887.
Kölliker: Handbuch der Gewebelehre des Menschen.
Ramón y Cajal: La rétine des vertébrés. La Cellule, ix., 1893.
McMurrich: The Development of the Human Body.

INDEX.

Abducens nerve, 388
Absorption, 218
    of fat, 220
Accessory nasal sinuses, 242
    olivary nucleus, 378, 381, 385
Achromatic element of intranuclear network, 40
    spindle, 44
Acid aniline dyes, 17
    cells, 200, 219
Acidophile granules, 91
Acini, 177
Acoustic striæ, 388
Adipose tissue, 79
Adrenal, 270
    blood-vessels of, 272
    capsule of, 270
    cortex of, 271
    development of, 272
    lymphatics of, 272
    medulla of, 272
    nerves of, 272
    structure of, 270
    technic of, 273
Adventitia of arteries, 125
    of lymph vessels, 133
    of veins, 128
Afferent peripheral nerves, 342
Agminated follicles, 208
Air cells, 250
    passages, 249
    sacs, 250
    vesicles, 249
Alcohol, as a fixative, 5
    dilute, as a fixative, 5
    -ether celloidin, 10
    for hardening, 8
    graded, 8
    Ranvier's, 4
    strong, as a fixative, 5
Alimentary canal, 179
Alimentary canal, development of, 238
    endgut, 210
    foregut, 195
    headgut, 180
    midgut, 204
Altmann's granule theory of protoplasmic structure, 38
Alum-carmine, 16
    for staining in bulk, 19
Alveolar ducts, 249
    glands, 177
Alveoli, 249, 250
Amacrine cells, 426
Amitosis, 43
Amœboid movement, 42
Amphipyrenin, 40
Amphophile granules, 91
Ampullæ, 440
    of Thoma, 150
Anaphase, 45
Aniline dyes, acid, 17
    basic, 16
Anistrophic line, 97
    substance, 97
Annular terminations, 354
Annuli fibrosi, 130
Anterior horns, 346, 372, 375, 377, 381
        root or motor cells of, 356
        technic of, 356
    marginal bundle of Loewenthal, 367
    median fissure, 345
    medullary vellum, 395
    pyramids, 366, 381, 382, 385, 389
    white commissure, 347
Antero-lateral ascending tract, 365
Antrum, 294
Anus, 214
Aorta, 125
Appendix epididymidis, 283
    testis, 283

Appendix vermiformis, 212
Arachnoid membrane, 338
    of optic nerve, 428
Arbor vitæ, 401
Arborescent terminations, 354
Arborizations, terminal, 110
Archoplasm, 41
Arciform nucleus, 378, 381, 384, 385, 388
Arcuate fibres, external, 379, 381, 384, 385, 388
    internal, 378, 381, 383, 385, 390, 393
Arrector pili muscle, 326
Arrectores pilorum, 329
Arteriæ arciformes, 266
Arteries, 122
    adventitia of, 125
    aorta and other large, 125
    arcuate, 266
    arteriole, 123
    bronchial, 253, 254
    coats of, 122
    development of, 132
    elastic tissue of, 125
    greater arterial circle of iris, 432
    hepatic, 233
    interlobular, 266
    intima of, 124
    large, like the aorta, 125
    lesser arterial, of the iris, 432
    media of, 125
    medium-sized, 123
    phrenic, 267
    precapillary, 123
    pulmonary, 253
    recurrent, 267
    renal, 258
    small, 123
    suprarenal, 267
    technic of, 128
    vasa vasorum, 128
Arteriole, 123
Articular cartilages, 169
Articulations, 169; see *Joints*
    diarthrosis, 169
    synarthrosis, 169
    synchondrosis, 169
    syndesmosis, 169
    technic of, 170
Ascending fibre tracts of spinal cord, 364
    antero-lateral, 365
    direct cerebellar, 365
    Gowers', 365
    posterior columns, 364
    spino-tectal, 366
    tract of Flechsig, 365
    tractus spino-cerebellaris centralis, 365
    tractus spino-cerebellaris dorsalis, 365
Association fibres, 409
Atresia of follicle, 300
Atria, 250
Attraction sphere, 40
Auditory canal, 437
    hairs, 441
    nerve, 385
        cochlear branch of, 386
        vestibular branch of, 386
    pit of, 448
Auerbach's plexus, 206, 211, 217, 342
Auricle, 437
    muscle of, 130
Auriculo-ventricular ring, 130
Axis cylinder, 105, 112, 354
Axolemma and neurilemma, relation of, 113
Axone, 105, 110
    ascending arm of, 355
    collaterals of, 356
    descending arm of, 355
    development of, 337
    medullated, 112
    non-medullated, 111
Axone-hill, 110

BAILLARGER, inner line of, 406, 410
    outer line of, 406, 410
Balsam, Canada, for mounting, 20
Barker, reference to, 108
Bartholin, glands of, 312
    duct of, 223
Basal granule, 63
Basic aniline dyes, 16
Basket cells, 182, 403
Basophile granules, 91
Bellini, duct of, 261
Bertini, columns of, 260

Bethe, concerning continuity of axolemma and neurilemma, 113
Betz, cells of, 408
Bioblasts, 38
Bipolar nerve cells, 106
Bladder, urinary, 269
Blastoderm, 50
Blastomeres, 49
Blocking, 10
Blood, 89
    corpuscles, 89
    crenation of red cells, 90
    development of, 92
    erythrocytes of, 89
    hæmoglobin of, 89
    Jenner's stain for, 26
    leucocytes of, 90
    platelets, 92
    red cells of, 89
    smears, technic of, 94
    stroma of, 89
    technic of, 93
    vascular unit, 253
    white cells of, 90
Blood-islands, 92, 132
Blood-vascular unit, 253
Blood-vessel system, 121
    arteries, 122
    capillaries, 121
    development of, 132
    heart, 129
    lining of, 121
    technic of, 128, 131
    veins, 126
Blood-vessels, 121
    lymph channels of, 128
    nerves of, 128
    technic of, 128
Body cavities, 133
Bone, breakers, 163
    decalcification of, 9
    formers, 161
Bone marrow, 156
    technic of, 160
    red, 156
        cells of, 156
        eosinophile cells of, 158
        erythroblasts of, 157
        fat cells of, 158
        mast cells of, 158
        multinuclear cells of, 157
Bone marrow, red, myelocytes of, 156
        myeloplaxes of, 157
        non-nucleated red blood cells of, 156
        nucleated red blood cells of, 157
    yellow, 158
        gelatinous, 158
Bone tissue, 86
    cells of, 87
    cementum, 190
    intercellular substance of, 87
    lacunæ and canaliculi of, 87
    lamellæ of, 87
    technic of, 87
Bones, 152
    blood-vessels of, 159
    cancellous or spongy, 152
    cells of origin of, 162
    circumferential lamellæ of, 155
    development of, 160
    growth of, 167
    hard or compact, 152
    Haversian canals of, 154
        lamellæ, 154
    interstitial lamellæ of, 155
    lacunæ, origin of, 162
    lymphatics of, 159
    nerves of, 159
    nutrient canal, 159
        foramen, 159
        vessels, 159
    perforating fibres, 155
        fibres of Sharpey, 156
    periosteum of, 155
    technic of, 160
        developing bone, 168
    Volkmann's canals, 155, 159
Bony spiral lamina, 442
Borax-carmine, alcoholic solution, 19
Born's theory of corpus luteum, 299
Bowman, capsule of, 260, 263
    glands of, 242
    membrane of, 417
    sarcous elements of, 97
Brachia conjunctiva, 397
Brachium of posterior corpus quadrigeminum, 391
Brain, 406; see *Cerebrum*

Brain, membranes of, 338
        arachnoid, 338
        blood-vessels of, 339
        cerebral dura, 338
        dura mater, 338
        pia mater, 338
        technic of, 339
    Pacchionian bodies of, 338
    relation to optic nerve, 428
    sand, 415
Bridges, intercellular, 57
Bronchi, 246
    blood-vessels of, 253
    cartilages of, 248
    development of, 254
    nerves of, 254
    primary, 246
    respiratory, 249
    structure of walls of, 246
    technic of, 255
    terminal, 249, 251
Bruch, membrane of, 419
Brunner's glands, 209
Bulbus olfactorius, 451
    oculi, 416; see *Eyeball*
Burdach, column of, 350, 364
Bursæ, 172
Bütschli's theory of protoplasm structure, 38

CAJAL, cells of, 407
Cajeput oil for clearing sections, 20
Calcification centre, 161, 164
    zone, 166
Canal, lacrymal, 433
Canaliculi of bone, 87
Canalis communis, 440
Canalized fibrin, 310
Cancellous bone, 162
Capillaries, 121
    chyle, 217
    development of, 132
    technic of, 128
Capillary network, 122
Capsule of Bowman, 260, 263
    of Glisson, 231
Carbol-xylol for clearing specimens, 20
Cardiac glands, 200
Carmine alum, 16, 19
    borax, 19
    gelatin, 22
Carmine, neutral, 17
    picro-, 18
Carotid gland, 134
Cartilage, 83
    cells, 83
    classification of, 84
    development of, 86
    elastic, 85
    epiphyseal, 168
    fibrous, 85
    hyaline, 84
    perichondrium of, 86
    technic of, 86
    thyroid, 243
    tracheal, 244
    Wrisburg's, 243
Caryochromes, 108
Cavernous sinuses, 289
Cavity of embryonic vesicle, 49
Cell, the, 37
    body of, 38
    centrosome of, 40
    function of, 41
    irritability of, 41
    membrane of, 39
    metabolism of, 41
    motion of, 42
    nucleolus of, 40
    nucleus of, 39
    primary germ layers of, 49
    reproduction of, 43
    structure of, 37
    technic of, 50
    typical, structure of, 37
    vital properties of, 41
Cell column of the lower extremity, 357
        of the upper extremity, 357
Cell division, direct, 43
        indirect, 43
Cell islands of Langerhans, 229
        function of, 229
        Opie's theory of, 230
        origin of, 229
        structure of, 229
        technic of, 231
Celloidin, alcohol-ether, 10
    clove-oil, 11
    embedding, 10
    sections, 13
Cells, acid, 200, 219
    adelomorphous, 199

Cells, air, 249
- amacrine, 426
- auditory, 446
- basal, 242
- basket, 182, 403
- blood, 89
- bone, 87
- brush, 451
- centro-acini, of Langerhans, 227
- centro-tubular, 227
- chief, 199, 256, 414
- chromophile, 414
- colloid, 256
- compound tactile, 352
- connective-tissue, 68
- corneum, 318
- daughter, 46
- decidual, 307
- Deiter's, 445, 446
- delomorphous, 199
- ectodermic, 336
- eosinophile, 158
- epithelial, 57
- extrinsic, 350
- fixed, 68
- fœtal, 252
- ganglia, 339
- goblet, 205, 211
- Golgi, Type I., 110
- Golgi, Type II., 110, 408, 451
- granule, 402
- gustatory, 452
- hair, 441, 445
- hecatomeric, 358
- Hensen's, 445
- heteromeric, 358
- intrinsic, 350
- Kupffer's, 237
- Langerhans', 227
- Leydig's, 434
- liver, 234
- lymphoid, 79
- lutein, 297
- marrow, 156
- mast, 68, 92, 158
- mesamœboid, 56
- mitral, 451
- mossy, 115
- mucous, 181, 205
- nerve, 105, 350; for classification see *Nerve cells*

Cells, neuroblasts, 337
- neuro-epithelial, 441
- of Claudius, 446
- of oral glands, 181
- olfactory, 242
- oxyntic, 199
- Paneth's, 207
- parietal, 200
- peptic, 199
- pillar, 445
- plasma, 68
- prickle, 318, 324
- primitive ora, 293
- Purkinje, 401, 403
- replacing, 60, 201, 206
- respiratory, 251
- resting, 44
- Sertoli's, 276, 285
- signet-ring, 80
- simple tactile, 352
- single primitive, 43
- spermatids, 278, 285
- spermatocytes, 278, 285
- spermatogenic, 276
- spermatogones, 277, 285
- spider, 115
- sustentacular, 228, 242, 276, 401, 452
- tactile, 352
- tautomeric, 358, 365
- wandering, 68, 206

Cementing glycerin mounts, 19

Cementum, 187, 190, 193

Central canal, 346, 375, 377, 381
- gelatinous substance, 346, 347, 375, 377, 381
- nervous system, 336; see *Nervous system* (*cerebro-spinal*)
- spindle, 44
- tegmental tract, 388, 391, 393

Centro-acinar cells of Langerhans, 227

Centrosome, 40

Centrosphere, 40

Cerebellar peduncles, 395

Cerebello-olivary fibres, 381, 383

Cerebellum, 401
- arbor vitæ, 401
- basket cells of, 403
- cells of, 401, 402, 403, 404
- climbing fibres of, 404
- cortex of, 401

Cerebellum, dentate nucleus of, 405
  general histology of, 401
  gray matter of, 401
  laminæ of, 401
  middle peduncle of, 391
  peduncles of, 395, 406
  Purkinje cells of, 401, 403
  technic of, 411
  vermis, 365
Cerebral convolutions, 406
  hemispheres, development of, 336
  peduncles, 400
  vesicle, 336
Cerebro-spinal ganglia, 340
  technic of, 342
Cerebro-spinal nervous system, 336; see *Nervous system* (*cerebro-spinal*)
Cerebrum, 406; see also *Cortex cerebri*
  convolutions of, 406
  cortex of, 406
  histology of, 406
  membranes of, 338; see also *Brain*
  technic of, 411
Ceruminous glands, 437
Cervical enlargement of cord, 344
  segments of cord, 344
Cervix, 304
  epithelium of, 304, 305
  of posterior horns, 346
  ovula Nabothi, 305
  plicæ palmatæ, 304
  technic of, 314
Cheeks, mucous membrane of, 180
Chemotaxis, 42
Chiasma, optic, 430
Chloride of gold for staining connective-tissue cells, 25
Choledochus ductus, 240
Choriocapillaris, 419
Chorion, 308
Chorionic villi, 309
Chorioid, the, 419
  choriocapillaris of, 419
  ciliary body of, 420
  fissure, 436
  Haller's layer of, 419
  iris, 422
  lamina citrea, 419
    suprachorioidea, 419
  perichorioidal lymph spaces of, 419
Chorioid, plexus, 384, 385
  tapetum cellulosum of, 419
    fibrosum of, 419
  venæ vorticosæ of, 419
  vitreous membrane of, 420
Chorioid plexus, 384, 385
Chromatic element of intranuclear network, 40
Chromatin, 40
Chrome-silver method of Golgi, 25
Chromophilic bodies, 108
  significance of, 109
Chromosomes, 44
Chyle vessels, 217
Ciliary artery, 431
  body, 420
    blood-vessels of, 432
    canal of Schlemm, 421
    ligamentum pectinatum, 421
    muscles of, 421
    ora serrata of, 421
    pars ciliaris retinæ, 421
    processes of, 421
    spaces of Fontana, 421
  movement, 42
  muscle, 422
  plexus, 433
  processes, 421
Circulatory system, 121
  blood-vessel system, 121
  development of, 132
  lymph-vessel system, 132
Circumferential lamellæ, 155
Circumvallate papillæ, 184
Clarke's columns, 348, 363, 365
Claudius, cells of, 446
Clava, the, 372
Clearing specimens before mounting, 20
Clefts of Schmidt-Lantermann, 113
Climbing fibres, 404
Clitoris, 312
Closed skein, 45
Clouet's canal, 431
Clove-oil celloidin, 11
Coccygeal glands, 134
  segments of spinal cord, 344
Cochlea, 442
  bony spiral lamina of, 442
  cupola of, 442
  hamulus of, 442

Cochlea, helicotrema, 443
  membranous spiral ligament of, 442
  modiolus of, 442
  scala tympani, 443
    vestibuli, 443
  spiral ligament of, 442
Cochlear duct, 443
  basilar membrane of, 444
  crista basilaris, 444
  external spiral sulcus, 444
  membrane of Reissner, 444
  organ of Corti, 445
  spiral prominence of, 444
  stria vascularis, 444
  zona pectinata, 445
    tecta, 445
Cœlom, 133
Cohnheim's field, 98
Collaterals, 110
  technic of, 360
Colloid, 255, 414
Colostrum corpuscles, 334
Column cells, 358
  hecateromeric, 358
  heteromeric, 358
  tautomeric, 358
  technic of, 360
Column of Burdach, 350, 374, 376
  of Goll, 350, 374, 376
Columnæ rectales, 214
Columns of Bertini, 260
  of spinal cord, 346, 348, 350, 356, 357
Comma tract of Schultze, 368
Commissural fibres, 409
Compound tactile cells, 352
Conduction path, 362
  cortico-spino-peripheral, 362
  cortico-spino-peripheral motor, 367
  sensory, 365, 383
Cone association neurones, 429
  fibres, 425
  -visual cell, 425
Cones, layer of rods and, 425
Conjunctiva, 434
  end bulbs of, 353
Connective tissue, 67
  adipose or fat, 79
  areolar, 71
Connective tissue, basement substance of, 71
  bone, 86
  canaliculi of, 68
  cartilage, 83
  cells of, 68
  characteristics of, 67
  chlorid-of-gold method for demonstrating cells of, 25
  classification of, 67
  elastic, 72
  embryonal, 75
  fibres of, 69
    elastic, 69
    fibrillated, 69
    reticular, 69
    white, 69
    yellow, 69
  fibrillar, 68
  formed, 71
  histogenesis of, 67
  interalveolar, 252
  intercellular substance of, 69
  intrafascicular, 172, 343
  lacunæ of, 68
  lymphatic, 79
  loose, 71
  Mallory's stain for, 26
  mucous, 75
  neuroglia, 88
  periglandular, 331
  reticular, 77
  retinaculæ cutis, 317
  staining cells of, 25
  technic for, 74, 77, 79, 83
  theories of development of fibres of, 72
Constrictions of Ranvier, 113
Corium, 315; see *Derma*
Cornea, the, 416
  anterior elastic membrane of, 417
  corneal corpuscles of, 418
  endothelium of Descemet of, 418
  epithelium of, 417
  layers of, 416
  membrane of Bowman of, 417
    of Descemet of, 418
  perforating or arcuate fibres of, 418
  posterior elastic membrane of, 418
  substantia propria of, 418

Corneal corpuscles, 418
Cornua, 346
Corona radiata, 295, 400, 409
Corpora amylacea, 287
  cavernosa, 288
  lutea of pregnancy, 298
    spuria, 299
    vera, 298
  quadrigemina, 366, 395, 400
    anterior, 395, 400
    development of, 337
    posterior, 395, 400
Corpus albicans, 298
  callosum, 409
  hæmorrhagicum, 297
  Highmori, or mediastinum testis, 274
  luteum, 297
    theory of, 33, 299
  quadrigeminum, anterior, 366
  spongiosum, 288
  striatum, development of, 337
Corpuscles, blood, 89
  colostrum, 334
  corneal, 418
  crescentic, 387
  Golgi-Mazzoni, 329
  of Grandry, 352
  of Meissner, 290, 329, 353
  of Merkel, 352
  Pacinian, 354
  Ruffini, 329
  tactile, 329, 330, 352
  Vater-Pacinian, 329
  Wagner, 329
Cortex cerebelli, 401; see also *Cerebellum*
Cortex cerebri, 406; see also *Cerebrum*
  association fibres of, 409
  barren or molecular layer of, 407
  cells of Betz, 408
    of Cajal, 407
    of Golgi, Type II., 408
    of Martinotti, 408
  commissural fibres, 409
  corona radiata of, 409
  deep tangential fibres of, 408
  layer of polymorphous cells, 407, 409
    of pyramidal cells of, 407
  projection fibres, 409
Cortex cerebri, superficial tangential fibres of, 407
Cortical labyrinths, 260
  pyramids, 260; see also *Kidney*
Cortico-spinal motor neurone system, 367
  -spino-peripheral conduction path, 362
  -spino-peripheral motor conduction path, 367
Corti's arches, 446
  ganglion, 387
  organ, 445; see also *Organ of Corti*
  tunnel, 446
Cotyledons, 309
Cowper's glands, 288
  structure of, 288
  technic of, 288
Cox-Golgi method of staining, 30
Cranial nerves, 373; see also *Nerves, cranial*
Crenation, 90
Crescentic corpuscles, 287
Crescents of Gianuzzi, 182, 223, 244
Crista acustica, 442
  basilaris, 444
Crossed pyramidal tracts, 366, 374, 375
Crura cerebri, 400
Crusta, 39, 395, 396, 398
  fibres of, 396
  pyramid of, 396
Crypt of Lieberkühn, 207
Cumulus oöphorus, 295
Cupola, 442
Cupula, 442
Cuticle, 317; see *Epidermis*
Cuticula, 39
  dentis, 190
Cuticular membrane, 58, 193, 205
Cystic duct, 237
Cytoplasm, 38
  of nerve cells, 107
Cytoreticulum, 38

DAUGHTER cells, 46
  chromosomes, 45
  stars, 45
Decalcifying, 9
  fluids, 9

Decidua basalis, 307
  capsularis, 307
  graviditatis, 307
  menstrualis, 306
  placentalis subchorialis, 310
  reflexa, 307
  serotina, 307
  vera, 307
Decidual cells, 307
Decolorizing fluid for Weigert's hæmatoxylin, 28
Decussation of fillet, 378, 381
  optic, 430
  of Forel, 399
  of Meynert, 399
  of pyramids, 375, 377
  sensory, 376, 378, 381
Dehiscent glands, 177
Deiter's cells, 445
  nucleus, 367, 387
    descending tract from, 367, 389
Delafield's hæmatoxylin, 182
Dendrites, the, 105, 110
Dental canals, 188, 193
  germ, 191
  papilla, 191
  periosteum, 191
Dental ridge, 191
  sac, 191
  sheath, Neumann's, 189
Dentate nucleus, 405
Dentinal fibres, 188
  pulp, 187
Dentine, 189
Derma, or *corium*, 315
  corpuscles of Meissner, 353
  papillæ, compound, 316
    nerve, 316
    simple, 316
    vascular, 316
  pars papillaris, 316
    reticularis, 315
  pigmentation of, 319
Descemet, endothelium of, 418
  membrane of, 418
Descending fibre tracts of the spinal cord, 366; see *Fibre tracts of spinal cord* (*descending*)
Deutoplasm, 39
Diapedesis, 92
Diarthrosis, 169
Diaster, 46, 47
Digestive system, 179
  alimentary tract of, 179
  development of, 238
  endgut, 210
  foregut, 195
  gall bladder, 237
  headgut, 180
  larger glands of, 221
  liver, 231
  midgut, 204
  mouth, 180
  pancreas, 225
  salivary glands, 221
Direct cerebellar tract, 365, 374, 377, 380
  pyramidal tract, 366
Discus proligerus, 295
Dissociation of tissue elements, 4
Distal convoluted tubule, 263
Dogiel's end plates, 433
  theory of structure of spinal ganglion, 340
Dorsal accessory olivary nucleus, 382, 384
  gray commissure, 347
  segments of spinal cord, 344
Dorso-lateral ascending tract, 365
  spino-cerebellar fasciculus, 365
Duct systems of glands, 177
Ducts, aberrans Halleri, 283
  alveolar, 249
  Bartholini's, 223
  Bellini's, 261
  choledochus, 240
  cochlear, 443
  common, 237
    excretory, of glands, 177
  cystic, 237
  endolymphatic, 440
  ejaculatory, 282
  Gärtner's, 300
  hepatic, 233, 237
  Müllerian, 287, 314
  nasal, 434
  of sweat glands, 319
  oviduct, 301
  pancreatic, 226
  pronephritic, 313
  reuniens, 440

Ducts, Santorini's, 226, 240
  secondary pancreatic, 226
  seminal, 280
  Stenoni's, 222
  utriculo-saccular, 440
  vas deferens, 281
  vasa efferentia, 280
  Wharton's, 223
  Wirsung's, 226
  Wolffian, 313
Dura mater, 338
  blood-vessels of, 339
  technic of, 339
Dyes, aniline, 16
  nuclear, 14
  plasma, 17

EAR, external, 437
    auricle, 437
    blood-vessels of, 438
    ceruminous glands of, 437
    ear drum, 438
    external auditory canal, 437
    lymphatics of, 438
    nerves of, 438
    pinna, 437
    tympanic membrane, 438
  internal, 439
    ampulla, 440
    blood-vessels of, 447
    canalis communis, 440
    cochlea, 443
    ducts of, 440
    ductus reuniens, 440
    endolymph of, 439
    endolymphatic duct, 440
      sac, 440
    fenestra ovalis, 439
      rotunda, 440
    lymphatics of, 447
    membrana tectoria, 447
    membranous labyrinth, 439, 440
    nerves of, 447
    organ of Corti, 445
    osseous labyrinth of, 439
    perilymph of, 439
    saccule, 441
    semicircular canals, 440
    utricle, 441
    utriculo-saccular duct, 440
Ear, internal, vestibule, 439, 440
  middle, or tympanum, 438
    fenestra rotunda of, 438
    ossicles of, 439
Ear drum, 438
  wax, 437
Ebner's glands, 185
  hydrochloric-salt solution, 9
Ectoderm, 49
  tissue, derivations from, 55, 331
Ectodermic cells, 350
Efferent fibre system of cord, 366
  peripheral nerves, 342
Egg nest, 294
Ehrlich, Greek-letter granules of, 91
Ejaculatory ducts, 282
Elastic cartilage, 85
  tissue, 72
    Weigert's stain for, 25
Elastin, 70
Eleidin, 318
Ellipsoid of Krause, 425
Ellipsoids of spleen, 148
Embedding, 10
  celloidin, 10
  paraffin, 10
Embryonal tissue, 75
Enamel, 187, 190, 193
  cells, 192
  fibres, 190, 193
  organ, 191, 192, 193
  prisms, 190
    lines of Retzius of, 190
End bulbs, 353
  of Krause, 186, 330
Endgut, 210
  large intestine, 210
  rectum, 214
  vermiform appendix, 212
Endocardium, 130
Endochondral ossification, 163
Endolymph, 439
Endolymphatic sac, 440
Endomysium, 172
Endoneurium, 343
Endoplasm, 39
Endosteum, 159
Endothelial tube, 132
Endothelium, 64
Entoderm, 50
  tissue derivations from, 55

Eosin, 17
    -glycerin, 19
    -hæmatoxylin stain, 17
Eosinophile granules, 91
Ependymal cells, 337
Epiblast, 49
Epicardium, 131
Epicranium, 162
Epidermis (or cuticle), 317
    corneum cells of, 318
    eleidin, 318
    keratin, 318
    keratohyaline granules, 318
    mitosis of cells of, 319
    pareleidin, 319
    pigmentation of, 319
    prickle cells of, 318
    stratum corneum of, 318
        cylindricum of, 317
        germinativum of, 317
        granulosum of, 318
        lucidum of, 318
        Malpighii of, 317
        mucosum of, 317
        spinosum of, 318
Epididymis, 275
    cells of, 280
    vas epididymis of, 281
    vasa efferentia of, 280
Epidural space, 338
Epimysium, 171
Epineurium, 343
Epiphyseal cartilage, 168
Epithelium, 57
    basal membrane of, 57
    ciliated, 63
    classification of, 58
    cuboidal, 59
    cuticular membrane of, 58
    general characteristics of, 57
    germinal, 292
    glandular, 64
    histogenesis of, 57
    intercellular bridges of, 57
    lens, 430
    membrana propria of, 57
    neuro-, 64
    pigmented, 64
    pseudo-stratified, 60
    replacing cells of, 60
    respiratory, 251
Epithelium, simple, 58
        columnar, 58
        pseudo-stratified, 60
        squamous, 58
    stratified, 60
        columnar, 61
        squamous, 60
        transitional, 62
    surface, of mucous membranes, 178
    syncytium, 309
    tactile cells of, 352
    technic of, 65
Eponychium, 322
Epoöphoron, 300
Erectile tissue, 289
Erythroblasts, 157
Erythrocytes, 89
Erythrosin, 17
Eustachian tube, 439
Excretory substances in cells, 39
Exoplasm, 39
External arcuate fibres, 379, 381, 384 385, 388
External ear, 437; see *Ear, external*
Eye, the, 416; see *Organ of vision*
Eye, pineal, 415
Eyeball (or bulbus oculi), 416
    blood-vessels of, 431
    chorioid of, 419
    ciliary body of, 420
    cornea of, 416
    iris of, 422
    lymphatics of, 432
    nerves of, 433
    retina of, 424
    sclera of, 416
    technic of, 436
Eyelashes, 434
Eyelid, the, 434
    blood-vessels of, 434
    conjunctiva of, 434
    epidermis of, 434
    glands of, 434
        of Mall, 434
    lymphatics of, 435
    Meibomiam glands of, 434
    muscles of, 434
    nerves of, 435
    tarsus of, 434
    technic of, 437

Facial nerve, 388
Fallopian tube, 301; see *Oviduct*
  ampulla of, 301
  blood-vessels of, 302
  coats of, 301
  development of, 314
  fimbriated extremity of, 301
  isthmus of, 301
  lymphatics of, 302
  nerves of, 302
  ovarian extremity, 301
  technic of, 302
False corpora lutea, 298
Fascicles of muscle, 171
  of nerves, 343
Fasciculi, 362
Fasciculus, of Thomas, 368
  posterior longitudinal, 376, 379, 381, 384, 385, 390, 393, 397
  solitarius, 378, 381, 384, 385
  ventrolateralis superficialis, 365
Fat, absorption of, 220
    technic of, 221
  blood supply of, 82
  development of, 81
  gobules, 220
  osmic-acid stain for, 26
  subcutaneous, 317
  tissue, 79
    technic of, 83
Fat-droplets in cells, 39
Fat-lobules, 81
Fauces, mucous membrane of, 180
Female genital organs, 292
  pronucleus, 47
Fenestra ovalis, 439
  rotunda, 439
Ferrein, pyramids of, 260
Fertilization of the ovum, 46
Fibre baskets, 427
  systems, 362
    efferent, 366
    main motor, 366
    short, 358, 368
  tracts of spinal cord, 358, 362
    technic of, 371
  tracts of cord (ascending), 364
    antero-lateral, 365
    direct cerebellar, 358, 365
    Gowers', 358, 365
    posterior columns, 364
Fibre tracts of cord (ascending),
    spino-tectal, 366
    tract of Flechsig, 365
    tractus spino-cerebellaris centralis, 365
    tractus spino-cerebellaris dorsalis, 365
  tracts (descending), 366
    anterior marginal bundle of Loewenthal, 367
    antero-lateral, 367
    comma tract of Schultze, 368
    crossed pyramidal, 366
    descending tract from Deiter's nucleus, 367
    descending tract from the vestibular nuclei of both sides, 367
    direct pyramidal, 366
    Helweg's, 367
    origin of tracts, 356
    oval bundle of Flechsig, 367
    pyramidal, 366
    quadrigemino-spinal, 367
    rubeo-spinal, 367
    septo-marginal, 368
    tract of Türck, 366
    tractus cortico-spinalis, 366
    tractus reticulo-spinalis, 368
    Von Monakow's tract, 367
  tracts (fundamental, or ground bundles), 368
    descending paths from higher centres, 370
    direct ascending paths to higher centres, 370
    direct reflex path, 369
    indirect ascending paths to higher centres, 370
    indirect reflex path, 369
  technic for, 371
Fibres, 453
  calcified, 161
  cone, 425
  dentinal, 188
  development of connective-tissue, 72
  enamel, 190
  genioglossal, 183
  intergeminal, 453
  intrageminal, 453

Fibres, lens, 430
  Mallory's method of staining connective-tissue, 26
  mantle, 44
  Müller's, 426
  nerve, 105; see also *Nerve fibres*
    medullated, 111
    non-medullated, 112
  neuroglia, 115
  of areolar tissue, 71
  of bone, 87
  of developing muscle, 103
  of formed connective tissue, 71
  of Remak, 112
  of Sharpey, 156
  olfactory, layer of, 451
  perforating or arcuate, of cornea, 418
    of Sharpey, 156
  picro-acid-fuchsin for staining connective-tissue, 18
  rod, 425
  tendon, 71, 172
  tunnel, 448
  voluntary muscle, 96, 99
  Weigert's method for staining elastic, 25
    method for staining nerve, 26
  white or fibrillated, 69
  yellow or elastic, 69, 72
Fibrillar connective tissue, 68
Fibroblasts, 72
Fibrous cartilage, 85
Filar mass, 38
Filiform papillæ, 184
Fillet, the, 372, 378, 381, 385, 390, 393
Filum terminale, 344
Fissure, anterior median, 45
  chorioid, 436
  of Rolando, 366
Fixation, 5
  by injection,
  in toto, 5
Fixatives, 5
Flechsig, oval bundle of, 367
  tract of, 365
Flemming's fluid, 6
Foam theory of protoplasm structure, 38
Fœtal cells, 252
  structures, of genital system, 282, 312
Fœtal structures, appendix epididymidis, 283
    testis, 283
    ductus aberrans Halleri, 283
    organ of Giraldès, 282
    paradidymis, 282
Foliate papillæ, 452
Follicle, Graafian, 293
Follicles, agminated, 208
  solitary, 202, 208, 211
Follicular cavity or antrum, 295
Folliculi linguales, 145; see *Tonsils*
Fontana, spaces of, 422
Foramina nervosa, 448
Forebrain, 336
Foregut, the, 195
  general structure of walls of the gastro-intestinal canal, 196
  œsophagus, 195
  stomach, 198
Forel, decussation of, 398
Formalin, as a fixative, 5
  for macerating, 4
  -bichromate method, 30
Formalin-Müller's fluid, 6
Fossa navicularis, 291
Fourth ventricle, 381, 382, 384, 385, 390, 393
Fovea centralis, 427
Fraenkel's theory of corpus luteum, 299
Fuchsin, 16
Function of cells, 41
Fundamental columns of spinal cord, 368
  descending paths from higher centres, 370
  direct ascending paths to higher centres, 370
  direct reflex paths, 369
  indirect ascending paths to higher centres, 370
  indirect reflex path, 369
Fundus glands, 199
Fungiform papillæ, 184
Funiculus cuneatus, 374
  gracilis, 374
  teres, nucleus of, 385

GAGE's hæmatoxylin, 14
Gall-bladder, 237
  coats of, 237

Gall-bladder, mucous membrane of, 237
  rugæ of, 237
Galvanotaxis, 42
Ganglia, 339
  cerebral, 340
  Gasserian, 393
  spinal, 340
  spiral, 387, 448
  structure of, 340
  sympathetic, 341
Ganglion cells, 340
  classification of, 340
  of Corti, 387
  of Scarpa, 388
Gasserian ganglion, 393
Gastric crypts, 198
  glands, 198, 199
  pits, 198
Gastro-intestinal canal, general structure of the walls of, 196
Gelatin, carmine for injecting, 22
  Prussian blue, for injecting, 22
Gelatinous marrow, 158
  substance of Rolando, 346, 347
Genio-glossal fibres, 183
Genital ridge, 314
  system, 274; see also *Reproductive system*
    development of, 312
    rudimentary structures connected with development of, 282, 300, 312
Gentian violet, 16
Genu, or bend, 400
Germ hill, 295
  layers, 49
    tissues derived from, 55
Germinal spot, 296
  vesicle, 46
Gianuzzi, crescents of, 182, 223, 244
Giraldès, organ of, 282
Gland cells, 174
Glands, 174
  acini of, 177
  adrenal, 270
  alveolar, 175, 176
    compound, 177
    simple, 177
  alveoli of, 175, 177
  axillary, 334
Glands, Bartholini's, 312
  Bowman's, 242
  Brunner's, 209
  cardiac, 200
  carotid, 134
  cells of, 174
  ceruminous, 437
  classification of, 175
  coccygeal, 134
  compound, 175
  corpus luteum, 297
  Cowper's, 288
  epithelium of, 174
  excretory ducts of, 174
  dehiscent, 177
  ductless, 177
  Ebner's, 185
  fundus of, 199
  gastric, 198
  general structure of, 174
  hæmolymph, 139
  internal secreting, 177
  interstitial tissue of, 175
  intraepithelial, 280
  kidney, 258
  lacrymal, 433
  large, of digestive system, 221
  Lieberkühn's, 207
  lingual, 182
  Littré's, 290, 291
  liver, 231
  lobes of, 175
  lobules, 175
  lymph, 134
  Mall's, 434
  mammary, 331
  Meibomian, 177, 434
  mixed, 181
  mucous, 181
  of the oral mucosa, 181
  ovary, 292
  pancreas, 225
  parathyroids, 256
  parenchyma of, 175
  parotid, 222
  penis, 288
  peptic, 199
  pineal, 415
  prostate, 286
  pyloric, 191, 201
  racemose, 175

Glands, reticular, 177
  saccular, 175
  salivary, 221
  sebaceous, 319, 326
  secreting portions of, 174
  serous, 181
  simple, 175
  spleen, 146
  sublingual, 223
  submaxillary, 223
  suprarenal, 270
  sweat, 319
  tarsal, 434
  thymus, 142
  thyroid, 255
  tonsils, 144
  tubular, 175
    compound, 177, 258
    simple branched, 176, 288
    simple coiled, 176
    simple straight, 176
  Tyson's, 290
  uterine, 306
Glandulæ sudoriparæ, 319
  vestibulares majores, 312
    minores, 312
Glandular epithelium, 174
Glans penis, 290
Glenoid ligaments, 169
Glisson, capsule of, 231
Globus major, 275
  minor, 275
Glomerulus of kidney, 260
  blood-vessels of, 266
  olfactory, 451
Glosso-pharyngeal nerve, 379
Glycerin for mounting specimens, 19
Glycogen granules, 235
Gold chlorid for staining connective-tissue cells, 25
Golgi bichlorid method for nerve tissue, 30
  cell, Type I., 110
  cell, Type II., 110, 408
  method, bichlorid, 30
    chrome-silver, 25
    Cox modification of, 30
    formalin bichromate, 30
    mixed, 30
    rapid, 29
    silver, for nerve tissue, 29
Golgi method, slow, for nerve tissue, 29
Golgi-Mazzoni corpuscles, 329
Golgi net, 115
Golgi, organs of, 354
Goll, column of, 350, 364
Gowers' tract, 365, 376, 380, 382, 385, 389
Graafian follicles, 293
  antrum of, 294
  corona radiata, 295
  cumulus oöphorus, 295
  development of, 293
  discus proligerus, 295
  egg nest, 294
  epithelium of, 293
  follicular cavity of, 295
  germ hill of, 295
  liquor folliculi, 295
  ovum of, 292
  Pflüger's egg cords, 294
  primitive Graafian follicle, 295
  primitive ova, 293
  rupture of, 297
  stratum granulosum, 295
  technic of, 303
  theca folliculi, 295
  tunica fibrosa, 295
  tunica vasculosa, 296
Graded alcohols, 7
Grandry, corpuscles of, 352
Gray matter, 344
Greek-letter granules of Ehrlich, 91
Ground bundles of spinal cord, 368
Gums, mucous membrane of, 180
Gustatory canal, 452

HÆMALUM, Mayer's, 15
Hæmatin, 15
Hæmatoidin, crystals of, 298
Hæmatoxylin, 14
  and eosin, for staining double, 17
  and picro-acid fuchsin, 18
  Delafield's, 15
  Gage's, 14
  Heidenhain's, 15
  Mallory's stain, 26
  Weigert's, 16, 27
Hæmoglobin, 89
Hæmolymph nodes, 139
  blood sinuses of, 139
  blood-vessels of, 141

Hæmolymph nodes, cells of, 140
  marrow-lymph, 140
  spleno-lymph, 140
  technic of, 141
Hair, 322
  arrector pili muscle of the, 326
  blood-vessels of, 329
  bulb, 322
  cells of the, 323, 327
  connective-tissue follicle of, 324
  cortex of, 323
  cortical fibres of, 323
  cuticle of, 323, 324
    Henle's layer of, 324
    Huxley's layer of, 324
    prickle cells of, 324
    root sheath of, 324
  development of the, 330
  excretory duct of, 327
  eyelashes, 434
  follicle, 323
  germ, 328
  growth of the, 328
  inner root sheath, 324
  lanugo, the, 323
  layers of the, 323, 324
  lymphatics, 329
  medulla of, 323
  nerves of, 330
  outer root sheath, 324
  papilla of, 322
  prickle cells, 324
  root of the, 325
  root sheath, 324
  sebaceous glands of the, 326
  sebum of the, 327
  shaft of, 322
  shedding of the, 327
  stratum cylindricum, 324
  technic of the, 328
Hair cells, 446
Halleri, ductus aberrans, 283
Haller's layer, 419
Hamulus, 442
Hardening, 7
  celloidin-embedded specimens, 10
  clove-oil celloidin-embedded specimens, 11
Hassal's corpuscles, 143
Haversian canals, 154
Haversian canals, development of, 166
  fringes, 177
  lamellæ, 154
  spaces, 166
  systems, 154
    development of, 167
Headgut, 180
  mouth, 180
  pharynx, 194
  teeth, 187
  tongue, 183
Hearing, organ of, 437; see *Ear*
Heart, 129
  annuli fibrosi, 130
  auricular muscle, 130
  auriculo-ventricular ring, 130
  blood-vessels of, 131
  development of, 132
  endocardium of, 130
  epicardium of, 131
  lymphatics of, 131
  muscle, 100; see *Involuntary striated muscle*
  myocardium of, 130
  nerves of, 131, 354
  technic of, 131
  valves of, 131
Hecateromeres, 358
Heidenhain, concerning the kidney, 265
  demilunes of, 182
Heidenhain's hæmatoxylin, 15
Heisterian valve, 237
Helicotrema, 443
Heller's plexus, 215
Helweg, tract of, 367, 374
Henle's layer, 324
  loop, 260, 263
  sheath, 113, 343
Hensen's cells, 446
  line, 97
Hepatic artery, 233
  cells, 234
  cords, 236
  duct, 233, 237
Heteromeres, 358
Hilum of liver, 231
  of kidney, 258
Hindbrain, 336
His, marginal veil of, 337
  spongioblasts of, 337

Histogenesis, 55
Horizontal cells, 426
Howship's lacunæ, 163
Huxley's layer, 324
Hyaline cartilage, 84
Hyaloid canal, 431
    membrane, 431
Hyaloplasm, 38
Hydatid of Morgagni, 314
Hydrochloric acid for decalcifying, 9
Hyoglossal fibres, 183
Hypoblast, 50
Hypoglossal nerve, 379
Hyponychium, 322
Hypophysis cerebri, 412; see also *Pituitary body*

Implantation cone, 110
Incisures of Schmidt-Lantermann, 113
Inferior brachium quadrigeminum, 400
    cerebellar peduncle, 400; see *Restiform body*
Infundibula, 249
Injecting, 22
    apparatus, 22
    double, 23
    separate organs, 23
    whole animals, 23
Inner bulb, 354
Innervation of muscles, 357
Intercellular bridges of epithelium, 57
    bridges of muscle tissue, 96
    substance, 56
        of connective tissue, 69
        silver-nitrate method of staining, 25
Interfilar mass, 38
Intermediate cartilage, 168
    lamellæ, 155
Intermedio-lateral column, 357
Internal arcuate fibres, 378, 381, 383, 385, 390, 393
Internode, 113
Interstitial lamellæ, 155
Intestine; see *Small intestine*, 204; *Large intestine*, 210
Intestines, development of, 239
Intima, 124
    of arteries, 124
    of lymph vessels, 133
Intima of veins, 127
Intracartilaginous ossification, 163
Intrafascicular connective tissue, 172, 243
Intramembranous ossification, 161
Intranuclear network of typical cell, 40
Involuntary striated muscle (heart), 100
        Cohnheim's field, 101
        McCallum's view's, 100
        membrane of Krause, 101
        muscle columns of Kölliker, 101
        nerves of, 354
        sarcoplasm of, 101
        technic of, 104
    smooth muscle, 95
        intercellular bridges of, 96
Iodine, to remove mercury, 8
Iris, the, 422
    greater arterial circle, 432
    layers of the, 422
    lesser arterial circle, 432
    muscles of the, 423
    vitreous membrane, 424
Irritability of cells, 41
Islands, blood, 92, 132
    of Langerhans, 229
Isolated smooth muscle cells, 95
    technic of, 104
Isotrophic line, 97
    substance, 97
Isthmus of thyroid gland, 255
Iter, 395, 397

Jenner's blood stain, 26
Joint capsule, 169
Joints, 169; see *Articulations*

Karyokinesis, 43
Karyolysis, 318
Karyoplasm, 40
Karyosomes, 40
Katabolism, 41
Keratin, 318
Keratohyaline granules, 318
Kidney, the, 258
    arteriæ arciformes, 266
    blood-vessels of, 265
    Bowman's capsule of, 260
    columns of Bertini, 260
    convoluted tubules of, 263

Kidney, cortex of, 258
  cortical pyramids of, 260
  development of, 312
  duct of Bellini, 261
  glomerulus of, 260
  Henle's loop, 263
  interlobar arteries of, 265
  hilum of, 258
  labyrinths of, 260
  lobulated, 258
  lymphatics of, 267
  main excretory duct of, 268
  Malpighian body, 262
    pyramid, 260
  medulla of, 258
  medullary (or Malpighian) pyramid, 260
    rays, 260
  nerves of, 268
  papillæ of, 259
  pelvis of, 259
  pyramids of Ferrein, 260
  renal artery, 258
    corpuscle, 260
    vein, 258
  renculi or lobes of, 258
  septa renis, 260
  single lobe of, 258
  technic of, 273
  uriniferous tubule, 260; see also *Uriniferous tubule*
Kidney-pelvis, 268
  blood-vessels of, 268
  calyces of, 268
  cells of, 268
  coats of, 268
  development of, 313
  lymphatics of, 269
  nerves of, 269
  technic of, 273
Kölliker, muscle columns of, 98
Krause, ellipsoid, 425
  end-bulbs, 186, 290, 330, 433
  line of, 97
Kupffer, cells of, 237

LABIA minora, sebaceous glands of, 319
Labyrinth, membranous, 439
  osseous, 439
Lacrymal apparatus, 433
    nasal duct of, 434
Lacrymal canal, 433
  gland, 433
    blood-vessels of, 434
    excretory ducts of, 433
    lymphatics of, 434
    nerves of, 434
  sac, 433
Lacteals, 220
Lacunæ, 83, 87
  origin of, 162
Lamellæ, circumferential, 155
  Haversian, 154
  intermediate, 155
  interstitial, 155
Lamina, bony spiral, 442
  citrea, 419
  cribrosa, 416, 428
  fusca, 416
  reticularis, 447
  suprachorioidea, 419
Laminæ of cerebellum, 401
Langerhans, cell islands of, 229
  centro-acinar cells of, 227
  centro-tubular cells of, 227
Lantanin, 40
Lanugo, 323
Large intestine, 210
  Auerbach's plexus, 211
  blood-vessels, 215
  coats of, 210
  development of, 239
  gland tubules, 211
  lineæ coli, 211
  lymphatics, 217
  nerves, 217
  plexus of Meissner, 211
  technic of, 220
Larynx, the, 243
  blood-vessels of, 245
  cartilages of, 243
    arytenoid, 243
    cricoid, 243
    epiglottis, 243
    Santorini's, 243
    thyroid, 243
    Wrisburg's, 243
  cells of, 243
  epithelium of, 243
  lymphatics, 246
  nerves, 246
  perichondrium, 243

Larynx, technic, 246
Lateral lemniscus, 391 393, 397, 399
Lemniscus, 378, 381
Lens, 430
  canal of Pettit, 431
  capsule, 430
  epithelium, 430
  hyaloid membrane, 431
  suspensory ligament, 430
  zonula ciliaris, 430
  zonule of Zinn, 430
Leopold, concerning pregnant uterus, 307
Leucocytes, 90
  migratory, 206
  of milk, 334
Lieberkühn, crypts of, 207
  glands of, 207
Ligament, glenoid, 169
  membranous spiral, 442
  spiral, 442
  structure of, 72
  suspensory, 430
Ligamentum pectinatum, 422
Lineæ coli, 211
Lines of Retzius, 190
Lingual glands, 182
  tonsils, 145
Lingualis, genio-glossus fibres of, 183
  hyoglossus fibres of, 183
  longitudinal fibres of, 183
  styloglossus fibres of, 183
  transverse fibres of, 183
Linin, 40
Liquor folliculi, 295
Lissauer, zone of, 347, 364
Littré, glands of, 291
Liver, the, 231
  blood supply of, 233
  capillary network, 233
  capsule of Glisson, 231
  cells of, 234
    of Kupffer, 237
  central vein of, 233
  connective tissue, 231
  cords of liver cells, 236
  development of, 240
  glycogen granules, 235
  Heisterian valve, 237
  hepatic artery, 233
    cords, 236
Liver, hepatic duct, 233
  hilum, 231
  intralobular secreting tubules, 234
  lobules, 232
  lymphatics, 237
  main ducts, 237
  nerves, 237
  portal canal, 234
    vein, 233
  radiate fibres, 237
  reticulum, 237
  septa, 232
  sublobular vein, 233
  technic of, 238
  tubule of, 236
Lobulated kidney, 258
Loewenthal, anterior marginal bundle of, 367
Loop of Henle, 260, 263
Lumbar enlargement of spinal cord, 344
  segments of cord, 344
Lungs, the, 248
  air cells, 250
    sacs, 250
    vesicles, 249
  alveolar ducts, 249
  alveoli of, 250
  atria of, 250
  blood-vessels of, 253
  capsule of, 248
  cells of, 251
  development of, 254
  epithelium of, 251
  infundibula of, 249
  interalveolar connective tissue of, 252
  lobes of, 248
  lobules of, 248
  lymphatics of, 254
  Miller's subdivisions, 249
  nerves of, 254
  pulmonary lobule, 253
    pleura of, 248
  respiratory bronchi, 249
    epithelium, 251
  technic of, 255
  terminal bronchi of, 249, 251
  vestibula of, 250
Lunula, 322
Lutein cells, 297

Luteum, corpus, 297
Lymph capillaries, 133
  glands, 135; see *Lymph nodes*
  nodes, 135
    blood-vessels of, 138
    capsule of, 135
    connective tissue of, 135
    cords of, 136
    cortex of, 136
    germinal centre of, 136
    lymphatics of, 138
    medulla of, 136
    nerves of, 138
    nodules of, 136
    reticular connective tissue of, 137
    sinuses of, 136
    technic of, 138
  nodule, 79, 136
    germinal centre of, 136
  paths of the eye, 432
  spaces, 133
    pericellular, 133
  vessel system, 132
    development of, 133
    lymph capillaries, 133
    lymph spaces, 133
    technic of, 133
  vessels, coats of, 133
    structure of, 132
Lymphatic organs, 135
    hæmolymph nodes, 139
    lymph nodes, 135
    spleen, 146
    technic of, 138, 141, 143
    thymus, 142
    tonsils, 144
  tissue, 79
Lymphocytes, 90
Lymphoid cells, 79
  tissue, 137

MACERATING fluids, 4
Maceration, 4
Macula acustica, 441
  lutea, 427
    fovea centralis, 427
Male genital organs, 274
Mall, glands of, 434
  concerning splenic pulp, 149
Mallory's hæmatoxylin stain, 26
Malpighian bodies, 146
  body of kidney, 260, 262
    development of, 262, 313
  pyramid, 260; see *Kidney*
Mammary gland, 331
  active, 332
  alveoli of active, 332
  ampulla of, 332
  blood-vessels of, 334
  cells of, 333
  colostrum corpuscles, 334
  development of, 335
  ducts of, 331
    of nipple, 331
  inactive, 332
  interlobar septa of, 331
  interlobular septa of, 331
  lobular ducts of, 331
  lymphatics of, 334
  milk of, 333
  nerves of, 334
  secretion of, 333
  structure of, 331
  technic of, 335
Mantle fibres, 44
Marchi's solution, 371
Marginal bundle of Loewenthal, 367
Marginal veil of His, 337
Marrow, 156; see *Bone marrow*
  lymph nodes, 140
Martinotti, cells of, 408
Mast cells, 69, 92
Matrix of nail, 320
Maturation, 46
  of ovum, 297
Mayer's hæmalum, 15
McCallum, concerning heart muscle, 101, 103
Media, of arteries, 125
  of lymph vessels, 133
  of veins, 127
Medial column, 357
Median lemniscus, 378, 381, 383, 390
  raphé, 378, 381
  septum, posterior, 345
Mediastinum testis, 274
Medulla oblongata, 371
  accessory olivary nucleus, 378, 381, 385
  accessory olives, 384
  acoustical striæ, 388

Medulla, anterior column of, 374, 376, 380
  ground bundles of, 376
  horns of, 372, 375, 377, 381
  pyramid of, 381, 382, 385, 389
 arciform nucleus of, 378, 381, 384, 385, 388
 ascending tracts of, 372
 central canal of, 375, 377, 381
  gelatinous substance of, 375, 377, 381
  gray matter of, 381
  tegmental tract of, 388, 391, 393
 cerebellar peduncles of, 395
 cerebello-olivary fibres, 382, 383
 chorioid plexus, 384, 385
 clava, 372
 column of Burdach, 374, 376
  of Goll, 374, 376
 compared with spinal cord, 372
 crossed pyramidal tract, 374, 375
 cranial nerves of, 373
 decussation of fillet, 378, 381
  of pyramids, 375, 377
 Deiter's nucleus, 387
  tract, 389
 descending or spinal root of vestibular portion of eighth nerve, 384, 385
  tracts of, 372
   from Deiter's nucleus, 374, 381, 382, 385
   from the vestibular nuclei, 374, 376, 379
 development of, 337
 direct cerebellar tract, 374, 377, 380
 direct pyramidal tract, 375
 dorsal accessory olivary nucleus, 382, 384
  nucleus of ninth cranial nerve, 382, 384, 385
  nucleus of tenth nerve, 382, 384, 385
  root of first cervical nerve, 375
 external arcuate fibres of, 379, 381, 384, 385, 388

Medulla, fillet of, 372, 378, 381, 383, 385, 390, 393
 fourth ventricle of, 381, 382, 384, 385, 390, 393
 funiculus cuneatus, 374
  gracilis, 374
 gelatinous substance of Rolando, 374
 general structure of, 371
 Gowers' tract, 376, 380, 382, 385, 389
 gray matter of, 372
 Helweg's tract, 374
 internal arcuate fibres of, 378, 381, 383, 385, 390, 393
  structure, 372
 lateral column, 374, 376, 380, 382, 385
  fillet, 388
  lemniscus, 391, 393
 medial column, 357
 median lemniscus, 378, 381, 383, 390
  raphé, 381
 nuclei of the floor of the ventricle, 381
  of the thalamus, 383
  of posterior columns, 376, 377, 381
 nucleus, accessory cuneate, 378
  ambiguus, 382, 384, 385
  cuneatus, 377
  gracilis, 377
  of the column of Burdach, 372, 377
  of the column of Goll, 372, 377
  of the fifth spinal nerve, 372
  of funiculus teres, 385
  of origin of eleventh cranial (*spinal-accessory*) nerve, 378
  of origin of twelfth cranial (*hypoglossal*) nerve, 379, 381, 384, 385
  of restiform body, 384
 olivary nucleus, 380, 381, 384, 385
 peduncles of, 395
 pons Varolii, 391, 393
 posterior columns of, 374, 376, 380

Medulla, posterior horns of, 374, 377, 381, 382, 385, 389
longitudinal fasciculus, 376, 379, 381, 384, 385, 390, 393
pyramidal tracts, 374
quadrigemino-spinal tract, 374, 379
restiform body, 379, 380, 381, 384, 385
reticular formation, 375, 377, 381, 383, 385, 389, 393
reticulo-spinal tract, 374
root fibres and nucleus of origin of sixth (*abducens*) cranial nerve, 388, 399
root fibres and nucleus of origin of seventh (*facial*) cranial nerve, 388, 390
fibres and nuclei of eighth (*auditory*) cranial nerve, 385, 386, 390
fibres of ninth (*glosso-pharyngeal*) and tenth (*vagus*) cranial nerves, 379, 382, 384, 385
fibres of eleventh (*spinal-accessory*) cranial nerve, 376, 377, 378
fibres of twelfth (*hypoglossal*) cranial nerve, 379, 381
secondary cochlear tract, 388
vestibular tract, 388
sensory tract for fifth nerve, 381
section through decussation of fillet, 376
through exit of eighth nerve, 385
through exit of root fibres of fifth cranial nerve, 392
through exits of root fibres of sixth and seventh cranial nerves, 388
through lower part of olivary nucleus, 380
through middle of olivary nucleus, 382
through pyramidal decussation, 374
sensory decussation of, 376, 378, 378
Medulla, sensory and motor root fibres of the fifth nerve, 393
solitary fasciculus, 378, 381, 384, 385
spinal (descending) root of fifth cranial nerve, 378, 381, 384, 385, 390, 393
spino-tectal tract, 374, 381, 382, 385, 389
superior olive of, 391, 393
technic of, 374
terminal nucleus of the descending (sensory) root fibres of the fifth nerve, 377
tract of Gowers, 374, 380, 382, 385, 388, 393
of Helweg, 374
of Loewenthal, 374, 381
transverse fibres of pons Varolii, 388
Von Monakow's bundle, 377, 381, 382, 385, 389
Medullary rays, 260
sheath, 110, 113
vellum, anterior, 395
Medullated nerve fibres, Weigert's stain for, 27
Meibomian glands, 177, 434
Meissner, corpuscles of, 290, 329, 353
plexus of, 209, 211, 218, 342
Membrana elastica externa, 125
elastica interna, 124
preformativa, 193
propria, 57
tectoria, 447
Membrane, cuticular, 193
of Bowman, 417
of Descemet, 418
of Krause, 97, 101
of Reissner, 440
peridental, 191
synovial, 170
Membranous cochlea, 443
labyrinth, 439, 440
spiral lamina, 442, 444
ligament, 442
Meninges, 338
Mercuric chlorid as a fixative, 7
Merkel's corpuscles, 352
Mesamœboid cells, 56

Mesencephalic root of fifth (*trigeminus*) cranial nerve, 395, 396, 397
Mesencephalon, 336
Mesenchyme, 56
Mesoblast, 50
Mesoderm, 50
  tissue derivations from, 56
Mesonephros, 313
  derivations from, 283, 301
Mesothelium, 56, 64
Metabolism of cells, 41
Metanephros, 313
Metaphase, 45
Metaplasm, 39
Method of embryology for studying fibre tracts of the cord, 363
  of pathology for studying fibre tracts of the cord, 363
Methyl blue, 16
  green, 16
  violet, 16
Meynert, decussation of, 398, 400
Micron, 13
Microtome, 13
Midbrain, 336, 395
  anterior corpora quadrigemina of, 395, 399, 400
    medullary vellum, 395
  brachia conjunctiva, 397
  cerebral peduncles, 400
  corona radiata, 400
  crura cerebri, 400
  crusta, 395, 396, 398
  fillet, 397, 399
  fourth cranial nerve, 397
    ventricle, 395
  geniculate bodies of, 399
  Gowers' tract of, 397, 398
  inferior brachium quadrigeminum, 400
  internal arcuate fibres, 395
  iter, 395
  lateral lemniscus, 397, 399
  mesencephalic root of fifth nerve, 397
  posterior corpora quadrigemina, 395, 400
    longitudinal fasciculus, 397, 399
  pyramid of, 396
  red nucleus of, 399
Midbrain, reticular formation, 397, 399
  root fibres and nucleus of origin of third (*oculomotor*) cranial nerve, 399
  section through exit of fourth (*pathetic*) cranial nerve, 395
    through exit of third (oculomotor) cranial nerve, 398
  spino-tectal tract, 398
  substantia nigra, 395, 397, 399
  superior cerebellar peduncles of, 397, 399
  tegmentum, 395, 397
  Von Monakow's bundle, 397, 398
Middle ear, 438; see *Ear, middle*
Midgut, 204
  small intestine, 204
Milk, 333
  cells of, 334
  colostrum corpuscles of, 334
Milk teeth, 191, 192
Miller's theory of lung subdivisions, 249
Minot, concerning the pregnant uterus, 307
Miton, 38
Mitosis, 43
  method of demonstrating by Flemming's fluid, 7
Modiolus, 442
Monaster, 45
Mononuclear leucocytes, 90
Morgagni, hyatid of, 314
Motion of cells, 42
Motor cells of anterior horns, 356
Motor end plate, 357
  nuclei, 357
  peripheral nerves, 342
Mounting, 19
  celloidin specimens, 20
  in balsam, 20
  in glycerin, 19
  paraffin sections, 20
Mouth, the, 180
  blood-vessels of, 182
  end bulbs in mucous membrane, 353
  glands of, 181
  lymphatics of, 182

Mouth, mucous membrane of, 180
  nerves of, 182, 353
  technic of, 183
Mucin, 75
Mucous glands, 181
Mucous membranes, 178
  basement membrane of, 178
  end bulbs in, 352
  general structure of, 178
  muscularis, 178
  nerves of, 352
  stroma of, 178
  submucosa of, 178
  surface epithelium, 178
  tactile cells of, 352
    corpuscles of, 352
  tunica propria of, 178
Mucous tissue, 75
Müller, circular muscle of, 422
Müller's fibres, 426
  fluid, 6
Müllerian ducts, 287, 314
Multipolar nerve cells, 106
Muscle, arrector pili, 326
  auricular, 130
  cells, 95
  ciliary, 421, 422
  circular, of Müller, 422
  -columns of Kölliker, 98
  -discs, 97
  fibrillæ, 97
  of sweat glands, 331
  spindles, or neuro-muscular bundles, 354
Muscle-tendon junction, 172
  organs of Golgi in, 354
  peripheral nerve terminations in, 354
Muscle tissue, 95
  classification of, 95
  development of, 102
  heart, 100
    histogenesis, 103
    intercellular bridges of, 96
  involuntary smooth, 95
    striated, 100
  technic of, 103
  voluntary striated, 96
    Cohnheim's fields, 98
    end bulbs of, 354
    Hensen's line, 97
Muscle tissue, voluntary striated, Krause's line, 97
    muscle columns of Kölliker, 98
      discs, 97
      spindles, 354
    nerves of, 354
    Pacinian corpuscles of, 354
    Rollett's theory, 98
    sarcolemma, 96
    technic of, 104
    white and red fibres, 99
Muscles, voluntary striated, 171
  capsule of, 171
  endomysium, 172
  epimysium, 171
  fascicles of, 171
  growth of, 173
  intrafascicular connective tissue of, 172
  perifascicular sheath, 172
  perimysium, 172
Muscular system, 171
  blood-vessels of, 173
  bursæ of, 172
  lymphatics of, 173
  nerves of, 173
  technic of, 173
  tendons of, 72, 172
  tendon sheaths of, 172
  voluntary muscle, 171
Muscularis mucosæ of mucous membranes, 178
Musculature of intestine, 96
Myelin, 113
Myelocytes, 156
Myeloplaxes, 157
Myentericus, plexus, 217
Myoblast, 103, 173
Myocardium, 130
Myotome, 103

NABOTHI, ovula, 305
Nails, the, 320
  cells of the, 322
  development of, 330
  eponychium of, 322
  growth of, 322
  hyponychium, 322
  lunula of, 322
  matrix of, 320
  structure of, 320

- Nails, technic of, 322
- Nail-bed, 320
  - groove, 320
  - wall, 320
- Nares, 241
  - cells of, 242
    - basal, 242
    - olfactory, 242
    - sustentacular, 242
  - development of, 254
  - membrana limitans olfactoria, 242
  - stroma of, 242
  - structure of, 241, 242
    - olfactory region, 241
    - respiratory region, 241
    - vestibular region, 241
  - technic of, 246
  - zone of oval nuclei, 242
    - of round nuclei, 242
- Nasal duct, 434
- Nerve cells, 105; see also *Neurone*
  - amacrine, 426
  - anterior horn, 370
  - basket, 403
  - Betz', 408
  - bipolar, 106, 350
  - brush, 451
  - Cajal's, 407
  - caryochromes, 108
  - column, 350, 357, 369
  - cone-visual, 425
  - ectodermic, 350
  - ependymal, 337
  - extrinsic, 350
  - ganglion, 339, 347
  - glia, 337
  - Golgi, Type I., 110
    - Type II., 110, 350, 356, 408, 451
  - hecateromeric, 358
  - heteromeric, 358
  - horizontal, 426
  - in gray matter of cord, 350
  - intrinsic, 350
  - large granule cells, 402
  - Martinotti's, 408
  - mitral, 451
  - mossy, 115
  - motor, of the anterior horn, 356
  - üller's, 426, 427
- Nerve cells, multipolar, 106, 356, 403
  - neuroblasts, 337
  - neuroglia, 347
  - of motor area of cerebral cortex, 356
  - outside the spinal cord, 350, 356
  - peripheral motor, 369, 370
    - sensory, 369, 370
  - polymorphous, 409
  - Purkinje, 401, 403
  - pyramidal, 407
  - rod-visual, 425
  - root, 350, 356
  - small granule, 402
  - somatochromes, 108
  - spider, 115
  - spinal ganglion, 350
  - sympathetic ganglion, 336, 341
  - tautomeric, 358, 365
  - technic for, 360
  - unipolar, 106
- Nerve endings, 352; see *Peripheral* nerve terminations
  - fibres, 105
    - association, 409
    - climbing, 404
    - commissural, 409
    - cone, 425
    - deep tangential, 408
    - felt works of, 354
    - layer of, of retina, 426
    - medullated, 111
      - of cerebellum, 401
    - motor end plates of, 357
    - non-medullated, 112
    - origin of, of white matter of cord, 350
    - posterior branches of, 350
    - projection, 409
    - rod and cone, 425
    - superficial tangential, 407
  - terminations, 352
    - motor, 351
    - sensory, 352
  - tissue, 105
    - Golgi methods of staining, 29
    - technic for, 116
- Nerves, cranial, 373
  - motor and sensory nuclei of, 373

Nerves, cranial, *third* (oculomotor), 399
    root fibres and nucleus of origin of third, 399
    fourth (pathetic), 397
    root fibres and nucleus of origin of fourth, 397
    fifth (trigeminus), 378, 381, 392, 393
    mesencephalic root of fifth, 395, 396, 397
    sensory and motor root fibres of fifth, 393
    spinal root of fifth, 378, 381
    sixth (abducens), 388
    nucleus of origin of sixth, 388, 390
    root fibres of sixth, 388, 390
    seventh (facial), 388
    nucleus of origin of seventh, 388, 390
    root fibres of seventh, 388, 390
    eighth (auditory), 385, 386, 387
    cochlear branch of eighth, 386, 387
    nuclei of eighth, 386, 387
    root fibres of eighth, 384, 385, 386, 387
    vestibular branch of eighth, 386, 387
    ninth (glosso-pharyngeal), 379, 382
    descending or sensory root fibres of the ninth, 379
    dorsal nucleus of ninth, 382, 384
    motor nucleus of ninth, 382
    root fibres of ninth, 382, 384
    tenth (vagus), 379, 382
    descending or sensory root fibres of tenth, 382, 384
    dorsal nucleus of tenth, 382, 384
    motor nucleus of tenth, 382, 384
    root fibres of tenth, 382, 384
    eleventh (spinal accessory), 378
    nucleus of origin of eleventh, 378
    root fibres of eleventh, 378

Nerves, cranial, *twelfth* (hypoglossal), 379, 381, 384
    nucleus of origin of twelfth, 379, 381, 384, 385
    root of twelfth, 384
    root fibres of twelfth, 379, 381, 384
    terminal nuclei of, 373
  mixed spinal, 351
  peripheral, 342
  spinal, anterior, motor or efferent roots of, 357
    sensory, or afferent portions, 351

Nervous system, the, 336
  anterior cerebral vesicle, 336
    corpora quadrigemina, 337
  cerebral hemispheres, 336
  cerebro-spinal, 336
  corpus striatum, 337
  development of, 336
  ectoderm, 336
  forebrain, 336
  ganglia of, 339
  hindbrain, 336
  medulla oblongata, 337
  mesencephalon, 336
  midbrain, 336
  middle cerebral vesicle, 336
  neural fold, 336
    groove, 336
    tube, 336
  optic thalamus, 337
  pons Varolii, 337
  posterior cerebral vesicle, 336
  prosencephalon, 336
  rhombencephalon, 336
  spinal cord, 337
  sympathetic, 336

Nervous system, *cerebro-spinal*, the, 336
    brain, 336
    cerebellum, 401
    cerebro-spinal axis, 336
    cerebrum, 406
    cranial nerves, 336
    ganglia of, 340
    isthmus, 395
    medulla oblongata, 371
    membranes of brain and cord, 338

Nervous system, *cerebro-spinal*, mesencephalon, 395
    midbrain, 395
    peripheral nerves, 342
    pineal body, 415
    pituitary body (hypophysis cerebri), 414
    pons Varolii, 37
    spinal cord, 336, 344
        nerves, 336
  sympathetic, the, 336
    ganglia, 336, 341
    origin of, 338, 361
    sympathetic nerves, 336
Neumann's dental sheath, 189
Neural fold, 336
  groove, 336
  tube, 336
    cells of, 337
    ependymal cells, 337
    marginal veil of His, 337
    neuroblasts of, 337
    neuroglia cells of, 337
    spongioblasts of His, 337
Neuraxone, 105
Neurilemma, 110, 113
  and axolemma, relation of, 113
Neurite, 105
Neuroblasts, 105, 115, 337
Neuro-epithelium, 64
  amacrine cells, 426
  cone bipolar cells, 426
    visual cells, 425
  horizontal cells, 426
  rod bipolar cells, 425
    visual cells, 425
Neurofibrils, 107
Neuroglia, 88, 115
  mossy cells of, 115, 337
  Müller's cells, 427
  neuroblasts of, 105, 115, 337
  spider cells, 115, 337
  spongioblasts of, 115, 337
Neurokeratin network, 113
Neuromuscular bundles, 354
Neurone, the, 105
  axone of, 105
  cell body of, 105
  chromophilic bodies, 107, 108
  contact theory of, 115
  continuity theory of, 115
Neurone-cord, 369
Neurone, cortico-spinal motor, 370
  dendrites of, 110
  development of, 105
  neurofibrils of, 107
  Nissl, special method of technic for, 32
  nucleolus, the, 106
  nucleus, the, 106
  perifibrillar substance, 107
  physiological significance, 114
  pigment in, 110
  protoplasmic processes, 110
  system, 362
    afferent, 365
    cortico-spinal, 367
    cortico-spinal motor, 367
    efferent, 357, 366
    main motor, 366
    No. I., 429
    No. I., cone neurones of, 429
    No. I., horizontal neurones of, 429
    No. I., rod neurones of, 429
    No. II., 430
    No. III., 430
    peripheral motor, 357
      sensory, 365, 377
    second, 365
    spino-peripheral, 362, 377
    spino-peripheral motor, 367
Neurones, cone association, 429
  rod association, 429
Neuroplasm, 112
Neutral carmine, 17
Neutrophile granules, 92
Nipple, 331
Nissl method for staining nerve cells, 32
Nissl, concerning chromophilic bodies, 109
Nitric acid for decalcifying, 9
Nodes of Ranvier, 113
Normoblasts, 157
Nuclear dyes, 14
  alum-carmine, 16
  basic aniline, 16
  combination of Gage's and Mayer's formulas, 16
  Delafield's hæmatoxylin, 15
  Gage's hæmatoxylin, 14

Nuclear dyes, hæmatoxylin, 14
  Heidenhain's hæmatoxylin, 15
  Mayer's hæmalum, 15
Nuclear fluid, 40
  sap, 40
  structures, method of demonstrating by Flemming's fluid, 6
Nuclein, 40
Nucleolus of typical cell, 40
  false, 40
Nucleoplasm, 40
Nucleoreticulum, 40
Nucleus, the, 39
  accessory olivary, 382, 384, 385
  arciform, 378, 381, 384, 385
  caudatus, 400
  Deiter's, 387
  dentate, 405
  dorsal accessory olivary, 382, 384
    cochlear, 386
  dorsalis, 365
  funiculi cuneati, 364, 374
    gracilis, 364, 374, 377
  lateral vestibular, 387
  lenticular, 401
  median, of vestibular nerve, 387
  membrane of, 40
  network of, 39
  of acoustic tubercle, 386
  of a typical cell, 39
  of column of Burdach, 364, 372, 374, 377
    of Goll, 364, 372, 374, 377
  of funiculus teres, 385
  of origin, 363
  olivary, 372, 380, 381, 384, 385
  pre-olivary, 391
  pulposus, 169
  red, 399
  resting, 46
  semilunar, 391
  spinal vestibular, 387
  superior vestibular, 387
  trapezoid, 391
  ventral cochlear, 386
  von Bechterew's, 387
Nuel's space, 446
Nutrient canal, 159
  foramen, 159
  vessels, of bone, 159

OCULOMOTOR nerve, 399
Odontoblasts, 188, 193
Œsophagus, the, 195
  coats of, 195
  glands of, 196
  technic of, 196
Oil of origanum cretici for clearing specimens, 20
Olfactory bulb, 451
    cells of, 451
    granule layer, 451
    layer of glomeruli, 451
      of longitudinal fibre bundles, 451
      of mitral cells, 451
      of olfactory fibres, 451
    olfactory glomeruli of, 451
  organ, 450
    olfactory bulb of, 451
    olfactory mucosa of, 241, 450
    technic of, 452
  tract, 451
Olivary nucleus, 379, 381, 384, 385
Opie, concerning the pancreas, 230
  concerning the cell-islands of Langerhans, 230
Optic cup, 435
  nerve, 428
    arachnoid of, 428
    dural sheath of, 428
    lamina cribrosa, 428
    pial sheath, 428
    relation to retina and brain, 428
    subarachnoid space, 428
    subdural space, 428
    technic of, 437
  stalk, 345
  thalamus, 378
    development of, 337
  vesicle, 435
Ora serrata, 421, 424
Oral glands, cells of, 181
  crescents of Gianuzzi, 182
  demilunes of Heidenhain, 182
  mixed, 181
  mucous, 181
  serous, 181
  technic of, 183
Orange G, 17

Organ of Corti, 445
  cells of Claudius of, 446
  Corti's arches, 446
  Corti's tunnel, 446
  Deiter's cells, 446
  hair or auditory cells, 446
  Hensen's cells, 446
  lamina reticularis of, 447
  Nuel's space of, 446
  phalangeal processes, 446
  pillar cells, 445
Organ of Giraldès (paradidymis), 282, 313
Organs of Golgi, peripheral nerve terminations in, 354
Organ of hearing, 437
  auditory pit of, 448
  blood-vessels of, 447
  development of, 448
  ear, external, 437
  ear, internal, 438
  ear, middle, 438
  lymphatics, 447
  nerves, 447
  otic vesicle or otocyst, 448
  technic of, 449
Organ of smell, 450; see *Olfactory organ*
Organ of taste, 452
  cells of, 452
  foliate papillæ, 452
  gustatory canal, 452
  intergeminal fibres of, 453
  intrageminal fibres of, 453
  taste buds, 186, 353, 452
  technic of, 453
Organ of vision, 416
  blood-vessels of, 431
  development of, 435
  eyeball or bulbus oculi, 416
  eyelid, 434
  lacrymal apparatus, 433
  lens, 430
  neurone systems of, 429, 430
  optic nerve, 428
  technic of, 436
Organs, the, 119
Organs of special sense, 416
  olfactory organ, 450
  organ of hearing, 437
    of taste, 452
    of vision, 416
Orth's fluid, 6
Osmic acid as a fixative, 6
  action on fat, 6
    on myelin, 6
  stain for fat, 26
Ossicles of middle ear, 439
Ossification centres, 161
  endochondral, 163
  intracartilaginous, 163
  intramembranous, 161
  subperichondral, 166
  subperiosteal, 166
Osteoblasts, 161
Osteoclasts, 163
Osteogenetic tissue, 161
Otocyst, 448
Otolythic membrane, 441
Otoliths, 441
Oval bundle of Flechsig, 368
Ovary, the, 292
  blood-vessels of, 300
  cortex of, 292
  egg nest, 294
  epoöphoron, 300
  Fallopian tube, 292, 301
  germinal epithelium of, 292
  Graafian follicles, 293
  hilum of, 292
  lymphatics of, 300
  medulla of, 292
  nerves of, 300
  oviduct, 292, 301
  ovum, 292, 296
  paroöphoron, 300
  Pflüger's egg tubes or cords, 294
  primitive ova, 293
  secretion of, 292
  structure of, 292
  technic of, 302
  tunica albuginea, 292
  zona vasculosa, 292
Oviduct, the, 301; see *Fallopian tubes*
Ovula Nabothi, 304
Ovum, the, 43, 292, 296
  atresia of follicle, 300
  cells of, 296
  deutoplasm granules, 297
  development of, 296
  fertilization of, 46
  germinal spot, 296

Ovum, maturation of, 297
  perivitelline space, 297
  segmentation of, 48
  yolk granules of, 297
  zona pellucida of, 296

Pacchionian bodies, 338
Pacinian bodies, 353
    inner bulk of, 354
  corpuscles, 290, 354
Palate, mucous membrane of, 180
Palatine tonsils, 144; see *Tonsils*
Pancreas, the, 225
  blood-vessels of, 230
  cell-islands of Langerhans, 229
  centro-acinar cells of Langerhans, 227
  development of, 240
  duct of Santorini, 226
    of Wirsung, 226
  epithelium of ducts, 226
  intracellular secretory tubules of, [229
  lobes of, 225
  lobules of, 225
  lymphatics of, 230
  nerves of, 230
  secondary excretory duct of, 226
  sustentacular cells of, 228
  technic of, 231
  terminal tubules of, 226
  zymogen granules of, 226
Paneth, cells of, 207
Panniculus adiposus, 317
Papillæ, circumvallate, 184
  compound, 316
  filiform, 184
  fungiform, 184
  nerve, 316
  simple, 316
  vascular, 316
Paradidymis, or organ of Giraldès, 282
Paraffin embedding, 12
    apparatus for, 12
  section-cutting, 13
  sections, staining and mounting of, 20
Paramiton, 38
Paranuclein, 40
Paraplasm, 39
Parathyroids, 256
  technic of, 257
Pareleidin, 319
Paroöphoron, 300, 313
Parotid gland, 222
  development of, 240
  Stenoni's duct of, 222
  technic of, 225
Parovarium, 313
Pars ciliaris retinæ, 421, 424
  iridica retinæ, 421, 424
  optica retinæ, 424
  papillaris, 316
  reticularis, 315
Pathetic nerve, 395
Peduncle, inferior, 395
  middle, 395
  superior, 395
Peduncles, cerebral, 400
Pellicula, 39
Penicillus, 148
Penis, 288
  arteries of, 289
  cavernous sinuses, 289
  corpora cavernosa of, 288
  corpus spongiosum of, 288
  erectile tissue, 289
  glans, 290
    glands of Tyson of, 290
  lymphatics, 290
  nerve endings of, 290
  prepuce of, 290
  sebaceous glands of, 319
  technic of, 292
  tunica albuginea of, 288
Peptic glands, 199
Perforating fibres, 156
  of cornea, 418
  of Sharpey, 156
Periaxial sheath, 112
Pericardial cavity, 133
Perichondrium of bone, 163
  of cartilage, 86
Perichorioidal lymph spaces, 419
Pericranium, 162
Peridental membrane, 191
Perifascicular sheath, 172, 343
Perifibrillar substance, 107
Perilymph, 439
Perimysium, 172
Perineurium, 339, 343
Periosteal buds, 164
Periosteum, 155

Periosteum, dental, 191
Peripheral afferent neurone system, 365
  efferent neurone system, 357
  motor neurone system, 357
    neurones of spinal cord, 357
    neurones of cranial nerves, 368
  nerves, 342
    afferent part of, 342, 351
    cranial, 342
    efferent part of, 342
    endoneurium of, 343
    epineurium of, 343
    fascicles of, 343
    intrafascicular connective tissue of, 343
    medullated fibres of, 111, 112, 343
    motor or efferent, 342
    motor nerve terminations, 357
    non-medullated fibres of, 111, 112, 343
    perifascicular sheath of, 343
    perineurium of, 343
    sensory or afferent, 342
    sensory nerve terminations, 352
    structure of, 342
    technic of, 344
  nerve terminations, 352
    annular, 354
    end bulbs, 352
    free endings, 355
      in penis, 290
    in genital corpuscles, 280
    in heart muscle, 354
    in mucous membrane of mouth and conjunctiva, 353
    in muscle-tendon junctions, 354
    in skin, 316, 352
    in smooth muscle, 354
    in voluntary muscle, 354
    Krause's end-bulbs in penis, 290
    Meissner's corpuscles in papillæ of penis, 290
    muscle spindles, 354
Peripheral nerve terminations, muscle-tendon organs of Golgi, 354
    neuromuscular bundles, 354
    Pacinian bodies, 353
    Pacinian corpuscles of penis, 290
    Ruffini's theory of, 354
    spinal, 342
    spiral, 354
    tactile cells, 352
      corpuscles, 352
      meniscus, 352
      taste buds, 353
  sensory neurone system, 365
Peritoneal cavity, 133
Perivitelline space, 297
Permanent teeth, 192
Petit, canal of, 431
Peyer's patches, 208
Pflüger's egg tubes or cords, 294
Phagocytes, 92, 141
Phagocytosis, 92
Phalangeal processes, 446
Pharyngeal tonsils, 146; see *Tonsils*
Pharynx, the, 194
  blood-vessels of, 194
  lymphatics of, 194
  nerves of, 194
  technic of, 194
Pia mater, 338
  blood-vessels of, 339
  cerebralis, 338
    Pacchionian bodies, 338
  spinalis, 338
  technic of, 339
Picric acid as a fixative, 7
Picro-acid-fuchsin, 18
Picro-carmine, 18
Pigment granules in cells, 39
    in nerve cells, 110, 342
Pillar cells, 445
Pineal body, 415
  brain sand of, 415
  technic of, 415
Pineal eye, 415
Pinna, 437
Pituitary body, 412
  anterior lobe of, 412
  infundibulum of, 415
  posterior lobe of, 412
  technic of, 415

Placenta, 308
  blood-vessels of, 310
  canalized fibrin, 310
  cell patches, 309
  chorionic villi, 309
  cotyledons, 309
  fastening villi, 309
  fœtalis, 308
  free or floating villi of, 309
  lymphatics of, 311
  membrana chorii of, 308
  nerves of, 311
  septa of, 310
  subchorionic placental decidua, 310
  syncytium of, 309
  technic of, 314
  uterina, 310
  villi of, 308
Plasma dyes, 17
  eosin, 17
  neutral carmine, 17
Plasmosome, 40
Plastids, 38
Plastin, 38
Pleural cavity, 133
Pleuroperitoneal cleft, 133
Plexus annularis, 433
  Auerbach's, 206, 211, 217
  Heller's, 215
  Meissner's, 209, 211, 218
  myentericus, 217
Plicæ palmatæ, 304
Polar bodies, 47
  rays, 44
Polymorphonuclear leucocytes, 91
Polynuclear leucocytes, 91
Pons Varolii, 371, 391, 393
  longitudinal fibres of, 391
  pontile nuclei of, 391
  pyramid of, 389
  transverse fibres of, 388, 391
Posterior columns of spinal cord, 364
  column of Burdach, 364
    of Goll, 364
  distribution of fibres of, 364
  nucleus funiculi cuneati, 364
    funiculi gracilis, 364
    of the column of Burdach, 364
    of the column of Goll, 364
Posterior columns of spinal cord, origin of fibres of, 350, 355
  zone of Lissauer, 364
Posterior horns, 346, 374, 380, 382, 385, 389
  longitudinal fasciculus, 376, 379, 381, 384, 385, 390, 393, 397
  median septum, 345
  nerve root, 346
    root fibres, 346
  tract, or terminal zone of Lissauer, 364
Potassium hydrate, as a macerating fluid, 4
Precapillary artery, 123
Pre-olivary nucleus, 391
Prepuce, 290
Preserving, 8
Primary germ layers, 49
  renal vesicles, 313
Primitive ova, 293
Projection fibres, 409
Pronephritic or Wolffian ducts, 313
Pronephros, 313
Pronucleus, 47
Prophase, 43
Prosencephalon, 336
Prostate gland, 286
  blood-vessels of, 287
  capsule of, 286
  corpora amylacea of, 287
  crescentic corpuscles of, 287
  epithelium of, 287
  lymphatics of, 288
  Müllerian duct, 287
  nerves of, 288
  technic of, 288
  trabeculæ, 286
  uterus masculinus, 287
  utriculus prostaticus, 287
  vesicula prostatica, 287
Protoplasm, 37
  theories of structure of, 38
Protoplasmic movement, 42
  processes, 105, 110
  radiation, 40
Proximal convoluted tubule, 263
Prussian blue gelatin as an injecting fluid, 22
Pseudopodia, 42
Purkinje cells, 401, 403

Pyloric glands, 199, 201
Pyramid, cortical, 260
    of Ferrein, 260
    Malpighian, 260
Pyramidal decussation, 366
    tracts, 366
        anterior pyramids, 366
        crossed pyramidal, 366
        direct pyramidal, 366
        pyramidal decussation, 366
        of Türck, 366
Pyrenin, 40

RANVIER'S alcohol as a macerating fluid, 4
    nodes, 113
Raphé, of semicircular canals, 442
    median, 378, 381
Rectum, 214
    columnæ rectales, 214
    technic of, 220
Reissner, membrane of, 444
Remak, fibres of, 112
Renal corpuscle, 260, 262
    development of, 262, 313
Renculus, 258
Replacing cells, 60
Reproduction of cells, 43
Reproductive system, 274
    development of, 282, 300, 312
        rudimentary structures connected with the, 282
    female organs, 292
        clitoris, 312
        Fallopian tube, 301
        ovary, 292
        oviduct, 301
        placenta, 308
        urethra, 290
        uterus, 303
        vagina, 311
        vestibule, 312
    male organs, 274
        Cowper's glands, 288
        ejaculatory ducts, 282
        penis, 288
        prostate gland, 286
        seminal ducts, 280
            vesicle, 282
        seminiferous tubule, 275
        testis, 274
Reproductive system, male organs, urethra, 241
Respiratory cells, 252
    epithelium, 252
Respiratory system, 241
    bronchi, 246
    development of, 254
    larynx, 243
    lungs, 448
    nares, 241
    trachea, 243
Restiform body, 379, 380, 381, 384, 385
Rete testis, tubules of, 280
    vasa efferentia, 280
Reticular formation, 375, 377, 381, 383, 385, 389, 393, 397
    glands, 177
    process, 346, 350
    tissue, 77
Retina, 424
    blood-vessels of, 431
    cells of, 424, 425, 426, 427
    ellipsoid of Krause, 425
    fibre-baskets of, 427
    fovea centralis, 427
    ganglionic layer of, 424
    horizontal cells of, 426
    inner limiting membrane of, 426
    inner molecular layer, 425
    inner nuclear layer, 425
    layer of nerve cells, 426
        of nerve fibres, 426
        of neuro-epithelium, 424
        of pigmented epithelium, 424
        of rods and cones, 425
    macula lutea, 427
    Müller's cells and fibres, 426
    ora serrata, 424
    outer limiting membrane, 424
    outer molecular layer, 425
    outer nuclear layer, 425
    pars ciliaris retinæ, 424
        iridica retinæ, 424
        optica retinæ, 424
    relation to optic nerve, 428
    rod and cone cells of, 425
    visual purple of, 425
Retinaculæ cutis, 317
Retzius, lines of, 190
Rhombencephalon, 336
Ribboning paraffin sections, 14

Rod association neurones, 429
    fibres, 425
Rod-visual cells, 425
Rods, layer of rods and cones, 425
Rolando, fissure of, 366
    gelatinous substance of, 346, 347
Rollett's theory of striated muscle, 98
Root cells, 356
Ruffini, corpuscles of, 329
    theory of nerve terminations, 354
Rugæ, 198
Rühle, concerning the uriniferous tubule, 264

SACCULE, 441
    and utricle, 441
        auditory hairs of, 441
        macula acustica, 441
        neuro-epithelial cells of, 441
        otolithic membrane of, 441
        otoliths of, 441
        sustentacular cells of, 441
Sacral segments of spinal cord, 344
Safranin, 16
Salivary corpuscles, 145
    glands, 221
        blood-vessels of, 223
        capsule of, 221
        development of, 240
        ducts of, 222
        interstitial tissue, 222
        lobes of, 222
        lobules of, 222
        lymphatics of, 224
        minute structure of, 181
        nerves of, 224
        parenchyma of, 222
        parotid, the, 222
        secretory tubules of, 222
        sublingual, the, 223
        submaxillary, the, 223
        trabeculæ of, 222
        technic of, 225
        tubules of, 222
Santorini, duct of, 226, 240
Sarcolemma, 96
Sarcoplasm, 97
Sarcostyles, 173
Sarcous elements of Bowman, 97
Scala media, 443
    tympani, 443
Scala vestibuli, 443
Scarpa's ganglion, 388
Scheme of neurone relations of spinal cord, 359
Schlemm, canal of, 421
Schmidt-Lantermann segments, 113
Schultze, comma tract of, 368
Schwalbe, lymph paths of, 432
Schwann, sheath of, 110, 113
Sclera, the, 416
    lamina cribrosa of, 416
        fusca of, 416
Scrotum, skin of, 316
Sebaceous glands, 319
    development of, 331
    of glans penis, 319
    of labia minora, 319
    of margin of lips, 319
    of prepuce, 319
Sebum, 327
Secondary cochlear tract, 388
    trigeminal tract, 397
    vestibular tract, 388
Secretion, 218
Secretory tubules, 222, 223
    Golgi method of demonstrating, 25
    of parietal cells of stomach, 201
Section cutting, 13
    celloidin specimens, 13
    paraffin specimens, 13
Section staining, 14
Segmentation cavity, 49
Segmentation of ovum, 48
Semen, 284
Semicircular canals, 440, 442
    crista acustica of, 442
    cupula of, 442
    raphé of, 442
    semilunar fold of, 442
Semilunar nucleus, 391
Seminal ducts, 280
        epididymis, 280
        vas deferens, 281
        vasa efferentia, 280
    vesicles, 282
Seminiferous tubules, 275
    cells of, 276
    columns of Sertoli, 276
    convoluted portion of, 275
    glandular cells of, 276

Seminiferous tubules, rete testis, 275, 280
  spermatids, 278
  spermatocytes, 278
  spermatogenic cells, 276
  spermatogones, 277
  spermatozoa, 279
  straight portion of, 279
  supporting cells of, 276
  sustentacular cells of, 276
  technic of, 286
Sensory conduction path, 365, 383
  decussation, 376, 378, 381
  peripheral nerves, 342
Septa renis, 260; see *Kidney*
Septo-marginal tract, 368
Septum linguæ, 183
Serial sections, 14
Serous membranes, 133
Sertoli, cells of, 276, 285
  columns of, 276
Sharpey's fibres, 156
Sheath of Henle, 113, 343
  medullary, 110, 113
  of Schwann, 110, 113
  perifascicular, 172
Silver-nitrate method of staining intercellular substance, 25
Skein, 43
Skeletal system, 152
  articulations, 169
  bone-marrow, 156
  bones, 152
  cartilages, 168
Skin, 315
  blood-vessels of, 315
  color of, 319
  corium, 315
  corpuscles of Grandry, 352
    of Meissner, 353
    of Ruffini, 329
  cuticle, 327
  derma, 315
  development of, 330
  eleidin of, 318
  epidermis of, 317
  Golgi-Mazzoni corpuscles of, 329
  hair follicles of, 323
  kerato-hyalin granules, 318
  Krause's end-bulbs, 330
  lymphatics of, 329
Skin, Merkel's corpuscles of, 352
  mitosis of cells of, 319
  nerves of, 329, 352
  of scrotum, 316
  Pacinian bodies of, 353
  panniculus adiposus of, 317
  pareleidin, 319
  pars papillaris, 316
  pars reticularis, 315
  peripheral nerve terminations in, 352
  prickle cells of, 318
  retinaculæ cutis, 317
  sebaceous glands of, 319
  subcutaneous tissue of, 316
  sweat glands (glandulæ sudoriparæ), 319
  sweat pores of, 319
  tactile cells of, 352
  tactile corpuscles, 330, 353
  technic of, 320
    for blood-vessels of, 330
  Vater-Pacinian corpuscles of, 329
Skin and its appendages, 315
  development of, 330
  hair, 322
  mammary gland, 331
  nails, 320
Small intestines, 204
  Auerbach's plexus, 210, 217
  blood-vessels of, 215
  Brunner's glands of, 209
  cells of, 205
  chyle capillaries of, 217
  coats of, 205
  crypts of Lieberkühn, 207
  development of, 239
  lymphatics, 217
  Meissner's plexus, 209, 218
  muscle of, 209
  nerves of, 217
  Peyer's patches of, 208
  technic of, 220
  valvulæ conniventes of, 204
  villi of, 204, 205, 216
Smooth muscle, 95; see *Involuntary muscle*
Sodium hydrate as a macerating fluid, 4
Solitary fasciculus, 378, 381, 384, 385
  follicles, 202, 208, 211
Somatochromes, 108

- Spermatids, 278, 285
- Spermatocytes, 278, 285
- Spermatogenesis, 285
- Spermatozoa, 46, 284
  - development of, 46, 285
  - structure of, 284
  - technic of, 286
- Spider cells, 115
- Spinal accessory nerve, 378
- Spinal cord, 344
  - anterior columns of, 346
    - horns of, 346
    - marginal bundle of Loewenthal, 367
    - median fissure, 345
    - nerve roots of, 346
    - white commissure of, 347
  - antero-lateral columns of, 346
  - antero-lateral ascending tract, 358
  - antero-lateral descending tract, 367
  - arachnoid membrane of, 338
  - ascending tracts of, 358, 364
  - cell column of lower extremity, 357
  - cell column of upper extremity, 357
  - cells of the gray matter of, 350
    - of Golgi, Type II., 360
    - column, 358
    - root, 358
  - central canal of, 346
    - gelatinous substance, 346, 347
  - cervical enlargement of, 344
    - segments of, 344
  - Clarke's column of, 348
  - coccygeal segments of, 344
  - column of Burdach, 350, 364
    - of Goll, 350, 364
    - cells, 357
      - hecateromeric, 358
      - heteromeric, 358
      - tautomeric, 358, 365
  - comma tract of Schultze, 368
  - conduction paths of, 362, 365, 367
  - cornua of, 346
  - crossed pyramidal tract, 366
  - descending paths from higher centres, 370
- Spinal cord, descending tract from Deiter's nucleus, 367
    - from vestibular nuclei, 367
  - direct ascending paths to higher centers, 358, 370
    - pyramidal tract, 356, 359, 366
    - reflex path, 369
  - dorsal gray commissure, 346
    - segments of, 344
  - dura mater of, 338
  - efferent fibre systems of, 366
  - fasciculi, 362
  - fibre tracts of, 362
  - filum terminale of, 234
  - fundamental columns of, 358, 368
  - ganglion cells of, 347
  - gelatinous substance of Rolando, 346, 347
  - Gowers' tract, 358
  - gray matter of, 344, 346
  - ground bundles of, 358, 368
  - Helweg's tract, 367
  - indirect ascending paths to higher centres, 369
  - indirect reflex paths, 369
  - interchange of fibres, 347
  - intermedio-lateral column, 357
  - lateral column of, 346
  - longitudinal section of six days' chick embryo, 361
  - lumbar enlargement of, 244
    - segments of, 344
  - main motor fibre systems of, 366
  - medial column of, 357
  - medullated fibres of, 347, 348
  - membranes of, 338
    - arachnoid, 338
    - blood-vessels of, 339
    - dura mater, 338
    - pia mater, 338
    - technic of, 339
  - mixed spinal nerve, 357
  - multipolar ganglion cells of, 347, 356
  - neuroglia cells, 347
    - tissue, 346
  - neurone systems of, 362, 365, 367
  - origin of fibres of white matter, 350

Spinal cord, origin of posterior columns of, 350
  oval bundle of Flechsig, 368
  peripheral motor or efferent neurone system, 357
    sensory of afferent neurone system, 364, 365
  pia mater of, 338, 345
  plexus of fine fibres, 347
  posterior columns of, 346, 364
    horns of, 346
    median septum, 345
    nerve roots, 346
    root fibres, 346, 347
  pyramidal tracts, 359, 366
  quadrigemino-spinal tract, 367
  reticular process of, 346, 350
  rubro-spinal tract, 367
  sacral segments of, 344
  scheme of neurone relations of, 359
  section through cervical enlargement, 349
    through lumbar enlargement, 345
    through mid-dorsal region of, 348
    through twelfth dorsal segment, 348
  segments of, 344
  septo-marginal tract, 368
  shape of, 345
  short fibre systems of, 358, 368
  size of, 345
  technic of, 342, 347, 360, 371
  tractus cortico-spinalis, 366
    reticulo-spinalis, 368, 375
    spino-cerebellaris centralis, 365
    spino-cerebellaris dorsalis, 365
  transverse section of six days' chick embryo, 360
  ventral gray commissure, 346
  Von Monakow's tract, 367
  white commissure of, 347
  white matter of, 344, 346
  zone of Lissauer, 347
Spinal ganglia, 340
  development of, 338
  technic of, 342
Spinal ganglion cells, ascending arms from central processes of, 356
  centrally directed arm of, 355
  classification of, 340
  collaterals from, 356
  descending arms from central processes of, 356
  development of, 351
  Dogiel's classification, 340
  ectodermic origin of, 350
  peripheral arms of, 351
  relation to dorsal roots, 355
  structure of, 340
  technic of, 360
Spino-cerebellar tract (dorsal), 365
  -cerebellar tract (ventral), 365
  -peripheral motor neurone system, 367
  -tectal tract, 366
Spiral ganglion, 448
  ligament, 442
  prominence, 444
  terminations, 354
Spireme, 43
Spleen, 146
  blood-vessels of, 148
  cavernous veins of, 148
  cells of, 149
  connective-tissue of, 146
  cords of, 148
  corpuscles of, 147
  ellipsoids of, 148
  lymphatics of, 150
  Mall's theory of vascular channels of pulp, 149
  Malpighian bodies of, 146
  nerves of, 150
  pulp of, 146, 148
    cords of, 148
  spindles of, 148
  technic of, 150
Splenic corpuscles, 146
Spongioblasts, 115
  of His, 337
Spongioplasm, 38
Staining, 14
  double with hæmatoxylin-eosin, 17
  in bulk, 18
  methods, special, 25
    special neurological, 27

Staining paraffin sections, 20
    sections, 17
        double with hæmatoxylin-eosin, 17
        triple with hæmatoxylin-picro-acid-fuchsin, 18
Stains, nuclear dyes, 14
    plasma dyes, 17
Stalked hydatid, 314
Stapes, 439
Stenoni, duct of, 222
Stomach, 198
    acid cells of, 200
    adelomorphous cells of, 199
    Auerbach's plexus, 211
    blood-vessels of, 215
    cardiac glands of, 200
    chief cells of, 199
    delomorphous cells of, 199
    development of, 239
    epithelium of, 198
    gastric crypts of, 198
        glands of, 198, 199
        pits of, 198
    lymphatics of, 217
    mucous membrane of, 198
    muscular coat of, 203
    nerves of, 217
    parietal cells of, 200
    peptic cells of, 199
        glands of, 199
    pyloric glands of, 199, 201
    rugæ of, 198
    secretion of, 218
    solitary follicles of, 202
    technic of, 203
Stomata, 133
Stratum fibrosum, 169
    granulosum, 295
    synoviale, 170
Streaming of protoplasm, 42
Stria vascularis, 444
Stroma of mucous membranes, 178
    of the red blood cell, 89
Styloglossal fibres, 183
Subchorionic placental decidua, 310
Subcutis, 316, 329
Sublingual gland, 223
    development of, 240
    duct of Bartholin of, 223
    technic of, 225
Submaxillary gland, 223
    development of, 240
    duct of Wharton of, 223
    technic of, 225
Submucosa, 178
Subperichondrial ossification, 166
Subperiosteal ossification, 166
Substantia nigra, 395, 397
    propria corneæ, 418
Sulcus, external spiral, 444
Superior cerebellar peduncles, 395, 397
    olive, 391, 393
Supra-renal, 270
Suspensory ligament, 430
Sustentacular cells, 228
Sweat glands, 319
    development of, 331
    ducts of, 319
    muscle tissue of, 331
Sweat pore, 319
Sympathetic ganglia, 341
    cells of, 342
    development of, 338
    in Auerbach's plexus, 342
    in Meissner's plexus, 342
    pigmentation of cells of, 342
    structure of, 342
    technic of, 342
Sympathetic nervous system, 336; see *Nervous system* (*sympathetic*)
Synarthrosis, 169
Synchondrosis, 169
Syncytial tissue, 102
Syncytium, 102, 309
Syndesmosis, 169
Synovial membrane, 170
    villi, 170

TACTILE cells, 352
    corpuscles, 329, 330
        of Meissner, 329
        of Wagner, 329
Tapetum cellulosum, 419
    fibrosum, 419
Tarsal glands, 434
Tarsus, 434
Taste buds, 186, 353, 452
Tautomeres, 358
Teasing, 4
Technic, general, 3
Tectum, 366

Teeth, 187
  blood-vessels of, 191
  cementum of, 187, 190, 193
  crown of, 187
  dental canals, 188
    germ, 191
    papilla, 191
    periosteum, 191
    ridge, 191
    sac, 191
  dentinal fibres, 188
    pulp, 187
  dentine of, 187, 188
  development of, 191
    common dental germ, 191
    cuticular membrane, 193
    dental papilla, 191
      ridge, 191
    enamel organ, 191
    special dental germ, 191
    technic of, 193
    Tomes' process, 193
  enamel of, 187, 190, 193
    cells, 192,
    fibres, 190, 193
    organ, 191, 192, 193
    prisms, 190, 193
  interglobular spaces, 189, 193
  lymphatics of, 191
  milk, 191, 192
  nerves of, 191
  Neumann's dental sheath, 189
  odontoblasts of, 188, 193
  peridental membrane, 191
  permanent, 192
  pulp cavity, 187, 193
  root of, 187
  technic of, 193
  Tomes' granular layer, 190
Tegmentum, 395, 397
  brachia conjunctiva, 397
  central tegmental tract, 397
  descending motor or mesencephalic root of fifth nerve, 397
  fillet, 397
  fourth cranial nerve, 397
  Gowers' tract, 397
  lateral lemniscus, 397
  posterior longitudinal fasciculus, 397
  reticular formation, 397
Tegmentum, superior peduncles, 397
  Von Monakow's bundle, 397
Telophase, 46
Tendon, structure of, 71
  sheaths, 172.
Tendon-muscle junction, 172
  organs of Golgi in, 354
  peripheral-nerve terminations in, 354
Tenon, capsule of, 432
Tensor chorioideæ, 422
Terminal arborizations, 110
  bronchus, 251
  nucleus, 363
  zone of Lissauer, 364
Testis, 274
  blood-vessels of, 283
  corpus Highmori, 274
  ducts of, 280
  epididymis of, 275
  lobules of, 274
  lymphatics of, 284
  mediastinum, 274
  nerves, 284
  secretion of, 284
  semen, 284
  seminal ducts of, 280
  seminiferous tubules of, 275
  spermatozoa, 276, 284
  technic of, 286
  tunica albuginea of, 274
    vaginalis, 274
    vasculosa, 274
Theca folliculi, 295
Thermotaxis, 42
Thionin, 16
Thoma, ampulla of, 150
Thomas, fasciculus of, 368
Thoracic duct, 133
Thrombocytes, 92
Thymus, 142
  blood-vessels of, 143
  development of, 142
  Hassall's corpuscles, 143
  lymphatics of, 143
  nerves of, 143
  technic, 143
Thyroid, 255
  blood-vessels of, 256
  colloid of, 255
  development of, 256

Thyroid, isthmus of, 255
  lymphatics of, 256
  nerves of, 256
  technic, 257
Tissue elements, dissociation of, 4
Tissues, 53
  adipose, 79
  blood, 89
  bone, 86
  cartilage, 83
  classification of, 55
  connective, 67
  elastic, 72
  epithelial, 57
  erectile, 289
  examination of fresh, 4
  fat, 79
  histogenesis of, 55
  lymphatic, 79
  muscle, 95
  nerve, 105
  osteogenetic, 161
  subcutaneous, 316
Toluidin blue, 16
Tomes' granular layer, 190
  process, 193
Tongue, 183
  blood-vessels of, 185
  circumvallate papillæ, 184
  connective tissue of, 183
  Ebner's glands, 185
  end-bulbs of Krause, 186
  filiform papillæ, 184
  fungiform papillæ, 184
  glands of, 182
  longitudinal fibres of, 183
  lymph follicles of, 145, 185
    spaces of, 186
  muscles of, 183
  nerves of, 186
  papillæ of, 184
  septum linguæ, 183
  taste buds, 186, 353
  technic of, 186
  transverse fibres of, 183
  vertical fibres of, 183
Tonsils, 144
  blood-vessels of, 146
  crypts of, 144
  development of, 146
  lingual; folliculæ linguales, 145
Tonsils, lymphatics of, 146
  nerves of, 146
  palatine or true, 144
  pharyngeal, 146
  salivary corpuscles of, 145
  technic of, 146
Trachea, 243
  blood-vessels of, 245
  cartilages of, 244
  lymphatics of, 246
  muscle cells of, 245
  nerves of, 246
  technic of, 246
Tract, antero-lateral ascending, 365, 372
  antero-lateral descending, 367
  Burdach's, 350, 364, 376, 379
  comma, of Schultze, 368
  cortico-spinalis, 366
  crossed pyramidal, 366, 374, 375
  descending, from Deiter's nucleus, 367, 389
    from vestibular nuclei, 367
  direct cerebellar, 365, 374, 377, 380
    pyramidal, 366
  dorso-lateral ascending, 365
  fundamental or ground bundles, 368
  Flechsig's, 365
  Goll's, 350, 374, 376
  Gowers', 358, 365, 376, 380, 382, 385, 389
  Helweg's, 367, 374
  Lissauer's, 364
  marginal bundle of Loewenthal, 367
  oval bundle of Flechsig, 367
  posterior, 364
  pyramidal, 366
  quadrigemino-spinal, 367
  reflex, 369
  reticulo-spinalis, 368
  rubro-spinal, 367
  secondary cochlear, 388
    vestibular, 388
  septo-marginal, 368
  short fibre, 358, 368
  spinal cord, 346, 348, 350, 356, 357, 362
  spino-cerebellaris centralis, 365

Tract, spino-cerebellaris dorsalis, 365
  spino-tectal, 366, 374, 381, 382, 385
  Türck's, 366
  Von Monakow's, 367, 374, 377, 381, 382, 385, 389, 397
Tractus, see *Tract*
Transitional leucocytes, 91
Trapezoid nucleus, 391
Trapezium, 391
Trigeminus nerve, 378, 392
True axone, 355
  corpora lutea, 298
Tubules, arched, 261, 264
  collecting, 261, 264
  distal, 261, 263
  first or proximal, 260, 263
  second or distal, 261, 263
  seminiferous, 275
  straight, 261, 264
  uriniferous, 260
Tunica albuginea, of ovary, 292
    of penis, 288
    of testis, 274
  dartos, 316
  fibrosa, 285
  propria, of mucous membranes, 178
  vaginalis, 274
  vasculosa, 274, 296
Türck, tract of, 366
Tympanic membrane, 438
Tympanum, 438; see also *Ear, middle*
Tyson, glands of, 290

Ultimate fibrillæ, 97
Unipolar nerve cells, 106
Ureter, 269
  blood-vessels of, 268
  coats of, 268
  development of, 313
  glands of, 268
  lymphatics of, 269
  nerves of, 269
  technic of, 273
Urethra, female, 290
  glands of Littré of, 290
Urethra, male, 290
  blood-vessels of, 291
  fossa navicularis, 291
Urethra, glands of Littré of, 291
  technic of, 292
Urinary bladder, 269
  blood-vessels of, 269
  development of, 312
  epithelium of, 269
  fibrous layer of, 269
  lymphatics of, 269
  muscular layers of, 269
  mucous membrane of, 269
  nerves of, 270
  technic of, 273
Urinary system, 258
  development of, 312
  kidney, 258
  ureter, 268
  urinary bladder, 269
Uriniferous tubule, 260
  arched tubule of, 261, 264
  ascending arm of Henle's loop, 260, 263
  Bowman's capsule, 260
  descending arm of Henle's loop, 260, 263
  development of, 262
  duct of Bellini, 261
  first or proximal convoluted, 260 263
  glomerulus, 260
  Henle's loop, 260, 263
  Malpighian body, 260, 262
  membrana propria of, 262
  neck of, 263
  renal corpuscle, 260
  second or distal convoluted, 261, 263
  straight or collecting, 261, 264
Uterus, 303
  blood-vessels of, 310
  coats of, 303
  decidual cells of, 307
  development of, 312; see also *Reproductive system, development of*
  lymphatics of, 311
  masculinus, 287
  muscle cells of, 303
  muscle tissue of, 303
    stratum submucosum, 303
      supra-vasculare, 303
      vasculare, 303

Uterus, nerves of, 311
    placenta, 308
    mucosa of menstruating, 305
        of pregnant, 307
        of resting, 304
    stage of menstruation proper, 306
        of preparation, 305
        of reparation, 306
    technic of, 314
    with placenta *in situ*, technic of, 314
Utricle, 441; see also *Saccule and utricle*
Utriculo-saccular duct, 440
Utriculus prostaticus, 287
Uvula, mucous membrane of, 180

VAGINA, 311
    blood-vessels of, 312
    coats of, 310
    lymphatics of, 312
    nerves of, 312
    rugæ of, 311
    technic of, 314
Vagus nerve, 379
Valve, Heisterian, 237
    of Vieussens, 395
Valves of heart, 131
    of veins, 127
Valvulæ conniventes, 198, 204
Van Gehuchten's theory of peripheral arm of ganglion cell, 355
Vas deferens, 281
        ampulla of, 286
        technic of, 286
Vas epididymis, 281
Vasa efferentia, 281
    vasorum, 128
Vascular papillæ, 316
Vascular system, 121; see also *Circulatory system*
Vater-Pacinian corpuscles, 329
Veins, 126
    adventitia of, 128
    arcuate, 267
    central, 233
    coats of, 126
    development of, 132
    intima of, 127
    media of, 127
    portal, 233
Veins, stellate, of Verheyn, 267
    technic of, 128
    valves of, 127
    vasa vasorum, 128
    venæ vorticosæ, 419
Venæ vorticosæ, 419
Ventricle, fourth, 381, 382, 384, 385, 390, 393
    muscle of, 130
Verheyn, stellate veins of, 267
Vermiform appendix, 212
        coats of, 213
        lymph nodules of, 214
        technic of, 220
Vermis of cerebellum, 365
Vesicle, air, 249
    anterior cerebral, 336
    middle cerebral, 336
    optic, 435
    otic, 448
    posterior cerebral, 336
Vesicula prostatica, 282, 287
Vestibular ganglion, 388
    nucleus, 387
        descending tract from, 374, 376, 379
Vestibule, 312, 440
    ductus reuniens of, 440
    endolymphatic duct, 440
    saccule of, 440, 441
    utricle of, 440, 441
    utriculo-saccular duct of, 440
Vieussens, valve of, 395
Villi, 204, 205, 216
    lacteals of, 220
    synovial, 170
Visual purple, 425
Vitreous body of the eye, 431
        Cloquet's canal, 431
        hyaloid canal of, 431
Vitreous membrane of chorioid, 420
        of iris, 424
Vocal cords, 243
Volkmann's canal, 155, 159
Voluntary striated muscle, 96; see *Muscle, striated, voluntary*
Von Bechterew's nucleus, 387
Von Monakow's bundle, 367, 374, 377, 381, 382, 385, 389, 397

WAGNER, corpuscles of, 329

Washing after fixation, 8
Weigert's elastic-tissue stain, 25
    hæmatoxylin, 16
    method of staining medullated nerve fibres, 27
Weigert-Pal method, 28
Wharton's duct, 223
White matter, 334
Wirsung, duct of, 226
Wolffian body, 313
    ridges, 312
Wrisburg, cartilage of, 243

XYLOL and cajeput oil for clearing, 20
    -balsam, 20
Xylol-paraffin for embedding, 12

ZENKER'S fluid for decalcifying, 9
        for fixation, 7
Zinn, zonule of, 430
Zona pectinata, 445
    pellucida, 49, 296
    tecta, 445
Zone of Lissauer, 347
    of oval nuclei, 242
    of round nuclei, 242
Zonula ciliaris, 430
Zonule of Zinn, 430
Zymogen granules, 226
    technic of, 231

COLUMBIA UNIVERSITY LIBRARIES

This book is due on the date indicated below, or at the expiration of a definite period after the date of borrowing, as provided by the library rules or by special arrangement with the Librarian in charge.

SEP 23 1946

DATE BORROWED	DATE DUE	DATE BORROWED	DATE DUE
SEP 16 1949			
C28(842)M50			

QM551 1906 B15
Bailey